

\*\*\*\*\*  
Voucher No.      Date :      Voucher No.      Date :  
\*\*\*\*\*

433 L 1 AUG 1982

477- 21 SEP 1982

222/- 120 SEP 1983

\*\*\*\*\*

**"PRESENTED BY THE MINISTRY OF EDUCATION  
& SOCIAL WELFARE, GOVERNMENT OF INDIA"**





# **SANSKRIT SYNTAX.**



# SANSKRIT SYNTAX

J. S. SPEIJER

*With an Introduction by*  
H. KERN

MOTILAL BANARSIDASS  
DELHI :: VARANASI :: PATNA

**©MOTILAL BANARSIDASS**

**Indological Publishers & Booksellers**

**Head Office : BUNGALOW ROAD, JAWAHARNAGAR, DELHI-7**

**Branches : 1. CHOWK, VARANASI (U.P.)**

**2. ASHOK RAJPATH (OPP. PATNA COLLEGE),  
PATNA-4 (BIHAR)**

*By Arrangement with E. J. Brill, Leiden*

**FIRST EDITION : Leiden 1886**

**Reprint : Delhi 1973**

**Price : Rs. 40.00**

9003

**Printed in India**

**BY JAYYAD PRESS, DELHI AND PUBLISHED BY SUNDARLAL JAIN FOR  
MOTILAL BANARSIDASS, BUNGALOW ROAD, JAWAHARNAGAR, DELHI-7**

In order to comply with the wishes of Dr. Speijer I take the liberty to introduce his work with the students of Sanskrit.

Indian grammar, which is virtually the same as saying Pāṇini's grammar, superior as it is in many respects to anything of the kind produced among other civilized nations of antiquity, is professedly deficient in its treatment of syntax. As all Sanskrit grammars published by Western scholars are, so far as the linguistical facts are concerned, almost entirely dependent, either directly or indirectly, upon Pāṇini, it cannot be matter for surprise that syntax is not adequately treated in them, although it must be admitted that Professor Whitney's grammar shows in this respect a signal progress.

Some parts of Indian syntax have received a careful treatment at the hands of competent scholars, amongst whom Delbrück stands foremost. All who are grateful to those pioneers will, it may be supposed, gladly receive this more comprehensive work, the first complete syntax of classical Sanskrit, for which we are indebted to the labours of Dr. Speijer. May it be the forerunner of a similar work, as copious and conscientious, on Vaidik Syntax!

• H. KERN.

LEYDEN, 13 July 1886.



## PREFACE.

This book aims to give a succinct account of Sanskrit Syntax , as it is represented in classic Sanskrit literature , without neglecting however the archaisms and peculiarities of vaidik prose (brâhmaṇa, upanishad, sūtra) and of epic poetry. The facts laid down here have been stated chiefly by my own observations in perusing Sanskrit writings, and accordingly by far the great majority of the examples quoted have been selected directly from the sources, if not, those suggested by the Pictorial Dictionary or others have, as a rule, been received only after verification. Moreover, valuable information was gained by the statements of vernacular grammarians, especially of Pāṇini, to whose revered authority due respect is paid and whose rules are referred to at every opportunity. For some useful intelligence I am indebted to Mr. ANUNDORAM BOROON's *Higher Sanskrit Grammar* Calcutta 1879. A welcome and precious assistance were to me some treatises or occasional hints of distinguished European scholars, who, as DELBRÜCK, DE SAUSSURE, WHITNEY, have explored tracks of this scarcely trodden region of Indian philology. But for the greater part of the subjects falling within the scope of this computation,



monographies and special investigations of a sound philological and scholarlike character are still wanting, and I have felt that want often and deeply. For this reason I am fully aware, that many deficiencies and inaccuracies will certainly be found now or appear afterwards in this first Sanskrit Syntax written in Europe. Notwithstanding, as I felt convinced that my labour, however imperfect, might prove of some profit by facilitating both the access to Sanskrit literature and the study of Sanskrit language, and that on the other hand this work might afford some base for further investigations on special points of Syntax, it is placed before the public with the confidence that it may be judged, what it is, as a first attempt, and an attempt undertaken by a foreigner.

In arranging materials I preferred following, as best I could, the nature and spirit of the language I was working on, rather than clinging too closely to the classification familiar to us by the Syntax of Latin and Greek; in stating facts I have avoided generalizing from such instances as did rest only on my own limited experience, remembering the wise words of Patanjali  
महान् हि शब्दस्य प्रयोगविषयः..... एतावन्तं शब्दस्य प्रयोगविषयमनुनिश्चयं सन्त्य-  
प्रयुक्ता इति वचनं केवलं साहसमात्रम्.

The whole of this Syntax is made up of six Sections.

Page.

SECTION I. General remarks on the structure of sentences . . . 1—13

SECTION II. Syntaxis convenientiae and syntaxis rectionis.

Chapt.	I. Concord . . . . .	13—23
"	II. How to denote case-relations . . . . .	24—29
"	III. Accusative. . . . .	29—42
"	IV. Instrumental . . . . .	42—58
"	V. Dative . . . . .	58—67
"	VI. Ablative . . . . .	67—81
"	VII. Genitive . . . . .	81—101
"	VIII. Locative . . . . .	102—113

Page

Chapt. IX. Periphrastic expression of case-relations. . . . .	113
I. Prepositions . . . . .	113—134
II. Periphrase by means of noun-cases . . . . .	134—141
III.     "     "     "     "     participles, gerunds and the like . . . . .	141—145
X. Compounds . . . . .	145—178

SECTION III. On the different classes of nouns and pronouns.

Chapt. I. Substantive. Adjective. Adverb . . . . .	179—193
" II. Pronouns. . . . .	193
1. Personal pronouns and their possessives. . . . .	193—201
2. Demonstratives, Relatives, Interrogatives . . . . .	201—215
3. Pronominal Adverbs. . . . .	215—221
4. Pronominal Adjectives . . . . .	221—222
III. On nouns of number. . . . .	222—227

SECTION IV. Syntax of the verbs.

Chapt. I. General remarks. Kinds of verbs. Auxiliaries. Periphrase of verbs . . . . .	228—235
" II. On voices . . . . .	235—241
" III and IV Tenses and moods. . . . .	241—278
" V. Participles and participial idioms . . . . .	278—296
" VI. Gerunds . . . . .	296—300
" VII. Infinitive. . . . .	300—309

SECTION V. Syntax of the particles.

Chapt. I. Particles of emphasis and limitation . . . . .	310—315
" II. Negation . . . . .	315—320
" III. Interrogations . . . . .	320—326
" IV. Exclamation . . . . .	326—329
" V. Connective particles . . . . .	329—336

SECTION VI. On the connection of sentences

Chapt. I. Coordination. . . . .	337—346
" II. Subordination. Periods and clauses . . . . .	347—352
" III. Relative sentences introduced by pronouns . . . . .	352—357
" IV. Relative adverbs and conjunctions . . . . .	358—372
" V. The conditional period . . . . .	372—379
" VI. The direct construction; इति . . . . .	379—388

# PREFACE.

Before perusing the book, the reader is begged to change

p. 12 § 17	Kām.	into Kād.
„ 21 § 31	serves to determino	„ s. t. qualify
„ 51 § 68	<b>184</b> R.	„ <b>185</b> R. 1.
„ 55 § 74 R.	<b>42</b> , 4.	„ <b>43</b> and <b>42</b> , 4.
„ 73 § 100	<i>borne</i>	„ <i>born</i> .
„ 74 l. 4	<i>borne</i>	„ <i>born</i> .
„ 86 § 116	°वयवः	„ °वयवः
„ 92 l. 2	कोवित्	„ कोविद्
„ 123 § 169 R.	<b>54</b> , R. 1	„ <b>54</b> , R. 2.
„ 141 § 197	<i>into, to</i>	„ <i>in, into, to</i> .
„ 265 l. 2	<b>471</b> , R. 4	„ <b>470</b> , R. 3.
„ 363 in the margi-		
nal note	temporal	„ serves for comparison.

On p. 34 § 46 R. I wrote I could adduce no instance of चि with two acc. Afterwards I met with this: R. 3, 42, 31. कर्षिकारानशोकांश्च चूतांश्च मदिरे-  
क्षणा। कुसुमान्यपचिन्वन्ती चचार रुचिरानन।

## SECTION THE FIRST.

### GENERAL REMARKS ON THE STRUCTURE OF SENTENCES

1. The **subject of the sentence**<sup>1)</sup> is put in the nominative case. The **predicate of the sentence** is either noun or verb; अश्वो धावति (the horse runs), तरुणोऽश्वः (the horse is young).
2. To the **noun-predicate** the so called *verbum substantivum* is commonly not subjoined; from a logical point of view it is indeed of no use, and its obligatory employment in modern western languages rather to be called an abuse. Panc. 26 स महात्मा त्रयं कृष्णाः (he is a lord, we are mean people), Nala 1,30 त्वं चापि तप्तं नारीणां नरेण च नलो वरः, Çāk. I अपि संनिहितो ऽत्र कुलपतिः (is perhaps the head of the family near?). It may, however, be added. Panc. 100 अस्माकं एवमेवापराध्यस्मि, Kathās. 16, 115 अस्मेवापराध्यस्मि (I alone am guilty.) —

1) Vernacular grammar has no term to name the subject of the sentence or grammatical subject. The term *kartr* signifies the agent or *logical subject*. In the same way *karma* means the *logical object*, whatever may be its grammatical function; it thus implies the object of the active verb as well as the subject of the passive or the objective genitive. In such sentences as "the knife cuts", the grammatical subject is both *kartr* (agent) and *karana* (instrument)

It must be added, if »to be” means »to exist” or »to be met with;” likewise if the grammatical tense or mood is to be expressed.

Rem. It is even wanting sometimes in such sentences, as contain a predicate in the optative or imperative mood; especially in some current phrases, as नमस्तस्मै (adoration to him), भद्रं ते [sc. भूयात्] hail to you), का कथा (why make mention of —) ज्ञान्तम् or ज्ञान्तं पापम् (v. a. *malum absit*), etc. Prabodh. III p. 66 the Bauddha monk entreats the Āiava to let him enjoy the instruction of his doctrines आचार्यस्त्वं शिष्योऽहं प्रवेष्टव्यं मां पारंगच्छन्तिं शिष्याम् (be you my teacher, I your pupil, initiate me into the doctrines of the Āiavās).

3. Besides अस्ति and भवति, the verbs विद्यते, तिष्ठति, वर्तते and the participle गत may be used more or less as *verbum substantivum*. Schol. on P. 3, 4, 65<sup>1)</sup> विद्यते भोजनम् (there is something to eat), Vēñ. III p. 94 एष दुर्गोधनः अस्यां न्यग्रोधच्छायायामुपविष्टमिच्छति (here D. is sitting down under the shade —), Hit. 107 राजमण्डलो द्वारि वर्तते the king of the crows is at the door). From the given examples it however sufficiently appears that the original meaning of those verbs has not wholly faded. Accordingly it is sometimes not indifferent which *verbum subst.* to choose. So विद्यते especially denotes the »being met with” fr. *il y a*, likewise अस्ति, but not भवति; गत expresses the »being in or on”, as चित्रगतः (v. a. painted); वर्तते comp. Lat. *versatur*.

Rem. By consequence, भवति is the proper verb, if there be laid some stress on the predicate, in other terms, if it be pointed out that the subject is invested with the dignity or possesses the quality predicated of it. Ch. Up. 6, 16, 1 it is said with respect to somebody, seized on account of a theft, apparently committed by him स यदि तस्य कर्ता भवति [not अस्ति]; Panc. III, 57 वनानि दहन्ता वृद्धेः सखा भवति मातुलः (when the fire burns the wood, wife is his mate), Mhbh. 1,89,2 यो विद्यया तपसा जग्मना च वृद्धः स पूज्यो भवति दिज्ञानाम्.

4. The same character is exhibited by the predicates

1) विद्यते in this sūtra is one of the असत्यार्थाः (words meaning to be).

made up of a noun and a verb of *becoming, growing, seeming, remaining, being called, -considered* and the like. Comp. 32.

5. The noun-predicate itself deviates by no means from the common use of other tongues. It may thus be any kind of noun either substantive or adjective, and is put in the nominative case, provided that it be pointing at the same person or thing as is pointed out by the subject, as **शीतला रात्रिः** (the night is cold), for in that sentence the subj. **रात्रिः** and the predicate **शीतला** are relating to one and the same thing. This we may call the noun-predicate proper. Nothing, indeed, forbids other nouncases, adverbs and the like doing duty of the predicate, as **कूपे तोयम्** when = „water is in the pit,” Pat. 84 अतो यत्रासौ काकः (yonder [house], where that crow is), Mudr. 23 नायत्रः प्रमार्दुमलेम् (he [will] not [be] able to blot out [that] stain), R. 2,42,7 नाहं तेषां न ते मम (I have nothing in common with them nor they with me) and sim.

6. As to the **verb-predicate**, the same action may be expressed as well by the active voice as by the passive. When active, its agent or subject is put in the nominative case and its object in the accusative; **देवदत्तः कटं करोति** (N. N. makes a mat). In the passive sentence, the object of the action is subject of the sentence and accordingly a nominative; the agent is invariably put in the instrumental. **देवदत्तेन कटः क्रियते** (the mat is made by N. N.); of **स्वपिषि** (I sleep) the pass. form is **मया सुष्यते** (it is slept by me), and so on.

7. Sanskrit has a decided, predilection for the passive

Passive  
voice.

voice. In translating from that language it is often necessary to transform passive sentences into active. For inst. Panc. 43 चिरकालं श्रुतो मया तवापवादः (it is a long time I hear blame you), Daçak. 133 कयापि दिव्याकार्या कन्ययोपाख्यायिणि (a maiden of heavenly appearance respectfully approached me), Hit. 43 तत्र तेन मृग एका व्यापादितः। मृगमादाय गच्छता तेन घोराकृतिः सूकरो दृष्टः। ततस्तेन मृगं भूमौ निधाय सूकरः श्रेष्ठा हतः

8. Since this preference is of course not limited to transitive verbs, nothing can be more common than the use of **impersonal passives**. Hit. 93 केनापि शस्यरक्षकेनैकान्ते स्थितम् (some guardian of the crops was standing aside), Daçak. 18 केसरिणा करिणं निहत्य कुत्रचिदगमि (the lion, after having slain the elephant, disappeared), Ven. III p. 79 कथमेवं प्रलपतां वः गुरुस्त्वा न दीर्घमनया तिष्ठया. Even the verb subst. has occasionally a passivo form, cp. 32 b).

Imper-  
sonal  
passive  
verbs

Rem. Apart from the said impersonal verbs, we have to record the old and genuine impersonals with active or medial endings and meaning. In classic Sanskrit they are scarcely used, being but remnants of a more widely employed idiom of the elder language. Ait. Br. 1,9,2 तस्मै जनतायै कल्पते यत्रैवं विद्वान्होता भवति (it avails such community, as where is a *hoṭr* knowing this), Açv. Grhy. 4,1,1 आहिताग्निं चेदुपतपेदुद्वस्येत् (if a worshipper in the three fires be affected by illness, he should withdraw); — Panc. I यत्ने न सिद्ध्यति (if it does not succeed notwithstanding the effort —). Likewise वर्षति (it rains) = देखो वर्षति (cp. Yājñ. 1,136 with Kāç. on P. 1,4,89) and so on.

9. Participles, especially those in त and तवन्त् and the kṛtyās are frequently employed as if they were finite verbs, without the attendance of the verb subst. In simple prose a great deal of the sentences are moulded in that shape. Hitop. 12 असौ व्याघ्रेण व्यापादितः खादितश्च (the tiger killed him and devoured him), ibid. 7 तस्य विष्णुधर्मणाः पुत्रान् समर्पितवान् (he entrusted his sons to the fore-said Vishn.), Çāk. I विनीतवेष्टेण

Partici-  
ples,  
doing  
duty of  
finite  
verbs.

प्रवेष्टव्यानि तपोवनानि नाम (surely, the hermitages should be entered in modest dress).

Rem. The participles of the present and the future do not partake of this construction, cp. P. 3, 2, 124 with 126<sup>1)</sup>

**10.** The subject of the sentence is not always expressed. Often it is implied by the verb. For ददामि and ददासि are quite as intelligible as अहं ददामि and त्वं ददासि, and likewise in the third person the sole ददाति suffices, if there can be no doubt as to the giver meant.

Subject  
im-  
plied.

Nevertheless, the personal pronouns denoting the subject are not seldom added, even when not required for the understanding, certainly much oftener than in Latin and Greek. See f. inst., Nala 2,19; 3,9; Kathās. 6,133. But the omission is impossible, if stress should be laid on the pronoun.

Agent  
im-  
plied.

In passive sentences, the personal pronouns denoting the agent may be wanting likewise, but of course this is not by far done so often as in active sentences. Panc. 127 इति निश्चिन्त्याभिहितम् [sc. अनेन], ibid. 327 मा मित्रं किमेवं पलायते श्लोकभयेन (say, friend, why do [you] run away thus by false fear?)

• The omission is regular with passive imperatives, that are expressive of an injunction or commandment in a softened or polite manner, as गम्यताम् (go), श्रूयताम् (hear) Panc. 87 the panther thus addresses the hungry lion, his

1) A vārtt. to P. 3,2,124 states an exception for the case, that the negation मा is added to the participle, in order to signify an imprecation. Of this rule applied I know but one instance, Çiṅpāl. 2,45 quoted by the Petr. Dict. s. v. मा, V p. 680; but it is not improbable that the author of that poem has done so designedly to show his own skill by applying an out-of-the-way grammatical rule.



master स्वामिन्क्रियतामय मम प्राणैः प्राणयात्रा । दीयतामन्तयो व्रातः स्वर्गे । मम विस्तार्यतां क्षितितले प्रभूततरं यशः

11. But in sentences without a finite verb the personal pronoun denoting the subject cannot be missing. It may be said promiscuously कृतवानस्मि and कृतवानहम्, कृतकृत्योऽसि and कृतकृत्यस्वम् and so on. The full forms अहं कृतवानस्मि, त्वं कृतकृत्योऽसि are, of course, also available.

Rom. Occasionally they are wanting even then, provided that it be beyond doubt, which subject is meant. Panc. 214 the crow Sthirajivin relates to the king of the owls the ill treatment he has endured from his own king, for तेन दुर्जनप्रकोपितेनेमां दशां नीतः [sc. अहम्, as is perspicuous by the context]; ibid. 53 the lover addresses the princess रातपुत्रि सुप्ता [sc. त्वं] किं वा तामर्षि; ibid. 38 वत्स धन्योऽसि यत्प्रयमे वयस्येनं विरक्तिभावः [sc. त्वम्]. Cp. ibid. 137, 13; 154, 10.

12. A general subject may be expressed by using the passive form, as उच्यते (it is said), श्रूयते (it is taught). Likewise by the plural of the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. of the active as आहुः (they say, when = it is said; germ. *man sagt*), विदुः (it is known), आचक्षते (it is told). But not seldom also the singular of the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. of the active is employed in this manner. Panc. II, 34 कारणा-  
 म्मित्रतामेति कारणादेति शत्रुताम् (it is not without cause, one becomes a friend or a foe). The pronoun omitted is त ( = one, germ. *man*), which is also sometimes added. Panc. I, 216 न्याहं न धैर्यं विधुरोऽपि ते धैर्यात्कदाचित्त्रियतिमाप्नुयाद्वाः (one must not lose courage even in distr : by courage one may regain one's position in time).

13. The accessory parts of the sentence, such as are to point out the *where*, the *when*, the *why*, the *how* of the fact related, the qualities and other attributes of

the persons or things involved, are embodied into speech by the same or nearly the same grammatical apparatus, as serves that purpose in other languages. It is the relative frequency or rareness and the distribution of these instrumentalities of speech, which gives to Sanskrit style its proper and peculiar character, the main features of which may be sketched as follows:

14. Character of Sanskrit style. I<sup>v</sup>. Sanskrit, in comparison with western languages, does not avail itself much of finite verbs. Hence abundance of gerunds, participles, absolute locatives, noun-predicates and a relative scarcity of subordinate sentences. Accumulating short coordinate phrases is likewise avoided by using gerunds. Daçak. 19 बालं वनैव निहृदयतार्य वनान्तरे वनितामन्त्रिण्याऽविलोक्ष्यैनमानोय गुरुवे निवेय तन्निर्देशेन वदन्तिकमानोतवानसि = "I took off the baby from the tree and sought for the fair one in the forest, but not discovering her I carried it to my teacher, and gave it over in his hands. By his order I now have brought the boy to you."

In Sanskrit style the predicate of the sentence is many times expressed by means of a *nomen actionis*, to be translated by a finite verb. Panc. 21 दमनक आह । स्वामिन् किमिह निवृत्यावस्थानम् (Dam. said: why does my master stop and stay here?)

II<sup>v</sup>. Abstracts in ता or त्र may be made of any noun either simple or compound. Since they are available in all noun-cases, they afford an easy expedient to bring a whole clause into a shape as concise as possible and to express logical relations in the very sharpest and most distinct way. Hence they are often employed in treatises, commentaries and similar works. A more detailed account of them will be given hereafter.

III<sup>ly</sup>. A great and important place in Sanskrit composition is filled up by compound nouns. This synthetic expression of thought is applied to the most various and manifold logical relations, but it is especially in the more flowery style of adorned literary composition, that they are used at a considerably large extent. Relative clauses are commonly avoided by them.

IV<sup>ly</sup>. An other characteristic of Sanskrit style is its predilection for the *oratio directa*. Words and thoughts are related just as they have been spoken and thought or supposed to have been, but they are not moulded into the figure of an *oratio obliqua*. Generally the adverb इति (thus, so) is put behind the words or thoughts related. Accordingly the English sentence *he asked his friend, why he had not left this town* is Sanskrit कस्माद्स्मान्गरान् प्रस्थितोसीति मित्रमवृच्छत्. So f. inst. Utt. I परिश्रान्तेयमार्या तद्वितापयामि त्रिश्राम्यतामिति (My lady is tired; for this reason I beg Her to take Her rest).

V<sup>ly</sup>. The system of correlation between relatives and demonstratives, though sufficiently developed as to the number and variety of combinations, has retained a great deal of the unwieldiness and prolixity of its rudimentary stage. It often reminds of the solemn style of old Latin. Mostly the relative clause precedes. Panc. 2 यथा मम मनोरथाः सिद्धिं यान्ति तथानुव्रजेयताम् (act so as to fulfill my wishes), ibid. 70 गः कूपोऽदृष्टोऽभूत्तमेव कूपमासाद्य, and the like.

VI<sup>ly</sup>. Sanskrit likes rhetorical interrogations, that is, such as do not put a question, but contain a statement either positive or negative. As this turn is much more employed than in modern languages, such inter-

rogations are often to be translated rather freely. So कः is not rarely an other expression of "nobody" and को न = "every body;" कुतः is frequently = "because." Similarly अयं किम् = "yes," कथम् and ननु = "certainly," cp. the idiom क्व च.... क्व च and other turns, more fully to be dealt with in one of the subsequent chapters. Compare Engl. *why*, when = "now, well," Greek *ὡς καὶ*.

VII<sup>ly</sup>. The predilection for the passive construction has been already mentioned (see 7). It is of course not restricted to the finite verb, but applies also to participles.

15. Like all languages, that possess a rich store of inflections, Sanskrit affords a comparatively great freedom as to the order of words in the sentence<sup>1)</sup>. Yet, it is frequently not altogether indifferent in what order one puts one's words. We ought to distinguish between the traditional or regular arrangement and the various exceptions caused by the exigencies of style, euphony, metre etc. Therefore though tracing a general scheme, we must keep in mind, that it bears but on the most frequent employment, as it has been observed in perusing the best writers, but it cannot claim to be a set of fixed rules rigorously to be followed throughout.

16.\* The traditional order of words is this.<sup>2)</sup>

Traditional.

1. The predicate being verbal, it ordinarily closes the sentence, which is headed by the noun-subject, when expressed. The other elements of the sentence are taken in the midst, but placed so as to make the

1) Compare Pat. I, p. 39, l. 18 संस्कृत्य 'संस्कृत्य पदान्युत्सृज्यन्ते' तेषां यथेष्टमभिसंबन्धो भवति । तद्यथा । आहर् पत्रं पत्रमाहरेति.

2) On this subject we have an excellent treatise of Prof. DELBÜCK *Die altindische Wortfolge aus dem Çatapathabrâhmana* 1878. Yet, of course, it does not go beyond the archaic period of Sanskrit literature.

verb have its object immediately before it, **देवदत्तः कंठं करोति** (N.N. makes a mat), **देवदत्तो भ्रातृभिः सह पाटलिपुत्रं प्रस्थितः** (N.N. has parted for Pataliputra with his brothers). In a similar manner the attributes and other accessories of nouns precede them. Moreover, as one is inclined in Sanskrit to avoid subordinate sentences by availing one's self largely of participles, gerunds and the like (14, I), it often occurs, that the chief sentence is preceded by a greater or smaller amount of accessory elements of the kind, put according to the exigencies of grammar and style either before the subject or subsequent to it. This sentence, taken from Patanjali (I, p. 39, 10) may illustrate the above statement, **प्रमाणभूत आचार्यो दर्शनविप्रपाणिः शुचाद्यवकाशे प्राप्नुव उपविश्य मृता यत्नेन गूत्रं प्रणयति स्म**. Here the subject preceded by its attribute stands at the head, then follows **दर्शनविप्रपाणिः** formally a predicative attribute of the subject, but as to its meaning an accessory of the gerund **उपविश्य**, 3<sup>ly</sup> the other accessories of the said gerund, 4<sup>ly</sup> the gerund itself, 5<sup>ly</sup> the accessories of the chief predicate, finally that predicate itself.

Rem. In passive sentences the agent, as far as I have observed, seems to have the precedence in the traditional order of words, not the nominative of the karma. Panc. 126 **तैर्विप्रैः सर्ववस्तूनि विक्रीय बहुमूल्यानि रत्नानि क्रीतानि**, Hitop. 92 **तेवनिर्वृत्तगारुड्य सर्वे नीडा भग्नाः**.

2. If the predicate be a noun, it is put before the subject. Panc. 38 **अतारः संगाराःश्च गिरिनदीविमोषनं यौवनं तृणाग्निघनं त्रिविधं शरदधच्छायागदृशा भोगाः स्वप्नगदृशा मित्रपुत्रकलत्रभृत्यावर्गसंचन्यः**. Similarly in the passive. Hit. 20 **अधुना त्वानुचरेण गया सर्वथा भवितव्यम्** (now at all events I must be your companion).

Rem. Pronouns, it seems, may be put indiscriminately before or behind their noun-predicate: **सर्वेयाः हम्** or **अहं सर्वयः**.

3. Attributes are put before their nouns. But when

doing duty of a so called predicative attribute, they generally follow. Comp. for inst. the proverb स्वयमुपाता श्रीस्यत्यमाना श्रपति (fortune which has arrived spontaneously, grows a curse, when neglected).

Rem. Not seldom they are separated from the noun (or pronoun) they belong to. Daç. 141 मयासि ज्ञातमात्रः पाण्या परित्यक्तः; when translating this sentence one should render पाण्या by the adverb *basely* or *in a base manner*. So Panc. 73 तद् द्रोह्युदंरपि मयास्य न त्रिरुमाचरणीयम्; note the disjunction of द्रोह्युदः and अन्य.

4. The vocative generally heads the sentence.

5. The prepositions are commonly preceded by their cases.

6. In sentences linked to the preceding by means of relatives or particles, these words are put first; when enclitical, they are affixed to the first word of the clause they introduce.

**17.** As it has been stated above (15), this traditional order of words is liable to be modified by various influences of the power to cause the speaker to prefer an other arrangement. Instead of the subject, the word on which stress is laid will head the sentence. In this way the verb or an oblique noun-case or an adverb (especially when of time), are not seldom put first, because of emphasis. Hit. 97 सत्तेवम्भूता बहवः (of the kind there exist many, indeed), Daç. 132 अयात्राचम् । अपरास्तु द्विदकोट एव अन्यः कश्चिन्मातङ्गपतिरानीयताम् (then I said: let this miserable elephant be gone, bring an other, a number 1 of the elephants); Hit. 110 गम्यन्तानि तावद्वन्लोक्यतु मन्त्री; Panc. 39 राज्ञां त्वया गदगन्धे न प्रवन्द्यम्; ibid. 53 अथैव तया सह समागः क्रियताम् (meet with her still to-day). Absolute locatives and the like are also placed at the beginning. Bhojap. 8 गृहेति गोत्रे लोकाः कालाह्वनं चक्रुः, Hitop. 131 पश्यतां चक्रमूर्खस्य नकुलैर्गन्तिताः सुताः, Panc. 54 एवं तत्र तां नित्यं मेघमानस्य कालां गति.

Likewise in connecting sentences it is necessary to

commence a new sentence or a new clause at the word, which relates to somebody or something mentioned in the foregoing. Hence demonstratives often head the sentence. *Panc.* 37 अस्ति कस्मिंश्चिद्विचित्रप्रदेशे महायतनं । तत्र — परिव्राजकः प्रतिवसति स्म । तस्य — महती विन्नमात्रा संज्ञाता । ततः स न कस्यचिद्विश्वसिति.

*Rem.* In general, the manner in which sentences are linked together may be of some influence on the arrangement of words. So the type, represented by *Hit.* 110 राज्ञा सर्वान्निष्ठानाहूय मन्त्रयितुमुपविष्टः । आह च तान् [instead of तांश्चाह], often occurs, especially in polished style. *Cp. f. i. Daç.* 139 अहं च... विषं क्षणादस्तम्भयम् । अपतच्च स भूमौ, *Harsha* 11 मर्त्यलोकमग्रातरत् । अपश्यच्च.

On the other hand similar reasons may expel the verb from its place at the rear, substituting for it some other word, required there by economy of style, because the end of a sentence is also fit to give some emphasis to the word placed there. *Ratr.* III न खलु किञ्चिन् संभाव्यते त्वयि (in you there is nothing we may not look for), *Daç.* 97 न चेक्षोरितकानि प्रत्यर्पयसि दूक्षयसि पारमष्टादशानां कार्पणानामन्ते च मृत्युमुत्तमम् (if you do not restore to the citizens what you have stolen of them, you will know by experience the succession of the eighteen tortures, and at last the mouth of death); *Kâm.* I, p. 292 राज्ञोऽपि किं ब्रवीमि वागेव मे नाभिश्चैत्रिष्वयमवतरति त्रयया.

There is much freedom, where to put the negations, as will be shown in the chapter, which treats of them.

- 18.** Sanskrit poets, especially in the more artificial and refined kinds, display a still greater variety in arranging the parts of the sentence. We may account for it partly by the exigencies of versification, but for a good deal it is the effect of their aspiring after an elegant and exquisite diction. Yet, as deviation from the traditional order of words is not striven at for itself, the idiom of the poets is rather characterized by the

richness and size of compounds, by the elegance of words and the melodiousness of sounds, by the elevation and perfection of style, than by an artificially disturbed arrangement of words. Such entangled and intricate structure, as for example characterizes Latin poetry, is an exception in Sanskrit <sup>1)</sup>. There it is chiefly displayed in the extraordinary great liberty in placing relatives, interrogatives and negations.

Rem. Rhythmical wants and euphony, of course, may also exercise a greater or smaller influence on the order of words. Especially in the old dialect. Here are some instances. Ch. Up. 4,4,2 ब्रह्मं चरन्ती (instead of ब्रह्म चरन्त्यहम्), Ait. Br. 1,30,9 तग्मादग्याग्निं पुरस्तादरन्ति (instead of अग्नयं पुरस्तादग्निम्), ibid. 2,37,4 अग्नेयं होता ऽस्यं प्रमति. The rhythmical disposition of the words is here prevailing on the regular arrangement required by logic, compare the figur *hyperbaton*, so much employed in Greek and Latin. — An other mark of antiquity is separating prepositions from their verbs, chiefly by particles put between them, as Ait. Br. 2, 31, 6 उप वा वदेदन् वा व्याहरेत्.

## SECTION II.

### SYNTAXIS CONVENIENTIAE AND SYNTAXIS RECTIONIS.

#### CHAPT. I. Concord.

19. A twofold agreement is here to be spoken of, one

1) Kathās. 30,53 may give an instance of poetical arrangement.

सोऽपि प्रापान्तब्रह्मणः कालं मातलिवोधितः

कृच्छात्सुखानीकस्तां विनानैषीन्मृगावतीम्.

In prose the words कृच्छात्कालमनैषीन् would not have been separated.



existing between idea and word (I), the other between words standing in the same sentence (II).

Real  
and  
gram-  
matical  
gender  
and  
num-  
ber.

I. As a rule, there is agreement between the real and the grammatical gender and number. As to the number, an exception is to be stated for the collective nouns and some *pluralia tantum*, as *अपः* (water), *प्राणाः* and *अस्रवः* (life), *वर्षाः* (the rainy season), in the older language also *तत्रवः* (collar-bone), *ग्रीवाः* (neck).<sup>1)</sup> Rarely the gender disagrees, as the neuter *मित्र* »friend,” words as *भाजन*, *पात्र* »vessel; fit person,” f. i. *Mhbh.* 1,61,3 *ओतुं पात्रं च राज्ञस्त्वम्* (you are the proper man to hear —) *दैवत* (n.) and *देवता* (f.) »deity,” etc; — *दाराः* masc. plur. »wife” is an instance of disagreement in both gender and number<sup>2)</sup>.

The diminutives generally retain the gender of their primitives<sup>3)</sup>: *पुत्रक* m. as *पुत्र*, but *पुत्रिका* f. as *पुत्रो*.

Rem. Of the collectives some are not always used so; *जन* f. ex. may as well denote a single individual as a collection of individuals. Accordingly, in the latter case it may be said as well *जनः* (sing.) as *जनाः* (plur.).<sup>4)</sup> Similarly *लोकः* or *लोकाः* »people, *le monde, les gens*,” *प्रजा* or *प्रजाः* »offspring; subjects.”

**20.** In a general proposition a whole class of individuals may be optionally denoted by the singular or by the singularis generalis Pân.  
1,2,5

1) Still Pāṇini seems to have known it but as a plural, for in teaching *taddhitas* derived from it, he says *ग्रीवाद्यो* [not *ग्रीवायाः*] *सण् च* 4,3,57. Compare the similar development of Latin *cercix* out of the pl. tant. *cervices*, see Quintilian VIII, 3,35.

2) *दार* is used as a singular in the *Dharmasūtra* of Āpastamba (see I, 32, 6; II, 1, 17; 5, 10; 11, 12; 22, 7. etc.).

3) Words in *अ* have, however, sometimes diminutives in *ई*. So *शस्त्रो* (a small dagger = *अस्त्रिपुत्रो* Amar. *क.*), whereas *शस्त्र* (n.) more especially »sword.”

4) So *Nala* 6,11 *ततः पौरजनाः सर्वे मन्त्रिभिः सह भारत । राजानं द्रुह्यामच्छन्*, but in the subsequent *śloka* we read *ततः सूत उपगम्य दमयन्त्यै न्यवेद्यत् । अथ पौरजनो देवि द्वारि निवर्तिनः कार्यवान्*.

plural of the common noun. ब्राह्मणः पूज्यः or ब्राह्मणाः पूज्याः (the brahman [that is, any brahman as far as he is a brahman] ought to be honored). Cp. f. inst. Bhoj. 13 सर्पदंष्ट्रं त्रिषद्याकुलं रोग-ग्रस्तं..... तत्तत्पादेव विगतगकलज्वाधितचयं कुर्मः [a kâpālika speaks] »mon, bitten by a serpent, or poisoned, or sick, we release immediately from illness.”

Plural  
of pro-  
per  
names.

Rem. Proper names occasionally are employed in the plural number, when signifying one's family or descendants. Ragh. 1,9 रघूणामन्वयं वक्ष्ये (I will celebrate the family of Raghu). — Pān 2,4, 62—70 gives a list of those, that admit of such a plural.

Plural  
of ab-  
stract  
nouns.

## 21. The plural of abstract nouns is employed in Sans-

krit more largely than with us, at least sometimes in phrases, somewhat strange to our feeling. Kāmand. 1,62 जितेन्द्रियं नृपतेर्नीतिमार्गस्तुमारिषाः भवन्ति इवलिता लक्ष्मः श्रीर्विश्वं नमःस्पृष्टः »if a prince, who keeps his senses under control, follows the path of polity, his fortune (*fortune*) blazes upward, and his glory (*laudes*) reaches heaven,” Çāk. VI अथापान्तत्रिवर्तनेत्रिममव्युन्निद्र एव तपाः »sleepless he passes his nights, tossing himself to and fro upon his couch,” ibid. VII सन्ति पुनर्नम्रेयमादृष्ट्यानि, *nominum similitudines*. Of the kind are आपत्सु Mhbh. 1, 123, 77 »in times of distress,” भयेषु (= भयकालेषु) R. 3, 4, 9 and the like.

Plural  
of a  
peo-  
ple's  
name.

## 22. The plural of a people's name is commonly used to <sup>Pān. 4, 2, 91.</sup>

denote the region, where that people dwell. The country, inhabited by the nation called अङ्गाः is also named

अङ्गाः; in the same way it is spoken of पञ्चान्ताः, मत्स्याः,

कोसलाः, विदर्भाः etc., if the country of Pancāla, Matsya, Kosala, Vīdarbha is meant. Compare Latin *Volsci*, *Parisii*, *Chatti*, Germ. *Polen*, *Hessen*, *Sachsen*, Engl. *Sweden* and sim.

Pluralis  
ma-  
jestati-  
cus.

## 23. The pluralis majestaticus is often used in addressing

persons or speaking of them in a reverential manner. This applies to all words and epithets, such venerable men are designated with. Çāk. II the king asks the messenger किम्व्याधिः

प्रेषितः (are you sent by my revered mother?). R. 1, 68 king Janaka tells Daçaratha the great exploit done by his sublime son Râma रोयं मम सुता रातन्विश्वामित्रपुरस्कृतैः । यदृच्छयागतै रातन्निर्जिता तव पुत्रकैः (your illustrious child, my king, has won my daughter, as he was come here by chance, a companion of Viçvâmitra).

Rām. Note the much employed metaphor of speaking of »the feet of —" instead of the revered master himself. In that case the name or title is commonly compounded with °पादः — note the plural — as Hitop. 96 एष दुष्टबको ऽस्मद्देशे चरन्नपि देवपादानधिक्षिपति — insults Your Majesty."

24. Similarly it is a token of great respect, if one is addressed by the plural of the personal pronoun, वयम् or भवन्तः instead of त्वम् or the polite भवान्. Daç. 69 a girl thus addresses a holy man भावन्नस्या मे दोषमेषा वो दासी विज्ञापयति (Reverend, she, your servant, tells you of wrong done by me), Çāk. V the ascetic Ç. ngârava says to king Dushyanta श्रुतं भवतिः (Your Majesty has heard —), Panc. 71 [Damenaka to the lion] देव संज्ञीवको युष्मत्पदानामुपरि द्रोहभुक्तिः<sup>1)</sup>.

25. The plural of the first person is allowed to be made <sup>Pān. 1, 2, 59.</sup> वयम् = use of, when meaning a singular or a dual. Here we have not a majestic plural, but almost the same liberty as in Latin, to use *nos* = *ego*. Thus वयम् may have the purport of अहम् and आवाम्, and कुर्मः may be = करोमि or कुर्विः. Instances are very common. Mudr. I Cāṇakya thus addresses his pupil वत्स कार्याभियोग एवास्मानाकुलयति, Panc. 41 a monk asks for hospitality with these words भो भद्र वयं सूर्योदया अतिथयस्तत्त्वान्तिकं प्राप्ताः । न कमप्यत्र ग्रामे जानीमः.<sup>2)</sup> Similarly Panc. 58 the

1) Pāṇini does not mention this idiom; did it not exist in his time? Pāṇjali also is silent about 'it, but the Kāçika-comm. contains the vārt. (on P. 1, 2, 59) युष्मदि गुरावेकेषाम्.

2) The given instance does not agree with the statement of some grammarian quoted by Pat. I, 230 अपर् आह । अस्मदः सविशेषणस्य प्रयोगो न. Pat. himself allows the plural of the first person even then, unless the proper name or the *yuvapratyaya* be added, thus अहं देवदत्तः, not वयं.

plural is used instead of the dual, किं कुर्मः सांप्रतम् (what shall we do now [you and I]?)

- 26.** In all periods of the language the **dual** is the proper and sole number by which duality is to be expressed. Pāṇ 1, 4, 21 sq.

If the voluminous mass of Sanskrit literature will once be thoroughly examined with respect to syntactic facts, it is not improbable there will be put forward sundry instances of duality expressed by the plural number. But the number of such exceptions cannot be but exceedingly small.<sup>1)</sup> For, though the vulgar dialects and the pali have lost the dual, polished Sanskrit always strictly observes its employment and does in no way offer that confusion of dual and plural, which is so, obvious in Attic Greek and already in the dialect of Homer.

- 27.** II. — Concord in case, number, gender and person is in Sanskrit the same, as in all languages with inflections, that is to say, it does exist between all such words, as, while standing in the same sentence, are to point at the same thing. For this reason, the *predicate* does agree with its subject in case and person, the *attribute* with the noun, it qualifies, in case and — if possible — also in number and gender, and so on. It would be superfluous to exemplify this general rule,<sup>2)</sup> which, moreover, is common to all

1) I have noticed three instances, all of them in poetry, and partly fit to be interpreted so as to confirm the general rule. Of them, one R. 2, 22, 23 ऋषयोऽपि भ्रश्यन्ते काममन्युभिः contains a plural, which may be accounted for as denoting either the various kinds of *studium* and *ira* (cp. Manu 7, 45—48) or as pointing at the diversity in time, space and persons of the manifold instances of holiness lost, so the comm. बहुवचनं व्यक्तिबहुत्वात्. — Kathās. 107, 51 प्रभूश्चशुरापाम् the majestic plural seems to have been employed. — Strange is this passage: Mhbh. 1, 24, 6 चन्द्रादित्यैर्यदा रादुराख्यातो समूर्तं पिबन्, there being no room for the school's interpretation आदित्यस्य मूर्तिबहुत्वेन चन्द्रादित्यैरिति बहुवचनम्.

2) Grammatical concord bears with vernacular grammarians the well-

languages It will suffice to notice some more or less remarkable features:

1). Pronouns follow the general rules of agreement. Thus it is Sanskrit to say स प्रश्नः, as it is Latin to say *haec est quaestio*, whereas Teutonic dialects always put the pronoun in the neuter sing. Dutch *dat is de vraag*, Germ. *das ist die Frage*. Panc. 63 मम प्राणयन्त्रेयम् (so is 'my livelihood'), *ibid.* II, 201 असौ प्रमो हि मन्त्रः (that is the most important counsel), C&k. VII सिध्यन्ति कर्मसु महत्त्वयि यन्त्रियोऽद्याः संभात्रनामुपा-मवेहि तमोश्चराणाम् (if officers are successful in weighty affairs, impute it to the virtue of their masters, who honour them with the execution). — Yet there may occur instances, where it would be not possible to observe this rule<sup>1</sup>.)

2) Occasionally the verb will agree with the noun-predicate when standing near, instead of agreeing with the subject. Panc. 263 सर्प आह । सांद्रं त्वं मे मित्रं ज्ञातम् [not ज्ञातः], M. 9, 294 सप्त प्रकृतयो ह्येताः सप्ताङ्गं राज्यमुच्यते (those [foresaid] seven elements are named together the seven-membered kingdom), *ibid.* 2,81 महाव्याहृतयः.... त्रिपदा चैव सावित्री विज्ञेयं ब्रह्मणो मुखम् (— and the three-membered *sāvitṛī* should be considered as the mouth of *brahma*).

chosen name of *sāmānādhikaranya*, that is 'the relation existing between *sāmānādhikarāṇās* or words, whose substrate (अधिकरणा) is the same (समान)".

1) See for inst. Ch. Up. 6, 16, 2 एतदात्म्यमिदं सर्वं तत्सत्यं स आत्मा तन्न मसि श्वेतकेतो. Here स आत्मा is rendered by Prof. Max Müller 'it is the Self,' in a note he subjoins: The change of gender in *sa* for *tad* is idiomatic. One could not say in Sanskrit *tad ātmā*, it is the Self, but *sa ātmā*." (Pref. to the Sacr. Books of the East, I, p. XXXVI). Nevertheless, in the words immediately following तन्नमसि, that very idiom seems to be neglected, for the neuter तत् is the predicate of the masc. त्वम्. Here the neuter has been preferred, because of *tad* and *tvam* there is not affirmed a full identity, as it is done with respect to *sa* and *ātmā*, but it is only said, *tvam* is a phenomenal manifestation of *tad*: 'tad (sc. ātmā) is also in you.'

3) Sometimes, in cases of discordance between the grammatical and the real gender or number of a noun, its predicate or attribute will agree with the latter (**constructio ad synesin**) R. 2, 52, 42 त्वां चिन्तयन्तः — निराहाराः कृताः व्रजाः (thinking of thee — the subjects do not take food); here to व्रजाः, though grammatically a fem., is added a participle in the mascul. Note in the example quoted the distance by which the attribute is separated from the noun, it qualifies.

28. If the same predicate belongs to more subjects or the same attribute refers to more nouns at the same time, the idiom of Sanskrit is almost like that of other languages.

*Either* the common predicate (attribute) agrees with but one and must be supplied mentally with the others, as Prabodh. III आवासो लयनं मनोहरम् cp. the schol. p. 57 ed. Cal. द्वयमपि मनोहरम्; Daç. 135 कान्तिमती राज्यमिदं मम च त्रेत्रितमय्यवप्रभृति त्वदयोगम् (Kāntimatī and this kingdom and my own life are at your mercy from this moment). — This practically has the same effect as applying the Rem. on b.) of the other alternative, recorded on page 20.

*or* it has a grammatical expression adequate to its character of being common to more substantives at the same time. In that case:

a.) the **number** required is of course the **dual** when relating to two individuals, otherwise the **plural**. रामां लक्ष्मणाश्च महावीरौ; — रामः सीता च लक्ष्मणाश्च वन उषिताः. Cp. the Rem. on b.).

b.) as to the **gender** there must be distinguished between persons and things. When relating to persons of the same sex, the common predicate or attribute is of the same gender: पिता भ्राता च द्वावपि । माता स्वया च द्वे अपि. When applying to persons of different sex, it is always put in

the masculine: पिता माता च द्वावपि. But when belonging to inanimate things or things and persons mixed, it is neuter. Kām. 1, 54 मृगया उक्तास्तथा पानं गर्हितानि महीभुक्ताम्; M. 4, 39 मृदङ्गं दैवतं विप्रं घृतं मधु चतुष्पथम् । प्रदक्षिणानि कुर्वीत.

Rem. If neuter words are mixed with words of other gender, <sup>Pān. 1</sup> 2, 69. it is allowed to put their common predicate or attribute in the neuter of the *singular*. Mrech. V पक्षविकलश्च पक्षी शुष्कश्च तरुः सर्पश्च जलहीनः । सर्पश्चोद्धृतदंष्ट्रस्तुल्यं लोके दरिद्रश्च (the bird, whose wings are clipped, the leafless tree, the desiccated pool, the toothless snake are equal in the eyes of men, so the moneyless man).

c.) as to the **person**. In the case of difference, the first person outweighs the second and third, and the second precedes the third (see Pat. I, p. 352, cp. 240, n° 26, Kāt. 3, 1, 4). Patanjali gives these examples त्वं च देवदत्तश्च पचयः । अहं च देवदत्तश्च पचावः । त्वं चाहं च पचावः

29. The type *Tiberius et Gaius Gracchi, linguae Latinae et Graecae* is also Sanskrit. Ch. Up. 5, 3, 2 पयोर्देवयानस्य पितृयाणास्य च.

30. Occasionally words connected by "with" are construed as if they were copulated by "and." R. 2, 34, 20 तं परिचित्रय आहुः श्रुतां तावुभौ रामलक्ष्मणौ । पर्यङ्के सीतया सार्धं हृदन्तः समवेष्टयन् । Here the *plural* हृदन्तः समवेष्टयन् proves that सीतया सार्धम् has the same effect on the construction as सीता च.

#### PREDICATE AND ATTRIBUTE.

31. The distinction between **predicate** and **attribute**<sup>1)</sup> is chiefly a logical one. Formally both follow the same rules of syntax, and it is but by the context, partly also by the place it occupies in the sentence,

1) The term 'attribute' in this book is virtually the same as the term *viśeṣhaṇa* of Hindu grammarians. It includes therefore the so called 'apposition,' for I found no reason why I should retain the needless distinction, which is often made between attribute and apposition.

we can learn how to understand a given *samānādhikarana*, whether वृद्धः पिता = „the old father” or = „the father is old,” etc

As to their meaning, then, we may distinguish five classes, I the simple *attribute*, वृद्धः पिता = „the old father,” II the so-called *predicative-attribute*, as पिता वृद्धः (= वृद्धः सन्) „the father, *when* old,” III the *noun-predicate of the sentence*, as वृद्धः पिता = „the father *is* old,” IV the *noun, wanted* by the verb for making up together the predicate of the sentence, as पिता वृद्धः संपद्यते (the father *grows* old), पितरं वृद्धं मन्यसे (you think the father old), V such a noun, as though formally agreeing with the subject or some other substantive, really serves to determine the verb, as Daç. 141 मयासि ज्ञातमात्रः पापया परित्यक्तः, see above, page 11 Rem

Of them the formal agreement of class I and II is fully made clear in 27. As to class III see 5.

- 32.** IV. — The **noun wanted for completing the predicate** is used in many idioms, the most important of which are:
- a.) it is a nominative, when accompanying verbs of *being, seeming, becoming, growing, remaining*, such passives as *to be called, held for, considered, appointed, made*, sim. Çāk. I गृध् एष विप्रकृष्टः संपन्नः (this deer has become distant), Hitop. 92 पक्षिणः सकोपा अभूवुः (the birds grow angry), Panc. 51 किमेवं त्वम-कस्माद्विचेतनः संतातः (why you have swooned so at a sudden?); Priy. p. 14 कस्मात्प्रदृष्ट इव लक्ष्यसे (why do you look so glad?) Panc. 56 स राज्ञा प्राकारशेषः कृतः (the king was reduced to the possession of nothing but his fortress), Panc. III, 152 गृहिणी गृहमुच्यते (it is the wife that is called one's „home”).



b.) an  
instru-  
mental.

b.) it is an instrumental, if wanted by a verb of *being*, *becoming*, *seeming* etc. when impersonal passive. In this case both subject and noun-predicate are put in the instrumental. Mudr. I मया न प्रयत्नेन स्थीयते = अहं न प्रयत्नस्तिष्ठामि; Daçak. 18 बालकेन सकलकृपसहेनाभावि (the baby was strong enough to endure all this toil).

This idiom is, of course, obligatory with the *krtya's* of भू. Daçak. 164 त्वदनुशीलिना राजपुत्रेण भवितव्यम् (the prince deserves to be your attendant), Panc. 21 तस्य च शब्दानुवृत्तेण पराक्रमेण भाव्यम् (and his strength may be adequate to his voice).

c.) an  
accusa-  
tive.

c.) an accusative, when qualifying the object of the verbs of *calling* and *naming*, of *esteeming*, *holding for*, *considering*, *knowing as*, of *making*, *appointing*, *electing* and the like. M. 2, 140 तमाचार्यं प्रचक्षते (him they call a teacher), Nala 3, 22 नलं मां विद्धि (know me being Nala), Mudr. III कौशिल्यो नृपतिमकरोन्मोर्ग्यवृषलम् (Cānakya has made king a çūdra, the son of Murā), Pat. I, p. 332 तपुःत्वानोदने पचति (he boils rice to a jelly), Panc. 3 दृतानर्थशास्त्रं प्रति दूतान्यथान्यसदृशान्विदधासि तथा कुरु.

Con-  
current  
idiom

NB. It is superfluous to give some more instances of that well-known type, but it must be observed, that Sanskrit has also other concurrent idioms, it often prefers. Note in the first place, the nominative with *इति*, 2<sup>ly</sup> the instrumental of abstract nouns. Both are equivalent to the nomin. or accus. of the completing predicate. Instead of ब्राह्मणं भवन्तं संभावयामि (I hold you for a brahman), it is also said ब्राह्मण इति भव or ब्राह्मणत्वेन भव ; the same of course applies to the passive construction. R. 3, 9, 11 वनं दण्डका इति विश्रुतं प्रस्थितस्त्वम् (you have set out for the forest, called Daṇḍaka), Kāç. on P. 1, 1, 1 वृद्धिशब्दः संज्ञात्वेन विधीयते (*vrddhi* is established [here] a grammatical term). A more detailed account of those idioms will be given in the course of this book.

**33.** In the archaic dialect we frequently meet with *two nominatives* construed with some verbs in the middle voice, viz. such as signify *to call one's self, to consider one's self.* <sup>1)</sup> Rgv. 10, 85, 3 सोमं मन्यते पयिवान् (he thinks himself having drunk soma), Ch. Up. 5, 3, 4 किमनुशिष्टो ऽवोचथा यो होमानि न विद्यात्कथं सो ऽनुशिष्टो ब्रवीति (why did you say you had been instructed? how could anybody, who did not know these things, claim himself instructed?), Tbr. 2, 3, 8, 2 सो ऽसुरान्मृष्ट्वा पितृवामन्यत (he, after having created the asuras considered himself as if he were a father). <sup>2)</sup> — Similarly it is said in liturgical style इयं कृ with nom. »to assume the shape of —», Ait. Br. 6, 35, <sup>4</sup> अश्वः श्वेतो इयं कृत्वा (having assumed a white horse's shape), Tbr. 1, 1, 3, 3 आबू इयं कृत्वा. <sup>3)</sup>

Rem. In classic Sanskrit this idiom seems to have antiquated. »To call —, to consider one's self» is expressed by means of the reflexive pronoun, as आत्मानं मन्ये । आत्मानं ब्रवीमि. Instead of the old type अश्वो इयं कृत्वा we meet with such compounds as Panc. 326 अश्वइयं कृत्वा

**34.** In the case of a substantive being the attribute or predicate of an other substantive, disagreement of gender or number or of both is possible. R. 2, 115, 15 भरतः शिरसा कृत्वा संन्यासं पादुके (Bh. put on his head *the pledge*, [namely] *the slippers*).

• 1) This nominative has its counterpart in Greek and in modern languages. So says an illustrious German poet (FELIX DAHN, *Skaldenkunst* p. 79) »weise wähnt ich mich, und ach! ein Thor, ein pflichtvergessner Knabe erwies ich mich.»

2) In a few passages of the upanishads and epic poetry we meet with such expressions a पण्डित मन्यमानः »holding one's self a learned man,» for ex. Mbh. 13, 22, 13. They are hardly to be accepted as compounds, like पण्डितं मन्य, सुभगं मन्य and the like (P. 3, 2, 83).

3) See the amount of examples in WEBER, Ind. Stud. XIII, 111. — Ait. Br. 5, 7, 2 we have a confusion of the two constructions, the acc. of the pronoun आत्मानम् being used together with the nom. of the noun इन्द्रो वा एताभिर्महानात्मानं निर्ममिषीत्.

## CHAPTER II. How to denote case-relations.

35. The manifold relations between nouns and verbs or nouns and nouns are signified by cases, by the periphrase of cases, by compounding. As to the proportional frequency of the said modes of expression, *nude cases* are more freely employed in poetry than in prose, oftener in the earlier periods of Sanskrit than in the latter; whereas *periphrastic expression* strives at extending by the time, the implements of circumlocution increasing in number and variety, the nearer we approach to our own times. But the faculty of signifying case-relations by confining the correlating nouns into the somewhat rudimentary shape of *compounds* has not been overturned nor diminished by time. On the contrary, whether we look at their frequency or at their manifoldness or at their expansibility, the old dialect is by far surpassed by the alexandrinian period of Sanskrit literature.
36. The same *richness* and *abundance* is generally displayed in the several constructions, taken separately. Two or more conceptions of the same case-relation being equally possible in thought, they mostly are also available in speech; there is perhaps no language, where one may be less limited in this respect. Thus we meet side by side with a partitive genitive, a partitive ablative a partitive locative. Causality may be denoted by means of the instrumental as well as by the ablative or by various periphrase, as *हेतोः*, *कारणम्*, *कारणात्* etc. The person spoken to may be put in the accusative or dative or expressed by means of *प्रति*, *पुरः*, *अग्रे*. The verbs of giving are

not only construed with the dative of the person bestowed upon, but also with genitive or locative. The dative of the purpose is interchangeable with many a periphrase (अर्थम्, निमित्तम् etc.) and with infinitives. And so on. — Add to this the many implements for periphrase, *either* prepositions, partly ancient and common to the Indo-european mother-tongue, partly new-formed in Sanskrit, or nouncases and verbal forms that have almost the force of prepositions, as सकाशम् समीपम् etc. when = „to,” कृते „on account of,” वर्जयित्वा or मुक्त्वा = „without,” मार्गेण = „by means of”, sim. Moreover, in most cases one is free to compound the substantive with those words, for ex. to say जीवितहेतोः instead of जीवितस्य हेतोः (for the sake of life), पाषाणोपरि = पाषाणस्योपरि (over a stone), etc. — Finally it must be kept in mind that in a large amount of cases one has even the *choice* of either expressing the case-relation, or letting it be implied by a compound, made up of the two correlating substantives पुरुषसिंहः = पुरुषेषु सिंहः (a lion among men), राजपुरुषः = राज्ञः पुरुषः (the king's attendant), अहिहतः = अहिना हतः (slain by a serpent), sim.

37. In consequence, the three general classes, we have set up, — cases, periphrase, compounds — do but represent one and the same logical category and are in practice coordinate. For clearness' sake however, as they cannot be dealt with promiscuously, they require to be treated successively. Accordingly chaptt.

III—VII will contain the syntax of the cases, chapt. VIII the periphrastic expression of case-relations; in chapt. IX the different kinds of compounds — including also dvandva and karmadhāraya, though logically belonging to other categories — will be gone through.

#### GENERAL SCHEME OF THE CASES.

**38.** The nominative or first case (प्रथमा sc. विभक्तिः) is expressive of the sentence's subject and predicate, see 1 and 5. Moreover the nominative is employed to denote the noun taken by itself, apart from the sentence, as will be shown hereafter.

Scheme  
of the  
cases.

The person addressed is put in the vocative. )

1) Though the vernacular grammarians have a proper term for the vocative — *āmantrita* P. 2, 3, 48 — and even two for the vocative of the sing. (the voc. sing. especially is named *sambuddhi*, *ibid.* 49) it is however not considered a distinct eighth case, but an appendix to the nominative. PĀṆINI, after having stated (2, 3, 46) प्रातिपदिकार्थलिङ्गपरिमाणवचनमात्रे प्रथमा >the first case serves only to signify the gender and number of the thing designated by the word's rude form or *prātipadika*", thus proceeds: संबोधने च (47) साऽऽमन्त्रितम् (48), that is >it serves also to address, then it bears the name of *āmantrita*." — By the way I remark, that in translating P.'s rule on the proper sphere of the first case, I have dissented from the traditional interpretation. According to the commentaries परिमाण means >size" or >measure" — such words as द्रोण, क्षारि, आठक are given for examples — and वचन is >the grammatical number" so as to make the whole signify: >the first case denotes the mere meaning of the *prātipadika*, the mere gender, the mere size (or weight), the mere number." See f. ex. the Kāṣika on our sūtra. That interpretation cannot be right. In the first place, in the Pāṇinean terminology, it must be observed, *prathamā* does not mean the word put in the nominative case, but only the suffix of that case, just as *doṭiyā* names the suffix of the accus., *trītyā* that of the instrumental and so on. Now, to say in earnest, the *prathamā* has the duty of denoting three things apart from the purport of the *prātipadika*, viz. *linga* or gender, *parimāṇa* or measure and *vacana* or number is unacceptable and almost ridiculous, for the suffix of the nominative cannot give us certain knowledge but as to two of

Of the six others the general purport ') may be sketched thus:

1. The accusative or second case (द्वितीया) denotes a.) the *whither*, b.) the object of transitives, c.) an extension in time or space, d.) it is used adverbially.

2. The instrumental or third case (तृतीया

them, nl. gender and number; the size or measure of the thing denoted by the prâtipadika is made as little known by declension, as its color or its age. Moreover gender and number are grammatical conceptions, measure, size, weight geometrical ones. It is time to discharge PÂṆINI of the absurdity imputed to him by his interpreters, and to show he is here as plain and judicious as that great grammarian is wont to be. The commentators were misled by वचन, which they did accept as expressing »the grammatical number", as, indeed, it very often does. Yet here it must be the *bhâva* of वच् in its original meaning *the naming* or *the being named*, cp. P. 1, 4, 89 आङ्मयर्दिवावचने (= *ân*, when naming a boundary), 2, 1, 33 कृत्यैरधिकार्यवचने (= with *krtyâs*, when denoting exaggeration), 5, 3, 23 प्रकारवचने याल्, etc. Therefore it is not वचन, which here is carrying the meaning of *grammatical number*, but परिमाण; for this word may as well be employed in the narrower sense of »size; periphery," as in the larger of »any measure whatever," and accordingly it is also occasionally a synonym of संख्या, (cp. P. 5, 2, 41 and the passages adduced in the Petrop. Dict. IV, p. 540). For these reasons the sūtra, which occupies us, is to be analysed in this way प्रातिपदिकार्थस्य ये लिङ्गपरिमाणे (= ये लिङ्गसंख्ये or ये लिङ्गवचने, for संख्या and वचन are both expressive of the grammatical number) तयोर्वचनमात्रे प्रथमा.

1) PÂṆINI has short and well-chosen terms to point out their different provinces. The category of the accusative he names *karma*, that of the instrumental *kartr* »agent" and *karana* »instrument," that of the dative *sampradâna*, that of the ablative *apûdâna*, that of the locative *adhikarâna*. The duties of the genitive have not found an adequate expression.

With respect to the nominative it must be observed, that Pâṇini's definition (see the preceding note) does ascribe a larger sphere of employment to that case than we do in styling it the case of »the subject and predicate." In this the Indian grammarian is right. Nouns quoted or proffered outside the context of sentences are always put in the *nominative*.

may be called the *with-case*, for it signifies *with what, by what, how*. According to the various applications of this fundamental notion, there may be set up divers kinds of instrumental. So we have an instrumental of accompaniment — the so-called *sociative* — one of the instrument, one of the agent, of the way, the means, the manner, the quality, of time, of value, and so on.

3. The dative or fourth (चतुर्थी) points out the *direction* of a movement. Mostly it is employed in a metaphorical sense. For the rest, its employment admits of a division into two kinds: a.) the so-called *dative of interest*, b.) the *dative of the purpose*.

4. The ablative or fifth (पञ्चमी) denotes *whence* there is a starting, withdrawal, separation, distance, consequence and the like, it being applied to various categories of thought.

5. The genitive or sixth (षष्ठी) upon the whole may be described as the case, which signifies *cohesion*. It chiefly serves to express relations existing between substantives <sup>1)</sup> and according to the logical varieties of these relations we may distinguish between the *possessive genitive*, the *partitive*, the *subjective*, the *objective* etc. Besides, the sixth case is wanted with some adjectives (as those of likeness, knowing and the contrary) and some verbs (as those of remembering). Sanskrit also has three more kinds of genitive, each of them displaying a particular character, nl. 1. the *genitive of*

---

1) In this book the term *substantive* has not the limited acceptation it has with the etymologist and the lexicographer, but includes any noun that syntactically has the worth of a substantive. as सत्य, when = 'truth.'

*the time, after which, 2 the absolute genitive, 3. the genitive, which is concurrent with the dative of interest.*

6. The locative or seventh (सप्तमी) signifies the *where* and therefore it generally is to be rendered by such prepositions as *in, at, to, on*. As its employment is not restricted to real space, but of course also extends to other spheres of thought, there are various classes of locatives, for ex. those of *time, of circumstance, of motive* (the so-called निमित्तसप्तमी), the *absolute locative*. On the other hand the locative is not limited to the spot, where something is or happens, but it also signifies the *aim reached*.

Rem. 1. All nouns are declinable and put in the said cases, if wanted. This applies also to such conventional terms and signs, as the grammatical roots, affixes, anubandhās, prâtipadikās, etc.

Rem. 2. Indeclinable are 1<sup>ly</sup> the adverbs, 2<sup>ly</sup> some nominal derivations of the verb, namely the gerunds and the infinitives. Why they are devoid of declension is quite plain; for they do duty of noun-cases and generally their etymology does agree with their employment.

### CHAPT. III. Accusative.

39. I. The accusative expresses whither something is moving. Panc. स्वगृहं प्रस्थितः (he set out for his home), Nala 1, 22 विद्वन्निगमस्तदा (then they went to the country of Yidarbha), M. 2, 114 विद्या ब्राह्मणमेत्याह (Knowledge came to the Brahman and said —). In the instances adduced the movement is real. But in a metaphorical sense the accusative is likewise available. R. 2, 82, १ इगाम मनसा रामम्, Daç. 40 तच्चिन्तया दैन्यमाच्छम् (by this solicitude I grew sad).

This obvious construction is not the only one.



The *aim striven at* may also be put in the dative (79), the *aim reached* is mostly denoted by the locative (134). Moreover various periphrase, by means of प्रति, अन्ति-कम्, सकाशम्, समीपम्, उद्दिश्य etc. are concurrent idioms, see chapt. VIII.

40. From this acc. of the aim the acc. of the object is not sharply to be severed. On the boundary are standing such turns as त्वां श्रयति (he bends to you, rests on you), विद्यां प्रययते (he attains knowledge), ग्राममभिवर्तते (he moves towards the village).

Verbs of bringing, carrying, leading, conveying may be construed with two accusatives, one of the aim and one of the object ग्रामगतां नयति दहति कर्तति वहति च (see Siddh. Kaum. on P. 1, 4, 51); — Daç. 83 त्वां नयामं त्वत्प्रियतमम् (let me conduct you to your lover), Çāk. V प्रकुन्तलां पतिकुलं त्रिमूढम् (having dismissed Çak. to the home of her husband).

41. When construed with a passive verb, the accus. of the aim sometimes remains accusative, as in Latin and Greek, sometimes it turns nominative. So it is good Sanskrit to say मया ग्रामो गम्यते, मया ग्रामो गन्तव्यः

Kathās. 25, 210 संप्रति गन्तव्या पुरी वाराणसी मया (now I want to go to the city of Bonares), Pat. I, 464 गम्यते मां श्रयः (the meaning will be understood), op. ibid. 44 कथमनुच्यमानं गम्यते, ibid. 102 ग्रामो भवता गन्तव्यः 1).

1) Vernacular grammar makes no distinction at all between aim and object. Both kinds of accusative share the common appellation *karma*. Yet I greatly doubt, whether the acc. of the aim may turn nomin. when attending on the passive of all verbs of moving. I, for my part, am not aware of instances of any of them, but for गम्. The transitive compounds (43) of course are left aside, likewise such verbs, as the vaidik ईयते, when = to be asked for —".

Rem. The acc. of the aim is not changed into the genitive, when attending a noun. It is said नेता ऽश्वस्य सुधम् (the transporter of a horse to Srughna), with the acc. of the aim and the gen. of the object. Cp. Pat. I, p. 336.

**42. II. The acc. of the object.** — Upon the whole, the same category of verbs are transitive in Sanskrit as are elsewhere. Yet, some cases of discrepancy and some idiomatic turns proper to Sanskrit are to be noticed: 1. Verbs of speaking may admit of the accus. of the person addressed, cp. 46; 2. Many a Sanskrit intransitive, whose English equivalent is likewise intr., may occasionally admit of an object put in the accus.; then the translation will generally differ. Of the kind are:

1. रोदिति intr. to weep, tr. to weep for;
2. हसति " to laugh, " to laugh at;
3. नन्दति " to rejoice, " to rejoice at;
4. शोचति " to be sorry, " to pity;
5. वर्षति " to rain, " to rain upon;
6. युध्यति " to fight, " to fight;
7. चिन्तयति " to think, " to think of; to reflect;

8. Verbs of *rambling, erring*, like भ्रम्, चर् are trans. when = "to walk over, to go through", note also such turns as मृगयां धावति (he is a hunting), भैक्षं चरति (he lives by begging). — 9 नमस्करोति, नमति and its compounds, may be construed with the acc. of him to whom respect is shown. A complete list of such verbs is difficult to give. Most of them are to be known by the dictionary.

Rem. 1. As a rule, the said accusatives are not obligatory. So the verbs of *speaking* admit also of a dat. or locat. or प्रति; — नम् and प्रपाम् are oftener construed with dat. or gen.; — it is said as well युध्यति शत्रुपा or शत्रुपा सह (समम् etc.) as युध्यति शत्रुम्, and so on.

Rem. 2. Note also the turn एतन्मां भजति (this falls to my share) and the trans. construction of पुष्यति or पुष्याति शोभाम् (लक्ष्मोम् etc.), see f. inst. Kumâras. 1, 25; 3, 63; Ragh. 3, 22; 4, 11.

Rem. 3. *दीयति* (to play) with the acc. of the wager is an idiom of the *brāhmaṇa*. P. 2, 3.  
60.

**43.** Intransitive verbs may become transitive, when being compounded with some preposition<sup>1</sup>; *गामनुगच्छति* (he goes after the cow), pass. *अनेन गौरनुगम्यते*. This chiefly applies to verbs, compounded with *अति* *अधि* *अनु* *उप* *प्रति*, but also to others. Examples: *अतिक्रामति* (to transgress); *अधिप्रेते* *अध्यास्ते* *अधितिष्ठति*, cp. P. 1, 4, 46; *अनुकम्पति* (to pity); *अनुभवति* (to partake of-, to enjoy); *उपजीवति* (to live by-), *उपवसति* (to dwell near-); *प्रतिभाति* (to appear to-); *अवलम्बति* and *आलम्बति* (to rest on, to grasp), *आवसति* (to inhabit), *उत्क्रामति* (to neglect), *प्रत्युद्गच्छति* (to go to meet) etc.

Rem. This influence of the preposition is even seen in the acc. attending on some compound adjectives, as *अनुव्रत*, *उन्मुख* (Nala 2, 27 *दमयन्तीमनुव्रतः*, R. 2, 50, 1 *अयोध्यामुन्मुखः*).

**44.** Instances of the so-called etymological or cognate accusative are not wanting. Daç. 133 *वाद्यं मधु-वर्षमवर्षत्*, R. 2, 54, 37 *उषिताः स्मां ह वसतिम्* (v. a. we have passed the night), *ibid.* 58, 21 *ययान्यायं वृत्तिं वर्तस्व मातृषु* (behave yourself properly with respect to your mothers), Mhbh. 1, 102, 3 *भीष्मः कन्याः शुश्राव वृष्णानाः स्वयंवरम्*. -- An example of its passive construction is this: R. 2, 58, 20 *कुसारे भर्ते वृत्तिर्वर्तितव्या च राजवत्*.

Rem. 1. Some of these etymological accusatives touch upon the sphere of the adverb and the gerund in °अम्. Sometimes it is rather difficult in what category to class them. Of the kind are Oh. Up. 3, 15, 2 *न पुत्ररोदं रोदिति*, Mhbh. 1, 154, 30 *पशुमारमारयत्* (he killed [him] as one kills a beast), P. 3, 4, 43 *पुरुषवाहं वहति*, *sim.*

Rem. 2. The *krt*s in °इञ् are only available when etymol. accus. P. 3, 3.  
110  
The *Kāçikā* gives these examples: Qu. *कां कारिमकार्षेः* Ans. *सर्वा कारिमकार्षम्*; so *कां गणिमन्त्रीणाः* etc.

**45.** Some verbs admit of a double construction, which

1) Pat. I. p. 107 *अकर्मका अपि वै सोपसर्गाः सकर्मका भवन्ति*.

Verbs  
with  
a double  
con-  
struc-  
tion.

is the counterpart of the well-known Latin idiom *munus mihi donat* = *munere me donat*. Compare for inst.

विभक्त. — Mhbh. (ed. Calc. 3, 17242) Yājñ. 2, 114 [पिता] स्वेच्छया विभक्ते-  
धर्मस्तु विभक्त्यर्थमुभयोः पुण्यपापयोः त्सुताञ्छेष्टं वा श्रेष्ठभागेन (a father  
(Dharma bestows riches on both may either bequeath his sons  
good and wicked). as he likes best, or he should  
bestow the best lot upon the  
eldest).

क्षिप्. — R. (Gorr.) 5, 11, 11 धूर्तप्र. M. 8, 270 एकत्रातिर्द्विजानोस्तु वाचा  
लापान्क्षिपन्ति (they utter out be- दाहपाया क्षिपन् (a not-dvija,  
guiling talk). when hurting a dvija with

लुप्. — लुप्पत्यर्थम् (he robs the mo- harsh words).  
ney). लुप्सति स्वामिन्म् (he robs the owner).

Both constructions are used side by side in this mantra of Pāraskara (Grhy. 2, 2, 7) येनेन्द्राय बृहस्पतिर्वासः पर्यदधादमृतं तेन त्वा परिदधामि.

Rem. The verb *यत्* seems to offer some irregularity of construction, but in fact it is not this verb, which is dealt with in a strange way, but it is the common translation of it, which conceals its proper meaning. One is wont to translate it »to sacrifice,” but its real purport must have been some of »worshipping, honouring, feeding” or the like. Accordingly the offering is put in the instrumental, the divinity fed or worshipped in the accusative. One needs must say हविर्भिर्देवान्यन्तामहे *rodz beudz ázoméza búmasi*. — The real equivalent of our »sacrificing” is हु = *ósen*; here the divinity is a dative, and the object is either the fire or whosoever the offering is poured into, or the offering itself; therefore देवेभ्य अग्निं नुहोमि or देवेभ्य अग्नीं हविर्नुहोमि. — Moreover the etymol. accus. is of course also available as well with *यत्* as with हु; it may be said यत्तं यन्तामहे, अग्निहोत्रं नुहोमि. But the instrum. of the offering with हु is vaidik according to P. 2, 3, 3 (see Pat. on that sūtra, I, p. 444).

46. Now, some verbs have the faculty of admitting two  
Double object. objects at the same time.

It is said as well कथां वक्ति (he tells a story) as त्वां वक्ति (he speaks to you); as well शत्रुं जयति (he vanquishes the enemy) as राज्यं जयति (he

conquers a kingdom); as well शिक्षयन्नुशास्ति (he teaches his pupil) as धर्मयन्नुशास्ति (he teaches the law). By combining both constructions we obtain 1. कथां वक्ति त्वाम्; 2. शत्रुं राज्यं जयति; 3. शिष्यं धर्मयन्नुशास्ति.

This double object may attend a.) verbs of *speaking*, as ब्रू, वच्, आह् etc., *asking*, as याच्, भिक्षु, प्रार्थयति, पृच्छति and sim., *teaching*, especially अनुशास्ति and अध्यापयति, b.) some others, especially जयति (*to win*), दोग्धि (*to milk*), दण्डयति (*to punish, to fine*). See P. 1, 4, 51 with the commentaries.

Examples: *speaking*: Nala 1, 20 ततोऽन्तरिक्षां वाचं व्याजहार नलं तदा, R. 2, 52, 31 आराज्यं वृद्धिं कोसल्याम्; — *asking, begging*: Ch. Up. 5, 3, 5 पञ्च मा राजान्युः प्रश्नानप्राप्नोत् (that fellow of a rājanya asked me five questions), M. 8, 87 सान्ध्यं पृच्छदृतं द्वितान्, Kathās. 1, 31 स वरं मामयाचत (he requested a boon of me), Mhbh. 1, 56, 24 सुवर्णं रततं गाश्च न त्वां राजन्वृषाम्यहम् (I do not beg gold of you, my king, nor silver, nor cows); — *teaching* R. 2, 39, 27 करिष्ये सर्वमेवाहमया यदिनुशास्ति माम् (I will do all that, which My lady enjoins me to do); — त्रिः Mhbh. 3, 59, 5 निषधान्प्रतिपद्यस्व त्रित्वा राज्यं नलं नृपम्; — दुह्: Kumār. 1, 2 भास्वन्ति रत्नानि महोदधीश्च — दुहदुर्धरित्रीम् (they milked from the earth resplendent gems and herbs of great medicinal power); — दण्डय्: M. 9, 234 तान्सहस्रं दण्डयेत् (he should punish them with a fine of a thousand paṇā).

Rem. Indian grammar adds to them some others, instances of which construed with a double object are scarcely met with in literature, if at all. Of the kind are चि (to gather), रुध् (to check), मुग् (to rob), मृग् (to churn), thus exemplified: वृक्षमवचिनोति फलानि । गामवरुणादि वृक्षम् । सुधां क्षीरनिधिं मृशति etc. <sup>1)</sup>.

47. Yet, with none of the said verbs the double accusative is of necessity. Other constructions are quite as usual, sometimes even preferable, especially in simple prose.

1) Here also vernacular grammarians put the two accus., depending on such verbs, as नी, वह्, see 40 R

The verbs of *asking* are often construed with the *ablat.* or *genit.* of the person addressed. Those of *teaching* admit of acc. of the person + loc. of the thing taught (Priy. p. 11 गीतनृत्यवाद्यादिषु... शिक्षयितव्या), *आदिप्रति*, *संदिप्रति* and other verbs of *enjoining* are construed with acc. of the enjoinder + dat. (or its substitutes) of the person. Those of *speaking* are often construed with the dative of the person addressed, or the genitive, or *प्रति*.

NB. Some verbs as *कथयति* (to tell), *वेदयति* (to make known), *आदिशात* (to enjoin) never comply with the double object.

48. In the passive construction the *person* asked, addressed, defeated etc. turns *nominative*, the *thing* asked for, spoken etc. remains *accusative*. Therefore, though it may be said separately उक्तो ऽर्थः as well as उक्तस्त्वम्, पृष्टो वृत्तान्तः as well as पृष्टाः पुत्राः, when combined, we get the type इतमर्थमुक्तस्त्वम् । पृष्टाः पुत्रा वृत्तान्तम्. Examples: Panc. 29 प्रार्थितो नया भवदर्थे स्वाग्य-भक्ष-दानम् (v. a. I have asked my master to grant you his protection), Kathās. 27, 142 बाणेन युद्धयोग्यमस्मिं हरो गच्छतः (Bāṇa has prayed Īiva for a foe, fit to fight with); — R. 2, 97, 15 न हि ते निदुरं वाचो भर्ता नास्मिं वचः; — Daç. 80 मया क्षितक्रासो वाङ्मसहस्राणि दीनारामाः; — M. 8, 36 अतः तु वदन्तः सत्यं सत्यं वदन्तः (but when bearing false witness, he must be punished with a fine of one eighth of his goods).

\*This passive construction is often avoided <sup>1)</sup> by employing one of the concurrent idioms, taught in 47.

Therefore उक्तमिदं त्वां प्रति or तुभ्यम्, मयागम्यस्त्वत्तः पृष्टः or स्वत्तकादात्, etc.

49. **Accusative with causative verbs.** — If the primitive

1) With some verbs it is, if at all, but rarely met with. Upon the whole, the construction with a double object appears to be the remnant of an old vegetation, which has almost passed away to be succeeded by new stalks and young stems. We may see the same process at work in Latin, Greek and the teutonic languages. In all of them the idiom of the double object loses territory time going.

Double  
object  
with  
causa-  
tives.

be an *intransitive* verb, its causative is construed with the accusative of its (the primitive's) subject. Prim. शते देवदत्तः Caus. यज्ञदत्तो देवदत्तं शाययति. The same applies to verbs of *going*; then we will have occasionally two accusatives, one of the aim and the other, pointing out the primitive's subject. Prim. देवदत्तो पाठलिपुत्रं गच्छति Caus. राजा देवदत्तं पाठलिपुत्रं गमयति.

But if the primitive be a *transitive*, there is diver-<sup>P. 1, 4, 52</sup>sity of idiom. Often the primitive's subject is in the same manner put in the accusative, when construed with the causative, but often also in the instrumental. In the former case we have of course two accusatives, as Kathâs. 9, 10 मन्त्रपूतं चर्त्तुं राज्ञीं प्राशयन्मुनिसत्तमः (the best of ascetics made the queen eat a consecrated porridge), wherewith cp. this instance of the instrumental: Mhbh. 2, 1, 7 न शक्यामि किञ्चित्कारयितुं त्वया (I shall not be able to get anything done by you). The difference of both constructions is determined by the diverse nature of the notions, carried by them. If one wants to say *he causes me to do something, it is by his impulse I act*, there is room for the type मां किञ्चित्कारयति, but if it be meant *he gets something done by me, I am only the agent or instrument through which he acts*, the instrumental is on its place किञ्चित्कारयति मया.

Examples: a.) of two accusatives; Mudr. I, p. 43 अयि कदाचिच्चन्द्रगुप्तेनोपा अतिक्रान्तपार्थिवगुणान्धुना स्मारयन्ति प्रकृतोः (do not the vices of Candrag. still remind the people of the former kings?), Daç. 144 पितरौ तस्या दार्काया मां पाणिमध्राह्वयेताम् (my parents allowed me to wed that girl), Mhbh. 1, 75, 28 स ऋषीन्कर्मदापयत् (he made the holy men pay taxes), R. 2, 55, 17 रामस्तामश्चारोपयत्पुत्रम् (he ordered her to embark), ibid. 2, 94, 2 अत्र दाशरथिश्चित्रं चित्रकूटमदर्शयत् । भार्याम्, Daç. 215

तापय मां स्ववार्ताम्. — So always अथापयति कंचित्किंचित्, for this verb at the same time formally is a causative and as to its meaning (to teach) it belongs to the category, mentioned in 46.

b.) of the instrumental of the primitive's subject: Daç. 170 सा तस्य साधोश्चित्रवधमत्सेन राज्ञा समादेश्यां चकार (she obtained an order of the king who was unaware [of what had happened before] to put to death this honest man); Mudr. I, p. 37 लेखं प्रकटदासेन लेखयित्वा (after having got written the letter by Çakatadâsa); Panc. 51 रथकारं आप्तु-  
पुरेषेत् स्वगृह्मानाययत् (the cartwright let him bring home by friends), Ku-  
mâras. 6, 52 स तैराक्रामयामास शुद्धान्तम् (he [Himavân] suffered his zenana to be entered by them, that is 'he opened his zenana to them'),  
M. 8, 371 तां श्वभिः खाद्येद्वाजा (her the king should order to be devoured by dogs) <sup>1</sup>).

50. In the passive construction these two types are likewise possible: 1. *the primitive's subject turns nominative, the primitive's object remains accusative*, as Mudr. V, p. 172 परिधापिता वयमाभरणं कुमारेषां, the active form of which would be कुमार अस्मानभरणं परिधापितवान्, 2. *the primitive's subject is instrumental, but the primitive's object turns nominative*, as Mudr. I, p. 22

1) Pāṇini gives a different rule about the construction of the causatives. In his sūtra 1, 4, 52 he teaches that the primitive's subject is the karma of the causatives of a.) all intransitives, b.) the verbs of *going (moving)*, c.) those of *perceiving and knowing* (बुद्धि), d.) those of *feeding*, e.) those of *uttering voice*, and the following rule declares 'optionally also with कारयति and हारयति' [and their compounds, see Pat I, p. 109, l. 10]. With the other causatives, therefore, the primitive's subject is not considered an object (karma), accordingly not put in the accus., but in the instrumental, according to P. 1, 4, 55 compared with 2, 3, 18. Now, to these rules of Pāṇini, which do not take account of the internal difference existing by necessity between the two conceptions, but simply set up some outer marks, I have substituted the description expounded in the context. Mr. ANANDORAM BOROOAH has preceded me in this way. Moreover I have tested Pāṇini's rule in numerous instances, but found it deficient now and then even when paying due respect to the modifications made in it by the different vārtikas on our sūtras (1, 4, 52 sq.), whereas the same enquiry confirmed the exactness of the rule as it has been laid down in the context.



विषकन्यया राज्ञसेन घातितस्तपस्वी पवतिश्वरः active विषकन्यया राज्ञसो घाति-  
तवान्तपस्विनं पवतिश्वरम् (R. has killed the unhappy Parv. by means  
of a *vishakanyā*). The latter type appears to be rare <sup>1)</sup>,  
the former is the general one and is applied even in  
such cases, as would not admit of two accusatives in  
the active form.

Examples of type 1. — Mudr. VII, p. 222 शक्रदासस्तपस्वी तं कण्टलेखं  
मयैव लेखितः, Kull. on M. 8, 287 यावान्वयो भवति तमसौ दापनीयः (he  
must be caused to pay as much as has been expended), Daç. 164  
अहं कोशदासेन स्नानभोजनादिकमनुभाषितोऽस्मि (Koçadāsa made me enjoy  
a bath, food etc.), Hitop. 96 ततस्तेन [sc. शशेन] स यूयपतिः प्रणामं कारितः  
(then he [the hare] commanded the chief elephant to make his pro-  
stration), R. 2, 62, 1 राज्ञा राममात्रा आश्रितः पशुं वाक्यम्.

Example of type 2. Mālav. I, p. 15 अथावश्यमेव माधवसेनो मया पूयेन  
मोचयितव्यः (v. a. His Majesty, indeed, has it in his own power to  
make me release Mādhavasena).

51. When having got a more or less figurative sense, the causatives  
may change their construction. So with दर्शयति (to show) and आश्रयति  
(to tell) the person who is caused to see and to hear is sometimes  
put in the acc. as attending on a causative, but it is more com-  
mon to use the gen. or dat., because they in fact range with the  
verbs of *showing* and *telling*. So वेदयति and its compounds are  
never construed with the acc. of the person to whom something is  
made known.

52. The accusative of the object is not restricted to the  
finite verbs, but affects also some active verbal forms,  
which are grammatically classed among the nouns. In the  
first place all participles, gerunds and infinitives with ac-  
tive signification must have their object put in the accusa-

1) Apart from the two examples adduced in the context I do not  
remember having met with any. In both of them the object and the  
agent are persons.

tive. Hitherto there is no difference between the syntax of Sanskrit and of its sister-languages. But the accusative is also wanted with some classes of verbal nouns, commonly not reckoned among the participles etc., '1) nl. P. 2, 3, 89 sq.

a.) with those in उ, made of desiderative verbs: this class of adjectives has indeed almost the nature of participles, b.) with some in उत् of kindred signification, c.) with those in अक, when having the worth of a partic. of the future, d.) with some kṛts in °रन्<sup>2)</sup>, e.) with the 'krt' in °तृ, when barytona.

Examples: a.) M. 1, 8 सिमृन्तुर्विधाः प्रजाः (wishing to create the manifold creatures), Mhbh. 1, 167, 48 सर्वयोषिद्वा कृणा निनीतुः क्षत्रिया-  
न्त्यम्; — b.) Daç. 25 तेषां भाषणवाक्यमसहिष्णुरहम् (as I could not bear the harshness of their words); — c.) Kâç. on P. 2, 3, 70 कटे कारको वृत्तति (he goes to make a mat<sup>3)</sup>); e.) see 53.

Rem. 1. Those in उक are also mentioned by Pāṇini as agreeing with acc., but this construction has antiquated. Instances of it are met with in the archaic dialect. Taitt. S. 6, 1, 6, 6 कामुका एनं स्त्रियो भवन्ति य एनं वेद, Ch. Up. 5, 2, 2 तस्म्युको ह वासो भवति (surely, he obtains a dress).

Rem. 2. Note also the acc. with the adj. अर्ह (worth, deserving). As far as I know, this idiom is restricted to the epics. Mhbh. 1, 63, 4 इन्द्रत्वमेहो राजायं तपसा (this king is by his penance worth of

1) See SIECKE, de genetivi in lingua sanscrita imprimis vedica usu, p. 17 sqq.

2) Especially, if a debt be the object. P. 2, 3, 70. Kâç. व्रते दास्ये.

3) Examples in literature are scarce. WHITNEY (Grammar § 271 c.) quotes Mhbh. 3, 73, 25 भवन्तमभिवादकः but the example is doubtful, for the whole sentence runs thus: आगतो ऽस्मि भवन्तमभिवादकः where it is also possible to accept the acc. as the aim of the verb आगतः. — R. 3, 10, 15 तद्व्यमाना-  
नृत्तोभिर्दण्डकार्पयवासिभिः । रत्नकस्त्र would afford an instance of रत्नक, con-  
strued with the accusative, if it were not probably a bad reading; रत्नकस्त्रम्  
is to be changed in रत्न नस्त्रम्.

Indra's rank), R. 1, 53, 12 न परित्यागमर्हेयं मत्सकाप्राप्तं (she is not worth being given up by me) <sup>1</sup>).

Rem. 3. In the ancient dialect of the vaidik mantras many more kinds of verbal nouns may agree with acc. So for inst. Rgv. 6, 23, 4 ब्रह्मिर्वन्नं पयिः सोमं ददिर्माः. Mhbh. 1, 113, 21 we have even an acc. depending on a nomen actionis जिगीषया महीं (by his desire to conquer the earth) पापदुर्निरक्रामत्युरात्; likewise ibid. 1, 167, 3 द्रोणं प्रतिचिकीर्षया (by his wish to retaliate Droṇa).

53. The acc. with the barytona in °तृ though not rare in the earlier period, seems to protract but an artificial life in classic Sanskrit, as it is met with only in refined style and even there side by side with the genitive <sup>2</sup>). Daç. 199 it is said of a good king, that he was संभावयिता वृधाम्भावयिता सेवकानुदावयिता बन्धून्व्यभावयिता शत्रून् (honouring the wise, making his attendants mighty, raising his kinsmen, lowering his foes); comp. Panc. III, 71 नृपतिर्नेता प्रताः (a king, who rules his subjects). -- On the other hand, the examples given by Kāç. on P. 3, 2, 135 prove that at the time, they were applied at first, the construction with the acc. was obvious and natural. So मुण्डयितारः आविश्याना भवन्ति वधूमृहाम् (the Çrāviṣṭhāyanās have the custom to shave the hair of the young-married woman.) Cp. Âpast. 1, 3, 15.

54. III. The accusative of space or time serves to de- P. 2,  
3, 5.  
note a continuity of either; it expresses therefore *what space is occupied* or *during what time* the action is

1) In the classical language अर्हं complies with genitive. So Priyad. 39 उपविशत्वर्हेयमर्धासनस्य (let her sit down, she is worth half of my seat). Likewise अनर्हं.

2) Pāṇini explicitly states (P. 3, 2, 134 sq.), that the barytona in °तृ are restricted to the denoting of lasting and inherent qualities. But he nowhere affirms that the oxytona are not to be employed in that sense. Indeed, a genitive with nouns in °तृ, even when expressing lasting qualities, is very common in classic Sanskrit. In the same passage Daç. 199, the example in the context has been borrowed from, we read परीक्षिता सर्वथ्यज्ञापाम् and सद्यः प्रतिकर्ता दैवमानुषोपायामपहाम् ... मनुमार्गोपा प्रयोता चातुर्वर्षस्य. Comp. the list of epithets in Kād. I, p. 2 कर्ता महाश्रयिणाम् etc.

going on. Compare the *acc. spatii* and *temporis* in Latin, Greek, German etc.

Examples: a.) space R. 2, 91, 29 बभूव हि समा भूमिः समन्तात्पञ्चयो-  
जनम् (for the soil became flat over an extent of five yojana's in  
every direction), Mhbh. 1, 153, 40 निगृह्य तं... चकार ह तस्माद्देशाद्वृण्व्यष्टौ  
(he seized him and dragged him along over a space of eight  
bow-lengths).

Rem. When naming the dimensions of a thing, one does not  
use this accus., but avails one's self of bahuvrīhi-compounds.

b.) time Panc. 165 एतावन्ति दिनानि त्वदीयमासीत् (for so many days  
it was yours), Daç. 96 भद्रकाः प्रतीक्ष्यतां कञ्चित्कालम् (gentle sirs, please,  
wait a moment).

Rem. 1. Now and then the acc. of time denotes the time *at*  
*which*. R. 2, 69, 1 यमेष रात्रिं ते दूताः प्रविशन्ति स्म तां पुरीम् । भारतेनापि तां  
रात्रिं स्वप्नो दृष्टो ज्यमप्रियः, Daç. 153 सो ऽपि विष्टः..... तद्दृष्टो स्वमृदे  
स्रान्मोक्षनादि कारयित्वोत्तरेषुः..... मामनुगम्य..... विसृज्य प्रत्ययासीत्. Cp.  
Lit. Br. 1, 22, 12; Mhbh. 1, 63, 40; ibid. 1, 121, 34; Āpast. 1, 5, 12.

Rem. 2. Sometimes *यावत्* is put behind the acc., when deno-  
ting the time, *during which*. Hitop. p. 51 गया मासमेकं यावदोरीवृतं  
कर्तव्यम् (I am bound to perform during a month a vow for Durgā).

Rem. 3. The acc. of time remains unchanged in the passive;  
see Daç. 96 quoted above. But occasionally it is dealt with, as  
if it were the object. R. 2, 88, 2 इह तस्य महात्मनः शर्वरी शयिता भूमौ  
(= here the noble hero has passed the night on the naked earth)  
instead of शर्वरीं शयितम्<sup>1)</sup>).

55. Adver-  
bial ac-  
tive. IV. As a rule, the accusative neuter of any  
adjective noun may do duty for an adverb, शीघ्रं  
गच्छति (he goes swiftly), मृदु भाषते (he speaks gently),

1) Comp. such Latin expressions, as Caes. B. G. 5, 39, 4 *aegre is dies*  
*sustentatur*, and the interesting discussion on the matter Pat. I, p. 445 sq.  
From Patanjali's words it is sufficiently plain, that to say आस्यते मासः ।  
शय्यते क्रोशः is as good as आस्यते मासम् । शय्यते क्रोशम्. From another pas-  
sage of the same book (I, p. 338, vārt. 9) it results, that some made  
the kālākarma-verbs range with the *akarmaka* or intransitives.

हन् विहृति (he amuses himself secretly), सबहुमानं  
सत्करोति (he entertains respectfully).

The acc. of the subst. नाम (name) is used as a particle = "namely," sometimes also it answers to Greek *ὀνομα* "of name." Nala 1, 1  
आसीद्वाजा नलो नाम.

56. A great number of prepositions and the like agree also with the accusative, see chapter IX. Of the interjections, धिक् is often attended by accusative.

#### CHAPTER IV. Instrumental.

57. The third case has been styled **instrumental** after its most usual employment of expressing the instrument or means or agent [P. 2, 3, 18 cp. 1, 4, 42]. Yet its starting-point is rather the conception of *accompaniment*, and it is for this reason some claim for it the name of *sociative*.<sup>1)</sup> Nor can there be any doubt, the suffixes, by which the third case is made, viz. *bhi* and *ā*, convey the meaning of accompaniment, simultaneousness and nearness

58. I. **Sociative**. — The instrumental is the equivalent of our *with* = *together with*, *accompanied by*. In this manner the third case is used f. i. Panc. I, 305 मृगा मृगैः सङ्गमनुव्रजन्ति गावश्च गोभिस्तुर-  
गास्तुरङ्गैः । मूर्खाश्च मूर्खैः सुधियः सुधीभिः (deer seek after the comradeship with deer, so kine with kine and horse with horse, the fool with the fool and the wise with the wise).

<sup>a.)with</sup>  
<sup>prepo-</sup>  
<sup>sitions.</sup> Upon the whole however, the instrumental, when sociative, is accompanied by some word expressive of

1) This tenet has been laid down by B. DELBRÜCK in his pathmaking treatise *Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis*, 1867.

the notion of *being together* viz. 1° the adverbs सह, समम्, सार्धम्, साकम् which may then be considered prepositions, as रामः सीतया सह; 2° such participles as सहित, सङ्गत, युक्त, अन्वित and the like, as रामः सीतया सहितः or compounded सीतासहितः. Or the notion of the sociative is expressed by a compound, the former part of which is स° (or सह°) as रामः ससीतः. Occasionally the gerund आदाय (having taken) is also used in the meaning of *with*.

The prepositional adverbs सह etc. are likewise added to the instrumental for the sake of denoting relations between different parties as *to converse with, to meddle with, to fight with, to contend with*, sim.

Examples: a.) सह etc. expressive

1. of concomitancy. Mṛech. X, p.372 अपि त्रियते चारुदत्तः सह वसन्तसेनया (are Cârudatta and Vasantasena still alive?), Mhbh. 1, 113, 20 स ताभ्यां व्यचरत्सार्धं भाग्यभ्यां राजसन्तमः । कुन्या माया च रागेन्दुः, Panc. 127 तेन सममेव स्वदेशं प्रति प्रस्थिताः, Kathâs. 4, 136 अहं जनन्या गुरुभिश्च साकम्..... अवसम्;

2. of mutual relations. Panc. 78 तैः सहोत्सापं न करोति; ibid. 257 क्लृप्तेन सह तव स्नेहः (v. a. how are you his friend?), ibid. 281 मित्रेण सह चित्रविश्लेषः (disagreement with a friend), Kathâs. 47, 88 स तेन विदधे समं युद्धम् (he fought with him), Panc. V, 66 चारुणौर्वन्दिभिर्नौर्वैर्नापितैर्व्यालकैरपि । न मन्त्रं मतिमान् कुर्यात्सार्धम्. Note the phrase तेन सह दर्शनम् (Panc. 137, 13; 178, 1) and the type, represented Panc. 43 तां स्थापया सह दृढबन्धनेन बद्धा (after having fastened her to the pile with a strong fetter)

b.) सहित and the like: Kathâs. 13, 110 स्वगृहं भृत्यसहितः पलाय्यैव ततो गयो (he fled from this spot to his home with his attendance), R. 2, 52, 91 Sîtâ prays पुनरेव महाब्राह्मण्या भ्रात्रा च संगतः [that is: with his brother and me] अयोध्यां वनवासात्प्रविशतु.

Rem. An elegant paraphrase of the sociative is occasionally °द्वितीय used as the latter part of a bahuvrīhi. So in the verse quoted Pat. I, p. 426 असिद्वितीयोऽनुससार् पापडवम् = 'alone but for his good sword, he went after the Pāṇḍava,' Daç. 159 एकान्ते भवानुत्कषिठत इव पतिवा-दिनोद्वितीयस्तिष्ठति (you stand aside as if longing for some you love, alone with your lute), Panc. 159 रातकन्या सखीद्वितीया.

**59.** Yet the sole instrumental will not rarely suffice. In the old vedic dialect, the brāhmanas included, it is very common, denoting as well concomitancy as mutuality of relations. But in classic Sanskrit it is restricted to the language of poetry and poetical prose and to some typical expressions.

b) with-  
out  
prepo-  
sitions.

Examples: a.) from the archaic dialect. Rgv. 1, 1, 5 देवो देवेभि-रागमत् (may the god come with the gods), ibid. 8, 85, 7 महद्भिर्न्द्रि सख्यं ते अस्तु; — Ait. Br. 1, 6, 3 अप्नुते प्रतया स्नायम् (he enjoys food with his family), Ch. Up. 5, 10, 9 आचर्त्सतैः (conversing with them).

b.) from classic poetry, etc.: 1. concomitancy R. 2, 27, 15 साहं त्वया गमिमय्यामि वनम् (I shall go to the forest with thee), ibid. 2, 68, 2 असौ मातुलकुले.... भरतो वसति भ्रात्रा शत्रुघ्नेन; — 2. mutuality of relations Daç. 175 तयापि नववधू द्वेषमल्पेतर्ं ब्रह्मन्ध (he took a great aversion to his young wife), ibid. 91 तया बन्धव्या पणान्धमकर्तवम् (with this courtesan I made a bargain), R. 3, 18, 19 क्रूरैर्नार्यैः सोमित्रे परिहासः कथञ्चन न कार्यः (Laxmaṇa, one should make no joke at all with cruel and vile people), Panc. V, 62 न ताभिर्मन्त्रयेत्सुधीः (a wise man does not keep counsel with women). It is often said विरुध्यन्ते शत्रुणा सह, etc.

Rem. 1. Note the turn, instances of which are afforded by Mudr. III, p. 116 मया स्वजीवनमात्रेणैव स्थापितौ (I have left them nothing but life) and Prabodh. V, p. 103 'अचिरादसौ शरीरेणैव न भविष्यति (in short he will part with his body).

Rem. 2., Note कलह् (quarrel) with the sole instrum. Panc. V, 74 मेघेण सूयकाराणां कलहः, (the cooks' quarrel with the ram).

**60.** Compound nouns or verbs, whose former part is स, स or सह, 2<sup>ly</sup> many words expressive of the notions of

*uniting, combining, mingling* are often construed with the sole instrumental, even in prose. This construction is the regular one with युन् and its derivatives.

Examples: a.) compounds, commencing by सं etc. Daç. 79 अन्तर्धर्तः समांसि, Hitop. p. 16 यस्य मित्रेण संलापस्ततो नास्तीह पुण्यवान् (there is not in this world a man more happy, than he, who has a friend to converse with), Çåk. IV, vs. 12 चूतेन संश्रितवती नवमालिका (a jasmine, clinging to a mango-tree). Mr̥cch. I, p. 34 त्वं त्वेन संगच्छते.

b.) other verbs of uniting, mingling, combining. — M. 1, 26 दन्द्वायोजयन्नेमाः सुखदुःखादिभिः प्रजाः, Panc. 274 सोऽपि स्त्रजात्या मिलितः (mixed with his kinsmen), Çåk. I, vs. 30 वाचं न मिश्रयति मदचोभिः (she does not join her voice to mine).

Rem. 1. योजयति is often = Lat. *afficere aliquem aliqua re*. So Mhbh. I (Paushyap.) शिष्यान्क्रेन योजयितुं नेषेव (it was not his intention to harass his pupils), ep. R. 2, 75, 57. Many times it is = "to bestow something upon somebody", f.i. Panc. 3 अहं त्वां श्रापणशतेन योजयिष्यामि (I will bestow a hundred of grants upon you).

Rem. 2. P. 2, 3, 22 mentions the verb संजा, complying with acc. or instrum., but instances of that idiom seem to be wanting in literature; Patanjali gives the example पितरं or पित्रा संजानीते, but it is not plain what is here the meaning of संजा. — A similar instrum. depending on a compound verb, commencing by सं, is taught by Pân. 1, 3, 55 and his commentators, see Pat. I, p. 284. According to them it is said दास्या संप्रयच्छते. वृषल्या संप्रयच्छते »he makes presents to a servant-maid, to a female of low-caste, etc." the instr.

61. being used only in the case of illicit intercourse.

In-  
strum.  
or ge-  
nitive  
with  
adj. of  
like-  
ness,  
equality,  
etc.

The instrumental attends on the adjectives of *equality*, <sup>p. 2, 3, 72.</sup> *likeness, identity* and the like, as सम, समान, सदृश, तुल्य. Here however the genitive is a concurrent construction, just as in Latin. It is said promiscuously पितुः or पित्रा समः पुत्रः

Examples: R. 2, 118, 35 ब्रह्मेण समः (equal to Indra), Hit. I, 22 पशूभिः समानाः (like beasts), Hit. p. 118 अनेन सदृशो लोके न भूतो न भवि-



व्यति, Mālav. I, p. 21 अयं न मे पादरत्नसापि तुल्यः (he is not even equal to the dust of my feet); Pat. I, p. 327 तैः साम्यं गतवान्भवति (he has become their equal). — If «to compare with» is to be expressed by some metaphor, the instrumental will often be of use, so for ex., when it is denoted by the image of putting on a balance, cp. Kumāras. 5, 34. — Compare also such expressions as Daç. 130 सोऽहमप्येगिरेव सुहृदिरेककर्मः (and I having the same business as these friends of mine here).

of a genitive: Mhbh. 1, 139, 16 अर्जुनस्य समो लोके नास्ति कश्चिदनुर्ध्वः R. 2, 23, 5 त्रगौ क्रुद्धस्य सिंहस्य मुखस्य सदृशं मुखम् ([his] face shone like the face of an angry lion).

**62.** As the instrumental is the exponent of the notion of *accompaniment* and *simultaneousness*, so it is also available with words expressive of the very contrary, namely *separation* and *disjunction*. In the same way as it is said **वया सहितः, वया युक्तः** „with you,” one is allowed to say **वया रहितः, वया वियुक्तः** „without you.”<sup>1)</sup> The proper case for expressing separation, the ablative is however also available. In some phrases the instrumental is more frequently employed, in other again the ablative. The instrum. prevails with **वियुज्** and most of the compounds, beginning with **वि°**, also with **रहित** and **हीन**, but the ablative with such as **मुच्, भ्रश्.**

Examples: Panc. 84 प्राणैर्न वियुक्तः (he was not deprived of life),

1) Delbr. 1.1. v. 71 »Der begriff *trennung* ist zwar logisch der gegensatz von *zusammensein*, liegt ihm aber deshalb psychologisch sehr nahe.” Or, to speak more exactly, it is not the conception of separation, that is expressed or signified by the instrumental, but the notion of *mutuality* underlying both union and separation, finds in it its adequate expression. We have here therefore the same kind of instrum., which is spoken of in 59, b 2. Accordingly words of separation may also be construed with सह etc. Panc. 57 ममानया सह वियोगो भविष्यति. Compare English *to part with*.

Daç. 172 तुषैरुषपडैस्तपुस्तान्पृथक्चकार (she peeled the grains of rice of their husks, so [cleverly] as to keep them entire), Kathās. 15, 92 मीतादेव्या रामो विषेहे विरहव्याम् (R. forbore the grief caused by his separation from Sītā), R. 2, 96, 27 कलुषेण महता मेदिनी परिमुच्यतां (let the earth be freed from a great stain).<sup>1)</sup>

Rem. The adjectives रहित, हीन, विहीन, विरुक्त sim. often are = without."

**63.** II. By extending the notions of concomitancy, accompaniment, simultaneousness from space and time to all sorts of logical categories, we may understand how large a sphere of employment the third case occupies in Sanskrit syntax. Generally spoken, it is always used, when it is wanted to express the circumstances, instruments, means, ways, properties accompanying the action and qualifying it. In other terms, the instrumental has the duty of telling the *how* of the action or state, expressed by the verb or verbal noun, it depends on.

For clearness' sake the most striking types of this instrumental will be severally enumerated: 1<sup>ly</sup> and 2<sup>ly</sup> it is expressive of the instrument (karana) and the agent (kartr). These two kinds of instrumental are practically the most important, for they are the most wanted for. Examples of the former दात्रेण तुनाति (he cuts with a knife), पदभ्यां गच्छति (he goes on foot); of the latter मया तत्कृतम् (it is done by me) (57)

1) M. 2, 79 affords an instance of instrum. and abl. depending on the same verb. The latter half-çloka runs thus महतोऽप्येनसो मासान्नुचेवाहिर्त्रिमुच्यते (after a month he is released even from a great sin likewise as a snake from its skin). Here the abl. एनसः and the instr. त्वना are coordinate. Compare the like coincidence of abl. and instr. causae.

*Thirdly*, the instrum. denotes *accompanying circumstances and qualities*, like Latin abl. modi and qualitatis. M. 4, 3 अक्षेत्रेण शरीरस्य कर्तव्यं धनसंचयम् (he must make money, but without giving toil to his body), Panc. 129 दमनकसाचिव्येन पिङ्गलको राज्यमकरोत् (Ping. exercised his royalty with Dam. as his minister).

*Fourthly*, it declares the test, to measure by; फलेनैतज्ज्ञास्यसि (you will know it by its fruit).

*Fifthly*, it expresses the price or value, something is rated at, bought, sold, hired for, the thing, some other is taken for in exchange, sim. Panc. 158 ब्रूपकशतेन विक्रीयमाणः पुस्तकः (a book sold for a hundred rupees).

*Sixthly*, it denotes the way, by which one goes; Çāk. III अनया बालपादपवोण्या सुतनुरचिरं गता (the tender girl has passed a little before along this row of young trees).

*Seventhly*, the instrumental denotes the *cause, motive or reason*, by which something is done or happens to be; धनेन कुशलः (prosperous by wealth), विद्याया यशः (fame by learning), मदाज्ञयागतोऽसौ (that person has arrived by my order), द्रौत्या दानम् (v. a. a present).

- 64.** It should be kept in mind, however, that these and similar distinctions are but made for argument's sake and do not answer to sharply separated real divisions. Properly speaking, there is but *one* instrumental in all of them, just as in English it is the same word *with*, which is used in phrases as distant from one another as *I go with you, I cut with a knife, he with his black hat, he is content with me*. For this reason on the one hand nothing impedes increasing the number of divisions and subdivisions according to the manifold logical variety of its employment, but on the other hand no system of division will exhaust it, and more than once we

In-  
strum.  
compa-  
red to  
Eng-  
lish  
*with*.

may be at a loss under which head to enregister a given instrumental.

Rem. The being implied of so various logical conceptions by an implement for expression as small, as a case-ending is, has by the time become inconvenient. Instead of the simple instrumental, therefore, a more explicit mode of expression, signifying more precisely which kind of logical relation is meant in every instance, is often made use of, namely the periphrase by such words as मार्गेण, द्वारेण, योगेन, मुखेन, कारणेन etc. Its relative frequency is one of the most striking features of modern, compared to ancient, Sanskrit.

**65.** Some fuller account on the different kinds of instrumental will be given now.

Fuller  
account  
of  
them.

1. instrumental or karaṇa. — Examples: Pat. I, p. 119 रज्ज्वायसा वा व्रह्म काष्ठम् (a piece of wood, tied with a rope or with iron), Mreeh. I (p. 54) अग्नेन प्रावारकेण हृदयेनम् (cover him with this cloth), Panc. 148 एतेन वंशेन भित्तापात्रं ताडयामि, Mhbh. 1, 144, 18 प्रायाद्रासभयुक्तेन स्यन्दनेन (he started on a chariot, drawn by asses), ibid. 1, 120, 19 यज्ञैस्तु देवान्प्रीणाति स्वाध्यायतपसा मुनीन् । पुत्रैः श्राद्धैः पितृंश्चापि आनृणस्येन मानवान् (by sacrifices he propitiates the gods, by study and penance the munis, by [procreating] sons and [performing] the funeral rites the fathers, by [practising] mildness he propitiates men).

Persons, when being instruments, are likewise put in the third case; consequently the Sanskrit instrumental of a person answers as well to Lat. *per* as to Lat. *a*. Prabodh. VI, p. 132 मया च प्रणिधानेन विदितम् = Lat. *compertum est a me per speculatorem*.

**66.** 2. agent or kartr. — In this meaning the instrumental attends a.) on passive verbs, to denote the subject of the action, as has been pointed out **6**, — b.) on verbal nouns, as Mālav. I, p. 28 तितिक्षमाणः परेण निन्दाम् (forbearing the blame of others), for परेण निन्दाम् = परेण कृतां निन्दाम्. In the latter case the so-called subjective genitive

is a concurrent construction, which is even generally preferred unless ambiguity would result from its employment, cp. 114.

Agent of a kṛtya. Rem. Likewise both instrumental and genitive are available to P. 2, 3. 71 denote the agent with a kṛtya. As a rule the instrumental is required,

if the verbal sense prevail, but the genitive, if the kṛtya have the value of a noun adjective or substantive. Examples: instr. Panc. 167 मयावश्यं देशान्तरं गन्तव्यम् (I am obliged to emigrate), Mālat.

II किमत्र मया शक्यम् (what can I help here?), Vikram. I श्रवहितैर्भ-  
वितव्यं भवति: (v. a. the audience are requested to listen with atten-  
tion); — gen. Panc. I, 450 मूर्खाणां पण्डिता देव्या निर्वनानां महाधना: । वृ-  
त्तिनः पाषाणोलूनामसतीनां कुलस्त्रियः (the learned are an object of dislike  
to the ignorant, the wealthy to the poor, the virtuous to the wicked  
and honest women to such as are of a loose conduct), ibid. p. 268

वयं ग्राम्याः पशवो अरण्यचारिणां वध्याः (we, domestic animals, are a prey  
for wild beasts). Hence, when compounded with अ, दुः or सु, they  
are construed with gen., Panc. 176 दर्शय किञ्चिद्गम्यं स्थानं लुब्धकानाम्,  
Mrech. IV (p. 144) गुणेषु यतः परूपेण कथेयं न किञ्चिद्प्रायतनं गुणानाम्.

67. 3. quality, attribute, circumstance<sup>1</sup>). — When denoting a qua-  
3. Qua- lity or attribute it is = the abl. qualitatis of Latin grammar, but  
lity etc. the restrictions as to its employment in Latin do not exist in  
Sanskrit. So it is said (Kāçikā) अयि भवान्कमण्डलुना ह्यत्रमद्राक्षीत् (have  
you seen a disciple with a pitcher?), ibid. on P. 2, 3, 37 यो तद्गमिः  
स भुङ्के; so Hitop. 125 कोपः स्वल्पव्ययेन (a treasury with little expen-  
ses) comm. स्वल्पव्ययेन विशेषणो तृतीया; R. 3, 7, 3 विविधैर्दुर्मैः काननम् (a  
forest with manifold trees).

Examples of its attending a verb. — Then it has the nature of  
Lat. abl. modi or circumstantia. R. 2, 64, 47 स तु दिव्येन रूपेण स्व-  
र्गध्यातृहन्तिप्रम्, Panc. 161 वरो महता वाद्यप्रत्येनामञ्जलि (a bridegroom  
approaches with a great noise of music), ibid. 28 तस्य सकाशं गत्वा  
भ्रातृसङ्गैर्नैकत्र भक्षपापानिहृपाक्रियानिरेकस्यानाश्रयेण कालो नेवः [sc. त्वया] (go  
to him and while living brotherly with him on the same spot,

1) Pāṇ.'s sūtra is इत्थंभूतलं लक्षणं [sc. तृतीया], which is expounded by Kāç. =  
इत्थंभूतस्य लक्षणो to name the laxaṇa or mark, which makes known some-  
body or something as possessing such quality, property, nature etc." It  
includes therefore the notions *quality, attribute, circumstance*.

spend the time with eating, drinking, walking together), *ibid.* 162 अनेन वार्त्ताव्यतिक्रमेण रत्नो व्युदा (while discoursing thus, the night passed away)

Rem. 1. Note वर्तते with instrum. 'to behave in such a manner,' Panc. 56 तं मर्यादाव्यतिक्रमेण वर्तमायामालोच्य.

Rem. 2. Such instrumentals have often the character of ad-verbs and may be considered so (77). Among others we mention compounds in °वृत्तेण and °क्रमेण, when = 'as, by the way of.' Mr̥cch. V, p. 187 द्रुवीभूतं मन्ये पतति तल्लवृत्तेण गगनम् (methinks, the firmament dissolves and falls down as rain).

Rem. 3. In some turns the instrumental of circumstance may show something of the fundamental character of the sociative. So R. 2, 37, 18 लक्ष्मणो न सहयेन वनं गच्छस्व पुत्रक (with *L.* as your companion go to the forest, my son), *ibid.* 2, 30, 27 न देहि तत्र दुःखेन स्वर्गमप्यगिरोच्ये (I should forsake even heaven, my queen, if its attainment would be joint with grief of you). Similarly Panc. 309 तालहस्तयोर्वराः प्रभू-तैर्मत्स्यैर्व्यापादितैर्मत्स्यैः त्रिभूतैरुत्तमनवेलायां तस्मिन्नल्लग्नये मनायाताः (the fishermen arrived..... with a great number of fishes they had killed and bore on their head). Here we are, indeed, on the very boundary of the sociative and the instr. of quality

68. This instrumental is by far not so frequent as its equivalents in Latin and Greek, the attributes or accompanying circumstances generally finding their adequate expression in the bahuvrīhi-compound, see chapt. X. Qualities and dispositions of temper and mind are also signified by compounds, beginning with the particle त्, as संशोभम्, सञ्जुमानम्, cp. 184, R.; occasionally by periphrase, as Kām. 3, 3 समन्वितः कृपाया पर्या दीनमुद्धरेत् (with the utmost compassion he must succour the distressed).

69. 4. test or criterion. — Examples: Ragh. 15, 77 अन्वगीयन् श्रुतेति ज्ञानेन वपुषैव सा (her chastity was inferred from her pure body), R. 3, 12, 23 औदार्येणावगच्छामि निधानं तपसामिदम् (by the dignity of his person I conceive him a vessel of penance and self-control). Cp. Lat. *magno homines virtute metimur*.

70. 5. price or value. — Examples: Panc. 318 ततोऽज्ञाभिः प्रभृता ग्राह्येष्वापि गोभिर्महिषैर्महिषीभिर्बुधैः, Kāç. on P. 2, 3, 18 मद्येण वृष्टक्रोणातिः

Panc. 3 नाहं विद्याविक्रयं प्राप्स्यंशतेनापि करोमि, R. 2, 34, 40 अपक्रमणामेव सर्व-  
कामैरहं वृणो (I choose exile, were it at the price of all my wishes).

Likewise the instrum. is used to denote that, which is given in exchange for something: Panc. 152 मूलात् कश्चिदलुब्धितैर्लुब्धितांस्तितान् (who takes [from me] peeled sesam in exchange for unpeeled?)

Rem. 1. The last but one example admits however also of an other interpretation, as सर्वकामैः may signify »above all my wishes.” There are a good deal of instances proving, that Sanskrit had, especially in the ancient dialect, an instrum. of the thing surpassed of the same power as the so called *ablativus comparationis*. More on this subject see 107.

Rem. 2. The verb परिक्री (to hire) may be construed either P. 1, 4, 44.  
with the *instrum.* or with the *dative* of the wages; गतेन or प्रताय परिक्रीतः Both conceptions are logically right.

71. 6. way, by which. — Panc. 212 कतमेन मार्गेण प्रणष्टाः काकाः (in  
6. Way, by what direction the crows have disappeared?). By a common-  
which. place metaphor मार्गेण, पथा sim. are also used to signify the manner, in which one acts. Panc. I, 414 नराधिया द्युधोपदिष्टेन पथा न यान्ति ये.

72. 7. cause, motive, reason. — Examples: Daç. 198 कोऽपि कुमारः P. 2, 3, 23.  
7. Cau- बुधा तृषा च क्रियन् (some boy, vexed by hunger and thirst), Ch.  
sality (instru- Up. 4, 10, 3 स इ व्याधिनाऽनर्गितुं ह्ये (from sorrow he was not able to  
ment- eat), Çāk. IV भर्तुर्विप्रकृतापि रोषपातया मा स्म प्रतोषं गमः (even when  
his cau- injured by your husband you should not oppose him from wrath).  
sac.)

Causality is also expressed by the *ablativus*, and in some cases the latter is to be employed exclusively. But commonly both constructions are promiscuous and occasionally found together in the same sentence. Panc. IV, 34 नामृतं न विषं किञ्चिदेकां मुक्ता नितम्बिनीं । यस्याः सङ्गेन जीव्येत म्रियेत च विद्योमतः (nothing is ambrosia and poison at the same time, woman alone excepted, by whose union one lives, and the separation of whom causes death), Kathās. 29, 25 हर्षेण नष्टास्याः क्षुन्नं रोगतः (it is from joy she has no appetite, not from illness).

Rem. The *ablativus* is forbidden and accordingly the instrumen- P. 2, 3, 24 sq.  
tal is of necessity, if 1ly the cause or motive be at the same time the agent, see 102, 2ly if it be an abstract noun of the

*feminine* gender, expressing a quality. 1) It may thus be said वीर्येण or वीर्यमुक्तः (released by heroism), but only भिया पलायितः (he fled from fear). Hence often the abl. of a masc. and neuter and the instr. of the feminine range together, as R. 2, 70, 25 अभूव हस्य हृदये चिन्ता सुमहती तदा । त्वया चापि दूतानां स्वप्नस्यापि च दर्शनात्, or Prabodh. II, p. 31 बालः खल्वसि मया द्वापरान्ते दृष्टः । संप्रति कालविप्रकर्षद्विधार्थकप्रस्तवया च न सम्यक्प्रत्यभिज्ञानामि (as you were a boy, forsooth, I have seen you at the end of the Dvâpara-age, now by length of time and by my being vexed by old age I did not recognise you exactly). In scientific and philosophical works, commentaries and the like, ablatives in °त्वात् alternate with instrumentals in °तया in order to denote the cause or the moving principle.

**73.** Next to the instrumental of causality comes that, which *signifies by what side*. Like the Latin abl. partis it commonly depends on adjectives, but may also be the complement of the whole predicate. It is especially used to point out the *points of comparison* with verbs or nouns, which denote superiority or inferiority, likeness or difference.

*Instru-  
menta-  
lis par-  
tis.*

Examples: R. 1, 1, 55 रूपेण विकृतः (disfigured), Ch. Up. 2, 11, 2 महान्प्रज्ञया पशुभिर्भवति महान्कीर्त्या, Daç. 77 कलागुणैः समृद्धो बसुना नातिपुटो भवत् (he was rich in various kinds of knowledge and in good qualities, but not very bulky in earthly goods), Panc. 274 किमहमेताभ्यां शौर्येण रूपेण विद्याभ्यासेन कौशलेन वा हीनः (am I inferior to both of them either in valour or in outer appearance or in study or in cleverness?), Daç. 177 अभिज्ञानेन विभवेन राजान्तरङ्गभावेन च सर्वपा-

1) P. 2, 3, 25 perhaps admits of two interpretations. The words विभाषा गुणे ऽस्त्रियाम् may signify »optional, when expressing a quality, provided this quality is no feminine" or »optional, when expressing a quality; not at all, if [the motive be] a feminine." Moreover the term *strī* may denote as well *all* feminines, as only such, as have special feminine endings. — At all events, in practice, when signifying causality, the ablative with the special femin. ending °त्वाः is always avoided.



रानतीत्य ब्रते (he is surpassing all his citizens by his birth, his wealth and his being the king's confidant), Çāk. V अनुभवति हि सूर्यो पादपस्तीव्रमुष्णं शमयति परितपं ह्ययया संश्रितानाम् (the tree does tolerate the ardent glow of the sun on its summit to assuage by its shade the heat of those who come to it for shelter) In the last example, the instr. ह्ययया may also be accepted as the instrument. In practice indeed, the different shades of the how-case do not show themselves so sharply, as they are exhibited by the standard-types, cp. 64.

Rem. 1. Concurrent idioms denoting the side by which, are the ablative and the locative, especially if it be wanted to express the points of comparison. It is even allowed to use them side by side. So R. 1, 17, 13 two instrumentals are used together with an abl. (नेत्रसा यशम् वीर्यादत्यरिच्यत), Mhbh. 1, 16, 9 they range with a locative (द्वौ पुत्रौ विनता वेत्रे कटपुत्राधिको बले । तेनैवा वपुषा चैव).

Rem. 2. The instrumental is of necessity, when naming the part of the body, by which one suffers, as अक्षणा काणः (blind of one eye), पाणिना कुपिः, पादेन खन्नः. Ch. Up. 2, 19, 2' य एवं वेद नाङ्गेन चिह्नंति (he who knows so, is not crippled in any limb).

Rem. 3. With comparatives and the like the instrumental is equivalent to the Latin ablativus mensurae. Dac. 73 केनांग्रेनार्यकामान्तिप्रायो र्मः (by how much is duty superior to interest and pleasure?), Utp. on Varāh. Brhats (translation of Kern p. 7) अमुको ग्रह एतावद्विद्यतनैर्भूमौलादुपरि भ्रमति (such a planet moves so many yojanas

**74.** above the terrestrial globe).

Special  
con-  
struc-  
tion.

The instrumental is used in many idiomatic turns, most of which belong to the general heads described in the preceding paragraphs. Of them the most important are:

1. *to honour- to favour-, to attend on with* Çāk. I कलिदासप्रथितवस्तुन नवेन नाटकेनोपस्यातव्यमस्मानिः (we want to wait upon you with a new drama etc.), Panc. III, 139 स्वैर्मर्षिर्निगन्त्रितः [sc. कपोतेन शत्रुः].

2. *to swear-, to conjure by.* R. 2, 48, 23 पत्रैरपि शपामहे (we swear; even by our children); Mrech. III (p. 126) अस्मच्छरीरस्पृष्टिक्रिया प्रापितोऽसि;

Mhbh. 1, 131, 46 सत्येन-ते श्रये. — Likewise तेन सत्येन, an elliptical phrase = यद्यः यद्योक्तं सत्यं तेन सत्येन (as I have said the truth, by that truth), cp. Ch. Up. 3, 11, 2; Nala 5, 17—20.

3. *to boast on.* Mhbh. 2, 64, 1 परेषामेव यशसा श्लाघसे त्वम्.

4. *to live by.* M. 3, 162 नक्षत्रैर्यश्च जीवति (". a. an astrologer), Çāk. VII प्रापानामनिलेन वृद्धिः.

5. *to rejoice, to laugh, to wonder etc. at.* Mhbh. 1, 138, 71 प्रीये त्वयाहम् (you make me glad), Mudr. VII p. 221 गुणैर्न परितुष्यामो यस्य (with whose virtues I am not content), Kathās. 20, 43 तद्वास तेन स नृपः (the king laughed at it). Cp. साधु (bravo, well done) with instr. Mālat. I (p. 8) साधु वत्से साध्वनेन मत्प्रियाभियोगेन.

Rem. In the case of 4. and 5. the ablative may occasionally be made use of. That अजीव्, उपजीव्, हस्, नन्द्, शुच् may be transitives, has been stated 42, 4; the last (शोचति) is commonly construed so, and does but rarely comply with the instr.

Rem. 2. With रम्, क्रीड् and the like the instrum. may be either the sociative proper (then सह, समम् etc. may be added) or the karana. Ch. Up. 8, 12, 3 gives a fair instance of its standing on the bordering line of both acceptations तन्न-क्रीड-रममाणः स्त्रीभिर्वा यानैर्वा ज्ञातिभिर्वा (laughing [or eating], playing and rejoicing with women, carriages or relatives).

6. *to fill with.* Panc. 317 तेन भिक्षार्जितैः सन्तुर्भिर्भुक्षणेः कलशः संपूरितः (what was left of his store of barley, he had earned by begging, therewith he filled his bowl), Mudr. V p. 184 ते पांसुभिः पूर्यन्ताम्. — The genitive with words of filling is also met with, yet the general use prefers the instrumental, at least with पूरयति.

7. *to vanquish in (a battle, etc.).* Panc. 291 तं रिपुं युद्धेन परिभूय.

8. *to carry -, to keep -, to bear on (in, with.)* Panc. III, 202 रथकारः स्वकां भार्यां सत्तारां शिरसा वहत् (the cartwright carried his wife with her paramour on his head), Daç. 140 मत्पितृरुत्तमाङ्गमुत्सङ्गेन धारयन्ती.

Rem. In the cases of 7 and 8 the locative is the concurrent idiom. It is said promiscuously युद्धे and युद्धेन जितम्, स्कन्धे or स्कन्धेन धृतम्. Cp. Kumāras. 3, 22 भर्तुरात्मादाय मूर्ध्ना मदनः प्रतस्थे with Kād. I, p. 29 शिरसि कृत्वात्तम्. But always तुलया धृ »to hold on the balance", v. a. »to weigh, to compare."

9. It is said *अलैर्द्विज्यति* and *अल्लान्* (he plays at dice). Cp. also R. (Gorr.) 3, 30, 4 *हृदिधारामिर्वपन्तो मेवाः* with Mhbh. 13, 148, 2 *वर्तन्यो वक्ष्ये निर्मलं पयः*, Lat. *pluit lapides* or *lapidibus*. — Similarly *शपथं शपति* and *शपथेन* (to swear an oath).

Rem. In the old dialect of the Vedic mantras the instrum. attends on *पत्यते* and *भुन्* just as the abl. on Latin *potiri* and *fungi*, see DELBR. Abl. Loc. Instr. p. 65. To the instances adduced there I add the mantra in Âçv. Grhy. 1, 23, 19 *तन्मात्रतु तन्मात्रिणतु तेन भुक्षिषीय*.

75. 10.) the set phrases *किं प्रयोजनम्* (or *कार्यम्*), *कोऽर्थः*

sim., or in a negative form *न प्रयोजनम्* etc. are construed with the instr. of that, which „does not matter.”

Or even it is said simply *किं तेन* (what matters this?).

He, whom it does not matter, is put into the genitive.

Examples: Panc. 285 *किं मदीयेन रथकारत्वेन प्रयोजनम्* (what profit have I being cartwright?), Mālav. III (p. 81) *न मे मालविकया कश्चिदर्थः* (I have nothing 'o meddle with M.), R. 2, 73, 2 *किं तेन कार्यं मम राज्येन* (what matters me the kingdom?), Daç. 140 *त मेऽनयास्ति चिन्तया फलम्*, Mudr. I (p. 21) *अप्राप्तेन च कातरूपेण च गुणः स्यात्सानुक्रमेण कः* (what profit may be derived from an unwise and coward [officer], though he be faithful?), Pat. I, p. 7 *किं न एतेन* (what matters us this?), Çāk. V *किं पितृकुलया त्वया*.

In the same way it is said *किं करोमि तेन* *quid faciam eo?* Panc. 276 *किं व्याधिग्रस्तेन मया करिष्यामि*.

Rem. 1. Like *अर्थ*, its derivative *अर्थिन्* complies with instrum. when = „wanting-, being eager for -, coveting.” R. 3, 18, 4 *भार्यार्थी* (he wants to be married), Mudr. V (p. 166) *एतेषां मध्ये केचिद्विद्वेः कोषदन्तिभ्यामर्थिनः केचिद्विषयेषां* (some of them long after the foe's treasures and elephants, some others are coveting his domains).

Rem. 2. Note *परवन्तु* with instrum. „dependent on, in the power of,” R. 3, 18, 9 *परवान्भ्रात्रा*, Mālat. VI (p. 97) *परवानस्मि साधुसेन*. Yet gen. and loc. are also available, cp. *आयन्न* 124.

76. 11.) with *अलम्*, *अस्तु*, *कृतम्* the instrum. expresses a prohibition or an invitation to cease or to stop.

Vikram. I अलमाक्रन्दितेन (stop your cries), Çāk. I अथवा कृतं संदेहेन (well, no hesitation more), Mahāv. II (p. 25) अस्तु दुरासदेन तपसा (cease your unparalleled penance).

77. Many instrumentals have more or less the character of adverbs, as प्रायेण (mostly), सुखेन (easily), दुःखेन and कृच्छ्रेण (hardly), सर्वात्मना (with all my heart), etc. So R. 1, 13, 34 अवत्तया न दातव्यं कस्यचिल्लोल्यापि वा (one should not bestow a gift in a disdainful manner nor in jest), Panc. II, 204 मित्राणि करोत्यत्र न कौटिल्येन वर्तते (he makes friends and does not converse with them falsely), Mrech. VII (p. 237) क्षेमेण वृत्तं ब्रान्धवान् (auspicious be your way to your kinsmen), Mālat. X (p. 165) काम-न्दक्यापि नातः परं वत्सावियोगेन जीवितव्यम् (nor can K. live longer either without her daughter).

78. III. The instrumental of time serves to denote in <sup>P. 2, 3, 6.</sup> *what time* something is accomplished. Not rarely this conception coincides with that of the *time, after which* something is happening. मासेनानुवाकोऽधीतः (the chapter was learned in (after) a month).

In-  
strum.  
of time.

The same applies to space. क्रोशेनानुवाकोऽधीतः<sup>1)</sup>.

Examples : Panc. 2 द्वादशभिर्वर्षैर्याकर्णं श्रूयते (v. a. grammar requires twelve years to be mastered), ibid. 237 कतिपर्यैरेवाहोर्भिर्मयूर एव स ब्रह्म-  
यान्संवृत्तः (in a few days he [the crow] grew strong like a peacock), Daç. 159 ततोऽल्पीयसा कालेन राज्ञः प्रियमहिष्येकं पुत्रमसूत (after some time the king's chief queen was delivered of a son), R. 1, 13, 35 ततः कैशिद-  
ङ्गात्रैरुपयाताः महोत्तितः, Panc. 282 तयोर्वृत्ततोर्ध्वगतनद्यमात्रेपाश्रयतः काचिन्नदी  
समुपस्थिता (as they went on, after no more than two yojanas the  
couple came in sight of some river). So दिनैः, दिवसैः etc. = 'in pro-  
cess of time.'

1) The difference between this *instrum. of time* and the above mentioned *acc. of time* (54) is illustrated by these examples of the Kāçikā: It is said मासेना(क्रोशेना)नुवाकोऽधीतः, but मासमधीतोऽनुवाको न चानेन गृहीतः, for if the subject ceases the action before having reached its aim, the instrumental may not be employed."

Rem. 1. The fundamental conception seems here to be that of concomitancy. Hence it may be explained, how the third case occasionally denotes even *at what time*, as R. 1, 72, 12 एकाह्ना (at one and the same day) रात्रपुत्रीणां चतसृणां पाणीनां चत्वारो रात्रपुत्राः, and such standing phrases as तेन कालेन, तेन समयेन, which are especially frequent in Buddhistic and Jain books.

Rem. 2. The naxatra or constellation, under which something occurs, may be put indifferently in the third or the seventh case: P. 2, 3, 4; cp. 4, 2, 4. पुष्ये or पुष्ये पायसमश्नीयात्. Examples of the instrum. Âçv. Grhy. 3, 5, 1 अथातो ऽध्यायोपाकरणमोदधोनां प्रादुर्गवि अत्रापोन..... हस्तेन वा, Pat. I, 231 कतरेण त्रिव्येण गत.

## CHAPTER V. Dative. <sup>1)</sup>

**79.** The dative or fourth case serves to point out the *destination*, and therefore it generally does answer to English *to* and *for*, Latin *ad* or *in* with acc. Yet, if it be wanted to express the destination of a real going or moving, the accusative (39) or locative (134) are commonly preferred, although the dative may be used even then, ग्रामाय गच्छति being as correct as ग्रामं गच्छति. So Ragh. P. 2, 3, 12. 12, 7 वनाय गच्छ, Daç. 76 नगरायोदचलम्, Mudr. II कुसुमपुराय कर्मकं प्रेषयामि (I will send Karabhaka to Pâtaliputra), Kathâs. 47, 92 सङ्गत्य युद्धं ययतुः स्त्रनिवेशायोभे बले (after ceasing the battle both armies retired to their encampments). — With causative verbs of moving, as those of *bringing*, *throwing*, *casting*, this kind of dative is frequent. R. 3, 25, 27 प्रासाङ्गलान्परश्वधान् । चित्तिपुः परमक्रुडा रामाय रत्नोच्चराः, Mâlav. III (p. 76) अगोकाय पदं प्रहिणोति (she lifts up her foot to the açoka-tree), Mhbh. 1, 114, 2 विदुराय चैव पाण्डुः प्रेषयामास तठनम्.

Rem. The aim, reached, attained is never put in the dative (39) <sup>2)</sup>

1) Compare DELBRÜCK's monography on the employment of the dative in the Rgvedasanhita in Kuhn's Zeitschr. XVIII, p. 81—106. Monographies on the syntax of the dative in classic Sanskrit are not known to me.

2) Cp. Pat. I, 448, vârtt. 4 on P. 2, 3, 12.

**80.** In the great majority of cases the destination purported by the dative, has an acceptation more or less figurative. The different kinds of datives, which display this character, may be arranged in two distinct groups, viz. I, the so-called *dative of concern or interest*, II the *dative of the purpose*. The former has almost the same functions as the dative of modern European languages, the sphere of the latter is that of the *dativus finalis* in Latin.

Dat. of  
the des-  
tina-  
tion.

Both are but varieties of the fundamental notion, as will be made plain by these examples, which contain some datives of the kind I and II, construed with the verb *to go*. I. Hitop. p. 42 न देवाय न विषाय न बन्धु-गो न चात्मने । कपणस्य धनं गतिं त्रिदितस्करगार्थिवैः (the riches of the miser go neither to a god nor to a brahman, nor to his family nor to himself, because of fire, thieves, the king). II. R. 1, 46, 7 इत्युक्त्वा तस्मै गयो (after these words he set out to penance, viz. in order to do penance), Ven. II (p. 39) गच्छ त्वमात्मन्यापाराय (go to your business).

**81.** I. The **dative of concern** denotes the person or thing concerned by the action, in whose behalf or against whom it is done, or who is anyhow interested by it <sup>1)</sup>.

Dat. of  
con-  
cern.

It is put 1.) to transitive verbs as a.) those of *giving* and *offering*, b.) of *showing*, c.) of *telling*, *speaking*, *announcing*, *promising*, etc., d.) of *doing* or *wishing* good or evil, and the like, for expressing the so-called „remote object.”

Remote  
object.

Examples: a.) R. 2, 40, 14 त्रामात्याधर्मानि च सीतायै श्वशुरा ददौ; Pauc 173 राजपुत्राय त्रिचतुर्विंशत्यनाय समर्पयामास (the king's officer gave the money to Upabhuktadhana), Cāk. III दमनिस्त्विम्य उपहरामि, Mrech. I (p. 21) कृतां मया गृहदेवताभ्यो अन्निः, — b.) Kathās. 29, 32 अदर्शयन्नित्रे मखीम् (she presented her friend to her father); — c.) Ch. Up. 3,

1) Cp. P. 1. 4, 32 कर्मणा यमभिप्रेति स संप्रदानम् and Patanjali on that sūtra I, 330.

11, 4 तद्वैतद्वयं प्रज्ञापय उवाच प्रज्ञापतिर्मनवे मनुः प्रज्ञायः; Kathās. 53, 139 ब्रालाय.... तद्वै (the matter was told to the boy), Çāk. VII तन्नस्यै कथयति (he tells her so); Âçv. Grhy. 1, 22, 10 तदाचार्याय वेदयति (he should deliver to his teacher [the alms he has received]); Nala 3, 1 तेभ्यः प्रतिज्ञाय नलः करिष्य इति (he promised them, he would do so); — d.) Mudr. I (p. 44) प्रीताभ्यः प्रकृतिभ्यः प्रियमिच्छन्ति राजानः; Mhbh. 1, 3, 178 तस्मै प्रतिकुरुषु (requite him this).

2.) to intransitives as those of *pleasing*, *bowing* and *submitting*, *appearing* etc. So Panc. 282 रोचते मत्तम् (it pleases me), Çāk. V यया गुरुभ्यो रोचते; Nala 5, 16 देवेभ्यः प्रान्नस्तिर्भूत्वा; R. 2, 25, 4 येभ्यः प्रणमसे पुत्र ते च त्वामगिरक्षन्तु (and may those, to whom you bow, my son, preserve you); Nir. 2, 8 तस्मै देवता.... प्रादुर्भूत्वा (a deity appeared to him).

**82.** In these and similar instances it is not the use of the dative, which should be noticed, *but the faculty of employing in a large amount of cases instead of it some other case, mostly a genitive or a locative* (cp. 129 and 145). Some words even seem wholly to avoid the dative of concern; so विक्री (to sell) is generally construed with the locative of the purchaser, क्षम (to pardon) with a genitive, adjectives as प्रिय, अनुद्वय, उचित, युक्त are as a rule construed with a genitive, etc.

**83.** In some special cases the use of the dative is enjoined by vernacular grammarians; of the kind are:

Special cases of the dat. of concern.

1. The dat. with हित (good for). Cp. Pat. I, 450; Pāṇ. 5, 1, 5 तस्मै हितम्. Even here the gen. may be used, see f. i. R. 3, 36, 24.

2. The dative of the creditor with धारयति (to owe). P. 1, 4, 35.

3. Some utterances of ritual, almost = „hail” to — as नमः, स्वाहा, स्वधा, वषट् — likewise most phrases of blessing and salutation. They are construed with a dative, but

some of them<sup>1)</sup> either with dat. or with genitive. P. 2, 3, 16, 2, 3, 73.  
 नमो रुद्राय, स्वाहा देवेभ्यः, स्वधा पितृभ्यः, स्वस्ति प्रजाभ्यः, आयुष्यं तुभ्यम् or  
 तव भूयात्, कुशलं देवदत्तस्य and देवदत्ताय. Vikram. p. 62 स्वागतं देव्यै. In  
 the ninth act of the Mrcch. Cāradatta greets the judges with an  
 अधिकृतेभ्यः स्वस्ति, wherea the chief judge answers him स्वागतमार्यस्य.  
 But R. 3, 24, 21 स्वस्ति is construed with a gen. स्वस्ति गोब्राह्मणानां  
 च लोकानां च.

4. Verbs of *anger, jealousy, injuring, discontent* agree P. 1, 4, 37.  
 with the dative of the object of the animosity. Mbbh.  
 1, 3, 186 नृपतिस्तन्नकाय चुक्रोध ह (the king felt angry towards Taxaka),  
 Kuthās. 17, 44 नास्यै चुक्रोध, Āpast. 1, 1, 14 तस्मै न दुःश्लोत्कदाचन (him  
 he should never offend), Ait. Br. 8, 23, 11 तस्मादेवं विदुषे ब्राह्मणायेन चक्रुषे  
 न तत्रियो दुःश्लेत्, Kād. I, 217 असूयन्ति मच्चिषोपदेशाय (they find fault with  
 the advice of their ministers), Mahāv. 1 (p. 18) स्पृह्यामि राज्ञे दण्डनाय  
 (I am jealous of king Daṣaratha).

Rem. Yet with असूयति (to find fault with) and दुःश्लति (to hurt)  
 the acc., with those of anger and jealousy the gen. and loc. or  
 प्रति are also available. When compounded, दुर् and क्रुध् must agree P. 1, 4, 38.  
 with acc. देवदत्ताय क्रुधति but देवदत्तमभिक्रुधति.

5. Some other verbs, enumerated by Pānini, viz. प्रत्याह् (to praise), P. 1, 4, 34.  
 ह् (to conceal), शप् (to swear, to conjure) and स्या. Here the da-  
 tive is required of him, whom it is wanted to inform of some-  
 thing, f. i. देवदत्ताय प्रत्याहते 'he praises to N.N.' [here N.N. is the  
 person addressed], Prabodh. III, p. 66 ब्रुतेभ्यः शतशः शप्ये (I swear  
 a hundred times to the Buddhas), Naish. 1, 49 अपहृद्यानस्य जनाय नि-  
 त्तमधीरताम् (concealing from the people his unsteadiness). -- As to  
 स्या, it is not plain, what meaning it has here. By comparing  
 P. 1, 3, 23 with the examples adduced there by Kāçikā, तिष्ठते with  
 a dat. may be = 'he presents or he discovers himself to<sup>2)</sup>,' but

1) Viz. आयुष्य, मदू, भद्रू, कुशल, सुख, अर्य, हित and their synonyms  
 (vārtt. on P. 2, 3, 73).

2) The examples of Kāç. on 1, 3, 23 are तिष्ठते कन्या इन्नेभ्यः । तिष्ठते वृषलो  
 ग्रामपुत्रेभ्यः; here तिष्ठते is said to be = प्रकाशयत्यात्मानम्.



स्या with a dat. may also have had the meaning »to have faith in —, affection to,” Çvetâçv. Up. 3, 2 एको हि हृद्रो न हि द्वितीयाय तस्युः, Naish. 7, 57.

6. P. 1, 4, 41 enjoins a dat. with the compound verbs अनुगृणाति and प्रतिगृणाति, being technical terms of the ritual »to utter [a certain formula] after —, in reply to another.” 1).

7. P. 1, 4, 30 mentions a dat. with verbs of *casting one's nativity* etc., like राध्, ईन्, to denote him, on whose behalf this is done. We have here an instance of the dative of profit, treated in the following paragraph.

**84.** Sometimes the dative involves the notion of some profit or damage caused by the action (*dativus commodi et incommodi*). Ch. Up. 6, 16, 1 अग्रहार्योस्तेनमकार्योत्पिरशुम्भै तपत (he has taken something, he has committed a theft, heat the hatchet for him), Kâm. 3, 9 आधिष्याधिपरीताय अय प्रो वा विनाशिनो को हि नाम शरीराय धमपितं समाचरेत् (for who, indeed, would do wrong for the sake of his body, a thing beset by sorrow and disease and destined to die some day or other?), Daç. Uttar. page 19 of the ed. of Damaruvallabhaçarman अस्यै दस्यमयप्रभृत्यभ्युपेतं मया (from this day I have come in bondage of her), Çâk. III अहमपि तावद्वैतानिकं ग्रान्मुदकमस्यै गोतमोहस्ते विसर्तयिष्यामि.

Here, as in **82**, it is not the dative, that is remarkable, but the faculty of substituting for it the genitive, as Çâk. III कस्येदमनुलेपनं मृगालवन्ति च नलिनीपत्राणि नीयन्ते (whom this ointment and these lotus-leaves are sent for?). The dat. *commodi* is often periphrased by अर्थम्, अर्थे, कृते sim.

**85.** Verbs and nouns of *befitting, suiting, counterpoising* are construed with the dative. So the verbs कल्पते, संपद्यते [vârtt. 2 on P. 2, 3, 3], राध्यति, प्रभवति, the nouns प्रभु, अलम् and the like

1) The old language seems to have allowed more of such datives with compound verbs, so as to be the counterpart of Latin *instat hosti, occurrit mihi* and the like. So Āpast. I, 14, 15 विषमगतायामुर्वे नाभिवायम् ibid. II, 11, 3 राज्ञा दण्डाय प्रतिपद्येत [instead of दाडे प्र°]. A curious dative of the same kind, it seems, is Daç. i49 यावदायुर्त्रयायै देवतायै प्रतिशयिष्यामि.

[P. 2, 3, 16 and Pat. on this sūtra I, p. 450, vārtt. 2]. So Daṣ. 73 श्रेयसे ऽनल्पाय कल्पते (he is fit for a considerable share of heavenly blessing); Çāk. VI कल्पिष्यमाणा मल्ले कल्पाय वसुन्धरा; R. (Gorr.) 5, 25, 7 तस्य नैर्ऋतराजस्य भार्यायै किं न कल्पसे (why should you not suit to be the wife of the king of the infernal regions?); Âpast. 1, 12, 13 नरकाय राध्वनि (he becomes fit for hell); Kumâras. 6, 59 भवत्संभावनीत्याय परितोषाय.... नाङ्गानि प्रभवन्ति मे (my body is not strong enough to bear the joy, you have caused me by your homage); Vas. Dh. adhy. 8 अलग्न्याधेयाय नानाहिताग्निः स्यात् (if he have the wealth to perform the *agnyâ-dheya* sacrifice, he must keep the fires); Pat. अलं or प्रभुर्मन्त्रो मन्त्राय (one athlete, is a match for another).

Rem. With some adjectives of competency the genitive may also be used, especially with पर्याप्त and शक्त, as Var. Brh. 32, 4 शक्ताऽहं नायं खेदस्य, R. 3, 38, 9 रागान्नान्यद् अलं लोके पर्याप्तं तस्य रक्षणः

**86**  
Old da-  
tives.

It is likely, that the genitive had not encroached so much on the dative's sphere of employment in the dialect of the brâhmanas and of ancient epic poetry, as afterwards. In some instances the dative is no more used in the classical language, after having been employed so in the archaic dialect.

Of the kind are a.) the dative of the agent of kṛtyas. It seems to be restricted to the oldest dialect, that of the vedic mantras. Rgv. I, 31, 5 उद्यतमुचे भवसि अद्यायः (you are worshipful to him who holds the spoon uplifted). Cp. DELBR.'s monography, p. 90.

b.) the dative with the adjectives of friendship and the contrary. Rgv. 7, 36, 5 इदं नमो हृदाय प्रेक्षम्. The classic construction is here gen. or locative. See Delbr. l. l. p. 90.

c.) the dative with श्रद्धा (to have faith, to trust), श्रु (to listen), see Delbr. l. l. p. 84.

In classic Sanskrit the person trusted is put in the gen. or loc., the thing believed in the acc., and when = "to approve" or "to welcome," श्रद्धा is of course a transitive, as Kathâs. 5, 114; 46, 136. On the classic construction, of श्रु see 95, 4<sup>c</sup>, 126 b). Its desiderative श्रुष्यते (to listen) is construed with a dat. in the Chândo-

gya Upanishad (7, 5, 2) तस्मै शुश्रूषन्ते, but in classic Sanskrit it is mostly a transitive, even when meaning *to obey*, Çāk. IV शुश्रूषस्व गुह्यम्

d.) a dative with substantives, to denote *the possessor*, cp. English "a son to me." Rgv. 1, 31, 2 त्रिभुर्विश्वस्मै भुवनाय (ruler of the whole universe); Ch. Up. 4, 3, 6 यस्मै वा एतदन्नं तस्मा एतन्नं दत्तम् (you have not given the food to him, to whom it belongs). — This construction has long subsisted in the case of the possessor being a personal pronoun, especially in epic poetry. Mhbh. 1, 51, 5 पिता मह्यम्, R. 1, 54, 11 अन्नं मह्यम् instead of मयि; Mhbh. 1, 151, 39 नानुज्ञां मे युधिष्ठिरः प्रयच्छति वधे तुभ्यम् (Yudh. refuses me the permission of killing you), ibid. 1, 111, 14 दर्शनं मह्यम्, R. 1, 13, 4; 2, 32, 8, etc.

NB. In the brāhmaṇa-works it is sometimes impossible to decide whether a dative or a genitive has been employed. Both cases may formally coincide in the singular of the feminines in ञ्मा, ँई, उ (ँई, उँ). In the dialect of these books the gen. and abl. of the singular may end in ऐ, just as the dative does; स्त्रियै in the brāhmaṇa-works = classic स्त्रियै, or स्त्रियाः. See KUHN, *Zeitschr.* XV, p. 420 sqq., AUFRECHT p. 428 of his edition of the Aitareyabrāhmaṇa.

**87.** II. The **dative of the purpose or aim** is of very frequent occurrence. It may be made use of always, if one wants to denote *either* the thing wished for *or* the action intended. Of the former kind are such datives as फलेभ्यो याति (he goes out for fruits), यूषाय दारु (wood for a sacrificial stake), कुण्डलाय हिरण्यम् (gold for a ring), Hitop. 95 उपायो जीवनाय.

In the latter case, the *nomen actionis* itself is put in the dative and has the power of an infinitive. Çāk. I अर्तित्राणाय वः शस्त्रं न प्रहर्तुमनागसि (your weapon serves to protect the afflicted, not to hurt the innocent). Here of two actions equally aimed at, one is expressed

by the dative of a *nomen actionis*, the other by an infinitive. The third concurrent idiom is using periphrase by means of such words as **अर्थम्, निमित्तम्** = „for the sake of.” Prabodh. V, p. 100 वेदसंरक्षणाय नास्तिकपक्षप्रतिक्षेपार्थं च शास्त्राणां संहत्यमस्ति (the systems [of philosophy] keep together for the sake of guarding the Veda and combating the party of the atheists).

Other examples of the infinitive-like dative. — Panc. 58 गुहाय प्रस्थितः, Prabodh. V, p. 113 द्दानो ज्ञातीनामुदकक्रियायै भागीर्षीमवतरामः (now, let us plunge into the Ganges for the bathing-ceremony for our kinsmen), Hitop. 7 एतेषामस्मत्पुत्राणां नीतिशास्त्रोपदेशाय भवन्तः प्रमाणम् (you have full power to instruct these my sons in the doctrine of politics so as you like best), Ven. I, p. 24 त्वर्ते मे मनः संग्रामावतारणाय, Kathās. 26, 33 दिष्ट्या सास्थेव नगरी तत्प्राप्त्यै चायमेवं मे..... विहगो वाह्नोक्तः (thank God, that is the town, for attaining which I have placed myself on the back of this bird), Mālat. VI, p. 87 जगर्ति दंष्ट्राय..... भुङ्क्ते, Kām. I, 66 गुरुस्तु विद्याधिगमाय सेव्यते, Mrech. VII (p. 238) एवं पुनर्दर्शनाय (—till we meet again).

**88.** Some idioms, though implied by the general description, given in the preceding paragraph, are worth special notice.

1. The datives of abstract nouns, when expressing „to serve to, to conduce to.” They often make up the whole predicate. — Examples: Pat. I, 11 नैव तद् दोषाय भवति नाभ्युदयाय (v. a. it is neither good nor evil), Panc. III, 103 परीषकारः पुण्याय पापाय परीडनम्, *ibid.* p. 192 लघूनामपि संश्रयो रक्षायै भवति (even if weak people keep together, it may afford protection). Cp. the marriage-mantra in Âçv. Grhy. 1, 7, 3 गृणामि ते सौभाग्याय हस्तम् (I take your hand for happiness'sake). — Compare Latin *haec res tibi est laudi*.

Similarly **संपद्यते** with dat. = „to turn, to change into”, कल्पते (to suit) see 85.

Rem. 1. A vārtt. on Pāṇ. 2, 3, 13 gives a special rule on the

dative, when serving to explain a prognostic as वाताय कपिला विषु-  
दातपायतिलोहिनी। पीता वर्षाय विज्ञेया दुर्भिक्षाय सिता भवेत्.

Rem. 2. The person, to whom something will conduce to good, evil etc., is put in the genitive: तवैतद्यशसे (this will be to your glory), cp. 130. — In the archaic dialect, however, we have two datives, one of the concern and one of the aim, just as in Latin. A. V. 1, 29, 4 राट्टाय मरु बध्यतां सप्तमेभ्यः पराभवे (let I put it on [viz. the *manī*], for acquiring my kingdom for myself and defeat for my rivals); Rgv. 2, 5, 1; Ait. Br. 2, 3, 3 देवेभ्यो वै पशवो ऽन्नायायांलभ्याय. नातिष्ठन्त (the sacrificial victims did not stand still to the gods for the sake of being used as food and immolated).

Rem. 3. With मन्यते (to hold for) the predicative dative *may* be used instead of the acc. (32, c), if contempt is to be expressed; names of animated beings are excepted and should therefore be put exclusively in the acc. So Pāṇini (2, 3, 17). Kac. न त्वा तृणं or तृणाय मन्ये। बुसम् or बुसाय; yet it allows the dat. of प्रवृत्ति; न त्वा श्वानं or शुने मन्ये. Instances of this dative in literature, I have but found for तृणाय, see Petr. Dict. s. v. and Dac. 88 कुत्रे-  
रदत्तस्तृणाय मत्वार्यपत्तिम् »Kub. does not care a straw for Arth”

89. 2y. The dative of the aim aspired after with verbs P. 1, 4, 36.  
of *wishing, striving, endeavouring*, sim.

Examples: R. 2, 95, 17 नावोद्धार्यै न राट्टाय स्पृह्ये (I do not long for Ay. nor for the kingdom), Spr. 128 तथापि रामो लुलुभे मृगाय (nevertheless R. aspired after the deer), Çāk. V मनोरथाय नाशसे (I do not hope for [the fulfilling of] my wish), R. 1, 18, 57 इच्छाम्यनुमृहीतोऽहं त्वदर्थं परिवृढ्ये (it is in your behalf I wish to grow mighty), Mālav. I, p. 15 तदन्वेषणाय यत्तिष्ये (I will try to find her out)

Rem. All these verbs of course admit also of accusative, if some thing, and of infinitive if some action be aimed at; इच्छति स्त्रियम्। इच्छति भोक्तुम्.

- 90 3y. The infinitive-like dative with verbs of *beginning, resolving, being able* (f. i. शक्) and with those of *ordering to* and *appointing to*.

Examples: Dac. 157 रातमन्दिरद्वारे चित्ताधिरोग्रहपायोपक्रमिष्यसे (you shall

begin to ascend the funeral pile at the gate of the king's palace), *ibid.* 126 प्रावर्तत प्राप्याय (he commenced to take an oath), *Prab.* V p. 102 तेन जीवोत्सर्गयि व्यवसितम् (he has resolved to die), *Daç.* 192 सा चैयं कथा क्षत्रियस्यार्कषायाश्रकत् (and this tale was fit to win the warrior), *Kumâr.* 4, 39 देहविमुक्तये स्थिता रतिः (Rati, being ready to give up life); — Çāk. I दुहितर्मतिगिस्तकारवादिष्य (having charged his daughter with the reception of guests), *Kathâs.* 15, 82 रावणो-च्छिन्तये देवैर्नियोजितः (he was appointed by the gods to destroy Râvana).

Even with verbs of *promising*. *Prabodh.* II, p. 24 प्रतिज्ञात सामात्येन विवेकेन प्रबोधचन्द्रोदयाय (Viveka and his minister have engaged themselves to rouse the moon of enlightening).

91. In short, in Sanskrit datives of nomina actionis (*bhâvavacanâni*) do often duty of infinitives. As they, however, are always felt as noun-cases, they agree with the genitive of their object. But in the ancient dialect many of them had verbal construction. More ample information about them will be given in the chapter on the infinitive.

92. Time-denoting datives may serve for expressing a time to come, when a limit of something to be done. *Mâlav.* V, p. 139 मया..... वत्सराय निवर्तनीयो निर्गलस्तुरङ्गमो त्रिसर्जितः (I have set at entire liberty the horse, that it might be brought back after a year).

Of a similar nature is this dative in *R.* 2, 62, 17 (Kausalyâ speaks) वनवासाय रामस्य पञ्चरात्रो ऽत्र गणयते यः शोकहन्तहर्षायाः पञ्चवर्षोपमो मम » we count now on R.'s exile but five nights, which seem to me as many years."

## CHAPTER VI. Ablative <sup>1)</sup>.

93. The fifth case or ablative serves to denote the *whence*,

1) Comp. DELBRÜCK *Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis*, p. 1—27.

General view of the ablative. and is therefore the very opposite of the dative. Nevertheless both cases are formally identical in the dual and the plural.<sup>1)</sup> In the singular the form of the ablative often coincides with that of the genitive. It is but the ablatives in °आत्, that are exclusively expressive of the fifth case. Moreover those made by means of the adverbial suffix °तः are not seldom preferred to the regular ablatives of the singular, ambiguousness being wholly excluded from them.

For easiness' sake we will treat of this case under four general heads, I abl. of separation, II abl. of distance, III abl. of origin and cause, IV abl. expressing „on what side.” In all of them, however, the unity of the fundamental conception is evident, and sometimes one may account for the same ablative in more than one way.

94. I. The ablative, then, is wanted to express, *from* or *out of* what place there is a starting and moving.<sup>2)</sup>:  
 Ablative expressive of the whence, from, out of.  
 a.) in its proper sense, as Panc. 21 अहमस्मादनादन्तुमिच्छामि (I wish to get out of this forest), Kādamb. I, 21 क्षितिपतिरास्या-  
 नमपउपादुन्नस्यो (the king got up from his hall of audience), Panc.  
 p. 42 स्वसज्जो ग्रामादव्यागताम् (— returning from the village), Kathās.  
 29, 179 बल्लभोतः समागता, Çāk. I स्यानादनुच्चलन् (without moving from

1) In the dual the same form discharges even the functions of three: abl., instr. and dative. As we cannot doubt, that -*bhyām* and -*bhyas* contain the same element - *bhi*, which is in the suffix - *bhis* and Greek -*φι*, it is upon the neuter territory of the instrumental, that the two contrarious conceptions of abl. and dat. must have met together.

2) Pāṇini, in his lively way, gives this definition of the sphere of the ablative: ध्रुवमपाय अपादानम् > if there be a withdrawal, that which stays is *apādāna*."

the place), *ibid.* III न च निम्नादिव मलिनं निवर्तते मे ततो हृदयम् (and my heart does not come back from thence as little as water from below), Kathās. 72, 175 निर्गमान्मर्त्याः, Daç. 29 आन्दोलिकाया अवतीर्य (descending from the swing).

95. *b.)* in its manifold applications to kindred conceptions. Of the kind are:

1. *to see, hear, speak etc. from a spot.* R. 2, 7, 2 अयोध्यां मन्यरा तस्मात्प्रासादादन्वैक्षत (Mantharā let go her looks over Ay. from the platform) <sup>1)</sup>.

2. *to fall from, to waver from, to swerve from etc.* गृयाद्भ्रष्टः "a beast that has swerved from its flock". Var. Brh. 9, 44 पतति न मलिनं खगत् (no water falls down from heaven). So often with metaphor. Ch. Up. 4, 4, 5 न सत्याद्गाः (you have not swerved from the truth), Kathās. 25, 179 निश्चयान्न चचाल सः (v. a. he did not give up his purpose), Mudr. III, p. 126 चाणक्यतः स्वस्तितभक्तिगहं मुखेन तेषामि नोर्यम् (I will easily vanquish the Maurya, for he has withdrawn his affection from C.). Compare the Latin *causa cadere*.

3. *to take, to receive from.* M. 4, 252 गृह्णीयात्साधुतः सदा (he never must accept but from an honest man), Panc. 48 क्षुरभाण्डा-क्षुरमेकं सगाकृत्य (he took a razor from his box), *ibid.* 286 कुतोऽपि धनिकात्किञ्चिद् द्रव्यमादाय (— raised some money from a money-lender), Kathās. 29, 47 मया चैतान्यत्रापानि तातात्. Likewise *to marry from*: Kathās. 24, 152 न स्मरं परिपोष्यामि कुलायादृजतादृशात्.

4. *to get information -, to hear -, to learn from.* P. 1, 4, Panc. 216 स्वज्ञनेभ्यः सुतविनाशं श्रुत्वा, Daç. 68 कुतश्चिसंलपतो जनसमाज्ञादु-<sup>29</sup>पल्लय (— learnt from a group of conversing people), Ch. Up. 1, 8, 7 इन्ताहमेतद्भवतो वेदानि (well, let me know this from the Reverend) <sup>2)</sup>.

5. *to ask, to wish from.* Kathās. 25, 137 केनाग्नौ वाञ्छितं भूपात् (who has asked the king for some water?), Kām. 1, 41 लुब्धकादीत-लोभेन मृगो मृगयते वधम् (by its eagerness for music the deer seeks

1) See vārtt. 1 and 2 on P. 2, 3, 28 in Pat. I, p. 455.

2) The commentaries explain the rule of Pān. 1, 4, 29, so as to make an artificial distinction between the constructions with gen. and with abl., not thought of by Pānini himself.



death from the hunter), Mhbh. 1, 159, 17 वाचमानाः परादन्नं परिधात्रेमहि श्रवत्.

6. the so called partitive ablative, see 116 R. 1.

NB. In the cases 3—6 the genitive is the concurrent idiom, with those of *asking* also the accus. (46).

96. Ablative of separation. The ablative also attends words of *separation* and *disjoining* to denote from whence there is a withdrawal, as Kathās. 72, 13 भवद्भ्यो वियोजितः (separated from you).

As we have shown above (62), the instrumental is here the concurrent idiom.

The following examples may illustrate the various applications of this employment.

a.) *to draw off, to sever; to disagree with.* Panc. 50 संतोषकं प्रभोर्विश्लेषयामि, Mudr. IV p. 136 चन्द्रगुप्तादपरताः सन्तः (being disinclined to C.) — b.) *to release of.* Panc. 45 तां ग्रन्थनाद्विमुच्य, Mahāv. I, p. 9 मेयनया तस्मादेनमो निर्मुच्यत (she has now been released from that sin), — c.) *to deprive of.* R. 2, 8, 25 असावत्यन्तनिर्भगस्तत्र पुत्रो भविष्यति सुखेभ्यश्च राजवंशाच्च (he will be wholly spoliated [lit. disinherited], your son, of enjoyments, yea, of all connection with the royal family), M. 5, 161 मा.... पतिलोकाच्च हेष्यते, Panc. II, 117 स्वर्गाद्दृश्यते (he forfeits heaven), cp. 95, 2. — d.) those of *desisting from, stopping, ceasing.* Kumār. 3, 58 योगादुपराम (he desisted from his exertions), Daç. 132 विरम कर्मणाः अस्मान्मलीमयात्, Kumār. 5, 73 निवर्तयास्मादसदीप्ति-तान्मनः (turn away your mind from this bad design).

Rem. 1. Note वञ्चयति (to cheat of)<sup>1</sup>) with abl. Kathās. 42, 75 अहं सुतप्राप्यैः सपत्न्या वञ्चितैतया (she, my fellow-consort, has by trickery taken away my obtaining a son), Panc. III, 117 वञ्चयितुं ब्राह्मणं इगालात् (to cheat a brahman of his he-goat).

Rem. 2. With प्रमादयति and the like, the thing *neglected* is put in the ablāt. (vārtt. on P. 1, 4, 24). Taitt. Up. 1, 11, 2 स्वाध्यायान्मा प्रमदः, Pat. I, p. 326 ध्रुवप्रमादयति, ध्रुवान्मुहयति (he neglects his duty).

1) Literally 'to cause to tumble out of,' for वञ्च् वच् (cp. वक्र) is akin to lat. *vacillare*, germ. *wanken*, dutch *waggelen*.

**97.** Likewise the ablative joins verbs or verbal nouns of *keeping off*, and kindred notions. Of the kind are:

with  
verbs  
of keep-  
ing off

1. those of *restraining, preventing, excluding from*, as P. 1, 4, 27.

माषेभ्यो गा वारयति (he keeps the cows from the beans);

2. those of *protecting, guarding, securing from*, as P. 1, 4, 25.

चौरिभ्यो रक्षति (he protects from thieves); 3. those of P. 1, 4, 25, 28.

being  
afraid  
off

*being afraid of and suspecting*, especially भी and उद्भिज्, f. i.

चौरिभ्यो बिभेति. Examples: 1. — Kām. 16, 15 वृथा कोलाहला-  
हास्याद् घृतात्पानाच्च वारितः, Mahāv. I, p. 10 मातामहेन प्रतिषिध्यमानः स्वयं-  
ग्रहात् (as his mother's father prevented him from taking her [viz.  
Sītā] by violence). 2. — Panc. 298 त्वया पुत्रो अयं नकुलादुत्तपीयः,  
Mhbh. 1, 82, 21 अथर्मात्यादि मां रक्षन्, Mālav. V, p. 135 इमां परीप्सुर्दुर्ज्ञातिः  
(eager for defending her from the wicked [aggressor]). 3. — Panc.  
179 लुब्धकाद् त्रिषेपि (you are afraid of the huntsman), Mudr. III, p.  
102 भेतव्यं नृपतेस्ततः सचिवतो रक्षस्ततो वल्लभादन्येभ्यश्च ([a king's servant]  
must not stand in awe of his master only, but of the king's minister,  
of the king's favourite and of others), M. 2, 162 संमानाद् ब्राह्मणो  
नित्यमुद्दिशेत् विषादिव (a brahman should always shun marks of honour,  
as if they were poison), Mhbh. 1, 140, 61 अग्राङ्कितेभ्यः प्राङ्केत प्राङ्कितेभ्यश्च  
सर्वज्ञः (he should mistrust those, who are worth mistrusting and  
those, who are not so), Kāṇ. on 1, 4, 28 उपाध्यायादन्तर्धत्ते (he con-  
ceals himself from his teacher).

NB. The verbs, mentioned sub 3., admit also of the genitive, see  
126 c).

Rem. Note त्रुमुक्ते (to shrink from, to shun, to despise) with abl.  
according to a vārtt. on P. 1, 4, 24. Instances are met with in the ar-  
chaic literature. In modern Sanskrit it seems to be exclusively con-  
strued with accas. — The verb निर्विष्यति (to be disgusted with) is  
construed with abl. or instr., sometimes even with acc. and gen.

**98** II. The point from whence a distance is counted (*terminus a quo*), is expressed by the ablative. Pat. I, p. 455

Ablative, the  
terminus a  
quo.

गवीधूमतः सांकाश्यं चत्वारि योजनानि (from Gavīdhūma to Sāṅkāśya four *yojanas*). Hence the ablative joins *a.*) such prepp. as आ, प्रभृति, etc., *b.*) the names of the cardinal points and those in अञ्च्, as प्राञ्च् *c.*), all words meaning *far*, as दूरे and the like.

Examples: — of *a.*) see in chapter IX.

*b.*) Daç. 156 तोर्यस्थानात्पाच्यां दिशि (east from the *birth*), Pat. I, P. 2, 3, p. 475 see Rem. 1. on this paragraph. 29.

*c.*) M̐rech. VII, p. 234 अहो नगरात्सुदूरमपक्रान्तो ऽस्मि, Mhbh. 1, 152, 1 अविदूरे वनात्तस्मात्, ibid. 1, 151, 44 नातिदूरेषा..... वनादस्मात्, Āpast. 1, 31; 2 आरादवसथान्मूत्रपुरीषे कुर्यात् (he shall void excrements far from his house).

Rem. 1. With derived adverbs of the species दक्षिणतः, उत्तरतः<sup>1)</sup> the genitive should be employed, not the ablative [P. 2, 3, 30], with those in °एन the accusative [ibid. 31]. Hence it is said for ex. R. 3, 4, 27 पृथग्भगवन्तपाश्वरतस्तस्य (he dug a hole by his side), Pat. I, p. 475 कः पुनरार्यवर्तः। प्रामादप्रान्तिर्व्यक्कालकवनाद् दक्षिणेन हिमवन्मुत्रेण पारियात्रम् (what is Āryavarta? The country east of Ādarça, west of Kālakavana, south of the Himavat and north of Pāriyātra), Çāk. I दक्षिणेन वृक्षवाहिकमालाप एव श्रूयते. — But the genitive with those in °एन is also allowed [see Kāç. on P. 2, 3, 31], as R. 3, 13, 21 उत्तरेणास्य (north of this place).

Rem. 2. Pāṇini [2., 3, 34] allows optional construing with abl. & gen. all words, meaning *far* and *near*, दूरं ग्रामात् or ग्रामस्य। अन्तिकं ग्रामात् or ग्रामस्य. As far as I have observed, an ablative with those of

1) P. दक्ष्यतसर्गप्रत्ययेन. — Kāç. gives as instances also पुरस्तात्, उपरि, उपरिष्ठात्. That on the other hand, the abl. is available, even if the adverb itself have the ending of that case, is exemplified by this çloka quoted by Pat. I, 457.

दूरादावसथान्मूत्रं दूरात्पादावसेचनम्  
दूराच्च भाव्यं दस्युभ्यो दूराच्च कुपितादुरोः

nearness — except compounds of दूर — will be scarcely met with in literature.

99. When denoting time, the ablative carries the meaning of *from, since, after*. Commonly it is attended by prepositions, as आ, प्रभृति, ऊर्ध्वम्, अनन्तरम्, but there are instances enough of the single ablative. So गृह्णति, क्षणात् (after a while) = मुहूर्तेन, क्षणेन. Likewise चिरात्, अचिरात्, दीर्घकालात्, etc. and cp. 128. — Kâç. on P. 2, 3, 54 quotes the verso एति जीवन्तमानन्दो नरं वर्षशतादपि (even after hundred years a man may enjoy happiness); Mhbh. 1, 170, 3 ते त्वमच्छन्नेदोरात्रातीर्यम्, M. 8, 108 यस्य दृश्येत संप्राह्मादुक्त्वाकास्य सान्निध्याः । रोगः (if a witness, who has borne evidence, fall ill after a week).

Rem. 1. This kind of abl. is meant by P. 2, 3, 7, when he enjoins the use of a fifth or seventh case to denote an interval of time or space, f. ex. अद्य भुक्त्वा देवदत्तो अहं अह्नाद्वा भोक्ता (D. has eaten now and will not eat but after two days), इहस्यो अग्निष्वासाः क्रोगे (or क्रोशात्) लक्ष्यं विध्यति. Cp. 144.

Rem. 2. Âpast. 1, 9, 6 and 1, 15, 19 are instances of the single ablative = आ + abl., when signifying 'till.'

100. III. The ablative serves to express *from what origin* there is a rising or issuing. In the first place it joins words of being *borne, proceeding* etc.;

Ablative of the origin and the former state.

2ly it denotes the *former state or shape, out of which* some other state or shape proceeds or is produced;

3ly it signifies the *model or pattern*, something is imitated, borrowed, measured from.

Examples: of 1. — Ch. Up. 1, 9, 1 सर्वानि ह वा इमानि भूतान्याकाशादेव समुत्पद्यन्ते (all these things proceed from ether alone), M. 1, 8 शरीरात्स्वात्सिसृजुर्विविधाः प्रजाः (desiring to create the manifold beings out of his body), Kathâs. 25, 43 वाताहताच्च तल्लघेहृदतिङ्महोर्मयः (big waves rose from the ocean, as it was swept by the wind); Mhbh. 1, 115, 5 पापरोः प्रपस्य समुत्पन्ना दैवतेभ्यः पुत्राः पञ्च — here the name *Pându* is

P. 1, 4, 30; 31.

put in the genit., for the five sons did belong to him, but the *deities*, who had *procreated* them, are put in the ablative.

So often with verbs of *being borne* the name of the father is put in the abl., that of the mother in the locative, R. 2, 107, 2 ज्ञातः पुत्रो दशरथात्कैकेयाम्, M. 10, 64 शूद्रायां ब्राह्मणाज्ञातः. Yet, the father may also be a gen. commodi (132) or an instrumental.

Note such phrases as (Pat. I, 455) कुतो भवान्. पतिलिपुत्रात् and (Kathās. 25, 55) ब्राह्मणः शक्तिदेवाख्यो वर्धमानपुरादहम् (I am the brahman Çaktideva from the town of Vardhamāna).

2. — Mhbh. I, (Paushyap.) स समावृत्तस्मादुत्कुलवासादूहाश्रमं प्रत्यपगत, Daç. 141 तन्नयितापि मे नरकदिव स्वर्गं तादृशाद् व्यसनान्नयाभूतमभ्युदयमावृकः (and my father, who had come from such a distress to as great a happiness, as if he had risen from hell to heaven), Ratn. I, p. 16 उत्सवाद् उत्सवान्तरमापतितम् (v. a. we have festival after festival). — So to *heal or recover from illness*: Panc. V, 91 त्रयोऽप्यन्यायतः सिद्धाः (all three of them were healed from their infirmity).

3. — Mrcch. IV, p. 135 अथ तव शरीरस्य प्रमाणादिव निर्मितं अलङ्कारः (this ornament has been made, as if it were, according to the measure of your body), Mālav. IV, p. 91 विभवतः परिवारः (attendance according to her rank). Cp. 69.

101. In short, the ablative is available in any case, it is wanted to express the *side*, something has come *from*, whether contained in the foresaid categories or not.. So R. 2, 26, 31 सा त्वन्नः संमानमर्हति (she deserves respect from your side), Mhbh. 1, 145, 9 तान्नाहं पितृतः प्राप्नोतु राज्ञो न मृष्यते (Dhr. cannot bear them having obtained the royalty because of their father), Panc. 262 सर्व आह। कस्मान्ने परिभवः। स आह। दायादेभ्यः (from the side of my kinsmen).

Rem. The last example is at the same time an instance of the abl. which denotes him, by whom one is defeated or overthrown [P. 1, 4, 26]; cp. Kathās. 28, 49.

102. Hence, the *cause, reason, motive by which*, is likewise expressed by the ablative namely as far as it is con-

ceived as the origin or starting-point, from whence some consequence has resulted <sup>1)</sup>.  
 Ablative of causality.

The instrumental, as we have seen formerly (72), may likewise serve that purpose, and in the case of feminine nouns of quality it is even obligatory. For the rest, ablative and in tr. of causality are generally interchangeable, and not seldom they are used side by side. So Kathās. 29, 25 **हर्षेण नटास्याः क्षुन्न रोगतः** (it is from joy she does not eat, not from illness), Mr̥ch. 1, p. 44 **अन्यत्र न शङ्क्या खल्विदमनुष्ठितं न दर्श्यात्** (surely, it has been done by taking her for somebody else, not by insolence). But, if the efficient cause be some *obligation* or other binding motive *by virtue of which* some effect is produced, the ablative alone is to be used <sup>2)</sup>. Nothing impedes concrete nouns to be put in the *abl. of cause* <sup>3)</sup>

1) How easily this transition is made, will be plain by this example: Mālav: V, p. 140 **वीरसूरिति शब्दोऽयं तनयान्नामुपस्थितः**. Literally these words signify "the name of mother of a hero" touches you *from the part of* your son," but as to their meaning they should be rather translated thus now you deserve the name "m. of a h." *because of* your son." In other terms the abl. of origin is at the same time an abl. of cause.

2) Pāṇini's rule, which contains this statement, is too narrowly interpreted by the commentaries. His words **अकर्तव्यो षष्ठी** [P. 2, 3, 24] are explained thus: the abl. [alone] is to be used, if the cause be a *debt*, provided it be not at the same time the agent; examples of which are adduced as **शताद्व्यक्तः** (he is confined for a debt of 100), whereas one must say **शतेन अन्धितः**. But why should we restrict *ṛna* to its special sense of a "debt of money" and not take the more general meaning of "obligation" and "duty"? If it could be proved that **ऋणा** implies also the notion of *necessity*, **ἀνάγκη**, the rule would be quite correct, for in the case of direct and unavoidable consequence of an efficient cause the ablative alone is to be used, even of feminine words.

3) Speaking plain, neither the abl. of *bhāvavacanāni* nor that of concrete nouns is allowed by Pāṇini's rules. The sūtras 2, 3, 23-25 name

but often they are expressed by periphrase, especially by means of **हेतोः** (192).

**Examples.** — Kathâs. 27, 76 दिव्याः पतन्त्येव प्रापान्मानुष्योनिषु (by consequence of a curse celestial beings are borne among men), Panc. 202 कपिञ्जलः शालिभक्षणादतीव पीवर्तनुः, Panc. 49 स्त्रीधर्षणादध्यः (he is to be put to death for having insulted a woman), Hit. 96 भयादिदमाह (from fear he spoke thus), Ven. II, p. 39 अयं....प्रीतो ऽग्निमन्योर्त्रयात् (he is glad on account of Abh.'s death), Mr̥ch. I, p. 45 उन्निव्रामि समयतः (I will stand up, on condition —), Kathâs. 30, 112 नात्तायत यदा चौरस्तदा ज्ञानिप्रसिद्धितः । अनाययामास नृपो हरिश्शर्मणामाशु तम् (as the thief was not found, the king sent forthwith for H. on account of the reputation of his knowledge), Panc. I, 180 दुर्मन्त्रान्नृपतिर्नश्यति यतिः सद्भात्सुतो लालनात् । विप्रोऽनध्ययनात्कुलं कुतनयात् (by bad counsel a prince comes to ruin, a holy man by wordliness, a son by spoiling, a brahman by not-studying, a family by a bad son), Çâk. I, vs. 22 त्वं तन्वाञ्चेष्टान्मुक्त्वा हतः (to seek after the truth [liter. by seeking —], it is I, who have been annoyed by the bee). The examples have been selected so as to show, that the different shades of the notion of causality — *cause, motive, reason*. — are promiscuously signified by the ablative.

Many ablatives of causality have assumed the character of adverbs, see 104.

**103.** IV. Sanskrit, just as Latin, uses the ablative not only for the sake of signifying *from what side*, but also *on what side*. Here the ending **तः** is employed, it seems,

Ablative expressive of the side on which.

the instrumental as the regular case to denote cause or motive, but with these exceptions, 1° that if the cause be a quality (गुणो) the ablative *may* be used too, but for feminines [or rather — as the term स्त्री is an ambiguous one — only such as have been made by the fem. endings °ई, °आ], 2° that the cause being, an *rna*, the abl. *must* be used, and not the instrum. Now, these rules do not leave any room for neither bhâvavacanâni nor concrete nouns, something very strange, because really both classes of words are put, in the ablative of cause as often and as well as the guṇavacanâni. See the examples adduced in the context.

by preference, at least in the case of indicating space and direction. So it is said दक्षिणतः (at the right), वामतः (at the left), पार्श्वतः (at the side), पृष्ठतः (at the back) etc. — In figurative sense this abl. is likewise used, as Ch. Up. 4, 17, 4 ययुक्तो रिष्येत्.... यदि ययुष्टः.... यदि सामतः (if [the yajña] would be vicious on account of an ṛc, a yajus, a sâma), Âpast. 1, 1, 15 स हि त्रि-यातस्तं जनयति (v. a. for he is his spiritual father), Mâlav. 1, p. 25 मध्यस्था भावती नै गुणदोषतः परिच्छेदुर्महति (Your Reverence is even-handed; be you, then, the umpire to judge us with respect to our qualities and our shortcomings).

Vârtt.  
on P. 5.  
4, 44.

In its metaphorical application this *ablativus partis* not rarely touches upon the *abl. causae*, treated in 102. So f. i. with the *points of comparison*, as R. 2, 34, 9 गाम्भीर्यान्सागरोपमः (in depth like the ocean = 'by its depth' or 'as to its depth').

104. Ablatives of the cause and of the side often have the the character of adverbs (77); especially when ending in 'तः'. So स्वभावात् or 'तः (by disposition), अनुत्तामनः (in due order), प्रति-लोमतः (in inverse order), स्ववीर्यतः (through one's own exertion), प्रक्षितः (with all one's power), आदरात् (out of respect), अकस्मात् (without motive; on a sudden), and so on. P. 2, 3, 33. gives a special rule for the ablatives कृच्छात्, स्तोकात्, कतिपयात्, अल्पात् being interchangeable with the instr. कृच्छ्रेण etc.; both sets have the character of adverbs, as अल्पेन or अल्पान्मुक्तः (he was released easily).  
Rem. Note दूरात् in comparisons = 'by far.' Panc. II, 170 दूराद्वरम् (by far better).

105. **Ablative of comparison.** — The ablative expressive of the notion *on what side, with respect to* — is frequently applied in comparisons to signify the thing compared with, provided there be superiority or inferiority or discrepancy <sup>1)</sup>.

Abla-  
tive of  
compa-  
rison.

It joins 1<sup>st</sup> comparatives; then the abl. = our „than.”

1) For in the case of identity, likeness, equivalence the instrum. or gen. is required (62) and the dat. also in the case of counterpoise (85).



Panc. 56 नास्त्यन्यो धन्यतरो लोके मत्तस्वत्तश्च (there is no happier man in the world than you and I), cp. Lat. *nemo te felicior*;

2<sup>ly</sup> positives of any adiective. Daç. 141 भगवतो मधवतो जपि भाग्यवन्तमात्मानमन्नीगणात् (he considered himself fortunate, even in comparison with Lord Indra);

3<sup>ly</sup> words, expressing superiority or inferiority, such as वरम् (lit. „the better thing,” = better than), अधिक (exceeding), पूर्व (superior), अतिरिच्यते (to excel), परिहीयते (to be inferior), sim. Mudr. I, p. 53 सेनाशतेभ्यो जयिका बुद्धिर्मम (my mind is outweighing hundreds of armies);

4<sup>ly</sup> all words, meaning *other* or *different*, as अन्य, इतर, अपर, भिन्न. Panc. 208 षाड्गुण्यादपरो अभिप्रायो अस्ति (there is some other contrivance, besides the well-known six expedients).

Here are some more examples. Of 1. — Rgv. 8, 24, 20 त्वचो घृतात्स्रादीयो मधुनश्च (utterance by voice being sweeter, than ghee and honey); Ch. Up. 3, 14, 3 एष म आत्मान्तर्हृदये ऽपीयान्निर्हेर्वा यवाद्वा र्षपपाद्वा श्यामाकाद्वा श्यामाकतण्डुलाद्वा। एष म आत्मान्तर्हृदये ज्ञायान्पृथिव्या ज्ञायान्तरिक्षाज्ज्यायान्दिवो ज्ञायानेभ्यो लोकेभ्यः (he is the Self within my heart, smaller than a corn of rice, smaller than a corn of barley, smaller than a mustard seed, smaller than a canary seed or the kernel of a canary seed. He is the self etc., greater than the earth, greater than the sky, greater than heaven, greater than these worlds); Āpast. 1, 13, 19 एतेन ह्यहं योगेन भूयः पूर्वस्मात्कालाच्चतुमकर्तव्यम् (by this way I have got more learning, than formerly).

of 2. — Panc. 285 भार्या सर्वलोकादपि वल्लभा भवति (v. a. one's wife is beloved more than anybody else); Hit. 16 ततो नास्तीह पुण्यवान् (com-

pared with him nobody is happy here); Utt. II, p. 29 वज्रादपि कतो-  
राणि मृद्गानि कसुमादपि । लोकोत्तराणां चेतांसि को नु विज्ञातुमर्हति.

of 3. — R. 2, sarga 95\*, 53, एकाङ्गहेन कृस्त्रेण त्रिवितं मरणाद्वत् (to  
live, deprived of one member by your weapon, is better than death),  
Panc. 142 त्वत्तोऽधिकः परं सुदृत्, Mhbh. 1, 89, 2 पूर्वा वयसा भवद्वाः (your  
superior by age), R. 2, 8, 18 कौसल्यातो ऽतिरिक्तं च मम शुश्रूयते बहु (he  
listens much to me, and more than to the Kausalyā), Kathās.  
53, 10 लज्जादूनं न दातुं स ज्ञानाति स्म किलार्चिने (indeed, he did not know  
how to give less than a *laxa* to an indigent), M. 2, 95 प्रापणात्त-  
र्वकामानां परित्यागो विजिग्यते (giving up all desires exceeds obtaining  
them). Compare this instance from the archaic literature: Ait. Br.  
7, 17, 4 गवां त्रीणि शतानि त्वमवृणीया मत् (you have chosen three hun-  
dred of cows instead of me).

of 4. — Rgv. 10, 18, 1 पन्था इतरो देवयानात् (the other path,  
which is not the path of the gods), Ch. Up. 1, 10, 2 नेतो [= न + इतो]  
ऽन्ये विद्यन्ते (nor are there others but these), Panc. II, 12 साहाय्यं  
मित्रादन्यो न संदधे, Prabodh. III, p. 61 ज्ञान्मिश्रो भिन्नमभिन्नमोश्चरात् (the crea-  
tures so different among themselves, yet not different from God).

### 106. Observations on the abl. of comparison.

Rem. 1. Our »than» with the comparative is to be rendered  
in Sanskrit by the ablative. Such restrictions, as for instance limit  
the faculty of using the abl. of comparison in Latin, do not  
exist in Sanskrit. It is impossible to say in Latin *dat tibi plus  
me* = »he gives to you more than to me," but it must be said  
*plus quam. mihi*. In Sanskrit nothing impedes such sentences as  
तुभ्यं ददाति मत्तं अधिकम्. So Mālat. X, p. 164 स्नेहो मातुर्गणि ममधिकस्तेन  
गुहस्तत्रापि (hence, you must bear more affection towards me, than  
towards your own mother).

Rem. 2. Note the abl. with such words as: double, treble etc.  
sim. M. 8, 289 मूल्यात्पञ्चगुणो ह्यष्टः (a fine of five times the value).

Rem. 3. If it is to be said *no owner than nobody but*, any  
phrase with the meaning »but for» may be used instead of the  
abl. Panc. 176 त्वां युज्जान्यो न ज्ञास्यति (no other but you will know  
it), ibid. 160 त्वद्वर्त्तमान्यो भर्ता मनस्यपि मे न भविष्यति. — Then, the ablative  
may also be used even without अन्य, as Kumāras. 6, 44 यस्मिन्नान्तकः

कुसुमायुधात् »where there is found no [other] death but the god with the flowery arrows [no other Māra but Māra = Kāma].”

In Patanjali I have met with some instances of a rather pleonastic idiom, the neuter *अन्यद्* with abl. = »but for” put before the ablat., though the adj. *अन्य* precedes, f. i. Pat. 1, 279 को ऽन्यो द्वितीयः सहयो भवितुमर्हत्यन्यदत उपसर्गात् (what else ought to accompany it, if not this preposition), ep. p. 445, line 2; p. 447, line 4; p. 323, line 6. This adverbial use of *अन्यद्* (cp. Greek *ἀλλὰ*, and such phrases as *οὐδὲν ἄλλο... ἀλλ' ἤ*) is confirmed by its being named among the *nipātās* in the *gāṇa* स्वरादि (Kāṇ. I, p. 17, line 10).

Rem. 4. Çāk. VII मयवतः सत्क्रियाविशेषादनुप्युक्तमिवात्मानं समर्थये (I do not hold myself for deserving the extraordinary honour bestowed upon me by Indra) is an instance of this abl. with the negative *अनुप्युक्त* (not fit); the abl. would be impossible here, but for the negation.

**107.** In the archaic and epic dialect an **instrumental** of comparison is sometimes used instead of the ablative. — So R. 2, 26, 33 द्रष्टव्यैः प्रियतरौ मम instead of द्रष्टव्यैः; ibid. 2, 48, 36 सुतैर्हि तासामधिको ऽपि सोऽभवत् (he was to these women even more than their own sons), comm. सुतैः । तृतीयार्धे, ib. 1, 54, 15 न त्वया बलवत्तरः विप्रमित्रः

Rem. Such passages as R. 6, 24, 28 द्रष्टुञ्चे ऽप्यधिको राज्ञः कार्तवीर्यस्य लक्ष्मणाः (and in archery L. even exceeds king K.), Panc. 28 [and R. 1, 47, 22] नास्ति धन्यतरौ मम, Panc. IV, 7 काचिन्ममैवापरा (any woman else but I) show that even a **genitive** of comparison has been used.

**108.** In the foregoing the ending *तः* has been considered as if it possessed the full worth of the regular case-endings of the ablative. Yet a full and complete identity between them may alone be stated for the pronouns. Pāṇini gives some rules about *तः* affixed to nouns, which show that its sphere of employment, though mostly coinciding with that of the ablative, is sometimes a different one.

1ly With *ह्येते* and *तृह्* it is forbidden to express the »whence”

by the forms in °तः. Therefore स्वर्गादीयेते। पर्वताद्वरोहति, not स्वर्गतो P. 5, 4, 45.  
हीयते, पर्वततो अवरोहति.

2ly Excelling or being weak in, blaming on account of, wickedness with respect to is to be denoted by the instrumental, or by °तः, not by the ablative proper. — For this reason, in the verse quoted by Pat. I, p. 2 दुष्टः प्रभूः स्वरतो वर्णतो वा (a word, wrong on account of its accent or of its sound), स्वरतः and वर्णतः are interchangeable with स्वरेण and वर्णेन, not with स्वरान् and वर्णान्. Likewise, in Ch. Up. 4, 17, 4 — quoted page 77 of this book — ऋक्ः। यनुद्रः। सामतः are synonymous with the instrum., and the abl. ऋक्ः। यनुद्रः। सामः would not be allowed.

Rem. It should however be remembered, that this rule does not apply neither to the points of comparison — f. i. नाम्नीयात्मानोरप्यमः — nor to the ablative of comparison.

3ly If the ablative is to express the *whence* — except in the case recorded sub 1 — तः is equivalent with the regular case-endings. The same applies to the abl., depending on the prepos. प्रति. P. 5, 4, 45.

Rem. Pānini does not give any rule about using the abl. in तः with such adverbs and pronouns as ऋते, त्रिना, अन्तः. Now, ablatives of that kind are certainly not expressing the *apādāna*, as they are taught in the third chapter of the 2<sup>d</sup> adhyāya, not in the fourth of the 1<sup>st</sup>. Accordingly it would not be allowed using °तः with them. Yet practice is not wholly consistent therewith, f. i. आ मूलतः = आ मूलात्.

4ly In two cases °तः is interchangeable with a genitive, but not with an abl. a.) when expressing the standing on one's side देवाः। अर्जुनतो (or अर्जुनसः)। अभवन्, b.) if denoting the disease, against which one applies some remedy or cure: प्रवाहिकातः [or °कायाः] कुत (give something against diarrhoea). P. 5, 4, 48.

## CHAPTER VII. Genitive. 1)

### 109. The fundamental notion of the genitive or sixth

1) On the genitive in Sanskrit, especially in the dialect of the Rg-vedamantras, there exists a monography of Dr. SIECKE *de genitivo in lingua Sanscritica imprimis Vedica usu*, Berlin, 1869.

General  
view  
of the  
geni-  
tive.

case is to mark the *belonging to, partaking of* In Sanskrit, it is employed in so manifold and so different ways as to make it very difficult to give a satisfactory account of all of them <sup>1</sup>). — The absolute genitive will be treated in the chapter on participles.

110. I. With **substantives**, the genitive serves to qualify them, as राज्ञः पुरुषः (the king's man), दमयत्याः स्वयंवरः (the self-choice of Dam.), शत्रोर्बलम् (the enemy's strength), मित्रस्यागमनम् (the friend's arrival), समुद्रस्य शोषणम् (the drying up the ocean), यज्ञस्यावयवः (a part of the sacrifice), युद्धस्यावकाशः (the opportunity of fighting). These examples show 1<sup>st</sup> that the genitive, at least in prose, commonly precedes the substantive, it is depending upon, 2<sup>ly</sup> that, like in Latin and Greek,

1) Kâç. on P. 1, 1, 49 बहवो हि वक्ष्यन्ति स्वस्वाम्यनन्तरसमोपसमूहविकारा-  
व्यवस्थाः. — Pânini seems to have not sharply defined the genitive's sphere of employment, at least if we explain his sūtra (2, 3, 50) वक्ष्ये श्रेषे with the Kâç. as meaning *in all other instances* [namely if none of the other cases, taught 2, 3, 1—49, be available], one should use the sixth case." But then it is strange, P. has not said inversely वक्ष्ये वक्ष्ये (cp. his constant use 1, 4, 7; 1, 4, 108; 2, 2, 23; 3, 3, 151; 7, 2, 90). Now, Patanjali gives a somewhat different explication (I, p. 463) कमहिनामन्विता 'श्रेषः' *the sixth case is required, if the categories object and the rest are not to be distinctly expressed* but tacitly implied. I am rather inclined to suppose, that *either* in framing that sūtra Pânini had in view his definition of the employment of the nominative, which immediately precedes; then वक्ष्ये would be said in opposition to the प्रातिपदिक ..... मात्रे of s. 46 (note on 38) and mean *something else, apart from the gender and number of the conception, signified by the prātipadika*, or वक्ष्ये may mean *accessory*" (see Petr. Dict. s. v. 1, b); then the sūtra enjoins the use of the genitive if the conception, signified by the prātipadika, is accessory of some other conception. But, which of these acceptations should prove the correct one, the intrusion of the term वक्ष्ये in the following sūtras (51, etc), as is done by Kâç. and others, is to be blamed.

the most different *logical* relations will find their expression by it. When dividing the whole of its dominion by setting up such categories as the *possessive* gen., the *subjective*, *objective*, *partitive*, 'that of *origin*, *matter*, *quantity* etc., it must not be overlooked, that these divisions have been made for clearness' sake and do not affect the unity of the grammatical duty discharged in all these cases by the genitive. For the rest, not rarely the ordinary logical distinctions may fall short of classifying some given genitive, as in the case of युद्धस्यावकाशः, or Utt. II, p. 28 अगस्त्याश्रमस्य पन्थाः (the way to the hermitage of A.) etc.

Concurrent constructions are 1. compounding the gen. with the subst., it qualifies राजपुरुषः = राजः पुरुषः, see 214, 2. using instead of the gen. the derived adjective, as शात्रवे बलम् = शत्रोर्बलम् or शत्रूणां बलम् etc. Of these substitutions the latter is comparatively rare, when contrasted with the utmost frequency of the former.

Rem. The so called *appositional* or *epexegetic* genitive is not used in Sanskrit. It is said पुष्पपुरं नगरम्, not as in English "the city of Pushp." R. 2, 115, 15 शिरसि कृत्वा संन्यासं पादुके (Lat. *pignus soccorum*, the pledge [represented by] the slippers).

111. When pointing out the genitive as the case to put in such substantives as are wanted to qualify other substantives, it is by no means said that no other construction may be used for the same purpose. Verbal nouns often retain the verbal construction. So, if a moving to or from some place is to be expressed, nouns must be construed just as verbs; it is said पुरात्ववासनम्, पुरं गमनम् not पुरस्य. Cp. Rem. on 41.

Thus we meet with instrumentals as वियोगो भवादृशैः the separation from men as you are," कन्यया शोकः »sorrow on account of a girl;" — ablatives as पतनादयम् »fear of falling;" — datives as मृषाय दारु »wood for a stake," समयो योवराज्याय »the fit time for being heir-apparent;" — locatives as विषयेषु सङ्गः »attachment to the world, worldliness;" — prepositions as मां प्रति कोपः »anger towards me," तस्योपरि पक्षपातः »partiality for his sake," समं प्रतिमता युद्धम् »a contention with a mighty one."

Rem. Pāṇini has a special rule about the nouns ईश्वर (lord), स्वामिन् (owner), अधिपति (chief), दायद (heir), साक्षि (witness), प्रतिभू (bail) and प्रसूत (born) as agreeing with a locative as well as with a gen. So गवां स्वामो or गोषु; cp. Kathās. 18, 144 त्वमस्माकं स्वामो with ibid. 6, 166 स्वामो विषये. So Mṛcch. X, p. 384 पृथिव्यां सर्वविहारेषु कुलपतिरयं क्रियताम् (let he be appointed prior of all the monasteries of the land).

- 112.** The possessive genitive has nothing remarkable. As in other languages, it may be the predicate of the sentence. M. 7, 96 तो यत्तयति तस्य तत् (what one conquers, is one's own), ibid. 7, 91 the vanquished warrior surrenders himself with these words तत्रास्मि (I am yours); Mhbh. I, 154, 3 कस्य त्वम् («whose are you?» that is »of what family?»); Mudr. III, p. 103 स्थाने खलुस्य वृषलो देवश्वन्दगुप्तः (duly, forsooth, the Cūdra-king Candragupta is his = is but an instrument in his [Cāṇakya's] hand). R. 2, 42, 7 (Daçar. to Kaik.) ये च त्वामनुजिघ्रन्ति नाहं तेषां न ते मम (and those, who are your attendances, do not belong to me, nor I to them). That it may also denote the *party*, of which one is an adherent, is stated above (108, 4).

- 113.** The gen. of the *material*, something is made of, and that of the *origin* are not very frequent. Examples: Pat. I, 112 अस्य सूत्रस्य जालकं वयं (weave a cloth of this thread), Ch. Up. 6, 12, 2 तं होवाच यं वै सोम्यैतमपिमानं न निभालयस एतस्य वै सोम्यैषोऽपिमां एवं महान्यग्रोऽस्तिदति (he said to him: my dear, that subtile essence, which you do not perceive there, of that subtile essence this so great nyagrodha-tree exists); — Mhbh. I, 100, 47 कन्या दाक्षानाम् (a fisherman's daughter).

Rem. In sūtra-works there is also a gen. of the authority, according to whom something is stated. So often एकेनाम् »according to some,” P. 3, 4, 111 प्राकटयनस्यैव »according to C. alone.” This gen. depends on the word मते not expressed »according to the opinion of.”

- 114.** The **subjective genitive** is interchangeable with the **instrumental of the agent** (66). According to Pāṇini, the latter is *necessary*, if the verbal noun be attended by its subject and its object at the same time. In this manner two genitives are avoided, as गवां दाहा गम्येन [not गोषस्य] (the milking of the cows by the cow-herd). We may fairly extend this observation, it seems, to all such instances, as where the subjective genitive would be used together with some other sixth case. R. 3, 6, 23 विप्रकारमपाकटुं राक्षसैर्भवात्मिमम् (in order to put and end to the harm caused to you by the rāxasas), Māl. VIII, p. 133 एकाकिनो बहुभिर्भियोगः<sup>1</sup>); Mhbh. 1, 145, 17 यदा... कार्यमस्माकं भवद्रूपपत्स्यते (if there will occur something to do by you for us) [not कार्यमस्माकं भवताम्, an accumulation of gen. subj. and commodi];

Rem. Some vārttikās on this sūtra of Pāṇini contest the exactness of it. With some kṛts the subjective genitive is said to be obligatory, even when being used together with an objective genitive, as चिकीर्षा विष्णुमित्रस्य कटस्य (V.'s desire of making a mat). According to some, the gen. of the agent is nowhere forbidden.

- 115.** The **objective genitive** is occasionally interchangeable with a locative or with prepp. as प्रति, उपरि, etc. Sometimes it may be used in turns too concise to be rendered without periphrase. Mrech. I, p. 44 ब्रूया तस्याः (by supposing, it was she).

1) But Mudr. I, p. 49 न मर्षयिष्यति राक्षसकलत्रप्रच्छादनं भवतः, for here nothing impedes using the genitive of the agent, the other being avoided by compounding.



**116.** The **partitive genitive** denotes *either* the whole, a part of which is spoken of, as अर्धं नगरस्य (half of the town), यज्ञस्यावयवः (a part of the sacrifice), Kād. I, p. 21 अम्बरतलस्य मध्यम् (the middle of the sky) *or* it carries the notion of selecting out of a multitude as Nir. 1, 12 त्रैयाकरणानामिके „some of —, among the grammarians”. In the latter case, the genitive is interchangeable with the locative: मनुष्याणां (or मनुष्येषु) क्षत्रियो शूरतमः

Examples: of genitive Ait. Br. 1, 5, 25 श्रेष्ठः स्वानाम् (the foremost of his kin), Kathās. 29, 69 धुर्यो धनवताम् (the foremost among the wealthy), Panc. III, 222 स एवैको ऽत्र सर्वेषां नीतिशास्त्रार्थतत्त्ववित्; — of locative Kathās. 24, 47 दृष्ट्वा पुरो युष्मासु केनचित्; M. 5, 18 अत्राविधं प्रत्येकं गोत्रं खड्गकूर्मप्रशास्तया । भक्ष्यान्पक्ष्मनक्षेत्रादुत्तुङ्गांश्चैकलोदनः

From the examples given it will be plain, that in Sanskrit, as elsewhere, the partitive cases may not only attend substantives, but all kind of nouns and pronouns.

Rem. 1. If there be meant a „taking out of,” the *ablative* is to be used, cp. 95, 2°. — R. 1, 2, 15 क्रौञ्चमियुनादेकमवधोः (you have killed one out of the couple of plovers), cp. Kathās. 13, 144; 24, 176; Prabodh. V, p. 102 अग्नेः श्रेष्ठमृणाच्छेषं शत्रोः श्रेष्ठं न श्रेष्ठयेत् (one should not leave a remnant of fire, of a debt, of a foe). 1)

Rem. 2. It is very common, especially in simple prose, to periphrase the partitive cases by मध्ये (= gen. or loc.) and मध्यात् (= abl.). See 191.

Rem. 3. The partitive construction is unfit to be employed, if

1) This is the very ablative, enjoined by P. 2, 3, 42. Kāç. is wrong interpreting the sūtra otherwise; Patanjali's view (I, p. 459) is correct.

the conception of a part selected out of a whole be wanting.

All of them" = ते सर्वे, both of us" आवाभूम् ¹).

**117.** Some turns, relating to the partitive construction, are to be noticed:

1. option between two things is variously expressed:

a.) both are put in the gen. M. 7, 53 व्यसनस्य च मृत्योश्च व्यसनं कद्मुच्यते (liter. »of both vice and death, vice is called the worse").

b.) both are put in the abl. M̐cch. I, p. 18 दारिद्र्यान्मरणाद्वा मरणं मम रोचते न दारिद्र्यम् (v. a. I prefer death to poverty).

c.) both are nominatives. Mhbh. 1, 161, 6 ब्रह्मव्रथात्मव्रथा वा श्रेया-नात्मव्रथो मम (v. a. I hold suicide to be preferable to the killing a brahman).

Note the standing prolixity of such phrases.

2. Of a partitive gen., depending on some word not expressed, there are some instances. Âçv. Gr̥hy. 4, 4, 11 आदित्यस्य वा दृश्यमाने प्रविशेयुः (or they must enter [the village] while there is still visible ever so a little part of the sun), Kâç. on P. 2, 1, 8 यावदसत्रं ब्राह्मणानामामन्त्रयस्व (invite of the brahmans according to the number of vessels). The partitive gen., that attends verbs (119), may be explained in this way.

3. One, two, three times a day, a week, etc. is expressed by the partitive gen., as M. 3, 281 आठं त्रिन्दस्य निर्वपेत्, Pār. Gr̥hy. 1, 3, 31 यत्नकृत्संवत्सरम्. Likewise M. 5, 21 संवत्सरस्यैकमपि चरेत्कृच्छ्रं द्वितोत्तमः (a pious twice-born man should perform at least one »strong penance" a year). P. 2, 3, 64.

4. A partitive gen., depending on the neuter of an adjective, is rare, even in the old language. Ait. Br. 2, 15, 8 महति राज्ञाः. In the R̥gvedasanhitā there are even such gen. as इदा अहः, प्रातरहः, which remind of Lat. *id temporis* and the like; cp. SIECKE p. 65.

**118.** II. Several verbs are construed with a genitive.

Geni-  
tive  
with  
verbs.

1. A *possessive genitive* is put to some verbs of *owning* and

1) Yet Mhbh. 1. 37, 8 I have found सर्वे न. = »all of us," just as in English.

ruling, viz. द्रा, ईन् [P. 2, 3, 52], the vedic राज् Comp Greek ἀρχειν τιθε. — So R̥gv. 1, 25, 20 त्वं विश्वस्य मेधिर् दिवश्च ममश्च राजसि; Çat. Br. 5, 1, 5, 4 एकः सन्ब्रह्मनामोष्टे. — M. 5, 2 कथं मृत्युः प्रभवति वेदशास्त्रविदाम् (how is it, that Death has power over such as have mastered the veda and the sciences?), Mālat. II, p. 38 प्रभवति प्रायः कुमारीणां ज्ञानयिता दैवं च, cp. ibid. IV, p. 70, l. 2, Mālav. V, p. 143. — This construction is rare in classic Sanskrit; ईन् with a gen. seems to be wholly obsolete.

119. 2. A *partitive genitive* is frequently employed in the elder literature, and had not yet entirely disappeared in the days of Pāṇini. But in classic Sanskrit such phrases as अमृतस्य ददाति (he gives of the ambrosia), सर्पियो नाथते (he desires of the butter) are out of use.

In mantra, brāhmaṇa and upanishad it is often attending verbs of *giving, begging, eating, drinking* and the like <sup>1)</sup>. R̥gv. 10, 85, 3 सोमं यं ब्रह्माणो विदुर्न तस्याश्नान्ति कश्चन (of the soma, the brahman know, nobody eats), ibid. 9, 70, 2 स भिक्षमाणो अमृतस्य चारुणः (he, begging [a share] of the delightful ambrosia), Ch. Up. 1, 10, 3 एतेषां मे देहि (give me of these), TBr. 2, 2, 9, 3 समुद्रस्य न पिबन्ति (they do not drink of the ocean), Ait. Br. 1, 22, 6 त्रयाणां ह वै हविषां स्विकृते न सम-व्यन्ति (of three oblations they do not cut off for the Svishtakṛt).

Rem. To this belong the rules of P. 2, 3, 61 and 63, which enjoin the genitive of the oblation *a.)* in certain formulae, uttered at the moment of offering it to the deity, *b.)* with यन्. So f. i. Çat. Br. 3, 8, 2, 26 अग्निषोमाभ्यां क्षामस्य वपायै [gen. = वपायाः 86 NB.] मेदसोऽनुब्रूहि (announce to Agni and Soma [their shares] of the opiploon and the fat of the he-goat), R̥gv. 3, 53, 2 सोमस्य त्वा यन्ति (I have worshipped thee [with your share] of soma), Ait. Br. 2, 9, 5.

120. 3. The genitive serves to denote the objects of some <sup>P. 2, 3, 52.</sup> verbs: *a.)* स्मृ (to remember), *b.)* दय् (to have mercy), *c.)*

अनुकृ (to imitate), *d.)* some verbs of *longing for*. With all of them, however, the accusative is also available.

Examples: *a.)* Mudr. II, p. 71 हा देव नन्द स्मृति ते राज्ञसः प्रसादा-नाम् (ah, king Nanda, Rāxasa is well aware of your marks of kindness),

1) See SIECKE p. 33—37.

Daç. 60 स्मृ तस्या हंसकयायाः. Compare with those genitives these accus. Mālav. III, p. 63 अपि स्मरेदस्मद्भर्षनाम् (should she perhaps remember our suit?), Cāk. V स्मरिष्यति त्वां न स चोद्यितोऽपि सन्. The verb विसृ (to forget) is construed with acc.<sup>1)</sup>

b.) Daç. 97 एते भद्रमुखास्तव दयन्ताम् (may these dear men show mercy towards you). It is often construed with acc.

c.) The person whose deeds etc. are imitated is generally put in the genitive. Mreçh. VI, p. 222 भीमस्यानुकरिष्यामि चातुः शस्त्रं भविष्यति, Mālav. V, p. 141 ननु कलमेन यूयपतेरनुकृतम् (v. a. the apple falls not far from the tree).

Rem. 1. Comp. अनुवदते (to speak after), which is construed similarly by Kāç. on P. 1, 3, 49, and अनुहरति (to take after). Pat. I, 393 पितुरनुहरति (he takes after his father).

Rem. 2. According to P. 2, 3, 53 compared to 6, 1, 139 उपस्क्रुते (to take care of) may admit of a genitive.

d.) Here the acc. is the regular construction, and the gen. but scarcely met with, as M. 2, 162 अमृतस्येव चाकाङ्क्षेदवमानस्य सर्वदा (he must always long for being insulted as if it were ambrosia), Mhbh. 3, 12630 नायन्तः सवकामानाम्, Mālat. V, p. 72 अपि भवानुत्काशते मदयन्ति-कायाः (do you long for Madayantikā?); R. 3, 47, 30 gen. with स्पृहयति.

121. 4. In the archaic dialect many more verbs may be construed with the gen. of their object. Pāṇini prescribes its being used with a) all verbs of remembering<sup>2)</sup>; b) नाच् when = »to desire to hope," cp. 120, d; c) five verbs of injuring viz. क्षामयति, नाह, निप्रहन्, क्रय् पिप्, d) the verbs of illness — fever excepted — as चौरस्य रुजति. As he does not add that the gen. with them is restricted to the holy texts, it is likely, that it was used so in his days, but that it has antiquated afterwards. SIECKE p. 50—52 of his treatise on the vedic genitive has given some examples of its being used in the

P. 2, 3,  
55.

P. 2, 3,  
56.

1) Yet Bhatt. 17, 10 it complies with a gen., see Petr. Dict. s. v. p. 1386. So in a prakṛt passage of the Uttararāmacaritra p. 19 विमुमरिदा अहो महाराजदसरहस रामभद्रेषा »Rāma has made us forget king Daçaratha."

2) Pāṇini (2, 3, 52) speaks of अधोगर्ष, that is »all, which mean to think of." In classic Sanskrit I greatly doubt instances will be found of any other verb but स्मृ.

Rigvedasanhitā with such verbs as अघो, अघिना, चित्, गन् etc. With विद् (to know; to be aware of, to experience) it often occurs in the brāhmaṇa-works. Ait. Br. 2, 39, 11 प्राणो वै ज्ञातवेदः स हि ज्ञातानां वेदः. As to the foresaid verbs of injuring, in the Rāmāyana also स्पृष्ट् (to touch) is construed with a gen., 2, 75, 31 गवां स्पृष्टु पादेन, likewise 3, 66, 6<sup>1</sup>).

Rem. According to P. 2, 3, 51 the verb ज्ञा is construed with the gen. of the instrument (*karana*), then ज्ञा must not be equivalent with विद्. Kāç. gives this example सर्पिषो ज्ञानीते = सर्पिषा कर्पोन प्रवर्तते. It is not sufficiently plain, what is here the meaning of ज्ञा<sup>2</sup>).

122. 5. The *wager* with verbs of playing or betting, the *purchase-money* with those of buying and selling is to be put in the gen., according to P. 2, 3, 57—60, thus exemplified by Kāç. ज्ञातस्य व्यग्रहति or वपते or दीव्यति. Instances of this rule applied in literature if they occur at all, must be scanty.<sup>3</sup>) With the compounds of दिव् the gen. is told to be optional — ज्ञातस्य or ज्ञातं प्रदीव्यति —, in the brāhmaṇa the simple दिव् is construed with the acc. of the wager, see P. 2, 3, 60 with comm.

1) Cp. the Greek *τυγχάνειν*, *θγγάνειν* and sim. For the rest, objective genitives with verbs of *touching*, *desiring*, *remembering* are common to the whole Indo-germanic family and the most probable explication, which may be given of them is to consider them as having had at the outset the character of *partitive* genitives. Their fate has been the same in Sanskrit as in its sister-tongues. In the ancient literature they are relatively common; but gradually they decrease by time both in frequency and in extent, and modern Sanskrit has but retained a few remnants of that old and once widely-spread idiom

2) So the Kāçikā. It proffers also a different explication, according to which ज्ञा with gen. = "to ween, to fancy," for मिथ्याज्ञानमज्ञानमेव. Patanjali has not expounded the sūtra. For the rest, as it runs thus ज्ञो अविर्दस्य कर्पो, nothing impedes reading it rather ज्ञो विर्दस्य कर्पो. Then it is said just the contrary: ज्ञा when = विद् complies with a gen. and in fact, in the ancient dialect ज्ञा was not rarely construed so.

3) A prakṛt passage in Mrech. II, p. 68 दशशुवपणाहं लुदु नूदकरं [= Skr. दशशुवर्णस्य रुदो नूतकरः] (this player is detained for 10 *suvarṇas*) may afford an instance of it.

**123** 6. Verbs of *fulness, repletion, satisfaction*, as **पूरयति**,

**तृप्**, **तुप्** are often construed with a genitive, but more commonly with the instrumental. Cp. Latin *vas plenum vini vel vino* <sup>1)</sup> Examples of the genit. *Suṣr.* 1, 116. 14 चक्षुषाम्पूरयति (the face is bathed with tears), *Panc.* I, 148 नाग्निस्तृप्यति काष्ठानां नाकमानां महोदधिः नान्तकः सखभूतानाम् (fire gets not satiated of wood, nor the ocean of rivers, nor death of mortal beings).

NB. But the gen. of the *person*, towards whom kindness is shown with **तृप्यति**, **तुष्ट**, **प्रसीदति** and other similar words is of a different kind (131). *Mhbh.* 1, 229, 32 तुतोय तस्य मुनेः (he became well-disposed to this brahman), *Panc.* 314 तुष्टस्तत्राहम् (I am satisfied with you), *R.* 1, 33, 13 तस्यास्तुष्टोऽभवदुक्तः <sup>2)</sup>.

Rem. 1. Vedic mantras contain many instances of other similar verbs — as **प्री**, **गृह्**, **कृ** etc. — being construed so. *SIECKE*, p. 44 sq.

Rem. 2. With **तृप्यति** the loc. is also available. *Daṣ.* 174 मन्त्रं दृष्ट्वाभ्यतृप्यत (he ate it all).

7. With several verbs the genitive does the duty of an ablative. See **126**.

8. With several verbs the genitive does the duty of a dative. See **131**, **132**.

**124.** III. A genitive with adjectives is frequently used. When attending adjectives akin to transitive verbs, it is an objective gen., as *Kathās.* 29, 55 तत्रा विनाशिन्यस्य वृषस्य (old age, which will destroy this beauty). Among them are to be especially noticed:

Geni-  
tive  
with  
adje-  
ctives.

1) Both gen. and instrum. seem to be old idioms. Yet it will seem, that the gen. with words of *fulness* has got out of use nowadays. *R.* 2, 89, 17 अग्निपूर्णा being construed with a gen. — नारोपामग्निपूर्णास्तु काष्ठिन् [sc. नावः] काष्ठिन्नु वाग्निनाम् — the commentary deems it necessary to explain the idiom: नारोपि: पूर्णा इत्यवर्थः. Cp. the similar process in Latin (*Quintil.* 9, 3, 1).

2) So *Kathās.* 27, 206 तुष्टोऽसि वामः the interpunction in *Brockhaus'* edition is here wrong.

1. Those of *knowledge*, *skill*, *experience* and the contrary (as अभिज्ञ, अनभिज्ञ, कोविन्) and उचित (*wont to*). Mudr. I, p. 34 साधु वत्स अभिज्ञः खलुसि लोकव्यवहाराणां (bravo, my child, you are well acquainted with the practice of the world), R. 1, 20, 24 संग्रामाणामकोविद्ः (not skilled in battles); — R. 2, 51, 3 उचितो जनः केशानाम् (people who are accustomed to trouble).

Examples with others: Mudr. IV, p. 146 श्रीः] समहा भूयस्य (impatient of the burden), Kām. 3, 22 गिरं विसृजेत्] हृदिनीं सर्वसत्त्वानाम् (he must speak so as to rejoice all beings).

NB. With the adjectives of *knowledge* and *skill* and with some others the locative is also used (142).<sup>1)</sup>

P. 2, 3,  
40.

2. आयत्त (depending on) and सक्त (clinging to). Panc. 231 तवायत्तः स प्रतीकारः (that remedy depends on you), ibid. 277 यत्रयास्य सक्तं किञ्चिद्गृहीतमस्ति तत्समर्पय (give up that, which you have taken belonging to him).

3. पूर्ण (full) and its compounds. See 123.

4. Those of *likeness* and *equality*. See 61.

1) The Kāçikā errs interpreting this sūtra so as to take आयुक्त and कुशल, as if they meant *but these two words*, though it is evident, that *two categories* of words are meant by Pāṇini, that of "occupation" (आयुक्त) and that of "skill" (कुशल). The rule given 1, 1, 68 — स्वं रूपं शब्दस्याशब्दसंज्ञा — is commonly interpreted in too narrow a sense. It does not purport that any word occurring in Pāṇini's text, but for a *sanjñā*, does signify but the word itself, not its synonyms — if this were so, we should have to enregister its violation every moment — but simply this: with the exception of such algebraical signs, as तु = अक, ङ = एय, घ = the suffixes of the grades of comparison, sim., the sounds and words of which the vyākaraṇa-sūtra is made up, are to be understood such as they are uttered. But it is left to the common sense of the reader to infer in each separate case, whether the word contained in the grammatical rule is meant as to its outer shape or as to its meaning, whether it is to denote but one or a whole class of words of the same purport, as आयुक्त and कुशल evidently do here.

For the rest, the vernacular grammarians themselves are obliged to admit of exceptions on their own interpretation of P. 1, 1, 68. See but the vārtt. on that sūtra.

Rem. Note द्वितीय with gen., when subst. = "the match, the counterpart" Pat. I, 445 अस्य मोर्द्धितीयेनार्यः (an other ox is wanted like this), Kathās. 25, 178 अहमेवान्याम्यस्य द्वितीये नूपुरस्य ते (I will fetch you myself the match of this foot-ornament).

5. A great number of adjectives admit of the dative-like genitive, see 129.

#### ABLATIVE-LIKE GENITIVE.

**125.** IV. Sometimes the genitive is available in such cases as do properly belong to the category of the ablative, if there be at the same time room for the conception of „belonging to" and that of „proceeding from." Of the kind we have already mentioned two instances, viz. 1. the genitive of origin (113), 2. that of the starting-point (98, R. 1 and 2). The latter is not limited to the cases, mentioned above, but is sometimes used side by side with the ablative even with such nouns as उत्तर, दक्षिण etc., Vishnup. 2, 3, 1 उत्तरं समुद्रस्य (north of the ocean).

**126.** On this account we may understand how the genitive is sometimes used instead of the ablative with *a*) verbs of asking, wishing, taking, receiving etc., *b*), of hearing, learning, *c*) of being afraid of.

*a*). The abl. is here the regular idiom; the gen. not frequent, as Rājat. 1, 131 राजस्तस्य..... वृत्रतो व्रित्तयेष्टरं।ययाचे काचिदव्यन्ता मोक्षनम्, R. 1, 28, 10 प्रतीच्छ मम (accept of me), M. 4, 87 राज्ञः प्रतिगृह्णानि लुब्धस्य-च्छास्त्रवर्तिनः (— accepts of a king, who is avaricious and a transgressor of his royal duty), Panc. 225 अहमस्य ब्राह्मणस्य गोयुग्ममपद-रिष्यामि. So already in the archaic dialect. Gaut. 17, 1 प्रशस्तानां स्वर्कसु द्विजातीनां ब्राह्मणां भुञ्जीत प्रतिगृह्णीयाच्च (a brahman is allowed to eat and to accept presents from twice-born men of good behaviour).

*b*) R. 6, 31, 2 चारुणां रावणः श्रुत्वा प्रापुं रानम् (Rāvana after having



heard from his spies the arrival of Râma), *ibid.* 3, 3, 4 निन्नाय मम (be informed from me). So sometimes with शुश्रूषणे (*cp.* 86 c), as R. 2, 100, 7 कञ्चिच्छुश्रूषसे पितुः

c) R. 2, 29, 4 तत्र सर्वे हि भ्रंशंति (all are afraid of you), *Panc.* III, 195 या ममोद्विजते नित्यम् (she, who has always an aversion to me). R. 3, 46, 29—31 affords an instance of *both* constructions *together*: इह शाखायाम्नाः सिंहाः.... कथं तेभ्यो न त्रिभ्यसे.... कुञ्जराणां तरस्विनां कथं.... न त्रिभेषि.

*Rem. Compare* निर्विण्ण (disgusted with) with a *gen.* *Panc.*

171 मूयकमांसस्य निर्विण्णपाहम् (I am disgusted with the flesh of mice), *cp.* 97, R.

Now and then this *abl.*-like genitive seems to have been extended beyond its limits by abuse, especially of modern writers<sup>1)</sup>.

127. Note the genitive being used in some turns of phrase, which might be put as well in the category of the *ablative* as in that of the *genitive*.

1) But not exclusively. The older literature does not lack of instances, as R. 3, 51, 27 ब्रह्मत्वं कालपाशेन क्व गतस्तस्य [instead of तस्माद्] मोक्षसे; *cp.* 3, 66, 11. — A very striking example is *Bhâg. Pur.* 8, 6, 21 अमृतोत्पादने यत्नः प्रियतामश्चिन्तयितम्. यस्य पीतस्य वै तन्तुर्मृत्युयस्तो अमरो भवेत्; here the *gen.* is abusively employed instead of the *abl.* यस्मात्पीतात्. M. DE SAUSSURE, from whose valuable treatise *de l'emploi du génitif absolu en Sanscrit* I borrow this example (see his note on p. 10), proves the impossibility of accounting for that *gen.* in a satisfactory way, when starting from the absolute construction. Hereby it is however not said that the presence of the participle पीत has not moved the author of the *Bhâgavata* to employ the genitive instead of the ablative. Likewise I scarcely believe Kalhana would have used a *gen.* with याच् (Râjat. 1, 131, see 126 a), if the noun were not attended by a participle. Similarly with श्रु the *gen.* is preferred, if it be wanted to express the *hearing somebody say or utter something*, as *Mhbl.* 1, 141, 13 शृणु वदतो मम. In short, it is likely, that the relative frequency of genitives of participles in Sanskrit style, especially if compared to the rareness of similar ablatives, has favored the spreading of the *ablative*-like genitive.

It may also be noticed, that in most of such cases pronouns are concerned.

1° a gen. with verbs of *speaking* etc. to denote him, *about whom* something is said, as Panc. 82 ममादोषस्याप्येवं वदति (so he speaks of me, who am however guiltless<sup>1</sup>).

2° with संग्रहयति and the like = »to expect of, to suppose of.” Mreeh. IX, p. 297 सर्वस्य मूर्खस्य संग्रह्यते (that blockhead is capable to everything), Panc. 34 न तादृक्पुरुषाणामेवंविधं चेदिते संग्रह्यते (of such men one must not suppose such conduct). But the locative is here also available.

3° with क्षन् (to forbear of) etc. R. 1, 15, 7 सर्वं तस्य क्षमामहे, Pat. I, p. 40 एतदेकमाचार्यस्य... मृष्यताम्. — When without object, the gen. with क्षन् may be considered a dative-like one, as Mhbh. 1, 79, 9 शिष्यस्याशिष्यवृत्तेस्तु न क्षन्तव्यं नृभूषता (a man who wishes his wellbeing should not forbear a scholar, who does not behave as such).

**128.** The **time-denoting genitive** is likewise standing on the ground of the ablative, for it does always express *after what time* something is happening. It is usually restricted to some fixed terms, as चिरस्य or चिरस्य कालस्य = चिरात्, मुहूर्तस्य = मुहूर्तात् etc. Çāk. VII इमाञ्चाकर्तॄं वो नान्धर्वेण विधिदोषस्य कस्यचित्कालस्य [»after a while”] अन्धुतिरान्तीतां स्मृतिश्रैयित्यात्प्रव्यादिश्रुत्पराहोऽस्मि, Mhbh. 1, 47, 14 कतिपयाहस्य (after some days), R. 2, 118, 44 सुदीर्यस्य तु कालस्य रात्र्यंशः.... यज्ञं द्रुहं गमातः

Time-  
denot-  
ing ge-  
nitive.

Rem. 1. It is very rare, that a not-time-denoting word is put in this gen., as Ven. I, p. 14 मम शिशोरेव = मम शिशुकालादेव शार्व (since my very infancy).

Rem. 2. A time-denoting word may be attended by the *genitive of a noun + participle*. By this is denoted the time »since” some action has come to pass. Mreeh. V, p. 172 चिरः खलु कालो मैत्रेयस्य वसन्तमेनायाः सकाशं गतस्य (it is indeed a long time, Maitreya is gone to V.), Mudr. IV, p. 134 अद्य दशमो मासस्तातस्योपरतस्य (it is to day just the tenth month since father died), Ven. I, p. 25 आर्य का खलु वेला तत्रावत्याः प्रापयाः किन्तु... आर्येण न लक्षिता (Sir, it is some time Mylady stays

1) See DE SAUSSURE l.l. p. 54 N.

here, but you have not noticed her), Panc. 303 क्रियान्कालस्तथैवं स्य तस्य, Utt. IV, p. 72; R. 3, 50. 20 ¹).

#### DATIVE-LIKE GENITIVE.

**129.** V. The genitive serves also to denote him, who is concerned by the action or fact, the so-called *remote object*. This kind of genitive, as it stands on the same ground as the dative, I name **dative-like genitive**. Partly it may be substituted to the dative, but in a great number of cases the dative would even be unavailable, at least in classic Sanskrit, especially, if the person concerned is to be expressed *in such sentences, as where the predicate is nominal (substantive or adjective)*. In such turns as Kathās. 29, 98 इहामुत्र च साधूनां पतिरैका गतिः (for virtuous wives the only path to follow here and hereafter is their husband), Panc. II, 58 कां गतिभारः समर्थानां किं क्रूरं व्यवसायिनाम्। कां विदेशः सविद्यानां कः परः प्रियवादिनाम् (what is too heavy for the vigorous? what danger does exist for the audacious? what is a foreign country for the learned? who is unattainable for the flatterer?) the genitive is the regular idiom, and the dative out of use. Likewise the genitive — not the dative — is to be employed, with adjectives of *friendship and enmity, fitness and unfitness, good and evil* etc., as Panc. 331 अस्य मत्स्यामिपि सदा प्रियम् (a fish-dinner is always welcome to him), *ibid.* 213 न युक्तं भवतः (it does not suit you).

1) This idiom extends also to *adjectives, used as participles*. Utt. III, p. 57 देव्या ग्रन्थस्य जगतो द्वादशः परिवत्सरः (it is now the twelfth year, that the world is destitute of its queen).

Examples: Kumâr. 3, 10 के गम भ्रष्टिनां ज्ञे (who are other archers to me?), Mrech. VIII p. 246 मदनः] सत्युत्पद्य..... भवति मृदुर्नैव वा भवति (the God of Love is either mild for an honest man or he does not exist for him), Mhbh. 1, 141, 36 अविज्ञाता भविष्यामो लोकस्य (we shall be unknown to the people), Panc. 200 यथार्थवादिनो दूतस्य न दोषः कर्पायः (one must not take it ill of a messenger, if he speaks plain), Çâk. IV भर्तृविकृतापि रोषपातया मास्म प्रतीयं गमः (do not oppose your husband by anger, even when offended).

With  
adjectives,  
as प्रिय  
etc. Among the adjectives, which comply with a gen., note such as अनुत्प, अनुकूल and प्रतिकूल, प्रिय and विप्रिय, योग्य, युक्त — and even the verb युज्यते (to suit) — and their synonyms. So Nala 1, 19 कर्हि-  
व्यामि तव प्रियम्, Panc. III, 104 आत्मनः प्रतिकूलानि परेषां न समाचरेत् (one should not do to others, what is grievous to one's self), Mrech. I, p. 58 अयोग्यमिदं न्यासस्य गृहम् (this house is not fit for a deposit), ibid. X, p. 355 न युज्यते तव प्राणापरित्यागः, Mâlav. IV, p. 96 ग्रीतक्रिया चास्या हृतः प्रशस्ता (and cold is excellent against this ailment), Mhbh. 1, 15, 4 रामः सवस्य लोकास्य (the same to all beings), Mâlav. IV, p. 88 क एवं विमुखो ऽस्माकम् (who is so disinclined to me?), ibid. III, p. 75 पर्याप्तमेतावता कामिनाम् (so much suffices for persons in love).

So सदृश and उचित, when = »becoming to, suiting." R. 2, 30, 41 संव्या सदृशं सीते मम स्वस्य कुलस्य च । व्यवसायमनुक्रान्ता कान्ते त्वमतिप्रोभाम्; Çâk. I उचितमेवैतत्पुरुषं प्रभवन् रेन्द्रप्रदीपस्य. As to अह् and अहर् cp. the foot-note on p. 40 of this book. Note also अनाद्य, अनृण etc. with a gen. = »guiltless towards", as R. 2, 49, 7 प्रज्ञानामनाद्यः, M. 9, 106 पितृणामनृणः (having paid his debts to the *pitaras*).

Rem. 1. Pâṇini teaches, that with participles in त the genitive P 2,3, 67. must be used, and not the instrum. of the agent, if the participle is employed as a present one. Such genitives as राज्ञां मतः (approved by the kings), राज्ञां वृजितः (honored by the kings) fall within the limits of this rule. See Mhbh. 1, 141, 36 and Çâk. IV quoted above, and cp. Çâk. II विदितो भवानाश्रमसदामिहस्यः (your staying here is known to the hermits).

Rem. 2. On the genit. with कृत्याs see 66 R. According to P. 2, 3, 69 the genitive is forbidden with the कृत्s वल्लर्णे, that is such as सुलभ, इष्टकर (cp. P. 3, 3, 126 sq.). Kâç. gives as examples

ईषट्करो भवता कटः (the mat is scarcely to be made by you), ईषत्यानः सोमो भवता. So R. 3, 5, 23 कर्म कानेन कर्तव्यं महदन्यैः सुदुष्करम्. In fact, however, सुकर, दुष्कर, सुलभ, दुर्लभ are often construed with the genitive. Daç. 72 द्वितीयस्तु सर्वस्यैव सुलभः, R. 2, 97, 7 नेयं मन महो दुर्लभा, Kathâs. 24, 65 किं नाम कितवस्य हि दुष्करम्.

**130.** When used with the verb substantive expressed or implied, the dative-like genitive is not seldom equivalent to our verb *to have*. Pat. I, 427 one asks the other कति भवतः पुत्राः। कति भवतो भार्याः (how many children have you? how many wives?). Cp. the Latin phrase *est mihi filius*. Ait. Br. 7, 13, 1 तस्य ह प्रतं त्राया यद्भुः, Çâk. I अस्ति नो न्यदपि प्रष्टव्यम् (I have something else to ask you about), Panc. 166 अन्यत्र गतानां धनं भवति (men make money, if they go abroad). Likewise in such terms as किं तत्रानेन (what have I [to meddle, to do] with him?), cp. 88 R. 2.

**131.** The dative-like genitive attends even on verbs. Mrçch. X, p. 375 किमस्य पापस्यानुष्ठेयिताम् (what is to be done to this wicked man?) and ibid. X, p. 384 किमस्य भिक्षोः क्रियताम् (what is to be done for this monk?) are striking examples of the sixth case used so. It is especially verbs of *doing good or evil* (as उपकृ, प्रसद्, अपकृ, अपराध्), विश्वस् (to trust), क्षम् (to forbear) and some others which partake of this idiom, its concurrent construction being the locative, rarely, if at all, the dative <sup>1</sup>).

Examples: R. Gorr. 4, 38, 47 मित्राणामुपकर्षाणो राक्ष्यं रक्षितुमर्हसि (you

1) As to अपराध्, उपकृ, अपकृ, विश्वस्, I do not remember having met with any instance of their agreeing with a dative; क्षम् governs a dative Bhatt. 4, 39. Upon the whole, the dative of profit and damage within its narrower limits is very scarce in Sanskrit, cp. 84.

must guard your kingdom by doing well to your friends), *ibid.* 3, 1, 16 रामस्य सत्कृत्य (offered hospitality to R.), *Panc.* 289 किं नया तस्यास्तत्रापि चापकृतम् (in what have I injured her or you?), *Çāk.* VII अपराहो अस्मि तत्रभवतः कण्वस्य (I have sinned against the reverend Kanva), *Panc.* 38 स न कस्यचिद्विश्वसिति (he trusts nobody), *Mhbh.* 1, 23, 26 प्रसीद नः प्रयाचताम् (be merciful to us, who beseech thee), *Mālat.* VII, p. 126 वायुर्युनामभिनवधूसंनिधानं व्यनक्ति (the wind declares to the young men the nearness of young women).

Rem. In Latin, with such turns as *adimo vestem servo* or *servi*, *civium* or *civibus dolor auctus est*, the dative and the genitive are both available. Sanskrit invariably uses the genitive. *Panc.* II, 141 उद्यमेन हि सिध्यन्ति कार्याणि न मनोरथैः । न हि सिद्धस्य गुप्स्य प्रविशन्ति मुखे मृगाः (it is by exertion, that enterprises are successful, not by wishing, deer do not enter the mouth of a sleeping lion), *ibid.* p. 145 हिरण्यक्रोऽपि मय्यर्कस्य प्रणामं कृत्वा (H. made his reverence to M.), *ibid.* 137 मन मल्लो प्रीतिः संजाता (I have got great pleasure).

**132.** Finally, the genitive *is allowed* to attend all verbs, as are commonly construed with the dative of concern. Such a genitive may be not without affectation <sup>1)</sup>, it is

Genitive of the remote object.

1) So at least is the opinion of ANANDARAM BOROAH (§ 212 of his *Higher Sanskrit Grammar*) — and his opinion may be considered to hold good nowadays in India with Sanskrit-writing people — »the gen. is also occasionally used for the Dat. or Indirect Object, especially by pedantic writers” and »it will be seen from the above examples that such use besides being pedantic, is very ambiguous.” The ambiguity, however, cannot be very great, for as a rule the context will show us how to accept such genitives, and in such cases, as where the context would not enable us to understand him plainly, a good writer will avoid *all* ambiguous constructions. That the dative-like genitive has been known and employed in India of old — though not to the extent, it has got in the classic dialect — may be seen from some of the examples quoted above. As with other concurrent idioms, there is many an instance of both cases used together, as R. 2, 34, 6 दारि तिष्ठति ते सुतः । ब्रह्मणेभ्यो धनं दत्त्वा सर्वं चैवोपपत्तिविनाम्, *schol.* उपपत्तिविनां च तेभ्यश्च दत्त्वा. In the comment of Kāc. on P. 3, 3, 111 the printed

of frequent occurrence in literature'). So it is found with 1. verbs of *giving, offering*, 2. of *telling, speaking*, 3. of *carrying, sending*, 4. of *showing*, 5. of *enjoining*, 6. of *promising*, 7. of *pleasing*, 8. of *being angry*, 9. of *bowing, prostrating one's self*, etc.

Examples: 1. Ch. Up. 2, 22, 5 प्रज्ञापतेरात्मानं परिददानि (let me surrender myself to Pr.), Panc. 85 मया तस्याभयं प्रदत्तम् (I have granted him safety), Çāk. I सूतस्याभरणानि धनुश्रोपनीगार्पयति, Mrech. II, p. 80 अन्यान्तावद् दश सुवर्णानि स्येव प्रयच्छ (give but to this very follow ten other pieces of gold).

2. Mhbh. 1, 12, 6 चक्षौ पितुः (he told his father —), Panc. 292 कथयास्माकं देशान्तरवृत्तान्तम् (relate us of your adventures in foreign countries), Mrech. I, p. 45 यदीमं वार्त्तामार्वाचारदत्तस्य नाख्यास्यसि, Panc. 246 ततस्तैः सर्वैरेव गत्वा दुर्दुरात्रस्य विज्ञप्तम् (then they went all and addressed the king of frogs), ibid. 62 स तदाकर्णयान्येषामपि ब्रलक्षणां तत्तस्य वचनं निवेदयामास.

3. Çāk. III कस्येदमुशीरानुलेपनं मृणालवन्ति च मन्त्रिणीपत्राणि नीयन्ते (to whom are carried —?), ibid. IV तामय संप्रेष्य परिगृहीतुः (having sent her now to her husband).

4. Kathās. 29, 18 अद्ग्रायत्तस्याः पुत्रिकाः (she showed her the puppets).

5. Panc. 289 तेन च मम समादिदम् (and he prescribed me), Çāk. IV भगिन्यास्ते मार्गमादेशय (show the way to your sister).

text has ऋणां वत्परस्य धारयन्ते, the other reading परस्मे is mentioned in a foot-note.

1) In the vulgar dialects the dative has got obsolete, and the genitive has been substituted to it, the few traces of a dative in Prākṛit literature being owed to the artificial language of dramatic poetry. See LASSEN *Inst. linguae pracriticae*, p. 299, VARARUCI *Prākṛitaparakāṣa* 6, 64. KUNN *Beiträge zur Pali Grammatik*, p. 70 sq. gives an account of the remnants of the dative in Pali, which are more considerable, than in the other prākṛits, and contain both infinitives in °tave and datives in °āya, especially *atthāya* = skṛt *arthāya*; as a rule, the pali dative serves to denote the *purpose*. The same process has been at work in Modern Greek. SCHINAS, *Grammaire élémentaire du grec moderne*, Paris, 1829 p. 90: «le génitif sert de régime indirect aux verbes et remplace le datif: δίδωμι μου ψωμί donne-moi du pain, λέγω τῷ κριτῷ τὴν ἀλήθειαν je dis au juge la vérité.

6. M. 9, 99 अन्यस्य प्रतिज्ञाय पुनर्न्यस्य दीयते (she has been promised to one and given to another).

7. Panc. 235 किं तव रोचत एष (does he please you?).

8. R. 2, 100, 33 भृता भर्तुः कुप्यन्ति (servants are moved with anger against their master), Çâk. VII ममानतिक्रुहो मुनिः

9. Var. Yog. 2, 32 एकस्य प्रणमन्ति मर्त्याः (people bow to one), R. II, sarga 96\*, 47 न्यपतत्काको राघवस्य महात्मनः (the crow prostrated himself to the magnanimous Râma).

Rem. Even अद्वा (to believe) is met with gen. Ait. Br. 1, 6, 11 न ब्रूनां चान्येषां अद्वाति he does not believe others, however many).

132\*. The dative of the purpose is not interchangeable with the genitive <sup>1)</sup>

1) In the prākṛts even then. It is singular, that an observer as accurate, as Pāṇini is, should have overlooked the important function of the dative-like genitive. A rule of his, indeed, mentions the sixth case चतुर्थ्यर्थे बहुलम् (2, 3, 62), but the word इन्दसि added and the examples proffered by tradition show that according to the vulgar interpretation we have here a very special enjoinder, closely connected to the preceding sūtra (61), not one of general bearing. Yet I greatly doubt the exactness of that explication, by which the word चतुर्थ्यर्थे is quite superfluous, as देवतासंप्रदाने needs must be repeated from s. 61, and this suffices for the vulgar interpretation. Perhaps we may remove the technical difficulty by an other distribution of the words, that make up sūtra 61—63. When read *uno tenore*, we get प्रेष्यब्रुवोर्हविषो देवतासंप्रदाने चतुर्थ्यर्थे बहुलं इन्दसि यज्ञेश्च कर्णे. It would be convenient both to the internal probability and to the simplicity of the interpretation, if they are divided in this but slightly different manner: 61. प्रेष्यब्रुवोर्हविषो देवतासंप्रदाने, 62. चतुर्थ्यर्थे बहुलं, 63. इन्दसि यज्ञेश्च कर्णे. According to this partition, Pāṇini, after having given in 61 a special rule about the gen. being employed in some formulae of sacrificing, adds in 62 the general enjoinder that in many cases, where the dative is required — mark चतुर्थ्यर्थे, which encompasses by far more than संप्रदाने — the genitive is likewise available, either by preference, or optionally, but not in all. For thus is the meaning of बहुलम्:

कुचिद्वर्धतिः कुचिद्वर्धतिः कुचिद्वर्धतिः कुचिद्वर्धतिः

विधेर्विधानं बहुधा समीच्य चतुर्विधं द्वाहुलकं वर्धति

(see BOETHLINGK Pāṇini II, p. 82). — As to sūtra 63 इन्दसि यज्ञेश्च कर्णे, it offers no difficulty in itself, but disturbs the methodical arrangement



CHAPTER VIII. Locative <sup>1</sup>).**133.**

Locative of the spot where.

The seventh case or locative serves to signify the scene of the action. Its power is expressed by English prepositions, as *in*, *on*, *at*, *among*, *with*, *by*, *near*. It has not only the duty of pointing out the spot where, but also the spot whither. In other terms, sometimes it answers Lat. *in* with abl., sometimes *in* with accus.

**A. Locative of the spot where.** — Here we must make the following distinctions.

a.) the locative conveys the notion of being *within*, *in*. M. 1, 9 तस्मिन्नग्रे स्वयं ब्रह्मा (in this [egg] Brahman himself was born), Daç. 156 गङ्गान्मसि चिरद्गन् (sporting in the water of the Ganges), ibid. 179 कस्यचिच्चित्रकर्त्तव्यं हस्ते चित्रपटं ददर्श.

b.) it denotes a surface, trodden or touched: *on*, *upon*, *over*, *at*. Panc. 307 रात्राः कश्चित्तत्र श्रमशाने दृढः (an ass was seen on that cemetery), R. 3, 5, 10 व्यत्रने गृहेति वारानासि-यां ध्रुवमाने च नृधनि (courtesans, holding fans, waved them over his head), Panc. 331 ते च मत्स्या बहो पाचनाय तिष्ठन्ति (and those fishes are being boiled over

of the rules which treat of the employment of the genitive (2, 3, 50—73). For this reason I consider it an additional rule, interpolated at an unproper place — we had rather expected it between s. 51 and 52 — so as to obscureate by its close following the sūtra 62, the right understanding of the latter. That there are several rules in our Pāṇini, which did not belong to the original work, but were at the outset vārttikās, which afterwards have been taken up in the text, is a fact now universally acknowledged. As concerns the s. 63, I remark, that many other vaidik gen. partitives with verbs (119) are not mentioned by Pāṇini, and that the seeming anomaly of वृत् (cp. 45 R.) must have drawn special attention for all that regarded that verb; in a time as early as PATANJALI, it was already considered to have something peculiar, see his comment on P. 1, 4, 32 = Pat. I, p. 331 (in the Kāçikā his words are wrongly indicated as if they were a vārttikā).

1) See DELBRÜCK *Ablativ, Localis, Instrumentalis* p. 27—49.

the fire), Daç. 140 पिता मे त्रिचक्रायां भूमौ स्थितोऽभूत् (my father laid down on the naked earth), *ibid.* 141 प्रिरसि दिव्यन्ती.

c.) it signifies the dominion or territory: *in, at, on, Latin apud, in.* Panc. 1 अस्ति दक्षिणात्ये वनपदे गह्विलाक्षेत्रं नाम नगरम्, *ibid.* 319 राजमृदे मेघमृगमस्ति (in the royal palace there was a flock of rams), Kumâras. 5, 60 फलं दृष्टे द्रुमेषु (fruits are seen on the trees). So पञ्चालेषु (in the country of the Pancâlâs), काश्यान् (at Benares), Mhbh. 1, 31, 18 अग्निन्द्रस्त्रिभुवने कृतः (he has been made Lord over the three worlds); cp. 111 R.

d.) it indicates something very near, though not directly touched: *near, on, about* <sup>1)</sup>. Mhbh. 1, 170, 3 अग्नेर्दुर्गङ्गायां पाण्डुनन्दनाः (Pându's sons pitched tents near the Ganges), Hitop. 29 नां चेदनाहारिणात्मानं तव द्वारि व्यापादयिष्यामि (otherwise I will kill myself by starvation at your door). So Kâd. I, p. 39 यत्र is used, while meaning »about which spot.”

e.) it is expressive of *among, amid*. Nala 1, 13 न देवेषु न यक्षेष्ट तादृशपुत्रतो क्वचित्मानुषेष्वपि चाण्डेषु दृष्टपूर्वाव वा श्रुता (neither among devas nor yakshas nor men nor among other beings such a beauty has been seen nor heard of anywhere), Daç. 124 अगमन्न पौरत्रानपद्विष्यं वार्त्ता (this report spread among the townsmen and the countrymen). Cp. 116.

All these variegations are mixed up in the general notion, carried by the seventh case. Greater precision, if wanted, may be obtained by using periphrasing turns, as the prepos. *अन्तः* (within), or such words as *मध्ये, तले, पृष्ठे, एकदेशे, संनिधौ*, etc. See 165, 190, 192.

**134. B. Locative of the spot whither.** It attends of course on verbs and verbal nouns of moving, such as *to go, to start, to lead, to send*. Ch. Up. 2, 24, 5 इषं वै यत्मानस्य लोकं द्रुतामि (I shall go to the world of him, in whose behalf the sacrifice is performed), Panc. 321 स मरुद्वां गतः (he set out to the forest), *ibid.* 41 समीपवर्तिनि नगरे प्रस्थितः, *ibid.* 269 शोभनस्थाने त्वयादं गीतः

Locative of the spot whither.

1) This is the so called सामोप्ये सप्तमी.

(you have conducted me to a fine spot), R. 1, 11, 24 वीरेषु प्रेषयामास दूतान् (he sent messengers to the citizens), R. 2, 7, 26 अपवाहू..... भरतं तव बन्धुषु after having removed Bharata to your kinsmen —).

*to enter.* Panc. 283 मत्स्यो नयां प्रविशेश, ibid. 52 त्वया सह वद्धो प्रविशामि (with you I will go into the fire).

*to fall on or in.* R. 3, 18, 25 पपात भूमे, Çāk. I रेणुः पतति..... आश्रमदुर्मेषु (the dust falls on the trees of the hermitage).

*to submerge in.* Kumāras. 1, 3 एको हि दोषो गुणसंनिपाते निमज्जतीन्द्रोः किरणेष्विवाङ्कः (for [that] one defect disappears in the contact with his virtues, like the moon's spot submerges in its beams).

*to throw in.* Daç. 61 सर्वमेव कुरुन्म्रकं ब्रन्धने क्षिप्त्वा, Panc. 124 तं नदामुद्रायां प्राक्षिप्य.

*to place —, to put in, upon.* Mudr. III, p. 91 न्यस्तं मूर्ध्नि पदं तत्रैव तस्या (old age has set its foot on your head), Panc. 146 तत्रैव भिक्षपात्रे निधाय (— put it in that very beggar's bowl), Mhbh. 1, 40, 21 तस्य स्कन्धे मृतं सर्पं क्रुतो राजा समासन्नत्, Âpast. 1, 15, 21 खट्वायां च नोपदध्यात् (nor shall he put [fire] under his bedstead). Metaphor: Prabodh. V, p. 112 यदादिप्रति भगवती मूर्धनि निवेशिताः सर्वा एवाज्ञाः

*to ascend.* Kathās. 29, 129 तरो..... आइहा तत्र राक्षसी (the rāxasi climbed in' o the tree). Metaphor: Panc. I, 266 यस्मिन्..... चक्षुरारोपयति पार्श्विः (he, on whom the king fixes his looks).

*to strike, to hit.* Çāk. I अर्तत्रापाय वः शस्त्रं न प्रहर्तुमनामसि, Kathās. 28, 31 तस्मिन्बद्धेन प्राहर्मुनीं (he stroke the holy man with his sword), M cch. II, p. 83 शोषायां मुष्टिप्रहारं ददाति, Panc. 295 तं शिरस्यताडयत्. And so on.

Rem. Note कृ with loc., a very common turn = »to put in or on," as स्कन्धे, हस्ते, पापौ<sup>1)</sup>, धुरि कृ (to put at the head), sim.

**134'.** The spot reached may also be denoted by the *accusative*. Compare with the above examples these: Ch. Up. 5, 3, 1 समितिमेयाय (he came at the meeting), Panc. 143 स्वपृष्ठमारोप्य माम् (after having put me on your back), Çāk. I तपोवनं तावत्प्रविशामि etc. etc.

1) Cf. P. 1, 4, 77, where it is taught, that हस्तेकृत्य पापौकृत्य are to be used when = »having married", but हस्ते कृत्वा »having put in the hand, — taken by the hand."

So with verbs of *going, bringing, carrying, sending, ascending, entering*. Those, however, of *falling, throwing, placing, putting* — as पत्, क्षिप्, न्यस्, निवेष्टयति, स्थापयति — seem to be construed with the locative exclusively. On the other hand the accusative is obligatory, if “to come to” is the metaphorical expression of „to become” (236), and in some other standing turns, as तुलामारोहति.

- 135.** According to what has been said 111, it is plain, that nothing impedes locatives qualifying a noun. Such phrases as कूपे सलिलम्। नद्यां नौका are as good Sanskrit as „water in the pit,” „a boat on the river” are good English. — Here the genitive is concurrent.

Noun-qualifying locatives.

In some turns the locative is standing, as in divisions of literary works as रति श्रीमद्रामायणे वाल्मीकीय अरण्यखण्डे प्रथमः सर्गः, we say, the first sarga of the *Āranyakhaṇḍa* of the *Rāmāyaṇa* of Valmiki.

- 136.** II. Both kinds of locative are applied in so many and in so manifold ways, as to make it hardly practicable to enumerate them all distinctly and completely. It may suffice to mention the most important and the most striking idioms:

Locative in idiomatic phrases.

1. to drink from etc.

1. We will notice in the first place some peculiar phrases. Of the kind are:

*to drink from.* Panc. I, 327 लोकः पिबति सुरां नरकपालेऽपि (men drink strong liquor even from a man's skull)<sup>1</sup>).

*to feed on.* Daç. 174 सशेष एवान्धस्यसावतृप्यत (he feasted on the rice, without leaving anything). In metaphorical sense तृप्यते and the like may also be construed with a locative. Mhbh. 1, 84, 2 न तृप्नोऽस्मि गोवने. Cp. 123.

1) See DELBRÜCK l.l. p. 33.

*to be born from; to beget with.* The mother is put in the locative. Cp. 100, 1. Kumāras. 1, 22 सा तस्यामुद्रपादि.

*to reckon among.* Daç. 199 अनापयतामरेषु (he was reckoned among the gods).

137. 2. The locative in which is put the person, with whom one dwells, stays. Prabodh. VI, p. 123 अनायाहं त्वयि वस्तुमिच्छामि (I am without protector and wish to stay in your house), Mhbh. 1, 74, 12 नारीणां चित्वासो हि बान्धवेषु न रोचते, Mudr. VII, p. 229 वयं मलयकेतो किञ्चित्कालान्तरमुषिताः (I have stayed for some time with Mal.). So especially गुरो वसति (he dwells with his spiritual father), Ch. Up. 4, 4, 3 ब्रह्मचर्यं भगवति वत्स्यामि (v. a. I will be the pupil of the Reverend).

138. 3. स्था or वृत् with loc. = „keeping close to”, that is observing, obeying one’s precept, principle, judgment etc. Çāk. VI न मे शासने तिष्ठसि (you do not obey my order), Daç. 72 मातुर्मते वर्तस्व (comply with the wish of your mother). Cp. Lat. *stat promissis*, *stat sententiā* and Kāç. on P. 1, 3, 23 मयि तिष्ठते (it rests on me = I am to decide.)

139. 4. The locative, which serves to denote the thing touched. It is used with a) verbs of *fastening at* — especially बन्ध् — as well in their proper as in a figurative sense; likewise with the others, b) those of *clinging, adhering to*, as लग्, श्लिष्, सज् etc., c) of *leaning on, relying on, trusting*, d) of *seizing by*, e) of *falling at one’s feet* — and in other similar locutions, as f. i. Ragh. 1, 19 मौर्वी धनुषि चातता (and the string, bent on the bow), Çāk. VI शृङ्गे कृल्लमृगस्य वामनयनं कण्डूयमानां मृगीम् (an antelope’s female, rubbing her left eye against the horn of her male companion).

Examples: a) Panc. 238 तत्र वृत्ते पाशं अबन्ध, ibid. 286 दासोक्त-  
ग्रीवायां महती घषरा प्रतिबद्धा, Fac. I, p. 40 नोनांवि बद्धा, Bhāg. Pur. 4, 27, 10

विषयेष्वध्यत (he was attached to wordliness), Ragh. 3, 4 अभिलाषे तथाविधे मनो व्यन्ध (she bent her mind to such a desire).

of  
cling-  
ing  
and  
adher-  
ing.

b) Panc. V, 8 आहूये रज्यन्ति जननिवहाः (crowds of people cling to a rich man), ibid. 307 कश्चित्स्य ग्रीवायां लगति (one [of them] falls on his neck), Daç. 75 तस्यामसौ प्रासजत् (he fell in love with her), Ch. Up. 4, 14, 3 र्वंविदि पापं कर्म न श्लिष्यति (no evil deed clings to him, who knows so), Panc. II, 131 व्यसनेष्वसक्तं शूम् — (a hero, not addicted to vices).

c) 1. *to lean on*. R. 2, 46, 27 न.... स्वपेयुर्वृक्षमूलेषु संश्रिताः (lest they should sleep, lying down on roots of trees). — With अ् and its compounds, likewise with अवलम्ब्, the accus. is the regular construction, not the loc., especially in the metaph. senso »to apply one's self to somebody, to implore one's aid." — 2. *to rely on*. Panc. II, 194 न मातारि न दारेषु न मोर्ह्ये न चात्मने। विप्रमृष्टादृशः पुंसां पादङ्गत्रे निरन्तरे, Çāk. I बलवदपि शिञ्जितानामात्मन्यप्रत्ययं चेतः (even these who possess strong learning, mistrust themselves). So with आशंस (to hope on), विश्वस् (to trust), sim. Çāk. II आशंसन्ते सुराः.... अग्राध्रिये धनुषि विजयं पोरुदूते च वज्रे (the gods have confidence in his bent bow and in Indra's thunderbolt), Panc. II, 48 विश्वमिति शत्रुषु. Cp. 131.

of seiz-  
ing by.  
of fall-  
ing at  
one's  
feet.

d) Panc. 161 पापो रंग्मसु (seized by the hand —), Mṛech. I, p. 39 रदनिकां केशेषु गृहीत्वा, Kathās. 29, 3 कपले त्रयार् (she laid her hand on her neck).

e) पादयोः पतति is a standing phrase. See f.i. Çāk. IV पितुः पादयोः पतति.

140.

5. Lo-  
cative  
in ab-  
stract  
sense.

5. The locative, when used in the same way as English „in him I see much skill." So Mhbh. I सर्वं संभावयाम्यस्मिन्साध्यमपि साधयेत् (I may expect all of him, he can do impossibilities), Çāk. II दृष्टदोषा मृगया स्वामिनि (hunting is reckoned to be vicious in a prince), Prab. V, p. 109 आर्तानामुपदेशे न दोषः (there is no sin in giving a good counsel to the afflicted), R. 2, 7, 10 आचक्षतेऽथ कुब्जायै मर्त्यां राखे अग्रम् (and she told Kubjā of the great happiness of Rāma).

Rem. 1. When used as the predicate of the sentence, this locative is occasionally carrying the notion of »suited, befitting." Panc. I, 305 समानशीलव्यसनेषु सख्यम् (friendship suits similar characters and inclinations), ibid. p. 251 नयत्यागप्रायसंपन्ने पुण्ये राख्यम् (the

royal dignity befits a man accomplished in political science, liberality and gallantry).

Locat.  
= "in the  
meaning  
of."

Rem. 2. Synonyms explaining the meaning of some word, are put in the locative, which accordingly = "in this meaning." Amarak. कलापो भूषणे वर्हे तृणीरे संहतावपि (the word *kalāpa* may have the meaning of *bhūṣhaṇa* ornament, *barha* a peacock's tail, *tūnira* quiver and *saṃhata* mass or heap), Kām. 2, 17 विदित्ति निरुच्यते (*vid* is explained as meaning: to know), Āpast. 1, 5, 1 नियमेषु तपः शब्दः

### 141.

6. Locat.  
with words  
of excellen-  
ce, weak-  
ness etc.

6. The qualities, arts, science etc. *in* which one excels or is weak, equal or unequal, when put in the locative. R. 1, 1, 17 समुद्र इव गाम्भीर्ये स्वैर्ये च हिमवानिव। विष्णुना सदृशो वीर्ये क्षमया पृथिवीसमः। धनदेन समस्त्यागे सत्ये धर्म इवापरः, Mhbh. 1, 88, 13 प्रभुरग्निः प्रतपने भूमिरावपने प्रभुः। प्रभुः सूर्यः प्रकाशित्वे. Here the ablative and instrumental are concurrent idioms.

### 142.

7. With  
nouns of  
ability,  
skill, etc.

7. The seventh case attending nouns of *ability*, *skill*, *knowledge* and the like. Here the genitive is the concurrent construction (124, 1°).

Examples of the locative: Ch. Up. 1, 8, 1 त्रयो हांदोये कुशला बभूवुः (three men were well-versed in the Word), Kathās. 24, 187 रत्नादि-  
वृन्मित्रस्य (of one, not being a judge of jewelry), Mālav. V, p. 131 कस्य कलागामभिनिनीते भवत्यो (what art the ladies are acquainted with?), Nāgān. I, p. 2 नार्ये दत्ता वयम् (we are skilled in dramatic representations). — It attends also verbs of that meaning. Pat. I, p. 280 विद्यासु शिक्षते। धनुषि शिक्षते.

Rem. 1. Vārtt. 1 on P. 2, 3, 36 gives a special rule for adjectives in °इन् made of participles in °त, complying with locative. The examples given by Pat. I, p. 458 अथीती व्याकरणे (well read in grammar), ज्ञाताती वन्दसि (knowing the theory of metrics) prove that kind of locative to belong to the general class of words of ability and skill. Cp. Daç. 157 देव स एव मे ज्ञाताता..... अथीती चतुर्धाम्नायेषु गृहीती पदस्वङ्गेषु.

Rem. 2. P. 2, 3, 44 teaches the promiscuous use of locative and instrumental with the adjectives प्रसित and उत्सुक (caring for, solicitous).

**143.** 8. The locative, which denotes the *circumstances, under which* the action comes to pass. So **आपदि** „in time of distress”, **काले** „in due time,” **भाग्येषु** „in fortune” and the like. This kind of locative has a very great extension and encompasses also the **locative of time** as well as the **absolute locative**. The former denotes the time *at* which, the *when*, as **दिनेदिने** (every day), **वर्षासु** (in the rainy season), **निशायाम्** (at night), **प्रत्यूषे** (at daybreak), **एषु वासरेषु** (in these days), **आदौ** (at the beginning) etc. Ch. Up. 3, 16, 2 **एतस्मिन्वयमि** (in this age).

The latter occurs, if the *circumstance under which* is signified by two nouns, one of which is the predicate of the other. As the said noun-predicate generally is expressed by a participle, it is to the chapter on participles we refer for a full account of the absolute locative. Here it may suffice to point out by an evident example its close connexion with the locatives of circumstance and time.

Mudr. IV, p. 147 **त्वय्युत्कृष्टवले ऽभियोगं कृत्वा नृपे नन्दानुरागे पुनरे**  
**चापाक्रो चलिताधिकारविमुखे गौर्ये नवरे राजानि**  
**स्त्राश्रिते गवि मार्गमात्रकथनव्यापारयोगोद्यमे**

**त्वद्वाञ्छान्तरितानि सम्प्रति क्रियां तिष्ठन्ति साध्यानि नः**

thus freely translated by Wilcox: „But let Your Highness weigh, these *circumstances* also,.... your forces are collected, yourself, the heir legitimate of kings, your adversary but a base usurper; his very capital is hostile him, in me you have a faithful guide at least; and all appliances and means to boot, provided; nought remains but your command” <sup>1)</sup>.

1) Compare such locatives, which denote a circumstance by a single word, as in the proverb **हिद्रे पुनर्या बहुलो भवन्ति** (v. a. misfortune never comes singly), Panc. V, 103 **नेकः सुप्तो न भवति**. They cannot be styled absolute locatives, but serve just the same purpose as those.



- 144.** 9. The locative denoting, *at which distance* one thing or fact is from another. Ait. Br. 2, 17, 8 महधाषत्रिने वा इतः स्वर्गे लोकः (heaven, indeed, is from here at a distance of a thousand journeys on horseback), R. 3, 4, 20 इतो व्रति.... अथर्वयोज्ञने महर्षिः, Kathâs. 28, 188 इतो मे पश्चिमोत्तन्वां<sup>1)</sup> गृहम् (my house is at sixty yojanas from here). Cp. 99 R. 1.

Rem. Pat. I, p. 455 mentions the promiscuousness of the turns गवीधूमतः सांकाश्यं चत्वारि योज्ञानानि or चतुर्षु योज्ञानेषु. But if an interval of time is to be signified, the locative alone is available: कार्त्तिक्या अग्रहायणी मासे (the full moon of Âgrahâyani is a month after that of Kârttiki).

- 145.** III. Dative-like locative. In 134 it has been shown, that the locative is used with verbs of *putting in* or *on*, *placing* etc. Sanskrit extends that idiom to many kindred conceptions, and often uses the locative with verbs of *giving*, *promising*, *buying*, *selling*, *telling* etc., so as to make it concur with the dative or the genitive of the remote object. Cp. English *to bestow upon*.

Examples of the dative-like locative: R. 1, 68, 16 संप्रदानं सुतायास्तु राघवे कर्तुमिच्छति, *ibid.* 1, 51, 5 राम उपार्त्तपूतं गम माता, *ibid.* 1, 75, 7 सहस्राक्षे प्रतिपाय (promised it to Indra), Mudr. V, p. 159 ग्रहोरे विक्रीय धनव्रति (having sold himself to a rich man), Mhbh. 1, 30, 6 नाम चकुर्महात्मने (they gave a name to the great bird), Kathâs. 28, 34 एतत्कृतं त्वयि (this is done to you). Cp. R. 2, 96, 28 मोक्षयामि प्रब्रुसेन्येषु कक्षेष्विव हुताशनम्.

- 146.** In several phrases the locative may even be a concurrent idiom of the *dativus finalis*, especially of the infinitive-like dative. It is namely put to a) words of *striving after*, *wishing*, *resolving*; b) to verbs of *appointing to*, *ordaining*, *enjoining*, *permitting*, as स्थापयति, आदिश,

1) So is the good reading. BROCKHAUS' edition has *shashtiyojanyam grham*.

नियुत्, c) to words meaning *able*, *fit* and the like.

Examples: a) Mhbh. 1, 138, 69 प्रयतिं राज्ये मया तत्र (I have coveted your kingdom), Panc. IV, 26 सर्वस्वहारेणे युक्तं शत्रुं.... तोषयन्त्यान्यदानेन (an enemy, who has prepared himself to take off the whole, may be appeased by a small gift), Mālat. III, p. 50 मत्तुङ्गारोपणे यत्तः (endeavours to attain at greatness), Mhbh. 1, 141, 2 दहने बुद्धिमकारयत् (he made up his mind to burn [the Pāṇḍavas]), R. 3, 4, 4 तेन प्रचक्रतुर्वधे तस्य (both made speed to kill him).

b) M. 1, 28 कर्मणि न्ययुक्क (he has appointed to a task), Çāk. I ह्यां वल्कलधारणे नियुक्ते (v. a. he obliges her to wear a dress of bark), Kathās. 25, 123 स राजा मत्स्य युद्धे तस्य समादिशत्.... तम् (the king designated him to fight the athlete), ibid. 29, 29 अनुज्ञा त्वत्पाश्र्वगमने (permission to go to you). — In the same way one says राज्ये स्थापितः (he is appointed to the kingdom), पतित्वे वर्यामास तम् (she chose that man to be her husband), Panc. 162 तं गोवरज्ये अभिषिक्तवान् (he anointed that [young man] heir-apparent) and the like.

c) R. 3, 13, 20 भवान् प्रक्तः परिर्क्षणे (you are able to guard), Panc. 156 अमर्त्योऽयमुदरपूरणे अमाकम् (he is not able to supply us with food), Mhbh. 1, 148, 3 कालं मन्ये पलायने (it is time, methinks, to run away).

**147.** IV. *Nimittasaptamī*. As the locative often denotes the spot, towards which there is some movement, so it may be used at a very large extent to signify the person or thing, *towards which* some action is directed, in other terms, that *on account of which* something is done. Speaking exactly, the dative-like locative, we have dealt with in the last two paragraphs, is but a consequence of this general faculty to denote that, *about which* one is engaged. Here are some examples of this idiom: Kāç. on P. 2, 3, 36 चर्मणि द्वीपिनं हन्ति दन्तवोर्हन्ति कुब्रजः केशेषु चर्मणं हन्ति मोक्षि पुष्कलको हतः (the panther is killed on account of its skin, the elephant for its tusks, yaks for their tails and the musk-deer on account of its musk-gland), Kāç. on P. 1, 3, 47 क्षेत्रे विवदन्ते (they are at law on account of a field), Panc. 288 युक्मिदं स्वामिनो नितभृत्येषु

(this is convenient for a lord with respect to his attendants), M.

3, 107 उत्तमेयूत्रं कुर्यादित्ते ह्येनं समे समम्.

148. This kind of locative is sometimes bordering on that, taught in 140.

The *nimittasaplami* (locative of the motive; locative of reference) often serves to qualify such substantives as सौहृद, भक्ति, वैर, अभिलाष, आदर, अनादर, अनुक्राश, अवज्ञा, कृपा, विश्वास and the like. The genitive is here, of course, the concurrent construction.

Examples: Daç. 89 तस्योदारके त्रैर्मन्त्रवर्धयत् (he fomented his enmity towards Ud.), Mhbh. 1, 155, 9 ग्रहेसि कृपां कर्तुं मयि (you must have pity on me), Çåk. I अस्यामभिलाषि मे मनः (my heart longs for her), R. 2, 103, 22 रामे दृढभक्तिमान्, Hitop. 9 कथं त्वयि विश्वासः, R. 1, 50, 24 मद्राधनुषि निद्राया, Panc. 251 न च लघुयुषि कर्तव्येषु धीमदिरनादरः कार्यः (a wise man must not be careless about business, however small).

It also attends on several adjectives, part of which likewise comply with a genitive, as प्रिय, युक्त, भक्त and the inverse of them, रत (fond of), निरत (delighting in) etc. Mālat. X, p. 172 प्रीतोऽस्मि ज्ञानातरि, Çåk. II अनुकारिणि पूर्वेषां युक्तवृत्तिर्दं त्वयि, Panc. V, 65 नार्यः केवलं स्वसुखे रताः

149. In general, the locative may denote a disposition P. 2, 3, 43.  
towards somebody. Then it is synonymous with the prepos.  
प्रति, as देवदत्तः साधुमातरि or मातरं प्रति (N. N. is  
good for his mother).

Loca-  
tive ex-  
press-  
ive of a  
disposi-  
tion to-  
wards.

Examples: Daç. 144 प्रतिनियुक्तो युष्मानु गयार्हं प्रतिपत्स्ये (when I shall be returned, I shall deal with you as you deserve), Çåk. I कथं गया वयमस्यामियमप्यस्मान्प्रति गया स्यात् (how, can it be, that she feels towards me, as I towards her?), Panc. IV, 72 उपकारिषु तः साधुः साधुत्वे तस्य को गुणः। अणकारिषु यः साधुः स साधुः सद्दिन्यते (if one is good for those, who have done well to him, what is his merit? only he is named

good by the virtuous, who does well to his enemies), Çāk. IV भव दक्षिणा परित्रने (be kind to your household).

150. Many locatives have the character of adverbs, as आदौ (in the beginning), रहसि (secretly), एकान्ते (apart), अग्रे (at the head), Locati-  
ves as  
adverbs etc., especially such as denote time or space').

## CHAPTER IX. Periphrastic expression of case-relations.

151. The apparatus for periphrasing case-relations may be classed into three main categories, viz. 1. prepositions, 2. noun-cases, 3. verbal forms. The boundary between the first class and the second is in some degree unsettled and floating; of the noun-cases concerned here a great deal, indeed — viz. such words as अन्तरेण, समम्, ऋते, प्रभृति, those in °तः etc. — are construed in the same way as the old and genuine prepositions, whereas others are always felt as nouns and construed accordingly — of the kind are निमित्तेन, बलात्, वशात्, हेतोः, दारेण, मध्ये, etc.

The third class is made up of gerunds — as आरुय, आदाय, उद्गृह्य, आस्थाय, मुक्ता, अधिकृत्य, etc. — or participles in °त — viz. युक्त, सहित, रहित, ह्येन, गत and the like.

### 152. I. PREPOSITIONS <sup>2)</sup>.

Sanskrit prepositions should rather be styled „post-

1) Mhbh. 1, 140, 49 the loc. एकस्मिन्, it seems, does duty of an adverb = „singly, alone.” The chacal has artfully removed his competitors, and now he eats up all the flesh, alone.

एवं तेषु प्रयातेषु जम्बुको हृदमानसः

बादति स्म तदा मांसमेकस्मिन्मन्त्रनिश्चयात्

Cp. Dutch: in zijn eentje.

2) Indian grammar, which does not possess, as we do, that hetero-

Prepositions. positions," as they are generally put behind the nouns, they are construed with, **आ** being the one, that is always put before. As a rule, they are also allowed to be compounded with their nouns; in that case, the preposition is generally the former member').

**153.** The archaic dialect used more prepositions and used them oftener, than the classic language does. The more we go back in time, the greater the number and the variety of idioms. So for instance, in the days of Pāṇini some prepositions — **अधि**, **अभि**, **उप**, **परि** — seem to have been in common use, but in classic literature they are, if at all, rarely met with.

Rem. The *vaidik* mantras contain accordingly a still greater number of prepp. and are displaying a still greater variety and manifoldness in employing them. So the old words **सन्नितुः** (without) preceded by an acc., its synonym **सन्नुतः** preceded by an abl., **सन्नु**: (with) construed with instrum., do not occur but in the mantras, likewise **तिरः** and **परः**; see 160. — The *upasargas* **अव**, **निः**, **वि** do not do duty of *karmapravacanīya*, but for a few passages; Pāṇini does not mention them in his list of *karmaprav.*, nor are they used so in the liturgical books of the Veda. The once pre-

geneous set of terms styled *parts of speech*, has no term exactly answering to our 'prepositions,' but it calls them by different names according to their phonetical, etymological or syntactical properties. When compounded with roots, so as to make up compound verbs and the like, they are styled *upasarga*. But the same particles will be styled *karmapravacanīya*, when separate words. For this reason, the *karmapravacanīya*-class does not comprise such prepp., as **उपरि**, **पुर्**; **सह**, but on the other hand it contains some particles, which cannot at any rate be called 'prepositions,' as **अपि**, **सु**. Cp. P. 1, 4, 58; 59; 83—98.

1) It is wrong to say that the noun-case, attending on the prepos., is governed by it, for it is not the preposition, that causes the case, but it is the general bearing of the case, which is qualified and limited by the preposition.

positional employment of निः is proved by compounds of the type निष्प्रवाणि (fresh from the loom), निष्कौशाम्बि (from Kauçambi), if compared with अनुगङ्गम्, अतिवृद्ध (P. 2, 2, 18 with vārtt.) etc.

154. The old prepositions are, in alphabetical order:

1. अति*	6. अप*	11. तिरः	16. प्रति*
2. अधः	7. अभि*	12. परः	17. बहिः
3. अधि*	8. आ*	13. परि*	18. विना
4. अनु*	9. उप*	14. पुरः	19. सह
5. अन्तः	10. उपरि	15. पुरा	

Of them, nine (the nos 1, 3, 6, 7, 9, 11, 12, 13, 15) are obsolete or at least used extremely seldom in the classic dialect.

a.) OBSOLETE PREPOSITIONS.

155. 1. अति is rarely used as a prepos., however frequent, when <sup>P. 1, 4, 95 2)</sup> mere adverb = "exceedingly, very." When prepos. it agrees with accus. Ait. Br. 4, 6, 13 अति वै प्रजात्मानमति पञ्चः (offspring, indeed, and cattle have the precedence above the husbandman himself); Mhbh. 1, 110, 1 Bhiṣma says इदं नः प्रथितं कुलम्। अत्यन्यान्पृथिवीपालान्पृथिव्यामधिराज्यभाक् (our renowned family deserves the sovereignty over the earth above other princes).

Rem. When being compounded with its noun, the compound <sup>P. 2, 1, 6.</sup> is adverb: अतिनिद्रम् (beyond one's sleep).

156. 3. अधि is of frequent occurrence in the archaic and old epic writings. In the classic dialect it is still used to express the relation between the ruler and the ruled, as well the ruling <sup>P. 1, 4, 97.</sup> over

1) Those marked by an asterisk are *karmapravaconīya*, see foot-note on p. 114. Hence the other (nos 2, 5, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 17—19) do not share the appellation *upasarga*, even when put close to a verb.

2) The Kāçikā gives no example of अति being employed as a preposition; it does illustrate but its being = "too much" or = "very well." Pāṇini, however, must have thought also of the preposition अति. — Patanjali does not comment on this sūtra.

as the standing *under*; then it is construed with a locative. It is said either अग्निं पञ्चालेषु ब्रह्मदत्तः (Brahmadatta [ruling] over the Pañcālās) or अग्निं ब्रह्मदत्ते पञ्चालाः (the P. under Br.). So Daç. 112 अथैव प्रह्वार्वर्मण्यग्निं विदेहा जाताः ¹).

When put twice, it agrees with the accusative (171 R.)

When compounded with its noun, the compound is an adverb and P. 2, 1, 6. is equivalent to the simple locative of the noun, especially to the nimittasaptamī (147): अग्निस्त्रि (with respect to women), अग्निदैवतम् (with respect to the deity), etc.

Rem. In the older dialect अग्नि is joined by loc., abl. and acc. *With loc.* it indicates the surface »on,” as in the old verse quoted by Pat. I, p. 4 भद्रैषां लक्ष्मीर्निहिताग्निं वाचि (holy bliss is seated on their tongues). — *With abl.* it signifies the coming »from”. — *With acc.* it is = »over, on [a surface];” so it is often met with in mantras, sometimes in the brāhmaṇas. Çat. Br. 1, 1, 4, 3 कृष्णाग्निमग्निं दीक्षते.

157. 6. अग्न with *ablat.* is mentioned by Pāṇini (1, 4, 88; 2, 1, 12; अग्न. 2, 3, 10). The standing example of his commentators is अग्नं त्रिगर्ते यो वृष्टो देवः (it has rained outside Trig.). No other instances are known.

158. 7. अग्नि and 13. परि, both with *acc.*, are almost synonymous, cp. Greek ἀμφί and περί.

अग्नि  
and  
परि.

They had of old the meaning »round, about,” when in metaphorical sense, also »concerning, on.” In literature examples of परि are extremely rare, if they occur at all; it seems to have soon antiquated. Instances of अग्नि are met with, especially in the archaic dialect. Kāç. on P. 2, 1, 14 अग्निमग्नि — or अग्निमग्नि [compound adverb] — अग्निमाः पतन्ति (the fire-flies hover round the fire); Ch. Up. 4, 6, 1 अग्निं सायम् (about the evening); Kāth. 1, 10 अतोमन्युर्गोतमो मामग्निं (G. feels no anger against me).

1) According to P. 1, 4, 90 in the case of अधिकृ (to appoint over) it may be said optionally either अत्र मामग्निं करिष्यति or अत्र मामग्निं करिष्यति (he will put me over it). The Petrop. Dict. — I, p. 142 s. v. अग्नि 2) a) β) — wrongly takes माम् for the word construed with अग्नि. It is not the acc. माम् but the locat. अत्र, which stands in construction with the preposition, as is plainly shown by the meaning of the sentence.

Rem. 1. Pāṇini (1, 4, 90) <sup>1)</sup> teaches a fourfold employment of परि: a.) it denotes a mark, b.) it expresses a quality, c.) it signifies that which falls to one's share, d.) it is used in a distributive sense. The same is stated for अनु and प्रति; also for अग्नि, save that it cannot be karmapravacanīya in the case c.). The P. 1, 4, 91. Kāçikā illustrates this rule by these examples: a.) वृक्षं परि - or प्रति or अनु or अग्नि - त्रियोतते त्रिपुत् »the lightning flashes round the tree;" b.) साधुर्वेदज्ञो मातरमग्नि - or अनु or प्रति or परि - »N.N. is good for his mother;" d.) वृक्षंवृक्षमग्नि - or अनु or प्रति or परि - सिञ्चति »he waters one tree after another," <sup>2)</sup> whereas c.) यदत्र मां परि - or प्रति or अनु - स्यान्नदं दीयताम् »give me whatever be my share of it," but यदत्र मामग्न्यात्, here अग्नि is upasarga not karmapravacanīya.

In the dialect of the vaidik mantras, indeed, both अग्नि and परि display this large sphere of employment, almost the same as that of प्रति in classic Sanskrit, see 179. With अग्नि cp. the like use of Greek ἀμφί, Germ. *um*, Dutch *om*.

Rem. 2. To the obsolete अग्नि and परि classic Sanskrit has substituted their derivatives अग्निः and परिः, which however are only used of space. See 186.

Rem. 3. An *ablative* is taught with परि, when = अप (157). Then P. 2, 3, the prepos. should be put twice: परि परि त्रिगतेभ्यो वृद्धो देवः In literature, P. 8, 1, however, परि with abl. is as little met with as अप, except the vaidik 5. mantras, but there it has a larger employment, being = Lat. *ex* or *ab*.

159. 9. उप is frequent in the vaidik mantras, afterwards rare. P. 1, 4, 87 उप. classes it among the karmapravacanīya, 1. to denote a »going beyond," then it is construed with a locat. उप निकृते काश्र्षिणाम् (by P. 2, 3, a karshāp. more than a nishka), 2. to denote inferiority, then it 9. complies with the acc. उप शाकटायनं वैयाकरणाः

1) P. 1, 4, 90 लक्षपोत्यंभूताख्यानभागवतोपासु प्रतिपर्यन्तः

• • 91 अग्निर्भागे.

2) When used in a distributive sense, अनु, अग्नि, परि are rather to be considered adverbs; वृक्षं वृक्षमनु सिञ्चति is literally = »he waters tree tree successively," similarly परि or अग्नि सिञ्चति »he waters tree tree roundabout." Cp. such passages as R. 3, 47, 10 अयाचतार्थैर्नृवर्यैः »he entreated [her] by [offering her] grants after grants" lit. grants grants successively.



Rem. 1. According to the commentaries on P. 2, 1, 6 उप, like अग्नि, expresses *nearness*, when compounded with its noun: उपकुम्भम् (near the pot). So Daç. 99 उपकन्यकापुरम् (near the zenana).

Rem. 2. In the vaidik mantras उप is construed with acc., loc., instr. and is expressive of nearness. Rgv. 1, 23, 17 अमूर्या उप सूर्ये यामिर्वा सूर्यः सह. — *With accus.*, I have met with this instance in epic poetry. R. 3, 37, 21 Mârîca dissuades the rapturo of Sîtâ on account of the irresistible power of great Râma दृष्ट्येत् त्वं रपो तेन तदन्तमुप जीवितम् (if he will meet you [Râvaṇa] in battle, then your life is on its end).

160. 11. तिरः — in form and meaning = Lat. *trans* — does duty of a prepos. in the archaic dialect of the brâhmanas etc. It is found partly *with acc.* = »athwart, through, beyond," partly *with abl.* »beyond, out of reach of:" Çat. Br. 3, 3, 4, 6 तिर इव वै देवा मनुष्येभ्यः Cp. the ablat. with तिरङ्करोति and other words of *concealing* (97).

12. परः (beyond) with instrum., abl. or acc. is restricted to the vaidik mantras.

13. परि see 158.

161. 14. पुरा *with ablative* is a time-denoting prepos. of the archaic and epic dialect. It means »before." Âçv. Grhy. 1, 15, 1 पुरान्यैरात्मनात् (before his being touched by others), Ch. Up. 2, 24, 3 पुरा प्रातरनुवाकस्योपाकरणात् (before the beginning of the prâtaranuvâka). Cp. 175.

Rem. Sometimes पुरा may have expressed separation. Rgv. 8, 44, 30 पुरा ऽग्ने दुरितेभ्यः पुरा मृध्नेभ्यः कवे प्र ण आयुर्वसो तिर (extend our lire, Agni, keeping it, wise being, far off from misfortune etc.), Ait. Br. 2, 6, 14 पुरा नाभ्या अपिप्रसो वपामुत्तिवदतात् (he must cut out the omentum without hurting the navel).

#### b). PREPOSITIONS STILL EXISTING.

162. The other ten are still in common use, though not all of them are equally frequent. We will treat of them in alphabetical order, adding moreover to each such

younger prepositions as are more or less its synonyms.

163. [2.] अधः (below, under). Its synonym is अधस्तात्, <sup>अधः and अधः</sup> a derivative of it. Both are construed *with preceding genitive*. Çāk. I नीवार्ताः... भृष्टास्तद्वपामधः, Panc. 211 अस्यैव न्यग्रोधस्याधस्तात्. स्तात्प्रक्षिप्य माम्.

Rem. 1. Sometimes it complies with abl. Panc. 145 वृक्षादधः. Compare 171 R.

Rem. 2. To denote a lower place or state the old dialect possessed also the adverbs अधः and अधस्तात्<sup>1</sup>). Çat. Br. 9, 3, 1, 6 अधस्तादि दिव आदित्यः

164. [4.] अनु *with accusative* „after.” Like its Latin counterpart „secundum” it is used in various senses: *a.*) of space and rank, *b.*) of time, *c.*) = „according to,” *d.*) = „adhering to one’s side,” *sim.* Mostly, at least in prose, it is put behind the noun-case as तदनु (thereafter), तमनु (after him).

Its manifold employment may be illustrated by these examples:

1. *after* - in space, time, rank - R. 2, 90, 3 जगामानु पुरोहितम्, Panc. 203 अहमपि तावनु प्रस्थितः, Kâç. on P. 1, 4, 86 अन्वर्तुने योद्धारः (warriors inferior to A.); — 2. *along* R. 2, 83, 26 निवेश्य गङ्गामनु चमूम् (he encamped his army on the banks of the Ganges); — 3. „following” = „adhering to” Mhbh. 3, 12, 45 यस्त्वां द्वेष्टि स मां द्वेष्टि यस्त्वामनु स मामनु; — 4. „after” = „according to” R. 2, 58, 19 अनु राजानमार्वा च कैकेयीं कार्य; — 5. *about* Nir. 12, 1 प्रकाशोभावस्यानुविद्वहामनु (about the gradual advancing of dawn); — 6. *concerning* Ch. Up. 4, 17, 9 एवंविदं ह वा एषा ब्रह्मणामनु गाया (concerning the brahman who knows so, it is said in a verse —).

Rem. 1. अनु may be compounded with its noun. Mhbh. 1, 170, 14 अनुगङ्गं चरन् (rambling along the Gangâ), Kathâs. 28, 26 अनुताड्वि.

1) Comp. the upasarga अध and *lacus Avernus*, the Latin designation of the regions below.

If अनु have a distributive meaning, compounding is obligatory: अनुवहम् (day after day), अनुद्येष्ठम् ([all ranged] according to the eldest).

Rem. 2. In epic poetry अनु is sometimes found with the ablative. The instances, I know, are Mhbh. 1, 99, 38 द्रुपदं यूयम्... अनु<sup>1</sup>) संवत्सरात्सर्वे प्रापमोक्षनवाप्यस्य (you are cursed, but after a year you will be released of the curse); ibid. 14, 71, 6 — the Pāṇḍavas enter Hastināpura and make their compliments to Dhṛtarāṣṭra — धृतराष्ट्रादनु च ते गान्धारी... कुन्ती च... विदुरं वृत्रवित्वा etc., R. Gorr. 6, 10, 23 लोको भजते कार्पादानु (v. a. men's destiny is in proportion to the cause, whence it has sprung)<sup>2</sup>).

Rem. 3. Pāṇini treats of अनु in four sūtras: I, 4 84—86 and 90 The last, which sums up the meanings of अनु when = परि and प्रति, is quoted 158 R. 1.

165. [5.] अन्तः, a very old particle. It is *added to a locative* अनुतः for the sake of specifying its meaning „within” (133, a). But often also noun + अन्तः are compounded into an avyayibhāva. — Examples: a) of अन्तः with locat. M. 7, 223 गृणुवादान्तर्वेष्टमनि (he must give audience within doors), Panc. I, 32 निवसन्तर्दक्षिणि त्रिः (the fire, dwelling within the wood), Kathās. 4, 57 सोऽपि नीतस्तमस्यन्तः पुराहितः (and the purohita was likewise led into the darkness); b) of अन्तः compounded. Panc. 144 अद् सल्लिलान्तः प्रविष्टः (I entered the water), ibid. 277 ब्राह्मणास्तया कृपान्तः पातितः, Kād. I, 47 क्रोडान्तर्निहिततनयाः ([birds] which have put their young ones between their wings).

Rem. अन्तः occasionally complies with a genitive. Yājñ. 2, 104 सन्नभूतानामन्तश्चरति, Kumāras. 2, 5 अपामन्तहृतं व्रीहम्.

166. Kindred forms of अन्तः are the particles अन्तरा and अनुतरेण, petrified instrumentals. Both agree *with the accusative*. They are 1<sup>st</sup> = „between,” 2<sup>nd</sup> = „without,”

1) The Petr. Dict. reads अनुसंवत्सरात् as a compound.

2) The Petr. Dict. gives also some instances of अनु with a genitive See I, p. 197 s. c.

3<sup>ly</sup> = „save, but for;” 4<sup>ly</sup> अन्तरेण may signify with respect to, concerning.” — Like अन्तः, they are allowed to make up a compound with their noun, then the noun is the former member.

Examples: of 1. — Çāk. III गवद्विष्टपान्तरेणावलोकयामि (meanwhile I will look *between* [= *through*] the foliage). When construed with two nouns, the prepos. precedes, and च is put twice. Pat. I, 45 अन्तरा त्वां च मां च कमण्डलुः (the pitcher is *between* you and me), Çat. Br. 1, 1, 1, 1 अन्तरेणाहवनीयं च गार्हपत्यं च <sup>1)</sup>; — 2. Pat. I, 8 अन्तरेणापि मन्त्रमग्निः कपालानि संतापयति (even *without* the uttering of mantras fire heats the plates), R. 2, 11, 18 तत्र त्वां चावयच्छत्रुस्तव त्रीवितमन्तरा (there the enemy threw thee down lifeless); — 3. Panc. 60 नूनं स लुब्धो नोपायमन्तरेण वध्यः स्यात् (I am sure that voracious beast cannot be killed *but* by a stratagem), R. 3, 19, 7 नहि पश्याम्यहं लोके यः कुर्यान्मम विप्रियम्। अन्तरेण... महेन्द्रम् (none *but* Mahendra); — 4. Çāk. V. तदस्या देवीं वसुमतोमन्तरेण महदुपालम्भनं गतोऽस्मि (therefore I have incurred a heavy reproof from her *with respect to* queen Vasumati) <sup>2)</sup>.

Rem. 1. Occasionally a genitive is found instead of the acc. with अन्तरेण, as Mhbh. 5, 16, 29. — Cp. Pat. I, 59 व्युलकुलमनयोरन्तरा (between these two [families of brahmans] there dwells a family of çādras), here अन्तरा complies also with the gen., it seems.

Rem. 2. Difference between is expressed not by a preposition, but by means of two genitives. R. 3, 47, 45 यदन्तरं सिंहशृगालयोर्वने यदन्तरं सन्दनिकामुदयोः। सुराग्र्यसोत्रोरकयोर्दन्तरं तदन्तरं दाशरथेस्तवैव च (what difference there is between lion and chacal in the forest, between a rivulet and the ocean, between ambrosia and the beverage of the Sauvīras, that is the difference between the son of Daśaratha

1) Comp. a somewhat similar idiom in Latin, f. i. Horat. Epist. I, 2, 11 Nestor componere lites inter Peliden festinat et inter Atriden.

2) So in this prākṛt passage of the Mālavikāgnimitra IV, p. 89 तद्दो... भवदो अत्रिपात्रं अन्तरेण परिगदत्या किदा.

and you), Mhbh. 12, 8, 15 विशेषं नाधिगच्छामि पतितस्याधनस्य च. As to the dvandva-compounds in the first example see 207.

167. A synonymous prepos. with acc. = „between, through” is मध्येन. R. 2, 98, 15 दुर्मतालानि मध्येन तगाम. It may be compounded with its noun. Panc. 151 चापकोटिर्मस्तकमध्येन निष्क्रान्ता.

168. [8] आ always agrees *with the ablative*, and is put before its noun. It serves to denote the boundary or limit, either the terminus a quo or the terminus ad quem, mostly the latter. It is available both in space and in time, and may be rendered accordingly now by „since” and „till”, now by „from” and „to.” M. 2, 22 is an example illustrative of its signifying the two termini आ समुद्रात्तु वै पूर्वदि समुद्रात्तु पश्चिमात्तु। तयोरेवान्तरं गिरिरियावर्तं विदुर्वृधाः (the wise know Āryāvarta to be the country between the said mountains *from* the eastern ocean *to* the western).

Other examples: 1. *term. a quo.* Çāk. I आ मूलाच्छांतुमिच्छामि (I wish to hear it from the root); Kathās. 24, 186 आ बाल्यात्तापसो ऽभवम् (since my childhood I was an ascetic);

2. *term. ad quem.* Mhbh. 1, 163, 8 आ कर्णाङ्गिन्मूत्रकूः (having his mouth split up to the ears), Çāk. IV ओदकान्तात्सिन्धो र्नोऽनुगन्तव्य इति श्रूयते; — Çāk. V आ प्रसवदस्मदूहे तिष्ठतु (let her stay with us till her delivery), Âṣv. Grhy. 1, 19, 5 आ षोडशाद् [viz. वर्षाद्] ब्राह्मणास्यानतीतः काल आ द्वाविंशत्तन्त्रियस्य चतुर्विंशद्वैश्यस्य (until the sixteenth year the time is not passed for the brahman, etc.). — In a figurative sense f. i. Çāk. I आ परितापादिदुषां न राधु मन्वे प्रयोनविज्ञानम् (I do not approve the skill of performing a representation, unless the connoisseurs be contented).

आ is often compounded with its noun into an avyayibhāva. Daç. 175 आक्रान्ते पयो (he drunk his fill, liter. „till his throat”), Kathās. 5, 103 आनंसार् तगम्यस्मिन्नेका नित्या क्लान्त्यता (for, since the world exists, there is but one thing steady in the Creation, namely unsteadiness); Panc. 1, 39 आमर्षां गित्ता (a lifelong beggary).

Rem. In the vaidik mantras अ is of the utmost frequency, and is put to different cases, sometimes before, sometimes behind. In most instances it is rather a mere adverb. <sup>1)</sup>.

169. Other prepositional words = „till, until; since” are यावत्, आरभ्य and प्रभृति.

यावत्. यावत् is mostly attended by the accus., sometimes by the abl. Utt. I, p. 6 कियन्तमवधिं यावत् (till how long?); Kathās. 54, 47 असौ त्वया प्राण्यतां स्वगृहं यावत् (— as far as his house); Mhbh. 1, 95, 12 प्राचीं दिशं त्रिणाय यावत्सूर्योदयात्.

Rem. As यावत् is properly no prepos., but the acc. of the neuter of a pronoun, used as an adverb „as long as, as far as,” it is plain that it may also signify „during some time.” Panc. 198 कदाचिन्मह-  
तनावृष्टिः संताता प्रभूतवर्षाणि यावत्. Cp. 54 R. 1.

170. आरभ्य and प्रभृति with preceding ablative are very common. The former is properly a gerund = „beginning, starting from,” प्रभृति is construed with abl. by so-called syntactic analogy, see Rem. 2.

Examples of आरभ्य = since. Panc. 238 मम जिष्णुकालादारभ्याशीतिवर्षाणि समभूवन्; Mālat. VI, p. 88 मालत्याः प्रथमावलोकादिनादारभ्य (since the day I have seen M. for the first time).

Examples of प्रभृति = since. Panc. 51 ब्राल्यात्प्रभृति गच्छारिषां; Mālat. III, p. 50 मन्मथोद्यानयात्रादित्रसात्प्रभृति (since the day of the procession in the garden of Kāma); Mudr. II, p. 70 आज्ञापय कुतः प्रभृति कथयामि.

Rem. 1. They may also be used of space. Hit. 132 नकुलविव-  
रादारभ्य सर्पविवरं यावत्; Kumāras. 3, 26 असूत रावः कुसुमान्यशोकः स्कन्धात्प्र-  
भृतेव.

1) In a period as early as Yāska, अ with loc. had antiquated, for this exegete deems it necessary to interpret the mantric expression अथ अथ (water in the cloud) by अपो ऽथे ऽधि (Nir. 5, 5). In a subsequent time the very gloss of Yāska would have required another, for अधि with loc. in this meaning being obsolete (156), classic Sanskrit would have employed अन्तः or मध्ये or have said अभ्रगता अपः

Rem. 2. प्रभृति is originally a feminine, meaning »origin, commencement" and like its synonym आदि, it is often used at the ends of bahuvrhis (229, 1°). At the outset, therefore, such a term as तत्कालप्रभृति was said in the very same acceptation as तत्कालादि, viz. meaning स कालः प्रभृतिर्यस्य तत्. By the time, however, the noun प्रभृति ceased to be employed as a separate word, and one commenced to look upon the adverbial compounds, ending in °प्रभृति, as if they were ending in some preposition, meaning »since." By this mistake it happened that प्रभृति assumed even the character of a self-existent particle construed with ablative, by analogy of आद्य and the like. Hence f. i. the compound तन्मप्रभृति »since his birth" (M. 8, 90) represents an older idiom than तन्मनः प्रभृति. In such turns as तदाप्रभृति (since then), यदाप्रभृति (since when), अद्यप्रभृति, the true nominal nature of प्रभृति is plain, and it is again a misunderstanding to write them as two words तदा प्रभृति etc.

**171.** [10] उपरि (above, over, on, upon) is the very opposite of अधः, see 163. As a rule, it is construed with preceding *genitive*<sup>1)</sup>, unless it makes up the latter part of a compound: तस्योपरि or तदुपरि. Its employment is various, as it is used a.) of space, b.) of time »upon = immediately after," c.) of rank, d.) = »on, upon about, concerning, with respect to," then उपरि is concurrent with प्रति and with the *nimittasaptamī*, e.) = »before, under the eyes of."

Examples: a.) Kāṣ. on P. 8, 1, 7 उपरि शिरसां वटं धारयति (he carries a jar upon his head), Panc. 125 राज्ञो वज्रः स्यलोपरि मन्त्रिकोपविष्टा, Kathās. 25, 228 स राजा तदेमाब्जं स्थापयामास... कलशापरि, Panc. 112 कापात्रस्योपरि पपात (moved by anger he made a bolt at him). — Metaphorically f. i. Panc. I, 166 देशानामुपरि क्षमाभूतातुराणां चिकित्सकाः etc. »the king lives *on* his dominions, physicians *on* the sick," R. 3, 54, 23 क्रोधं

1) So it is taught by Pāṇini, as must be inferred by comparing P. 2, 3, 30 with 5, 3, 27—34.

ममापूर्वा धैर्यस्योपरि वर्धते (the fresh anger grows over my forbearance, that is: goes beyond my forb.);

b.) Kāç. on P. 3, 3, 9 उपरि मुहूर्तस्योपाध्यायश्रोतामच्छेत् (if the teacher arrives after a moment) <sup>1)</sup>);

c.) Kathās. 6, 167 तां देवीनामुपरि कृतवान् (he honoured her above his queens);

d.) Panc. 142 विरक्तिः संज्ञाता मे संप्रतं देशस्यास्योपरि (I have now taken a dislike to this country), Mudr. III, p. 105 अहो राजपरिजनस्य चाणक्यस्योपरि विद्वेषपक्षपातः (well, the king's attendants are not friendly disposed towards Cānakya), Panc. 116 किं तत्र ममोपरि चिन्तया (what have you to care for me?), ibid. 26 न दोनोपरि मरान्तः कुप्यन्ति;

e.) Panc. 266 प्राणत्यागं तत्रोपरि करिष्यामि (I will kill myself before your eyes). Comp. 177.

Rem. Occasionally उपरि is construed with a locative. Kathās. 3, 58 उपर्यन्तःपुरे सा च दत्तमित्यभिरुच्यते. — With ablative it is also sometimes met with, as in the passage of Utpala, quoted by KERN in his translation of Varāham. Brh. I, p. 7, which has been adduced 73 R. 3<sup>2)</sup>. Even the *accus.* with उपरि is not forbidden. Pāṇ. 8, 1, 7 teaches उपरि, अधि and अधः being put twice, when denoting a close nearness, as उपर्युपरि ग्रामम्। अथधि ग्रामम्; here the *accus.* is standing (see the kârikâ quoted by Kāç. on P. 2, 3, 2). Çiçup. 1, 4 नवानयोऽथो बृहतः पयोधरान्, Mhbh. 1, 120, 9 उपर्युपरि गच्छन्तः शैलराजम् <sup>3)</sup>.

172. उपरिद्वात्, a derivate of उपरि, is construed, when prepos., with

1) In full, the example given by the Kāçikâ, is उर्ध्वं मुहूर्तादुपरि मुहूर्तस्य etc. In the bad excerpt of the Calcutta edition of Pāṇini these words have been mutilated into मुहूर्तादुपरि, which has deceived BOETHLINGK in his edition of Pāṇini and in his Petr. Dict. (I, p. 968).

2) The example of the Petrop. Dict. (s. v. V, p. 1191), Kathās. 53, 125 यावत्स्वर्गादुपर्यगात् is not convincing. It is rather probable, that the abl. should be construed with यावत् [169], उपरि being a mere adverb = "upward." — For the rest, it is not strange that the wavering between abl. and gen. in construing adjectives and adverbs of space and time (125) appears also in the syntax of prepositions. Cp. 173 R. 1.

3) It is no exception, that Nala 1, 2 the gen. is used उपर्युपरि सर्वेषाम्, since the repetition does not imply here the notion of proximity, the meaning being "[standing] high above all men."



preceding genitive, and generally signifies »above, upon” in space. The archaic dialect did use it also as a time-denoting word = »after” [cp. उपरि. 171 b)]. — In the Çat. Br. it sometimes complies with the accusative.

Rem. ऊर्ध्वम् = »above” is not frequent. M. 1, 92 ऊर्ध्वं नाभेरध्वतरः पुरुषः परिकीर्तितः. But it is frequent, when of time = »after,” see 174.

**173.** [12]. Akin to the old and obsolete परः [160] classic परम्, पर-स्तान्, परतः, and परेण, all of them expressive of the notion *beyond*. When denoting space, they serve also to signify the *passing by* — especially परेण with accus. — and the *surpassing* — espec.

परस्तात् with genit. When denoting time, they are = »after” and comply with *ablative*.

Examples: a.) of space and rank. Ait. Br. 8, 14, 3 ये के च परेण हिमवन्तं जनपदाः (all countries *beyond* the Himālaya); Mhbh. 1, 232, 11 परेणास्मान्नेहि (»pass by us”, v. a. »do not harm us”); Kām. 5, 61 लक्ष्मीरेवान्वयो लोके न लक्ष्याः परतोऽन्वयः (— nor does noble extraction *go beyond* wealth); Malāv. I, p. 1 यः परस्तापतीनाम् (who surpasses all ascetics).

b.) of time: »after.” M. 2, 122 अभिवादात्परम् (after the salutation), Panc. V, 58 मुहूर्तत्परतः (after a moment), Utt. III, p. 38 स्तन्यत्यागात्परेण (after leaving the breast). So the frequent phrases अतः परम्, ततः परम् and the like.

Rem. 1. Occasionally they occur, when being attended by a genit., even while time-denoting. M. 8, 223 परेण दश्राहस्य [Kull. = दश्राहादूर्ध्वम्], Ait. Br. 2, 33, 5 संवत्सरस्य परस्तात्.

Rem. 2. As परम् etc. answer to Latin *ultra*, so अवक् is the equivalent of Lat. *citra*, denoting the side next to us. When time-denoting, अवक् contrasted with परम् and the like is accordingly = »before;” then it may be construed with the ablative. M. 8, 30 प्रनष्टस्वामिकं रिक्तं रात्रौ शब्दं निधापयेत्. अवक् शब्दादशेत्यामी परेण नृपतिर्हिरेत् (property the owner of which has disappeared, must

be guarded by the king for three years. Before that term, the owner may reclaim it, afterwards it falls to the king).

174. „After” in time is often expressed by ऊर्ध्वम् or अनन्तरम्  
 ऊर्ध्वम्  
 and  
 अनन्तरम् with ablative. Of them, अनन्तरम् commonly makes up the latter part of a compound adverb. Kumâras. 6, 93 अत्रादूर्ध्वम् (after three days), Ragh. 3, 7 पुराणवत्पामादनन्तरं लता (a creeper at the time it has lost its old foliage), Panc. 52 तस्या दर्शनानन्तरम् (after having seen her). So तदनन्तरम् (after this) and the like.

That the single ablative may occasionally express „after what time” has been stated above (§ 99).

175. Another word for „after” is पश्चात्. When prepos., पश्चात् it complies with a genitive generally preceding, and is mostly used of space and rank. Kathās. 6, 134 अहं प्राचिणं मम पश्चाच्च जर्जरमा; Panc. 181 अस्य पश्चान्ता न्यः सुहृन्मे (no friend I put after him).

Rem. „After” in space may also be denoted by words meaning „west of” as प्रत्यक्ष, by पृष्ठे (at the rear) and तत्रोने (back). The last seems to be restricted to the old liturgical dialect.

176. [14]. The very opposite of पश्चात् is the old adverb  
 पुरः  
 पुरतः, पुरः = before and its synonyms: a) the kindred पुरतः  
 पुर- पुरस्तात्, b) अग्रे and अग्रतः (literally „at the top, at the  
 तात्  
 and  
 अग्रे, or are compounded. They are employed both of space and  
 अग्रतः of time.

etc. Examples of पुरः etc. applied to space. Çāk. V ततः प्रविशन्ति मुनयः पुरश्चोपां कञ्चुकी पुरोहितश्च; Âṣv. Grhy. 1, 11, 6 तस्य [पशोः] पुरस्तादुल्बुकं हरन्ति (before the victim they bear a blazing stick); Panc. 286 तस्या अग्रे निचिक्षेप [sc. पल्लवानि] (he cast the young shoots down before her). — As to their application to time see 178.

177. They are also often used to denote in the presence of, under the eyes of = Lat. *coram*. In the same way

समक्षम् and प्रत्यक्षम्. Moreover words, meaning „in the vicinity of” as संनिधौ etc.

Note the frequent employment of this turn with verbs of *saying, telling, promising*, even with those of *going, bringing, appearing* und the like. It is virtually the same to say तस्याग्रे —, तस्य पुरतः, समीपे etc. कथयति (प्रति-शृणोति etc.) or तस्मै —, तस्य —, तं प्रति कथयति (प्रति-शृणोति etc.)

Examples: 1. — पुरः etc. = Lat. *coram*. Daṣ. 96 सा तान्पुरुषान्तामपूर्वं मम पुरस्तादवाचत; Ratn. III, p. 67 द्विया सर्वग्याग्रे नमति <sup>1)</sup> वदनम् (for shame she lowers her face before everybody); Kathâs. 4, 79 राज्यं समक्ष-स्माकमनेनाङ्गीकृतं धनम् (forsooth in our presence he has avowed [as to] the money); Daṣ. 176 तस्याः पुरो रुरोद (— wept before her eyes).

2. — पुरः etc. with verbs of *saying, telling, bringing* etc. Kathâs. 27, 27 स राज्ञः पुरतः सर्वमब्रवीत् (he told the king all); Panc. 274 तो पित्रोरग्रतो विहसन्तो श्रेष्ठभ्रातृवेदितमूचतुः; ibid. 25 the chacal says to the lion किं स्वामिवादानामग्रे सत्यं विज्ञाप्यते; Nala 1, 15 तस्याः समीपे तु नलं प्रशंसुः.... नैवधस्य समीपे तु दमयन्तीं पुनःपुनः; Kathâs. 25, 211 एतत्प्रतिज्ञानं स्वयं नरपतेः पुरः.... मया (I myself have promised so to the king). Panc. 277 पेठा राजाग्रे नीता (the basket was brought to the king), Mahāv. I, p. 18 रामभद्रस्य पुरतः प्रादुर्भवतु तदनुः = रामभद्राय [or °द्रस्य] प्रादुर्भवतु.

Rem. The inverse of Lat. *coram*, viz. *clam* „at the back of, without the knowledge of” is expressed by परोक्षम् or °क्ते, पृष्टे, पृष्ठतः sim. Kathâs. 29, 73 सा स्नुषां.... पुत्रस्य परोक्षमकर्हयत् (she illtreated her daughter-in-law without the knowledge of her son). <sup>2)</sup>

1) So I have mended the bad reading of mss. and edd. नयांत.

2) In the brâhmanas परोक्षम्, °क्षात् when = *clam*, is also construed with instrum. Çat. Br. 1, 5, 2, 7 यत्तमानेन परोक्षम्, Ait. Br. 3, 36, 5 अहिना ब्रुध्येन परोक्षात्.

178. When of time, **पुरः** etc. agree likewise with a genitive <sup>1)</sup>. Yet „before” in time is commonly not expressed by them, but rather by **प्राक्** or **पूर्वम्**, both complying with the ablative.

Examples a.) of time-denoting **पुरः** etc. Çāk. VII happiness is said to be the consequence of the favour of mighty persons तत्र प्रसादस्य पुरस्तु संपदः (but your favour is anticipated by happiness), Mhbh. 1, 232, 1 पुरतः कृच्छ्रकालस्य श्रीमान्नागार्ति पूरयः; — b.) of **प्राक्** and **पूर्वम्**. Çāk. V प्रागन्तरि जगमनात्स्वमपत्यज्ञातमन्यैर्द्वित्रैः परभृता बलु पोषयन्ति; Ragh. 12, 35 अग्निगमनात्पूर्वम् (before approaching).

179. [16] **प्रति** with accusative is, relatively speaking, the most common among the so called prepositions. It generally denotes the direction towards, and for this reason it often is a concurrent idiom of the sole accusative, dative and locative. It is used a) with words of movement to signify the „whither,” b) in such turns, as *speaking to, bowing to, striving to, love —, hatred —, anger to* and the like, c) like the *nimittasaptami* (147) to express „with respect to, on account of, concerning, about, on”, d) = „about,” to denote nearness in space or time, e) it has a distributive sense, in what case one is wont to compound **प्रति** with its noun, as **प्रत्यहम्** (every day).

As a rule, **प्रति** is put behind its noun, at least in prose.

Examples: a) Panc. 42 गृहे प्रति प्रतस्थे (he set out homeward), Daç. 30 गच्छन्निक्षेपं प्रति; — methaphor. R. 2, 107, 11 त्वेन व्रतमानेन

1) Note the ablative with अग्रे: M. 3, 114 अतिथिभ्यो अग्रे दृष्टवान्नात्रयेन he must entertain them even before his guests” [Kullūka अतिथिभ्योऽग्रे पूर्वमतिथिभ्यः]

पितृन्प्रति (by Gaya, as he directed his worship to the *pitaras*).

b.) Panc. 159 भणितं त्वां प्रति तया; — R. 2, 52, 79 नदीं तां सह सीतया प्रणामत्प्रति संतुष्टः; — Mudr. I, p. 22 तद्गृह्णं प्रति यतः; — Çāk. III एवमुपा-  
लब्धस्य ते न मां प्रत्यनुक्रोशः; — Çāk. VII सहधर्मचारिणां प्रति न त्वया मन्युः  
कार्यः; — R. 3, 54, 23 वैरं रामं प्रति; — Çāk. I मन्दोत्सुक्योऽस्मि नगरगमनं प्रति.

c.) M. 8, 245 सीमां प्रति समुत्पन्ने विवादे (if a contest have arisen *about*  
some boundary); Nala 2, 6 चिन्तयामास तत्कार्यं सुमहत्स्त्रां सुतां प्रति (— *con-*  
*cerning* his daughter); Mālat. IX, p. 154 प्रियां तु मालतीं प्रति निराशो  
ऽस्मि; Panc. 3 Viṣṇuçarman engages himself to make the king's  
sons नयशास्त्रं प्रत्यनयसदृशान्; Çāk. I किं नु खलु यथा वयमस्यामेवमियमप्यस्मान्प्रति  
स्यात् (should she perhaps be disposed towards me, as I am to  
her?).

Rem. Note the phrase मां प्रति »in my opinion, for my part,»  
fr. *selon moi*. In full मां प्रति प्रतिभाति (it looks-, seems to me). Hitop.  
100 तेन विना सकलजनपूर्णाऽप्ययं ग्रामो मां प्रत्यरूपवत्प्रतिभाति.

d.) Mhbh. 1, 8, 7 अप्सरा मेनका.... तं गर्भम्.... उत्सर्ज यथाकालं स्यूत-  
केशाश्रमं प्रति (— *about* the hermitage of Sth.); M. 7, 182 मार्गशीर्षे शुभे भूमि  
यायाद्यात्रां महीपतिः। कालुषां वाय चैत्रं वा मासो प्रति.

e.) Panc. 286 तस्य वर्षं प्रति कारभवेकं प्रयच्छति (he gives him one  
camel a year); Yājñ. 1, 110 यत्तं प्रति (at every sacrifice). — Com-  
pounded f. i. Çāk. I प्रतिपात्रमाधीयतां यतः (let each actor do his duty),  
Bhojapr. 14 तस्मै राज्ञं ददौ निरुपुत्रेभ्यः प्रत्येकमेकैकं ग्रामं दत्ता. A concurrent  
idiom is mentioned 158 R. 1.

**180.** Pāṇini enjoins also the *ablative* with प्रति, in two cases viz. P. 1, 4.  
when pointing out a) one's match or substitute, b) something 92; cp. 2, 3, 11.  
given in exchange. The Kāçikā illustrates our rule by these exam-  
ples: a). प्रयुक्तः कृष्णात् or कृष्णातः प्रति (Pr. the match or substitute  
of K.), b). तिलेभ्यः प्रति यच्छति माषान् (in exchange of sesam he gives  
beans). I have nowhere met with instances of that construction  
in literature, but for one, I borrow textually from the Petr. Diet.,  
viz. Mhbh. 3, 13287 उद्वापां पक्वा सह ओदनेन अस्मात्कपोतात्प्रति ते नयन्तु.  
Yet there are several instances in the ancient Vedic dialect as  
well as in classic Sanskrit of an *accus.* with प्रति, when signifying  
the »match." Rgv. 2, 1, 8 त्वं सहस्राणि शता दश प्रति (you are equal to

thousands etc.), Kathās. 45, 400 न च शतसुखमिमं प्रति (nor are you a match for him).

181. [17] बहिः (outside, out) is the very opposite of अन्तः  
बहिः (165). It is more used as a mere adverb than as a preposi-  
tion. In the latter case it complies with preceding *ablative*.  
Panc. 176 त्वं तलाद् बहिर्वि (get out of the water), *ibid.* 291 तदृहाद्  
बहिर्निष्क्रान्तः. Or it may be the latter part of a compound: Utt.  
IV, p. 73 आश्रमबहिः.

Rem. Daç. 77 बहिः is construed with a genitive: अदर्शं च मार्गा-  
भ्यास्वर्तिनः कस्यापि क्षपणाकविहारस्य बहिः.... कमपि क्षपणाकम्.

182. [18] विना (*without*) is construed with *instrumental*, P. 2, 3,  
विना. *accusative* or *ablative*. In prose it is commonly put behind  
its case<sup>1</sup>), in poetry it often precedes.

Examples: with *instrum.* Panc. 266 अहं त्वया विना नात्र वस्तुं  
शक्नोमि (I cannot live here without you); — with *accus.* Panc.  
269 सा पुनर्न शक्ता त्वां विना स्यात् (but she cannot stay without you),  
R. 3, 9, 20 न विना याति तं खड्गम् (he does not go abroad without  
that sword); — with *ablat.* Daç. 141 तादृशाद् भाग्यश्रेयि विना (without  
such a store of happiness), Var. Brh. 44, 17 स त्रयति तदा नरेन्द्रः  
शत्रून्चिरादिना यत्नात्.

Rem. 1. Occasionally विना may have the meaning of «save,  
if not”. Panc. I, 42 विना मलयमन्यत्र चन्दनं न प्ररोहति, *ibid.* p. 244 न च  
रुक्ताक्षं विना धीमान् (there is nobody wise but Raktâxa).

Rem. 2. Just as विना are construed पृथक् and नाना »apart from.” P. 2, 3,  
Of नाना, when a prepos., I can quote no instance from literature,  
of पृथक् only with an *ablat.* Bhojapr. 27 राज्ञश्चर्मः पृथग्विद्वदमति (the  
king's duty lies outside the duty of the scholar), Prabodh. II,  
p. 34, Mudr. I, p. 48.

1) But not always. Mudr. VII, p. 223 f. i. त्रिनैव युद्धादर्थेण पराजितम्  
it precedes, stress being laid upon it »even without striking a blow Your  
Excellence has vanquished.”

**183.** Separation is expressed by some more prepositions, as **अन्यत्र** and **ऋते**. **अन्तरेण**, **अन्तरा**, **अन्यत्र**, **ऋते**, moreover by verbal periphrase (202, 2°). About **अन्तरा** and **अन्तरेण** see 166.

**अन्यत्र** *with ablative* is „except, save,” in interrogative and negative sentences = „but;” **ऋते** is likewise <sup>P. 2, 3, 29.</sup> construed *with ablative* and generally it is also = „except, save,” sometimes = „by default of,” rarely = „without.”

Examples: of **अन्यत्र**. Mhbh. 1, 147, 20 न चैनानन्वदुश्मन्त नरा नगरवासिनः। अन्यत्र विदुरामात्यान्तस्मात्वनकसन्त्रयात् (and nobody among the citizens did know them, but —); Ch. Up. 6, 8, 4 तस्य क्व मूलं स्यादन्यत्रान्नात् (and where could be its root except in food?). The proper meaning of **अन्यत्र** being of course „elsewhere,” the ablat., which attends on it, is that of comparison (105).

of **ऋते**. 1. ... save, except. Bhojapr. 27 कान्तिदासादृते अन्यं क्विं न गन्ते, Cāk. III किं नु खलु मे प्रियादर्शनादृते ग्ररणमन्यत् (what other relief is there for me, except beholding my 'sweetheart?); — 2. = by default of. R. 2, 66, 27 ऋते तु पुत्राद् दहनं महीषतेनारोचयन् (they did not approve burning the king's body, no son of his being present); Yājñ. 2, 117 it is said that after the death of the mother her daughters must have the succession ऋते ताभ्यो ऽन्वयः (by default of them, the descendants); — 3. Ch. Up. 5, 1, 8 कथमशकतते मन्तोवितुम् (how did it forbear to live without me?).

Rem. Sometimes **ऋते** is construed with the *accusative*, especially in epic poetry. Nala 4, 26 प्रविशन्तं च मां तत्र न कश्चिद् दृष्टवान्तरः। ऋते तां पार्थिवसुताम्.

**184.** [19] Of **सह** „with” and its synonyms **समम्**, **सार्धम्**, **साकम्** a full account has been given in the chapter on the instrumental (58). Mostly they precede the instrumental, they are complying with, but they may also be put behind or be separated from it by one or more

सह and its synonyms.

interjacent words'). As they are, when without noun-case, adverbs meaning „together,” it is, exactly speaking, a pleonasm to put them to the instrumental, as the notion of concomitancy is already carried by that case.

Rem. Occasionally सह with instr. may even be expressive of the *instrument*. Kathās. 37, 62 प्रत्वाल्याग्निं सहेन्धनैः (after having inflamed the fire by combustibles). This idiom, though not of frequent occurrence in literature, must be very old, as it is met already in the Ath. Veda, see f. i. 8, 1, 11 दिव्यस्त्वा मा धमित्रियुता सह (lest the Celestial burn thee with his lightning).

**185.** Compounding सह with its noun is allowed. Yet in P. 6, 3, 82. सह<sup>2</sup> and स<sup>1</sup> in compounds. most cases to सह<sup>o</sup> one substitutes स<sup>o</sup>, either of them being the former member of the compound. It is exactly

the same to say रामः ससीतः or रामः सह सीयता. An instance of interchanging सह<sup>o</sup> and स<sup>o</sup> may be Ven 11, p. 43 नदः भव्याणां सत्रान्धवं सहमित्रं ससुतं सहानुत्रं। स्वत्रलेन निरुन्ति..... पाण्डुसुतः सुगोत्रगम्.

Rem. 1. Some cases are taught by Pāṇini, where नद is required to be the compound's former member, not स, some others in which on the contrary स must be used. Thus सह<sup>o</sup> is wanted a) in time-denoting adverbs as सहपूर्वाह्णम् (the forenoon included), b) in blessings as अस्मै सहपुत्राय स्वस्ति भूयात् (hail to him with his son). Yet the phrases सत्रत्साय -, समवे -, सहलाय स्वस्ति भूयात् are admitted as equally good as सहवत्साय and the rest.

But स<sup>o</sup> — not सह<sup>o</sup> — is required a) in all compound adverbs, not expressive of time, therefore exclusively in such terms as सारोषम् (with anger), सत्रदुमानम् (respectfully), Daç. 84 सलदत्तस्य सार्षपस्य गनंश्रगस्य सामभावत (he addressed me in a manner adapted to his shame, to his joy and to his excitement) and so often; — b) in some special phrases, as सकलं ज्योतिषमधीते — not सहकलं —, वेदः गवेदाङ्गः, and the like.

Rem. 2. सार्धम् and समम् are seldom compounded with their noun.

1) So f. i. Daç. 156 सह विदृत्य रात्रकन्यया, Ait. Br. 1, 13, 18 तैरेवैतं सहगमयति, R. 2, 95\*, 29 गिरिपुत्रा पिनाकीव सह, etc.



If this be the case, they make up the latter member. Panc. 276 वाक्सममेव च ब्राह्मणी त्रीविता सा (with these very words the wife of the brahman was restored to life).

- 186.** Finally we must mention some prepositions, not spoken of in the foregoing, viz. 1<sup>st</sup> **समया** and **निकषा**, both =  
 1. समयः, निकषा  
 2. अभितः "near, about," 2<sup>ly</sup> अभितः, परितः, सर्वतः, समन्ततः  
 etc. (round, about, on all sides), उभयतः (on both sides). All Vārtt. on P. 2, 3, 2.  
 of them agree with the *accusative*.

Examples: 1. Daç. 146 समया सौधगिन्निं... प्रसुप्तमङ्गनात्तनमलक्षयम्;

2. Kathās. 33, 113 अभितः क्षेत्रं पात्रान्दत्त्वा; R. 2, 103, 21 सीता पुरस्ता-  
 द्गतु त्वमेनामभितो वृत्तः Kathās. 18, 5 तं सामन्ताः परितो भ्रेमुर्ध्वं ग्रहणा इव  
 (on his sides his vassals marched, like the hosts of stars round the polar-star).

Rem. 1. A genitive with अभितः, समन्ततः is rare, but it seems  
 it is regular with समन्तात्. Panc. 185 तस्य न्यग्रोथस्य समन्तात्परिभ्रमति

Rem. 2. In modern writings त्रिवृक् with gen. = "on all sides."

## II PERIPHRASE BY MEANS OF NOUN-CASES.

- 187.** In the preceding paragraphs we have already dealt with  
 Periphrase by means of noun-cases. such noun-cases as have got more or less the character of prepositions. Those, we will look upon now, have still retained as much of their original and proper significance as to consider them as nouns even from a syntactical point of view. Of course all of them comply with the genitive or may be the latter part of compounds.

- 188.** In the first place: the loc., acc. and abl. of nouns, meaning *proximity*, *vicinity*, *neighbourhood* (as ग्रान्तकं, समीपे, सकाश, संनिधि) or the *side* (पार्श्व) and similar, are a means for expressing "near; to, towards; from."

mi/y, when  
expressive  
of "to-  
wards,"  
and the  
like

This periphrase is especially employed to signify a moving towards or from a *person*. „He has come to me” मदनिकं [or के] आगतः or मत्सकाशम्, मत्समीपम्, मत्पाश्वम् etc., „he is gone from me” मत्पाश्वदिपयातः etc.

Examples: 1. moving to a person. Accus. and locat. of the periphrasing noun. — *antika*: Daṣ. 19 बालं.... भवदन्तिकमानीतवानस्मि, Panc. 269 तवान्तिके तमानेव्यामि; — *sakāṣa*: Mṛch. III, p. 125 मैत्रेय गच्छ वसन्तसेनायाः सकाशम् (M., go to V.), Panc. 262 अहं त्वत्सकाशे मैत्र्यमागतः (I have come to you for friendship); — *samīpa*: Hit. 22 अस्म्य समीपमुपागच्छामि, Panc. 178 भूयोऽपि सत्वरं चित्राङ्गसमीपे गतः; — *pārśva*: Panc. 257 वानरपाश्वमगमत्, ibid. 55 भगवान्नारायणः कन्यकापाश्वेऽग्रेति; — *samnidhi*: Daṣ. 133 आदाय चैनं मम पित्रोः संनिधिमनैषम्; — *nikata*: Kathās. 24, 66 ब्राह्मणं तं विसृष्टवान्.... दुहितुर्निकटे तदा (then he allowed that brahman to go to his daughter), Bhojapr. 60 राजनिकटे नीतः; — *abhyarṇa*: Daṣ. 36 व्रजितां.... मत्पितुरभ्यर्णमभिगमय (conducted the woman to my father and —); — *upakantha*: Daṣ. 39 तदुपकण्ठमुपेत्य. This list may easily be enlarged. From the archaic dialect I add an instance of अर्ध being equivalent with पाश्व. Ch. Up 5, 3, 4 स ह्यस्तः पितुरर्धमेयाय (he went sorrowful to his father).

2. moving from a person. Ablat. of the periphrasing noun. — Kathās. 10, 26 ओदत्रः सह तैर्मित्रैस्तत्समीपादपासरत् (Cṛtd. with his friends withdrew from him), Ragh. 5, 24 रघोः सकाशादनुवाप्य कामं गतः (gone from Raghu, without having obtained his desire), Mṛch. X, p. 375 अपनीयतामयं चारुदत्तपाश्वति.

3. Staying near. Locat. of the periphrasing noun. — Āṣv. Grhy. 1, 18, 7 स्थित्वाऽशेषमाचार्यसकाशे वाचं विसृजेत, Panc. 277 कूपोपकण्ठे विश्रान्तो ब्राह्मणः, ibid. 160 धवलगृहपाश्वे = „near the white house.” When attending on persons, the periphrasing nouns may of course be = „in the presence of,” thus being synonymous with पुरः, अग्रे and the like (177). Hence they may occasionally denote the person addressed to. R. 3, 10, 9 इति मया व्याहृतं द्वित्रयंनिर्धौ (so I have spoken to the brahmans).

Rem. 1. By so called syntactic analogy सकाशात् is occasionally construed with the abl. instead of the gen. of the noun, it qualifies.

Varāh. Brh. 104, 12 चौरकुमारकेभ्यो भौमः सकाशात्कलमादधाति (Mars takes away the fruit of thieves and princes).

Rem. 2. Kathās. 25, 129 we have अन्तिकेन = „near,” अश्वानस्यान्तिकेन स.... अश्वानोद्दिशम्.

Rem. 3. पार्श्वतः, समीपतः, सकाशातः sometimes have the worth of ablatives, but sometimes also that of locatives, f. i. Kathās. 32, 99 अस्तीहेतु-मती नाम पुरो तस्याश्च पार्श्वतः । नदी (— and at its side a river), cp. Nala 6, 4.

189. Moreover सकाशात् — and also, but not so often, अन्तिकात् and पार्श्वतः — serves also to periphrase many other kinds of ablative, especially if = „from the side of a person”. So Panc. 28 स्वामिनः सकाशाद्भयदक्षिणा दापयितव्या [sc. त्वया] (you must procure me safety from the side of your master), ibid. 137 भोक्षि-त्रग्रीवस्य मया तव सकाशात्पाशमोक्ष्वां दृष्ट्वा । तेन मम मरुती प्रीतिः संजाता । तत्कदाचि-न्ममापि अन्धेने ज्ञाते तव पार्श्वान्मुक्तिर्भवति (well, I have seen how you have loosened Citragriva of his fetters, and I was much pleased at this, for I too, if perchance I should get into captivity, may be released from your side); — to receive from: Mṛech. X, p. 341 दृष्ट्वाभ्यहं भवतः सकाशात्प्रतिग्रहं कर्तुम्; — to ask from: Panc. 75 मया त्वत्सकाशाद्गोत्रनमर्थ-नीयम्; — to learn from: M. 2, 20 एतद्देशप्रसूतस्य सकाशाद्ग्रन्थमनः । स्वंस्वं चरित्रं शिक्तेरन्युचिष्यां सवमानवाः; — to buy from: M. 9, 174 क्रोणीयायस्त्वपत्यार्थं मातृपित्रोर्ममनिकात् । स क्रीतकः सुतस्तस्य (he whom somebody has bought from his parents that he might be instead of a son, is called his *bought son*); — to be borne from: Panc. 318 मम कन्यां दास्यति तत्सकाशात्पुत्रो मे भविष्यति (he will give me his daughter, of her I shall have a son). — Abl. of comparison: Panc. 271 अतस्तं संगमनादिभिः सर्वेषां राजपुत्राणां सकाशाद्विशेषप्रसादेन पश्यति (from this time he looked on him with favour above all rajputs, showing his grace by marks of honour and the like), Vajracched. p. 16 अस्य खलु पुण्यस्कन्धस्यान्तिकादसौ पीविकः पुण्यस्कन्धः शततमोमपि कलां नार्हति (forsooth, if compared to the foresaid bulk of good works, this second bulk of good works is not equal to the hundredth part of it).

190. In the same way the loc., acc. and abl. of अन्तरं, मध्ये, अन्तरे, मध्य, sim. may periphrase the being or the getting „within,” the moving „from within.”

a.) being with.n. Panc. 259 अस्ति समुद्रान्तर् अस्मदृहम्; ibid. 67 कूपमध्य  
आत्मनः प्रतिचित्रम् ददर्श; — b.) getting within. Panc. 246 ब्राह्मणानामन्त-  
रुपक्रान्तः (he disappeared in a crowd of brahmins); ibid. 39 रात्रौ  
मथमध्ये न प्रवेष्टव्यम्; c.) coming from within. Panc. 38 नक्तंदिनं कक्षा-  
न्तरात्रां मात्रां न मुञ्चति (never at day nor at night he draws the money  
out of his belt), ibid. 70 ततः प्रतिशब्देन कूपमध्याद् द्विगुणतरो नादः समुत्थितः  
(then, the echo caused a noise twice as heavy to go up from the  
interior of the pit).

Rem. अन्तरे may occasionally be = 'with respect to, concerning.'  
So R. 2, 90, 16; cp. the same meaning of अन्तरेण 166, 4°. As to  
मध्ये see 167.

**191.** मध्ये and मध्यात् are often used in a partitive sense;  
मध्ये and मध्यात् then they are concurrent idioms of the partitive cases,  
see 116, Rem. 2. Panc. 120 आचवोर्मध्ये यस्मिन् कथय; ibid. 86 तेषां  
मध्यात्काकः प्रोवाच (among them, the crow spoke).

**192.** The locative denoting „on or in what spot”, is often  
°देशे specified by means of such words as °देशे, °उद्देशे,  
°तले, °तटे, °पृष्ठे sim. When translating such tatpurushas,  
these latter members must generally be rendered by  
prepositions: *in*, *upon*, *over* etc. Pat. I, 123 धूमः स आकाशदेशे  
निवाते नैव तिर्यग्गच्छति नावागवरोहति (that smoke being in the atmo-  
sphere, it does not go athwart, if the air be calm, nor falls down),  
Daç. 169 कमप्यवनपृष्ठे विचेष्टमानं पुरुषमद्राक्षीत् (he saw somebody moving  
on the earth).

Rem. Likewise विषये may periphrase the metaphorical sense of  
the locative, as Bhâg. Pur. 1, 4, 13 मन्ये त्वां विषये वाचां स्नातम् (I  
think you are accomplished in grammar), Panc. 173 धनविषये संतापो  
न कार्यः (one must not be grieved for the sake of earthly goods).  
So often अत्र विषये 'in this respect.'

**193.** Several periphrasing words may signify *for the sake*  
*of*, *because of*, *for*, viz. 1. कृते, used almost as a real

कृते, हेतोः;  
अर्थ, निमि-  
त्त, कारण  
etc., ex-  
pressive of  
cause, mo-  
tive, aim.

preposition, 2. हेतोः the ablative<sup>1)</sup> of हेतु „motive,” 3. अर्थम्, अर्थाय and अर्थे, the acc., dat. and loc. of अर्थ (matter, sake), 4. the instrum., accus. and abl. of निमित्त and कारण „cause, motive.” They are construed with *preceding* genitive, if they do not make up the latter part of a compound.

Examples: 1. कृते. — Panc. IV, 29 न खल्वस्य कृते भूम् निशयेत् (one must not spend much for the sake of little); Mṛch. IV, p. 131 मया खलु मदनिकायाः कृते साहसमनुदितम्, Panc. IV, 51 वाक्कृते रासभो हतः (the ass was killed for his voice).

2. हेतोः. — Bhagavadgītā 1, 35 एतान् हन्तुमिच्छामि.... अपि त्रैलोक्यराज्यस्य हेतोः किं नु महीकृते (them I would not kill.... not even for the sake of the realm of the three worlds, how much less for the possession of land); Çāk. V स्वसुखनिर्भिलाषः विषये लोकहेतोः (while not caring for your own pleasure, you tire yourself for the sake of your people); Ragh. 2, 47 अल्पस्य हेतोर्बहुं हन्तुमिच्छन्विचारमूढः प्रतिभासि मे त्वम् (you seem to me a thoughtless fool, that you desire to give up much for a trifle); Mālat. IV, p. 65 त्रीन्त्रिजगत्त्राणहेतोः = त्रीन्त्रिजगत्त्राणाय. — Note कस्य हेतोः (why?), कस्यापि हेतोः (for some motive) and the like,

1) It is not quite plain, how Pāṇini did account for हेतोः. Yet, his commentators and followers consider it a *genitive*, and it is very likely, he has thought so himself. At least, we may draw the inference. After having taught in his sūtra 2, 3, 26 षष्ठी हेतुप्रयोगे, that is „the genitive is required [instead of the instrum. of causality] when employing हेतु”, he adds this clause (s. 27) सर्वनामसूत्रतोया च „but in the case of a pronoun of the class *sarva* etc., either the gen. or the instrum.” With the said pronouns it is therefore allowed to use two idioms promiscuously — f. i. कस्य हेतोः and केन हेतुना —, but for the rest the only idiom available is that, which is exemplified by पुरुषस्य हेतोः. Now, as केन and हेतुना are *both* instrumentals, it is but consistent that of कस्य हेतोः, the parallel idiom, *both* elements are meant as *genitives*. Then, of course पुरुषस्य हेतोः must also be considered as *genitives both*. The very words of Pāṇini do not admit of another interpretation.

3. a.) अर्थम्. — Panc. 169 तलार्थं तदेव पुलिनमवतोर्षाः (he is gone to the same bank for water), *ibid.* 212 उलूकाधिपो वायसवधार्थं प्रचलितः (— set out in order to kill the crows), *Mṛcch.* III, p. 116 मदन्विकाया निष्क्रयणार्थं वसन्तसेनागृहं गच्छामि, R. 3, 35, 34 अमृतानयनार्थं चकार मतिम् (he made up his mind to fetch the amṛta). It is plain, that अर्थम् is in all such phrases the equivalent of a final dative. Cp. 87.

b.) अर्थम्. — *Mhbh.* 1, 144, 17 न गृह्येयुरस्मान् नै पाण्डवायि कर्हिचित् (they will not reprove us for the sake of the Pāṇḍavas); Panc. III, 178 एक एव हितार्थाय तेजस्वी पार्थिवो भुवः (no ruler but a monarch promotes the welfare of his country), here हितार्थाय is = हिताय, cp. *Nala* 13, 19.

c.) अर्थम्. — *Mṛcch.* III, p. 116 गणिकायां ब्राह्मणकुलं तमसि पातितम्, Panc. 325 आपदर्थे धनमित्रसंग्रहः क्रियते (it is for evil days, that wealth and friends are sought after), R. 2, 118, 53 उर्मिला भार्यायै लक्ष्मणस्यायि दत्ता (U. has been given to L. to be his wife) [भार्यायै accordingly = भार्यायै or भार्या, cp. *ibid.* 3, 34, 21; *Mhbh.* 1, 14, 7].

4. निमित्तम् etc. — *Daç.* 25 महिसुरनिमित्तं गततोयितोऽभूत् (he has died for a brahman), Panc. 228 वृत्तैल्ललवपातपडुलादिश्रयनिमित्तं गयद्वारा गता, *Mhbh.* 12, 342, 23 अहल्याधर्षणनिमित्तं हि मोतमादरिश्मयुतामिन्द्रः प्रायः (it is because of his adultery with Ahalyā, that Indra got a reddish

But however great the authority of Pāṇini may be, as it is, when he states facts and describes phenomena, there is no plausible reason to follow it, where his explication of them is wrong. To him, who did not know but one language, हेतोः could appear as a genitive, but for us, who have the opportunity of comparing similar idioms in different languages, f. ex. Latin *causā* and *gratiā*, English *because of*, it is impossible not to take हेतोः for an *ablative of causality*. By doing so we account for the idiom in question in a quite satisfactory manner. Therefore कस्य हेतोः is to be compared with Latin *cujus rei causa*, not with *qua de causa*, the Sanskrit equivalent of which is कस्मादेतोः.

कस्मादेतोः reminds me of the vārtt. on P. 2, 3, 27 निमित्तकार्पाहेतुषु सर्वासिं प्रायदर्शनाम्. This precept is strictly true by itself — the word प्राय shows sufficiently that it must not be urged too much — but it cannot be said with some reason, Pāṇini has left out this rule, as he did not want to enjoin it at all.

beard from the side of Gautama); — R. 2, 90, 12 नियुक्तः स्त्रीनिमित्तेन पित्रासौ (he, being enjoined by his father because of a woman —); — Nala 4, 4 विषमग्निं जलं रन्तुमास्थस्ये तव कारणात् (for you I will take poison etc.)

194. The foresaid apparatus for expressing the *purpose*, the *aim*, the *motive*, the *sake*, though the most common, is not the sole, अर्थ, निमित्त, कारण, मूल, हेतु etc. serving also for this purpose, when being part of a bahuvrihi. Daç. 75 f. i. विस्मयहर्षमूलः कोलाहलो लोकस्योदतिहेतु (from astonishment and joy people burst out into clamour). A fair sample of manifoldness of expression we have in these lines from the Rāmāyaṇa

न प्रोभार्थविमो ब्राह्म न धनुर्भूषणाय मे

नासिरात्रन्धनाययि न शराः स्तम्भहेतवः (2, 23, 31),

in each *pāda* a different way has been followed to signify the aim. In the first अर्थ is the latter member of a bahuvrihi, in the fourth हेतु, in the second the dative of the aim has been used, and the third has periphrase by means of अययि. Cp. R. 3, 43, 17; Nala 14, 19.

Rem. It is plain that datives as अययि, निमित्ताय, हेतवे will signify but the *purpose* or *aim*; whereas ablatives as कारणात्, instrumentals as निमित्तेन, compounds in मूल are only expressive of the *cause*. But in some of the foresaid implements for periphrase, as कृते, अर्थम्, निमित्तम्, हेतोः, the contrast, which does logically exist between the conceptions »aim” and »cause” is not to be found. Strictly speaking, they are standing on the neuter territory of the »motive” which partakes of both. See the examples given.

195. The *cause* — either material or efficient — is moreover वशात् often periphrased by वशात् (or वशेन) liter. „by the and बलात् rule of” and बलात् (or बलेन) liter. „by the power of.”

Panc. 43 कथं मयपानवशादप्रस्तुतं वदसि, ibid. 327 दैववशात्संपद्यते नृपां शुभाशुभम्; Var. Brh. 2, 4 आसादयेदनिलवेगवशेन पारम् (he may perhaps reach the other side by the strength of the wind); Kathās. 12, 59 आत्मनः।

अदर्शनं युक्तिश्रुत्याद् व्यश्रायोगन्धरायणः (Yaug. made himself invisible by sorcery).

- 196.** The *agent, instrument, means* may be periphrased by such words as **द्वारेण** (by means of), **मार्गेण** (by way of), **परम्परया** (by a continual line of), **मुखेन** and **वचनेन** or **मुखात्**, **वचनात्** (by mouth of), **योगेन** or **योगात्** (by exercising, practising), **अनुसारेण** (agreeably to), sim. Prabodh. II, p. 35 तेन [sc. चावकिण] च शिष्योपशिष्यद्वारेणास्मिंल्लोके बहुलोकृतं तन्त्रम् (and he has spread his doctrine *by* his disciples and the disciples of them); Panc. 239 आकाशमार्गेणा प्रायात् (he went off *through* the sky); Mr̥ch. VIII, p. 255 यदि पुनरुद्यानपरम्परया नगरीमुत्तयिनीं प्रविशामः (but if we entered the city of U. by following the line of groves); Panc. 56 स राजा देवोमुखेन तां दुहितरमुवाच; Çāk. II रक्षायोगादयमपि तपः प्रदाहं संचितोति (he too [the king] earns *tapas* day after day by his giving protection); Panc. 126 कोपि त्रिषो महाविद्वान्परं पूर्वतन्म. योगेन चोरो वर्तते (— but *because of* deeds, done in a former existence he was a thief); Bhojapr. 3 वदामि स्वमत्यनुसारेण (I speak *according to* my opinion).

### III. PERIPHRASE BY MEANS OF PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS AND THE LIKE.

- 197.** Some participles in **त** may serve the want of periphrase, as:

**गत** 1. **गत**, often used as an equivalent of the locative, as it may be rendered by *into, to, towards*. Panc. 155 आबयोर्हस्तगतं त्रातम् (it has come *into* our hand), Mālav. I, p. 12 गवाक्षगता तिष्ठति (she stands *at* the window), M. 2, 218 गुरुगतां विद्यां शुश्रूषुरधिगच्छति, here गुरुगता विद्या = गुरो विद्या »the wisdom which dwells in his teacher." Panc. 272 a lion takes up the helpless young of a chacal holding it between his teeth दंष्ट्रामध्यगतं कृत्वा = दंष्ट्रामध्ये कृत्वा. Likewise R. 3, 46, 6 जनस्थानगता द्रूमाः = जनस्थाने सन्तो द्रूमाः »the trees in Jan."



Examples of गत, periphrasing the nimittasaptamī (147). R. 3, 43, 48 पश्य लक्ष्मणा वैदेह्या मृगत्वचि गतां स्पृहाम् (Laxmana, look how fond Sītā is of the skin of the antelope), Çāk. I सखीगतं किमपि पृच्छामः (I will ask something concerning your friend).

Rem. Occasionally संश्रित, अश्रित and the like are used in this manner. See f. i. R. 3, 11, 65 and 3, 54, 26.

198. 2. Such as are expressive of *concomitancy* or the contrary of it, as सहित, युक्त, when = „with,” रहित, हीन, when = „without.” It is a matter of course, that we have the right of speaking of them as periphrasing case-relations only in such cases, as where the original and proper meaning of these participles has faded away in so far as not to admit of their being translated by English participles. With them may be remembered the adjective सनाय, which is often almost equivalent to our „with,” as Panc. 62 अस्ति, ... नातिदूरे प्रभूतलसनायं सरः (a lake with much water).

Rem. To them we may add द्योत, अपगत, विगत and the like, when being the first members of bahuvrīhis as अपगतभय = „fearless,” Daç. 25 द्योतदयः „pityless.”

3. Some participles in the neuter gender may be met with occasionally, used as adverbs with a prepositional function. Mhbh. 1, 115, 11 अज्ञातं धृतराष्ट्रस्य (without the knowledge of Dhṛ.); Panc. 272 तेन भृशता स कुम्भकारः प्रस्तावानुगतं पृष्ठः (in the course of the conversation the king asked the potter). Cp. Kathās. 39, 167.

199. To them we may subjoin, as they do duty of participles, the adjectives अभिमुख, उन्मुख, संमुख, when pointing out the direction of a movement. Then their proper meaning „[having] the face [turned] to” has dwindled down to a mere *to* or *towards* = प्रति. They are often used so, either as adjectives, or adverbially. — Examples of adjective: Panc. 208 स्वपुर्गभिमुखः प्रतस्थे which is identical with स्वपुर्गं (or स्वपुर्गं प्रति) प्रतस्थे; ibid. 299 मातुः संमुखो गतः = मातुः सकाशे गतः; — of adverb: Panc. 64 सा स्वगृहभिमुखं प्रतस्थे.

**200.** A similar periphrase is exhibited by the gerund उद्दिश्य, as it is expressive of the aim the action is pointing at. Therefore उद्दिश्य may serve almost the same purpose as प्रति, and is available as well in figurative as in literal sense. So Panc. 210 स्वगृहमुद्दिश्य प्रपलायितः (he fled to his home), Mudr. I, p. 8 ब्राह्मणानुद्दिश्य पाकः (the cooking for the brahmans). In the former instance the mere accus. स्वगृहम् would suffice, in the latter the gen. or dat. ब्राह्मणानाम् or ण्योः.

Other examples: R. 3, 11, 44 रामः] प्रत्येऽगस्त्यमुद्दिश्य (- to Agastya), Kād. I, p. 19 रात्रानमुद्दिश्यार्यामिमां वपाठ ([the bird] pronounced this âryâ with regard to the king), R. 3, 38, 13 यत्तमुद्दिश्य दीक्षितः, Panc. 82 निमित्तमुद्दिश्य प्रकुप्यति, (he is angry for some cause), Çāk. V किमुद्दिश्य ःगवता काश्यपेन मत्सकाग्रमृगयः प्रेरिताः स्युः (for what purpose — ?), etc.

Rem. Like उद्दिश्य it is also said समुद्दिश्य or one makes use of kindred nouns, as उद्देष्टेन, समुद्देष्टेन, उद्देष्टात् all = 'with regard to.'

**201.** Some other gerunds, as पुरस्कृत्य, मध्येकृत्य, अधि-  
 कृत्य, आश्रित्य, उपेत्य, संख्याय may be used in a si-  
 milar way, viz. to signify *in regard of, with respect to, concerning, about* sim.

Gerunds,  
 expressive  
 of 'about  
 in regard  
 of' sim., as  
 अधिकृत्य,  
 पुरस्कृत्य  
 etc.

Examples: Panc. IV, 70 मित्रतां च पुरस्कृत्य किञ्चिद्वक्ष्यामि तच्छृणु (I will say something about the friendship, hear it); Çāk. II अहं तु तामेव प्रकुन्तलामधिकृत्य ब्रवीमि (but I say so only in regard of the fore-said Ç.), ibid. I त्र्योषणमयमधिकृत्य गीयताम् (sing of the hot season); R. 2, 9, 60 उवाच कुञ्जा भरतस्य मातरं हितं वचो राममुपेत्य चाहितम् (Kubjâ spoke well as far as her words regarded the mother of Bharata, but not well with respect to Râma); ibid. 2, 40, 14 वनवासं हि संख्याय वासांस्याभरणानि च भर्तारमनुगन्धत्यै सीतायै श्वशुरो ददौ (in regard of the life in the forest, her father-in-law gave to Sîtâ —).

**202.** Among the other gerunds, which may in some degree or other do duty of prepositions, we notice:

other ge-  
rands.

1. those, expressing concomitancy, as आदाय and गृहीत्वा, when = „with;”

2. such as are expressive of separation, as मुक्त्वा, वर्तयित्वा, परित्यज्य sim., as they are = „save, except, but for;”

3. such as serve to denote the instrument, means, manner, in short, to periphrase the third case, as आस्थाय, दारिकृत्य, अवलम्ब्य, अधिष्ठाय;

4. विहाय and अतीत्य when = Lat. *prae* „in preference to;”

5. आरभ्य „since.”

आदाय, गृहीत्वा. Examples: of 1. — Çâk. III ततः प्रविशति कुशानादाय यत्नमानशिष्यः (enters a sacrificer's disciple with kuçagrass); Panc. 173 चित्रमादाय समायातः (he came with money); R. 3, 24, 12 गृहीत्वा वैदेहीं.... गुह्यमाश्रय (retire with Sitâ into a cavern). — They are especially of use to point out the attributes or tools one takes along. Panc. III, 143 स [लुब्धकः] पञ्चरक्मादाय पाशं च लगुडं तथा। नित्यमेव वनं याति; Kathâs. 21, 134.

मुक्त्वा, वर्तयित्वा, प-  
रित्यज्य. of 2. — Panc. 203 धर्मं मुक्त्वा नान्या गतिरस्ति (there is no other path, *except* duty); R. 1, 67, 19 निपेतुश्च नराः सर्वे तेन शब्देन मोहिताः। वर्तयित्वा मुनिवत् रत्नानं तो च राघवो (and all the people fell down, confounded by that sound, *save* Viçvâmitra, Janaka and the two Raghuides); Panc. 273 मयायैनं शृगालशिषुं परित्यज्य न किञ्चित्सङ्गमासादितम् (I have caught to day not a single animal *except* this brat of a chacal).

वर्तयित्वा. NB. Another implement of the same purport as मुक्त्वा etc. is वर्तयित्वा, always making up the latter part of a compound adverb. Var. Brh. 47, 28 यद्विस्तरं कथितं मुनिभिस्तदस्मिन्। सर्वं मया निगदितं पुनरुक्तवर्तयित्वा (all that has been told at large by the old seers, I have *explained, save the repetitions*).

आस्थाय. of 3. — R. 1, 16, 2 उपायः को वधे तस्य राज्ञसाधिपतेः सुराः। यमहं तं समास्थाय निहन्यामृषिकण्टकम् (what way, ye gods, may lead to the death of that prince of Râxasas, *by which means* I may kill the disturber

of holy men?); Mudr. IV, p. 136 न वयममात्यराक्षसद्वारेण [op. 196] कुमारमाश्रयामहे किं तु कुमारस्य सेनापतिं द्वारोक्त्य (we do not approach the Prince by the interference of Minister Rāxasa but by that of the Commander of the Prince's Army); Mālav. II, p. 45 राज्ञा दक्षिण्यमवलम्ब्य = सदाक्षिण्यम् »courteously”.

Likewise the participle आस्थित. Panc. I, 243 नृपतिर्लोकान्पालयेयन्-मास्थितः = यत्नेन लोकान्पालयेत्.

विहाय, of 4. — Çāk. II. मूर्ख अन्यमेव भागधेयमेते तपस्विनो निर्वपन्ति यो रत्नराशो-  
अतीत्य. नपि विहायाभिनन्यते (fool, these holy men strew about a quite dif-  
ferent tribute, which has a greater value than even heaps of  
precious stones); R. 2, 94, 26 अतीत्यैवोन्नरान्कुर्वन् पर्वतश्चित्रकूटो ऽसौ अद्-  
मूलफलोदकः (Mount Citrakūṭa has even more roots, fruits and water  
than the land of the Hyperboreans).

of 5: have been given already 170.

Rem. This list is not complete. It may happen that some more  
gerunds are occasionally to be rendered by English prepositions  
अनादृत्य. or prepositional phrases. So अनादृत्य may admit of the translation  
अवदृश्य, »in spite of,” अवदृश्य may be = Lat. ob, as R. 3, 18, 15 where  
etc. Çūpanakhâ speaks so to Rāma रमां विव्रपां.... वृद्धां भार्यामिव दृश्य न  
मां त्वं अद्भु मन्यसे (it is for that old and ugly wife you do not esteem  
me), etc.

203. In determining the site of some locality gerunds are often  
used, which admit of being rendered by prepositions. R. 2, 80,  
21 गङ्गायां तु समासाय [रात्रमार्गः] (the highway is along the Ganges).  
Kāçikā on P. 3, 4, 20 <sup>1)</sup> gives these instances: अप्राप्य नदीं पर्वतः स्थि-  
तः अतिक्रम्य तु पर्वतं नदी स्थिता (the mount is before the river, but the  
river is beyond the mount).

## CHAPTER X. Compounds.

204. In western languages compounds are not considered  
a topic of Syntax. The fact of their being made up

1) The rule of Pāṇini treats only of this idiom when expressive of  
the notions »beyond” and »before.”

Com-  
pounds a  
topic of  
Syntax.

of two or more self-existent words — however important for the etymologist — has little or nothing to do with their employment in speaking or writing. In Sanskrit it must be otherwise. Keeping apart such compounds as have got any special meaning, which stamps them to unities<sup>1)</sup>, there exists in that language an almost illimited freedom of expressing any kind of relations, grammatical or logical, by the way of compounding. Every moment the speaker and especially the writer of Sanskrit may have the opportunity of substituting compounds to the analytical mode of expression. For this reason, Sanskrit Syntax has to deal with compounds, as far as regards giving an account of the part they are acting in the phraseology and of the modes and ways how to employ them, whereas it is a topic of Sanskrit Etymology to expound their structure and their outer shape.

The three great classes of compounds, set up by vernacular grammar, are dvandva, tatpuruṣa, bahuvrīhi. They include nearly all varieties as well of the simple compounds, which are made up of but two non-compound words, as of those, which are most intricate and of an immoderate length. Outside of them, there remains only the class of such compounds as are produced by putting together the preposition + the noun-case depending on it, as आकण्ठम् etc. (152)<sup>2)</sup>; in most cases

1) Such as हिमालय when the name of the mountain, महात्मन् »noble,," भूसुर »brahman," सप्तर्षयः the well-known constellation, अबल »woman," and the like.

2) WHITNEY *Sanskrit Grammar* § 1310 calls them »prepositional compounds."

this fourth class coincides with the *avyayibhāva* of vernacular grammar<sup>1)</sup>.

### 1. DVANDVA.

**205.** The *dvandva* serves to express concatenation and <sup>P. 2, 2, 29.</sup> addition. Two or more nouns linked to another by „and” may be united into a *dvandva*. So instead of saying रामो लक्ष्मणश्च we may use the *dvandva* रामलक्ष्मणौ, instead of स्त्रियो बालाश्च वृद्धाश्च it may be said स्त्रीबालवृद्धाः.

Rem. In the archaic dialect the freedom of making *dvandvas* was very little. At least in the *vaidik* writings *dvandvas* are almost bound to set formulae and do never consist of more than two members. Most of them are *dvandvas* of divinities, especially in the mantras, such as मित्रावरुणा, इन्द्राग्नी. See WHITNEY, *Sanskrit Grammar* § 1255 and 1256.

**206.** The *dvandva* has the gender of its last member. Its <sup>its gender and number.</sup> number is determined by the real number of the persons or things, comprised by it. Panc. I, 4 मृताज्जातो सुतो वरम् (from the three classes of sons: 1 not born at all, 2 sons died, 3. blockheads, the first and second classes are to be preferred), *ibid.* p. 195 प्राणान्तिकं सदैव वयसोलूकानां वैरम् (there always is a deadly hatred between crows and owls), Harshac. p. 28 नृत्यगोतवादित्रेषुन्नाकाः (no strangers to dancing, singing and playing

1) All *compound adverbs*, the former member of which is an indeclinable word, are comprehended by the general appellation *avyayibhāva* (P. 2, 1, 5—16). Moreover this category contains some few kinds of *compound adverbs*, whose former member is a noun-case or an adj.; they are summed up by Pāṇini (2, 1, 17—21). — But *compound adjectives* are never styled *avyayibhāva*, even if their former member be an indeclinable word. So for example when saying रामः ससीतः, we have a „prepositional compound” indeed, ससीतः being = सह सीतया, but not an *avyayibhāva*.

on instruments). As the number of the members is illimited, we may have such long dvandvas as f. i. Nala 1, 28 वयं हि देवगन्धर्वमानुषो-  
रग्राक्षसानृष्टवन्तः etc.

But if the dvandva is to represent a real unity or if not individuals but categories are linked together, it generally is á neuter and á singular. So it is said पुत्रपौत्रम् (children and grandchildren), गवाश्वम् (kine and horses), आराशस्त्रि (awl and knife).

Rem. 1. A full and exhaustive account on this subject is given by Pāṇini (2, 4, 2—17) and his commentators. They distinguish between those cases where the dvandva must be a singular and a neuter, those where it must not be so, and those in which it is allowed to use either idiom optionally. So, among others, the singular of the neuter is of necessity with dvandvas signifying parts either of the body or of musical instruments or of the army, as पाणिपादम्, रथिकपादात्म, likewise if names of rivers and countries, when of different gender, are linked together, as गङ्गाप्रोषाम्, कुरुकुरुक्षेत्रम्. On the other hand, dvandvas made up of nouns denoting animate beings are not allowed to be put in the singular number, save a.) very small animals, as दंष्ट्रमशकम्, b.) such as by their nature are living in eternal mutual enmity, as मातृ-  
मूषकम्, मोह्यायुम्, c.) classes of śūdras, not considered abject<sup>1</sup>), as तक्षायस्कम्, d.) some others as गवाश्वम्, पुत्रपौत्रम्, श्वचपडालम्, स्त्रीकुमा-  
रम्. — Dvandvas of contrasting qualities or things are optionally put in the singular or in the dual, as सुखदुःखम् or खे, श्रोतोष्णम् or  
ऽप्ये. And so on. P. 2, 4, 2. P. 2, 4, 7. P. 2, 4, 8. P. 2, 4, 9. P. 2, 4, 10. P. 2, 4, 11. P. 2, 4, 13.

Rem. 2. It is forbidden to compound a genus with its species. See Pat. I, p. 252.

Rem. 3. Instead of the dvandva मातापितरौ the simple पितरौ may be used (so f. i. Ragh. 1, 1 त्रगतः पितरौ वन्दे पार्वतीपरमेश्वरौ. Likewise P. 1, 2, 70 and 71.  
व्यश्रुतौ is synonymous with व्यश्रुश्रुतौ, see f. i. Kathās. 58, 89. —

1) P. 2, 4, 10 शूद्राणामनिर्वचसितानाम्. Kāç. वैभुक्ति पात्रं संस्कारेणापि न शुध्यति त निर्वचसिताः

Dvandvas = »brother and sister,” »son and daughter” are not used, P. 2, 1, 68. here भ्रातरौ, पुत्रौ are of necessity. — Cp. Latin. *soceri* = *socer et socrus*, *fratres* = *frater et soror*.

Rem. 4. As to the order, to be followed in putting together the links of a dvandva, fixed rules cannot be given. Yet it is common to put at the head either the themes ending in ३ or ३, or those commencing by a vowel while ending in ३, or the shortest.

P. 2, 2,  
32-34.

**207.** Besides its most common duty of expressing coordination, the dvandva is also available, if „and” connects persons or things standing in mutual relation with one another. Another species is the distributive dvandva.

Its signi-  
ficance.

Examples of the dvandva of relationship. — R. 3, 27, 10 संप्रहारस्तुमुलो रामत्रिप्रिसोस्तदा। संवभूवातिचलिनोः सिंहकुञ्जयोर्वि (then a wild battle began between Râma and Triçiras, both of extraordinary strength, as if between a lion and an elephant), Mâlav. I, p. 21 अत्रभवतः किल मम च समुद्रपल्लयोरिवान्तरम् (forsooth, there is as great a difference between you and me, as there is between a pond and the ocean), Harshac. 5 निर्मात्रितोयिनो चेयं पयःपावकयोरिवैकत्र धर्म-क्रोधयोर्वृत्तिः (and like water and fire, so righteousness and anger, [when meeting] at the same place, by their proper nature combat each other).

Examples of distributive dvandva. — Mâlav. V, p. 137 तौ वृ-ज्वारदाकूले शिष्टामुन्नदक्षिणे। नक्तं दिनं विभज्योभौ शीतोष्णकिर्पाविव (let them rule severally the banks of the Varadâ, one the northern bank, but the other the southern, as moon and sun share their sway over night and day); Mudr. I, p. 19 द्वितयं कलं कोपप्रोत्थोर्द्विषति च विभक्तं सुहृदि च (I have bestowed the double fruit of my wrath and my affection on foe and friend); Kathâs. 25, 229: Açokadatta by his utmost bravery has conquered a golden lotus and presents it to the king his master, who puts the precious flower in a silver vase; on that account the poet makes this comparison उभौ कलप्रा-प्यौ च शुशुभाते सितारूपौ। यशःप्रतापाविव तौ भूषालाशोकद्वयोः (and both the vase and the flower shone, one white, the other red, as if they were that splendour and that glory combined, which adorned one the king, the other Açokadatta).



**208.** Dvandvas of adjectives are relatively seldom, if compared with the frequency of those made up of substantives.

Dvandvas  
of adjecti-  
ves.

So Kathās. 25, 6 संप्राप सोऽथ त्रिन्ध्यमहाटवीं विवेश च..... तां गहनाय-  
ताम् (thick and long), Kumāras. 1, 35 वृत्रानुपूर्वे च नातिदीर्घे ऋद्वे (legs  
round, well-proportioned and not too long), Kathās. 25, 229 सिंत्तारूपो  
see 207, Malāv. V, p. 137 उत्तरदक्षिणो see 207. — Panc. I, 204 व्याकी-  
र्णकेशकर्णालमुखा मृगेन्द्राः (lions with dishevelled mane and frightful  
mouth) may be an instance of a dvandva of two adjectives, either  
of which is a compound itself.

**209.** Two kinds of compounds are reckoned by vernacular grammar among the tatpurushas, which by their meaning should rather be considered dvandvas:

1. Such as अशितानशित (eatable and not eatable), कृताकृत (done and undone; wrought and unwrought), कृतापकृत, गतप्रत्यागत. Cp. Kathās. 27, 1 नमितोन्नमितेन शिरसा (by turns lowering and raising his head).
2. Those made up of two participles in °त, the compounding of which declares the two actions being done immediately one after another. The former in time is also the former member. Of the kind are दृष्टनष्ट (as soon lost as it is seen), स्नातानुलिप्त (after bathing and anointing one's self). Çāk. IV अयं प्रविशति सुपोलितः शिष्यः (enters a disciple, just arising from his couch), Ragh. 4, 37 कलमा इव ते.... उत्खातप्रतिरोपिताः (like stalks of rice dug out and forthwith replanted), Panc. I, 5 ज्ञातप्रेतः (died soon after birth), ibid. V, 7 वित्तविहीनाः सततं ज्ञातविनष्टाः पयसामिव बुद्बुदाः पयसि. Kathās. 29, 141 an illness (रोगः) is said to have been ज्ञातापनोतः »as soon driven out as its nature had been recognised."

Combina-  
tion of par-  
ticiples:  
1. कृताकृत  
and the  
like;  
2. दृष्टनष्ट  
and the  
like.

P. 2, 1.  
60  
with  
vārtt.

P. 2, 1.  
49.

## 2. TATPURUSHA.

**210.** The tatpurusha serves to express in a condensed shape a noun—substantive or adjective—together with some other noun qualifying it, as तत्पुरुषः = तस्य पुरुषः (his man), अहिकृतः = अहिना कृतः (bitten by a serpent), नवयौ-

Tatpu-  
rusha.

**वनम् = नवं यौवनम्** (the first youth). The noun qualifying is the former member of the tatpuruṣa; the noun qualified, which is at the same time the main element, its latter member <sup>1</sup>).

Rem. The efficient elements of a tatpuruṣa are not of necessity self-existent words. The former part may be such a particle as सु°, दुः°, अ°, see 218. The latter may be a kṛt, not otherwise used but in compounds, as ञ्, ण, स्य, ञ्, भुञ्, भान्, श्य, कृन्, कारिन्, भोजिन्, हारिन् etc. Many of these compounds have got a special meaning 'so as to make them indissoluble unities, as अण्डत »bird," कुम्भकार् »potter," क्लृप् »servant." Yet free compounding is also allowed. So Panc. I, 103 कोशे कृमिन् may be analyzed into को कृमेतन्मि, ibid. p. 28 प्रसादन्मुखो नः स्वामी वचनप्रगमा [ = वचनवगे गतः ], Bhojapr. 2 लाको अं नो मय्ये वक्ति, Panc. 41 नमोपवर्तिनि नमरे [ = नमोपे वर्तमाने न° ].

211. The former member may be either = a noun-case (as in तत्पुरुषः, अहिहृतः), or = an adjective (as in नवयौवनम्). In the latter case, there exists grammatical concord between the two members; such tatpuruṣas bear the special appellation of **karmadhāraya**.

karma-  
dhāraya.

The faculty of combining adjectives with their substantives into karmadhārayas is theoretically almost unrestricted, but in practice not all possible combinations are used <sup>2</sup>). Most karmadhārayas are terms often recurring which *either* have got some special meaning,

1) Pat. I, p. 392 उत्तरपदार्थप्रधानस्तत्पुरुषः. In the same way the dvandva is styled उभयपदार्थप्रधानः, the bahuvrīhi अन्वयपदार्थप्रधानः, and the avyayibhāva पूर्वपदार्थप्रधानः.

2) Pāṇini's rule 2, 1, 57 विशेषणं विशेष्येण ब्रह्मन् plainly shows not all combinations of the kind to be allowed.

or are wont to be much employed though nothing impedes expressing them by the two elements severed. Of the former kind are such as परमात्मा (the highest soul), युवराजः (heir apparent), of the latter such as कृष्णसर्पः (a black serpent), पक्वान्नाम् (cooked rice), and the great class of compounds, a full account of which is given by Pāṇini in the first adhyāya of his second aṣṭakam (see espec. the sūtras 49, 58, 61, 67 and 70), containing those, the former member of which is a pronoun as सर्व, एक, पूर्व, अपर, स्व, and such adjectives as नव, पुराण, महा°, मध्य, मध्यम, सत् (good) etc. To them we may add such words as निद्र, मुख्य, प्रधान, and even such as begin by सु°, दु°: and the negation अ°, as सुतनः (an honest man), दुर्जनः (a bad man), अक्रोचित् (not skilled).

**212.** Yet there are instances enough of a freer employment.

Panc. 327 किमेत्रं पलायते श्लोकभयेन (why do you run away thus by a false fear?), Pat. I, p. 2 शब्दैः — शब्दक्रमैः, Panc. 30 अनुचितस्थान उपविष्टः, Mālav. I, p. 3 वर्तमानकवेः कालिदासस्य (of the living poet K.), Harshac. 6 शैलूष इव वृथा वहसि कृत्रिमोपशमम् (like an actor you are displaying in vain a fictitious tranquillity of mind), Bhoj. 28 प्राज्ञानकर्मतो दारिद्र्यमनुभवति (in consequence of his deeds in a former existence he is now poor), Panc. 37 त्वदीयवचनम् (your orders), Mālav. I, p. 28 यस्यागमः केवलजीविकायै (to whom his learning serves only for a livelihood), Kathās. 39, 131 दत्त्वा वराश्वम् — gave a best horse).

Upon the whole, such freer karmadhārayas are used in a greater extent in poetry, also when being themselves but a member of some large compound, as f. i. Panc. 37 अनेकसाधुजनदत्तमूल्यवस्त्रविक्रय-वशात् (by selling fine clothes given to him by many pious people), in analyzing which we get अनेकसाधुजनैः[karm.]दत्तानां मूल्यवस्त्राणां [other karm.] विक्रयस्य वशात्.

Rem. In the case of such words as पापनापितः, there seems to exist a slight difference between the karmadh. and the analytical construction of the same purport; पापनापितः is »a bad barber" who knows his art badly, but पापो नापितः »a barber of a bad temper." See P. 2, 1, 54.

**213.** We will insist on some species:

a.) such as are made up of a title + the noun of its bearer,

as आर्यचाणक्यः (Sir Cāṇakya), अमात्यराक्षसः (Minister Rāxasa). So Utt. II, p. 30 कुमारलक्ष्मणः (Prince L.), Mālav. I, p. 24 वपिउतकौशिकी खलु भवती (you are the learned Kauṣikī, are not you?), Mr̥ch. III, p. 115 अहं हि गणिकामदनिकार्यमकार्यमनुतिष्ठामि, but some lines after (p. 116) we read in inverse order सदनिकामणिकार्ये, cp. Panc. 59 अनेन त्रिष्णुनामातृप्रभावेण सर्वे शत्रवो निहताः, here the proper noun त्रिष्णु is followed, not preceded by its epithet. In some cases the latter idiom seems to be the regular one, as विन्ध्याचलः (Mount Vindhya).

b.) those ending in °जन, the former part being a subst., as स्त्रीजनः, दुहितृजनः, गुरुजनः. Here जन has sometimes the power of a collective, sometimes it denotes the individual (19 R), स्त्रीजनः may be = »womankind,” »women” or even one »woman,” and so on;

c.) the type अर्धपिप्पली (half a pepper). It is not allowed to say पिप्पल्यर्धम्, but पिप्पल्ला अर्धम्; when compounded it must be अर्धपिप्पली. <sup>P. 2, 2, 1 and 2.</sup> So f. i. Ragh. 7, 42 अर्धमार्गे (halfway), Panc. 203 अर्धपादस्पृष्टभूमिः (touching the earth with the half of his foot). The same applies to पूर्व, अपर, अधर, उत्तर, etc. when denoting: the fore-part, the part behind, the lower- and upper part. Therefore it is said पूर्वकायः (the fore-part of the body), पूर्वाह्नः (fore-noon), अपररात्रः (the latter part of the night), उत्तमाङ्गम् (head), प्रथमरात्रौ (the fore-night), and the like. So मध्य in मध्याह्नः = मध्यमह्नः. We have here the same adjectival conception as in Latin *summus mons*, *media urbs*, Greek μέση ἢ πόλις etc.

Rem. 1. अर्ध, like our »half,” is also compounded with a participle or some other adjective, as अर्धोदितः सूर्यः (the sun, half-risen), Panc. 9 अर्धस्काहितो दारुमयः स्तम्भः.

Rem. 2. As to compounds, commencing by द्वितीय, तृतीय, चतुर्थ <sup>P. 2, 2, 3.</sup> or तुर्य, when = »half, the third —, fourth part,” one may say as well द्वितीयभिन्ना as भिन्नाद्वितीयम् (half an alms) and the like. The same may be stated of अग्र (top, edge, extremity), as it is said as well अग्रनाख (the edge of a nail) as नाखाय (see Petr. Dict. s. v. and the passages adduced there s. v. अग्र).

1) But it is allowed to say पिप्पल्यर्धः (a portion of a pepper). Pat. I, 407 states अर्ध to be a neuter, when meaning »half,” but a masculine, when = »portion, part.” सम्प्रविभागे नपुंसकलिङ्गे अवयवाचो वैलिङ्गः

**214.** A proper species of tatpurushas is made up by those, whose latter member is a verbal noun, the noun predicate of which is signified by the former member. The commonest instances of the kind are adjectives in भूत (being, making up, behaving as). Pat. I, 39 प्रमाणाभूत आचार्यः (the teacher, who is [the pupil's] authority), Daç. 176 तस्याहमस्युदाहरणभूता (I am an example thereof), M. 1, 5 असौदिदं तमोभूतम्. Moreover there is a class of much used compound verbs, whose former part is a noun, whereas the latter is the verb कृ or भू; they carry the conception of something transformed from one state into another. They will be dealt with when treating of the Syntax of the Verb; see 308.

Among other similar tatpurushas we notice a.) those ending in उक्त, समासात्, गत, समाख्यात्, कृत etc Daç. 61 स च.... अम्बालिकायाम्बलारुतसमाख्यातायामतिमात्राभिलाषः (he, being passionately in love with Ambālikā surnamed: the jewel of womankind); b.) these in भुव (having but the name of) and गानिन् and गन्त (thinking one's self —), as ब्राह्मणाद्युवः «one who claims himself a brahman» [on account of his birth, but who does not behave as such], पण्डितमानी (wise in one's own opinion), Atharvav. 15, 13, 6 अत्रात्पो अत्रात्यन्त्रवः, R. 3, 21, 17 प्रहसन्ती न प्रहस्यम्, Daç. 99 धन्यमनः<sup>1</sup>).

P. 2, 1, 59  
with Kāç.'s  
comm.

P. 3, 2, 83.

Rem. Somewhat different is the nature of those, the former part of which is not the predicate, but the predicate's attribute, as उत्तानशय and अन्नमृशय given as examples by the comm. of vārti. 3 on P. 3, 2, 15 and पूर्वसर (going at the head) see P. 3, 2, 14.

**215.** Among such tatpurushas as are made up of a noun-case + the noun qualified by it, by far the most common are those, whose former part is to be periphrased by a genitive, as राजपुरुषः = राज्ञः पुरुषः, शत्रुवधः =

Tatpu-  
rusha, con-  
sisting of  
noun-case  
+ noun.

1) With them may in some degree be compared such tatpurushas as Kathās. 9, 48 अग्निप्राज्ञया (holding [her] for a piece of raw flesh), Hit. 93 व्याघ्रचतुर्ध्या (taking [him] for a tiger). Here the former member is the predicative object of the verbal noun, which is the latter member.

शत्रोर्वधः or शत्रोः or शत्रूणाम्. As this type is met with on every page, it is useless to quote instances from literature. Another frequent type is that, represented by अहिहतः = अहिना हतः. Panc. 118 गुरुजनानुघातः = गुरुजनेनानुघातः, ibid. V, 93 राजसेन्द्रगृहीतः (seized by the prince of giants), Bhojapr. 7 सोऽपि तदाकर्ण्य वज्राहत इव भूताविष्ट इव ग्रहग्रस्त इव.

For the rest, any noun-case may become the former part of a tatpuruṣa, as मासकल्याणः = मासं कल्याणः (happy for a month), मातृसदृशः = मात्रा or मातुः सदृशः (resembling his mother), यूपदारुः = यूपाय दारु (wood for a sacrificial stake), वृकभयम् = वृकात् or वृकभ्यो भयम् (fear of a wolf or of wolves), स्याल्लियाकः = स्याल्ल्यां पाकः (cooking in a pot).

216. Yet, there are some restrictions. For this reason, Pāṇini when treating of compounds made up of a noun-case + noun, gives a detailed account of them. The summary of which runs in this way:

The former member is a genitive. I. As a rule, any genitive may be compounded (*shashthīsam-* P. 2, 2, 8. *āsa*). Some cases are excepted. Among others it is not allowed to use compounds, made up of a genitive + a participle or a gerund or a *kṛtya* or an infinitive, nor those consisting of a genitive + comparative or superlative or ordinal noun of number, nor such as where a genitive is compounded with some noun in °तृ or °श्चक. Therefore, such phrases as मनुष्याणां शूरतमः (the most heroic of men), इन्द्राणां पञ्चमः (the fifth of the disciples), ऋषेः यद्वा (the creator of the waters), ब्राह्मणाय कुर्वन् or कृत्वा or कर्षणीयम् or कर्तुम् (doing etc. for the benefit of a brahman) are unfit for compounding. Partitive genitives are likewise excluded, nor is the dative-like genitive (129), it seems, as a rule, fit for being compounded. —

As little, so we learn from Pāṇini's commentators<sup>1)</sup> an objective genitive in such cases, as विचित्रा सूत्रस्य कृतिः पाणिनिना, here it is not allowed to say सूत्रकृतिः पाणिनिना, since both the subject and the object of the action conveyed by the noun कृतिः are expressed, for nothing impedes using the compound सूत्रकृतिः = सूत्रस्य कृतिः, if the agent is not expressed.<sup>2)</sup>

1) See Kāṣ. on P. 2, 2, 14; Pat. I, p. 415, vārtt. 6. Pat. himself rejects the interpretation given there.

2) The *shashthīsamāsa* is treated by Pāṇini in the second adhyāya of his 2d book (2, 2, 8—17), some statements are also scattered in the third book, see f. i. 3, 3, 116. Additions and corrections on them are of course made in the commentaries. But now and then the cavillations of the commentators have rather obscured the good understanding of some rules. So the Kāṣikā is wrong loosening sūtra 2, 2, 14 from its adbhikāra kṛten and interpreting this rule — कर्मणि च — as if it taught something concerning the objective genitive. Now, as the sūtra could in no way be explained so as to contain a prohibition of compounding any objective genitive whatever, as such compounds are very common indeed, the Kāṣikā was obliged to add a clause of its own उभयप्राप्तौ कर्मणोति वक्ष्या इति ग्रहणम्, which statement certainly will be correct by itself, but not the smallest trace of which is to be found in Pāṇini. In fact, Pāṇini has here not thought of an *objective genitive*. When reading the sūtras 12, 13, 14 at a stretch and without prejudice, one sees plainly that कर्मणि of 14 qualifies क्तेन of 12. Sūtra 14 prohibits compounding a *genitive* + a participle in °त with *passive* meaning. It is not allowed to say तद्दर्शितम् instead of तस्य दर्शितम् (shown to him), whereas Pāṇini allows it, when representing तेन दर्शितम् (shown by him), cp. 2, 1, 32.

The following sūtras 15 and 16 — तृत्तकाभ्यां कर्तरि । कर्तरि च — afford a fair sample of absurd hairsplitting. In s. 15 Pāṇini had given a rule about the words in °तृ and °अक when denoting the agent; with them a genitive cannot be compounded, save the few instances mentioned 2, 2, 9. Accordingly it is prohibited by Pāṇini to say वज्रगर्ता instead of वज्रस्य भर्ता (bearer of the thunderbolt) or घोदन्पाचकः instead of घोदन्स्य पाचकः (one who cooks rice). But some schoolmaster, who commented on our great grammarian, discovered Pāṇini to have omitted some kind of words in °अक, which though not-denoting the agent are likewise forbidden to be compounded with a preceding genitive, as भवतः श्रायिका (your lying down) cp. P. 3, 3, 111. In order to make our sūtra comprise even them,

an accusa-  
tive;

II. compounding the accusative is allowed:

P.2,1,29.<sup>1)</sup>

a) when being one of time as मासकल्याणः. So R. 2, 71, 18 सप्तरा-  
त्रोषितः पथि, Mālat. I, p. 14 बहुदिवसोपचीयमानमिव गन्मथव्यथाविकारमुपल-  
ब्धवानस्मि;

b) with some participles in °त, with active or intransitive mean-  
ing, as ग्रामगतः (gone to the village), नरकपतितः (fallen to hell), P. 2, 1, 24.  
कष्टप्रितः (come to hardship), सुखप्राप्तः<sup>2)</sup> sim. In practice, there are  
more. So f. i. the restriction of खट्वाङ्ग (P. 2, 1, 26) to a reproachful  
term does not imply the prohibition of compounding आङ्ग other-  
wise. See but Panc. 51 करेणुकाङ्ग, ibid. 30 गृह्यातः

an inst-  
ments'

III. compounding the instrumental is allowed:

a) if denoting the agent or instrument + some verbal noun, P. 2, 1, 32.  
as अर्हिन्तः. The participles in °तवन् are excepted, compounding  
अहिना + हतवान् therefore not allowed. — Some proverbial locutions P. 2, 1, 33.  
are explicitly named by Pāṇini, as काकपेया नदी, प्रलेखः कृपः, but

the well-known *yogavibhāga*-expedient was taken recourse to, and our  
sūtra was split up in two. One made the discovery that 'the word कर्त्तरि  
admitted of two acceptations, according to its being construed either with  
तृत्तकाभ्याम् or with the general *adhi-kāra* ण्यो; in other terms, P. could  
mean either *any genitive + agent in तृ or अक* or *the subjective genitive +  
any noun in तृ or अक*. By combining both and assigning to either an  
own sūtra the *ἀπορία* felt by the commentator found its *ἀλυσίς*. See but  
the artificial interpretation of both in the Kāçikā. How Patanjali inter-  
preted the rule we do not know, a comment of his on s. 15 and 16  
being wanting; from vārtt. 2 on I, p. 415 it appears he was acquainted  
at least with s. 15.

In 2, 2, 11 it seems strange, that a special prohibition — that con-  
cerning the ordinal nouns of number — is enjoined immediately after  
the general one (2, 2, 10) which includes also that special case.

1) The preceding sūtra 28 is too artfully interpreted by Pat. and  
Kāç. to have been interpreted well. It is likely, we have here again an  
instance of distortion by *yogavibhāga*. I am sure, Pāṇini himself has  
given but *one* rule काला अत्यन्तसंयोगे च. Patanjali's defence (I, p. 384) is  
not persuasive.

2) I agree with BOETHLINGK and WHITNEY in explaining प्राप्ताविक and  
the like as bahuvrīhis. Pāṇini brings them under the tatpuruṣas, see  
2, 2, 4. Inversely such compounds as सुरापीत, मासज्ञात which P. 6, 2, 170  
understands as bahuvrīhis, are to be recognised as tatpuruṣas.



from this it should not be inferred that it is wholly forbidden to make up any other compound of instrumental + *kṛtya*. Panc. 327 त्वद्वच्योऽयं मानुषः = त्वया भ°. Yet such compounds are not frequent.

b) if the latter member is a word expressive of *likeness*, *equality*, *superiority*, *want*<sup>1)</sup>, see 61 and 73. Of the kind are such compounds as पितृसमः (equal to his father), मातृसदृशः (resembling his mother), मासपूर्वः and मासावर्तः (earlier —, later by a month), M. 8, 217 अल्पेन कर्म = अल्पेनोक्तं कर्म (o. a. work, almost finished), Panc. 23 स्वामिसदृशा एव भवन्ति भूतानि;

c) the instrum. + the words कलह (quarrel), निपुण (clever), मिश्र P. 2, 1, 31 (mixed), श्लक्ष्ण (lax). Kāç. gives these examples: असिकलहः, वाङ्निपुणः, गुडमिश्रः, आचारश्लक्ष्णः. When extending the rule to all words of the same purport, as we may do (see above p. 92 N.), the frequent compounds in °मितित, °अन्वित, °युत, °युक्त, °उपेत etc. are included, also many of those, the former part of which is an *instrumentalis partis* (73).

d) in the case of compound adjectives, the former part of which P. 2, 1, 30. is an instrumental of causality, illustrative of the adjective it is joined to<sup>2)</sup>. So R. 3, 16, 13 निःश्वासान्ध आदर्शः (a mirror tarnished by exhalation), ibid. 3, 55, 20 बोर्यसमः (equal by strength), ibid. 2, 118, 4 गुणश्लाघ्यः (praiseworthy by his qualities), Panc. I, 39 तात्यादिमहोत्साहा नरेन्द्राः = तात्यादिना महोत्साहा नरेन्द्राः, Kumāras. 3, 12 तपोवीर्यमहम्सु (men, great by their heroic penance). — Of the same kind are the compounds, made up of instrum. + अर्थिन् (75 R. 1), as Panc. 10 किं

1) In Pāṇini's text पूर्वसदृशसमोनार्थ° अर्थ is of course to be construed with each of the members: पूर्वार्थि, सदृशार्थ, समार्थ, उन्नार्थ, cp. p. 92 N.

2) Sūtra 2, 1, 30 is ill-handled by the commentaries. They expound तृतीया तत्कृतार्थेन गुणवचनेन, as if तत्कृतार्थेन were a dvandva = तत्कृतेन + अर्थेन. How they have come to this contorted interpretation I did not understand before perusing Patanjali; from him I have seen, that his very cavillations (I, 384sq.) must have provoked it. Yet the aim of the author of our sūtra is unmistakable. He allows the instrumental to be compounded with any adjective (गुणवचनेन), which has its justification by that instrumental: तत्कृतार्थेन = यस्यार्थस्यया तृतीयया कृतः स्यात्तेन. So in निःश्वासान्ध आदर्शः the instance, I have quoted from the Rām., it is the exhalation that causes the mirror to be qualified a tarnished one.

भवानाहारार्थं केवलमेव (are you desirous of nothing but food?), Kathās. 24, 176 etc.

e) in the case of food dressed with some ingredient or by mixing two materials, as दध्नादितः, गन्धानाः. Likewise Daç. 139 त्रिपातम् (em- P. 2, 1, 34 and 35.  
poisoned food).

dative; IV. the dative may be compounded:

a) the dative of the aim in such cases as वृषदाह = वृषाय दाह, कण्डल- P. 2, 1, 32  
हिरण्यम् = कण्डलाय हिरण्यम्;

b) the dative of the remote object with the words अस्ति (offer- P. 2, 1, 36.  
ing to), हित (good for), सुख (pleasant for), रक्षित (kept, guarded  
for) and the like, as त्रिपातुन्नितः, गोहितम्, Pauc. I, 47 ना मेवा वा प्रमुहिता,  
etc. — With them is named अर्थ »purpose, aim, scope.” On the  
compounds in °अर्थ we have treated 194.

ablative; V. the ablative:

a) with words expressive of fear, as वृकभयम् (fear of wolves), P. 2, 1, 37.  
R. 3, 27, 20 व्याधत्रस्ता मृगः (deer, afraid of the hunter);

b) with some participles, which signify a withdrawal 1). Daç. 89  
नृत्योत्थिता सा प्रतित्रत (she rose from the dance and went away), M. 2, 89  
सावित्रीपतितः (one who has forfeited the *savitri*), R. 3, 25, 24 चिन्दि-  
दुन्निभिदुश्चैव रागत्राणा गुणच्युताः.

locative. VI. the locative:

a) with such nouns as are construed with a locative of refe- P. 2, 1, 40.  
rence, as those of attachment, skill and the like (148). R. 3, 19, 22  
मानुषो जन्मसंपन्ना (two men, accomplished at arms), Pauc. I, 18. नग-  
क्रमचिन्तणाः (skilled in the commerce of merchandises);

b) in some cases, when denoting a time or a place. Of the  
kind Pāṇini names compounds in °निद्र (prepared, dressed), °वृत्त P. 2, 1, 41.  
(dried), °पक्व (cooked), °वन्ध, also parts of the day or night + क्त, P. 2, 1, 45.  
as संकाश्रयसिद्ध (prepared in Sāṅkṣya), अनापहृत (dried in the sun),  
पूर्वाह्निक (done in the forenoon);

c) in some standing phrases and proverbial locutions, see P.  
2, 1, 42—44; 46—48.

217. This list of possible kinds of tatpurushas, made up of noun-

1) These compounds are not frequent अल्पत्रः (P. 2, 1, 38).

additions  
to the rules  
of Pāṇini  
there-  
about.

case + noun, is however not complete, as will soon appear, if one undertakes to systematize the tatpuruṣas occurring in fact in some literary work.<sup>1)</sup> So, among others, Pāṇini does not mention the abl. of comparison, compounded with अन्य and इतर्; the instrumental + words expressive of plenty; the accus. with the participial adjectives in °उ. Then, many more participles, whose former part is some noun-case, are in common use, though not necessarily, if at all, implied by the foresaid rules.

1. abl. of comparison + अन्य, especially, if the former part be a pronoun, as Hit. 30 भवदन्यो मया कः सुहृत्पापव्यः, Panc. I, 12 trade is said to be the best means for making money, तदन्यः [sc. उपायः] संशयात्मकः (any other but this is dangerous).

2. abl. of compar. + इतर्. — Such compounds are an elegant paraphrase, while calling something: the contrary of its opposite. So दक्षिणेतर् = सव्य »left," सुलभेतर् उपायः (a difficult expedient), Daç. 175 तथा नववधू द्वेषमल्पेतर् ब्रह्मन्ध (he bore his newly married wife a heavy grudge).

3. instrum. + word expressive of plenty. Of the kind are those in °आहूय, °प्रचुर, °समाकुल etc. Panc. 319 उपाप्रचुरोऽयं मेघः, ibid. 7 सिंहव्याघ्रसमाकुलेऽस्मिन्वने.

4. accus. + adjective in °उ derived of a desiderative. Panc. 3 नाहर्गर्थलिप्सुः, M. 7, 197 युध्येत त्रयप्रेप्सुरपेतगीः.

5. Instances of noun-cases + participles are manifold and often met with. First, such as where the former part represents a sociative instrumental, as Panc. I, 164 संमानसंयुक्ताः सेवकाः, ibid. I, 229 भार्या परसंगता (a wife, who holds illicit intercourse with another). — Then, such as are expressive of separation (62). Panc. I, 35 सेवाविवर्जितः (abstaining from attendance), ibid. p. 1 पुत्रा विवेकरहिताः (sons, deprived of discernment), ibid. I, 189 संमानविहीनः cp. 198. — Further locatives + स्थित, गत (cp. 197), ज्ञात, उत्पन्न etc., as R. 3, 31, 2 जनस्थानस्थिता रक्षसाः (the rāxasas, staying at Janasthāna), Panc. I, 128 सदैवापद्रुतो राजा भोग्यो भवति मन्त्रिणाम् (when being in distress, a king

1) It would be indeed an interesting subject-matter for investigation to compare on a large scale these statements of Pāṇini with the facts offered us by the extant Sanskrit literature.

is always the prey of his ministers), *ibid.* I, 104 मूषिका गृह्णतातां हन्तव्या, *Kathās.* 42, 149 अङ्घ्रिपतितः (fallen at their feet). — Or the former member is a dative or loc. of purpose: *Panc.* I, 125 राज्य-लाभोयतो वृत्रः (*Vṛtra*, striving for obtaining the royalty); an accusative: *ibid.* p. 37 संज्ञिकानुरक्तः (attached to S.); an abl. of origin: *ibid.* p. 2 कुलप्रसूतस्य (of one born from a respectable family); a loc. or reference: *ibid.* I, 15 मोक्षिककर्मनियुक्तः. And so on.

6. As to the compound adjectives, they may generally be said to be comprised by the rules of Pāṇini, as their former part is a genitive or may be accepted as such. Among them are to be noticed योग्य, अनुव्रप, उचित, समर्थ, those of skill and ability as विचक्षण, अग्नि, कोविन्, then such as सदृश, सम (*cp.* 216, III *b*). *Panc.* 17 राजा भृत्यानुत्तमप-दयोग्यान् हीनाथमस्थाने निगोत्रयति, *ibid.* 21 तस्य च शब्दानुव्रपेण पराक्रमेण भाव्यम् (his strength will be in proportion to his voice), *ibid.* 27 भवान्वचनपदुद्देशते, *ibid.* 13 कथमहं सेवानभिन्तः. Even indubitable dative-like genitives are compounded with the adjectives, which they qualify. *Panc.* p. 1 राजा तान् शास्त्रविमुखानालोक्य (as the king understood they were averse to the *ṛāstras* —). *Panc.* p. 1 affords even this instance of a tatpur., made up of a dat. of interest + subst., when calling some king सकलार्थिकल्पदुः (v. a. a blessing for all the indigent).

7. Compounds made up of a genitive + agent in °तृ, though explicitly interdicted by Pāṇini, are in fact met with. *Panc.* I, 2 नमोऽस्तु नयशास्त्रकर्तृभ्यः, *ibid.* p. 7 तस्य मङ्गलवृषभो धूर्वादारो रियतो (two splendid bulls drew his chariot)

8. Finally we may set up a category apart for such tatpu-rushas, the former part of which is a noun-case, doing more or less duty of an adverb. *Panc.* 21 न युक्तं स्वामिनः पूर्वोपार्जितं वनं त्यक्तुम्, here पूर्वोपार्जित = पूर्वमुपार्जित «acquired before», *Kathās.* 29, 82 व्यासप्रणयैर्विचित्रैर्वश्यते (— is deceived by words falsely kind), *Panc.* 63 सुहृन्भावः (a friendly discourse), *Mhbh.* 1, 152, 34 सुखमुत्तानवने भ्रातृन्... न बोधयिष्यामि (I will not awake my brothers who are sleeping quietly in the forest), *Kathās.* 42, 149 पर्यायालिङ्गितः (embraced by turns). In all but the first of these examples the former part is an *instrumentalis modi*, used almost as an adverb (77). *Cp.* the following paragraph.

**218.** The former part of a tatpuruṣa may also be an adverb or a particle. Panc. 59 प्रावृत्तान्तः (the matter of late), Kathās. 6, 165 प्रतिवसन्तिपताकाः (flags, waving from every house), ibid. 25, 29 सा [viz. पुरी] च मे स्वप्रशमनव्या (and I have to go from necessity to that town), Kumāras. 3, 4 नितान्तदीर्घिस्तापोभिः (by very long penance).

Among the particles several are noticed by Pāṇini, viz. स्वयम् [2, 1, 25], सामि [ibid. 27], the negation अ [2, 2, 6], ईषत् [2, 2, 7], किम् [2, 1, 64], क, the particles styled "gati" and such particles as प्र, मत्र, आ when meaning "a little," सु, दुः, अति [2, 2, 18]<sup>1)</sup> ep. 210 at the end. — So स्वयंमृतः (died of himself), सामिकृत (half done), यत्राहणाः "no brahman" or "none but a brahman," ईषद्भुजः (a little elevated), प्रपितामहः (a great-grandfather), सुजनः (a good man), दुर्जनः (a wicked man), etc.

**219.** Some relative pronouns and adverbs are likewise fit for being compounded with some noun, especially यथा and यावत्. Those beginning with यथा are the most common, they are *either* adverbs of the type यथाकालम्, यथावयः (according to time, — to age), *or* their second member is a participle in <sup>०</sup>त as यथातः (assaid)<sup>2)</sup>. Examples: Mhbh. 1, 145, 16 निवर्तन्तं यथावृत्तम् (go back, each to his own house), ibid. 1, 149, 1 यथासंप्रत्ययं.... प्रेषयामास पुरुषम् (he sent a man, as was agreed before); — R. 3, 13, 25 यथोपदिष्टेन पथा (on the way, as has been pointed out), Daç. 151 इममर्थं तद्व्यक्त्यां यथापपन्नैरुपायैः साधयिष्यामि (when having got the opportunity he will discharge this affair by such means, as are fit), Panc. 295 यथानिर्दिष्टः क्षणिकः सखा प्रादुर्लभ्य.

Examples of यावत्. — Panc. 276 इतः प्रवृत्तिं यावन्तीति गवात्मा भवते हतः (from this day, I have given my own self to you for my whole lifetime), Kāç. on P. 2, 1, 8 यावदमत्र ब्राह्मणानामामन्त्रयस्व (invite of the brahmins according to the number of the vessels), Panc. 54 यावदात्स्याद्यनोक्तविधिना (conformably to the rules, taught by Vātsyāyana).

1) As to सु, दुः, ईषत्, in सुकर (easy to be done), दुष्कर (hard to be done) and the like, see P. 3, 3, 126-130.

2) Pāṇini (P. 1, 7) mentions only the former type.

**220.** The tatpurusha serves also to express comparison. Such compounds are partly adjectives, partly substantives. The former are of the type घनश्याम (cloud-black), इन्द्र-नील (sky-blue). The latter are made up of the thing's real name + the image, under which it is represented, as पुरुषव्याघ्रः, राजसिंहः, दीर्घः, करकिसलयः.

Examples of the former type. Kām. 3, 12 तलान्तश्चन्द्रचपलं त्रीवनम् (lito, as fickle as the moon, that shines in the water), Daç. 174 हिमशिथिलं (as cold as ice), R. 3, 23, 1 गर्दभारुणः (red-grey as the colour of an ass), Mhbh. 1, 152, 2 प्रावृक्षलधरश्यामः (as dark as a cloud in the rainy season), Mālav. V, p. 122 पद्मिगुरुभिर्दीर्घः, etc.

The latter type is adapted to signify either praise or blame. Generally the metaphors used are conventional ones. In this way a resolute, energetic character is called पुरुषसिंहः, a beautiful face मुखपद्मम्, श्राननारविन्दम् sim., eloquent speech व्राजधु, heavy sorrow is by a standing comparison शोकसागरः which ocean it is difficult or impossible to pass, and so on. In ancient literature this rather allegorical style is still employed with moderation and within certain limits. But the flowery compositions of mediæval India are full of them so as not rarely to make the image appear an appendix wholly meaningless, if not to please the ear of the reader and to display the vaidagdhyā of the author. The accumulation of such allegorical designations becomes tedious indeed, unless good taste direct their employment.

Sometimes the metaphor is worked out. Then we may have a set of homogeneous images, expressed by compounds. So Pañc. I, 241 गोपालेन प्रजाधेनोर्विजृम्भं जनैः जनैः श्राव्यम्, here गोपाल is "king" but at the same time it conveys the meaning of "cow-herd," as गो is = "cow" and = "earth," "he must draw the विजृम्भम् (money-milk) of his प्रजाधेनोः (subject-cow) by degrees" v. a. "a king must draw the money of his subjects by degrees, just as the cowherd draws the milk from his cow." Mṛech. IV, p. 138 रू रघवस्वफलिनः कुलपुत्रमहादूताः। निष्फलत्वमलं यान्ति वेश्याविदग्धभक्तताः (young gentlemen

often come to poverty, being spoiled by courtesans, like great trees, the fruits of which are eaten out by birds). Kathās. 29, 188 a faithful wife is thus compared to a warrior — her conjugal faith is her chariot, duty her charioteer, good behaviour her armour, wit her weapon अर्तुमक्तिर्यावृद्धाः श्रीलसंगाह्वरजिताः। धर्मसारथयः साध्व्यो जयन्ति मतिहेतयः.

Rem. 1. According to vernacular grammar, this class of compounds is to be considered a subdivision of the karmadhārayas, there being sāmānādhikarānya between both members. This explication cannot be right, for it does not account for the inverse order of the two members; one should f. i. expect रत्नस्य instead of स्त्रीरत्नम्, as in the karmadhāraya the qualifying noun is of course put first. In fact, we have here no karmadhārayas, but shash-  
[hisamāśas. The former member is a genitive, but it does not bear everywhere the same character. Sometimes it is a partitive one, as पुरुषसिंहः = पुरुषाणां (or पुरुषेषु) सिंहः, राजावसदः »an outcast among the kings,” ep. the compounds in उत्तम (best) and अश्वम (worst, lowest). Sometimes, too, it is a genitive of the kind represented by our »a jewel of a woman,” »a hell of a fellow,” Lat. *scelus hominis*; so मृदुमतिः (Mudr. III, p. 102) »a beauty of a house,” सहायसंपन्न (Mudr. III, p. 121) v. a. »excellent helpers,” भावचिह्नम् (P. 6, 2, 126) »a slut of a wife.” Not rarely both acceptations are alike probable; स्त्रीरत्नम् f. i. may be as well = स्त्रीषु रत्नम् »a jewel among women” as = »a jewel of a woman.”

Rem. 2. Pāṇini treats the said compounds severally, see 2, 1, 53; 56; 62; 66; 6, 2, 126 sq. — Note °कीट and °अपसद expressing blame, and °रत्न, °पात्र, °ह्वय signifying admiration

**221.** Tatpurushas, made up of three or more stems, are always dissolvable into two members, either of which may be a compound itself Mreeh. III, p. 125 मुखदुःखसुदृढवान्, here the former part is a dvandva मुखदुःखयोः सुदृढवान् = मुखे च दुःखे च. Panc. 323 मत्कण्ठस्थिता, [viz. रत्नमाला], here the former part is a tatpurusha itself, मत्कण्ठस्थिता being = मत्कण्ठे, that is मम कण्ठे, स्थिता. — Panc. II, 153 स्त्रीवाक्याद्गुणविक्षुण्णाः (stirred by the sting-like words

Tatpurushas made up of three or more stems.

of a woman), here वित्तुष्य is the latter member, the former being a tatpurusha of comparison, the former member of which स्त्रीवाक्य is itself an ordinary shashthisamāsa. — Mhbh. 1, 155, 24 पुष्पितदु-  
गसानुषु = पुष्पितदुमेषु सानुषु, here the former part of the tatpurusha is a bahuvrīhi. — Kām. 2, 43 नियतविषयवर्ती (one firmly attached to wordliness) is illustrative of the species of those, whose latter member is a compound, the analysis being नियतं विषयेषु वर्तमानः.

### 3. BAHUVRĪHI.

**222.** The difference between the tatpurusha and the bahuvrīhi is an essential one. The former implies no more than is purported by its constituent elements, but the bahuvrīhi always adds something tacitly understood, generally the conception of „having, possessing.” इन्द्रशत्रुः when tatpurusha = इन्द्रस्य शत्रुः „Indra's foe,” when bahuvrīhi it means „having Indra for foe, one whose foe is Indra;” सूर्यवर्णः, when tatp. = सूर्यस्य वर्णः „the colour of the sun,” when bahuvr. it denotes „one having the colour of the sun.” The bahuvrīhi, therefore, is invariably an *adjective*, referring to some substantive <sup>1)</sup>. Pāṇini then is quite right, when he defines the bahuvrīhi as „a complex of elements serving to qualify some other word <sup>2)</sup>).

1) By this it is however not asserted, that a bahuvrīhi cannot be used as a substantive, but only this: when used so, they are to be considered just as any other adjective, that does duty of a subst. गहात्मा when = „a noble-man” is to be compared with such a word as शुचिः when meaning „an honest man” or बालः when = „boy.”

2) P. 2, 2, 23 sq. बहुव्रीहिर्नेकमन्यपदार्थे. According to that definition, Indian grammar does by no means make restriction as to the number of the elements out of which a bahuvrīhi is made up. This is distinctly expressed in a metrical rule of the *Kātantra* (2, 5, 9)



Like other adjectives, the bahuvrihis may be used as adverbs, when put in the accus. of the neuter singular, see 240.

**223.** From a syntactic point of view, the bahuvrihi, it may be made up of three, four or more elements, does contain but *two* members, virtually identical with the subject and the predicate of a full sentence, just as the tatpurusha represents a main noun with its attribute. And, as within the tatpurusha the attribute is put at the head and the main noun behind (210), so within the bahuvrihi the predicate precedes, the subject is the latter member. When analyzing f. i. the bahuvrihi **महावीर्यः** we get the clause **यस्य वीर्यं महत्** „he whose strength is great,” similarly **सूर्यवर्णः** = **यस्य वर्णः सूर्यस्यैव** „he whose colour is like the sun's,” **भूतलन्यस्तलोचनः** is an epithet of somebody, whose eyes are fixed on the earth **यस्य भूतले न्यस्ते लोचने**. In these examples, the words **वीर्यं**, **वर्णं**, **लोचनं** are the subjects within the bahuvrihis, that which precedes them being the predicates.

In treating of the tatpurushas we have distinguished between 1. the karmadhārayas, 2. those the former mem-

स्यातां यदि पदे द्वे तु याद वा सुब्रह्मयमि  
तान्यन्यस्य पदस्यार्थे बहुव्रीहिः etc.

Nevertheless, in analyzing even intricate bahuvrihis it will appear that, logically, there are but two members — predicate and subject — either or both of which may be compounds themselves, even if it would not always be allowed to use such compounds by themselves as separate words. Pāṇini himself knows „a class of compounds only allowed for the sake of being used as the former part of other compounds” [P. 2, 1, 51].

Types of  
bahuvrihis.

ber of which represents some-noun-case, 3. where it is a particle. In an analogous way we may speak of three types of bahuvrihis: *a.*) those, where there is grammatical concord between subject and predicate, *b.*) such, whose predicate is a noun-case, *c.*) such, where it is a particle.

Type *a.* — Here the predicate is mostly an adjective or a participle, as इन्द्रशत्रुः „having Indra for foe.” When adjective, the bahuvrihi has generally the worth of Latin *gen.* or *abl. qualitatis*, or *abl. modi*. So वीरो व्यूहोरस्कः = *heros latopectore*, Panc. 62 सरः स्वल्पतोयम् = *lacus exiguae aquae*. When participle, the bahuvrihi not rarely concurs with the gerund, the absolute locative and the like. It may as well be said त्यक्तनगरो ऽरण्यायाहं प्रातिष्ठे as नगरं त्यक्त्वा or त्यक्ते नगरे° (I left the town and set out for the forest).

Those belonging to type *b.*) are such as अश्वमुखः (having a horse's face), Panc. 71 संजीवको गुप्सन्त्यादानामुपरि द्रोहबुद्धिः (Sanj.meditates of doing harm to Your Majesty), here द्रोहबुद्धिः = यस्य द्रोहाय (or द्रोहे) बुद्धिः „whose mind is to do harm.”

Those belonging to type *c.*) are such as अधोमुख (having one's face cast down), अन्तःसत्तु (pregnant), एवं-प्रभावो राजा (a king of such a power). Very common are those, commencing by अ°, सु°, दुः°, as अपुत्रः (having no sons), सुपुत्रः (having a good son or good sons).

Type *a.*) and *c.*) are much more common than type *b.*).

**224.** Examples of bahuvrīhis. Type a.) Nala 1, 5 तथैवासीद्विदर्भेषु  
 भीमो भीमपराक्रमः. R. 3, 16, 11 मृदुसूर्यः पटुशीताः.... दिवसा भान्ति सांप्रतम्  
 (now the days are appearing with a mild sun, much fog and a  
 sharp cold). Hit. 90 असौ पापाग्रयः (he is of a wicked disposition).  
 Panc. 150 तेन [sc. क्रोडेन].... दंष्ट्राग्रेण पाटितोदरः पुलिन्दो गतासुर्भूतलेऽपतत्  
 (the Pulinda fell down *lifeless* on the earth, *having his belly split*  
*up* by the edge of the teeth of the boar). Mālav. I, p. 14 राज्ञा  
 अनुवाचितलेखममायं विलोक्य (as the minister has finished his lecture  
 of the letter, the king looks on him). Panc. 71 संक्षुप्तमानहृदयः स्वयमे-  
 वाभ्यागतो वक्तुम् (as it stung my mind, I myself am come to tell  
 you of it).

Nothing impedes, of course, both the subject and the predi-  
 cate being concordant substantives. Bhoj. 17 राज्ञानः कोप्रबला एव  
 चित्तायिनो नान्ये (no other kings are successful in their wars but those,  
 whose power is a treasury), Panc. 185 तत्र वायसरज्ञोऽनेककाकपरिवारः  
 प्रतिवसति स्म [the bahuvr. = यस्यानेके काकाः परिवारः = "whose attendance  
 are many crows"], Daç. 82 अर्यवर्यः कुबेरदत्तनामा (a great merchant,  
 whose name is Kub.), R. 3, 19, 22 मानुषो चीरकृष्णाग्निनाम्यरो.

Rem. 1. In such bahuvrīhis, as have an adjective behind, that  
 adjective does duty of a subst. So f. i. Çāk. I अभिन्नभूयिष्ठा परिषत् (the  
 assembly is for the greater part made up of distinguished people)  
 here the bahuvr. = यस्या अभिन्ना भूयिष्ठाः = "most of which are अभिन्नाः,"  
 Mālat. I, p. 2 उदितभूयिष्ठ एष भावान्तपनः = "the sun has almost risen,"  
 R. 2, 40, 17 सीतातृतीयानाह्वानदृष्ट्वा (— saw them mounted, having  
 Sitā as the third), R. 3, 55, 15 सहस्रमेकं मम कार्यपुरःसरम् (thousand  
 men whose *main object* [पुरःसरम्] it is to carry out my orders).

Rem. 2. A proper kind of bahuvrīhis are such as असिक्व (having  
 a sword in one's hand), अश्रुकण्ठ (sobbing, liter. = one having tears  
 in his throat"). In analyzing them, the latter part turns out  
 a locative, for असिक्व = यस्यासिः क्वे स and अश्रुकण्ठः = यस्याश्रूणि  
 कण्ठे स. For the rest, we have here no exception to the general  
 rule on the arrangement of the two members of a bahuvrīhi. It is असि  
 and अश्रु which are predicated, not क्वे nor कण्ठे, for the intention is  
 to say not that Mr. so and so has a hand or a throat, but what

it is, he keeps within.<sup>1)</sup> R. 3, 51, 9 Sītā has the epithet बाल्यलोचना 'having tears in her eyes.' Comp. WHITNEY § 1303.

Rem. 3. In some bahuvrhis the order of the members is optional. One may say promiscuously आहिताग्निः and आग्न्याहितः (one who keeps the holy fires), ज्ञातपुत्रः or पुत्रज्ञातः (one having children). Of the kind are दन्तज्ञात or ज्ञातदन्त, see M. 5, 58 with Kull., गुडप्रिय and प्रियगुड (fond of sweetmeats)<sup>2)</sup>, R. 2, 119, 5 मुनयः कलशोद्यताः (hermits with uplifted pitchers). Participles in °त must be put behind, if the predicate be a weapon, therefore अयुधतः (with uplifted sword), see vārtt. on P. 2, 2, 36.

Rem. 4. The type a.) of the bahuvrihi in its outer form is often identical with a karmadhāraya, for the discrepancies in the accentuation are not heeded. In practice, one avoids to use as bahuvrhis such compounds as are wont to be karmadhārayas, as सर्वज्ञ, महर्षि, कलश, and inversely such as महाबाहु, बहुश्रुत, कृतकार्य will not have to be otherwise accepted than as bahuvrhis.<sup>3)</sup> Yet, it often is only the context which will enable the reader how to accept a given compound.

225. Type b.). Panc. 24 कदाचिद् दमनकोऽयमुग्रवेतनो भूत्वा ममोपरि दुष्टबुद्धिः

1) Cp. vārtt. 4 of Pat. on P. 2, 2, 36.

2) As to प्रिय, Pat. vārtt. 2 on P. 2, 2, 35 teaches the option. But it seems better to explain गुडप्रिय as being a tatpurusha, because 1st प्रिय may be not only = 'beloved,' but also = 'loving,' see Petr. Dict. IV, p. 1161 s. v. 1 c), 2ly as Pāṇini somewhere else [P. 6, 2, 15 sq.] mentions some tatpurushas in °प्रिय. The same may apply to some of the participles in °त, if not to all. Since पोत may sometimes have an active signification and sometimes a passive one, it is plain we are allowed to compound as well the tatpurusha क्षीरपोतः = *lac potus*, as the bahuvr. पोतक्षीरः = *lacte poto*. Comp. what has been said p. 157 N. 2.

Panc. 283 affords a specimen of a kind of compounds, in which two types are confounded: काचिच्छृगालिका मांसपिण्डगृहीतवदना, here the author seems to have blended promiscuously two bahuvrhis मांसपिण्डवदना and गृहीतमांसपिण्डा, either of which would have sufficed. Comp. Hariv. 5814 चक्रोयतकर्.

3) See CAPPELLER *Vāmana's Stilregeln: Kāvyaśamaya* 7 and 8.

स्यात्, here उग्रव्रतन is the epithet of one who accepts wages from both parties," Kathās. 72, 186 इंसद्वन्द्वपं किंचित्सिद्धयम् (two siddhas, who bore the shape of flamingos), Mālav. I, p. 24 कौशिको वतिवेगा (K. wearing the dress of an ascetic).

Rem. Comparison is sometimes expressed by them, as R. 3, 69, 43 कौ युवां वृषभस्कन्धो (who are you, whose shoulders are like those of a bull?). R. 5, 17, 10 Rāxasawomen bear the epithet गजोद्गृह्यपादाः (with the feet of elephants, camels and horses). — But also by type a.) as रत्नोत्पलोचनः (having lotus-eyes), चन्द्रामनः (moon-faced).

**225'.** Type c.) Prabodh. V, p. 103 देवो ममैवमवस्यं न गमाश्चरयति (the queen does not comfort me, who am in such a state), Panc. I, 137 अन्तःपार्श्वैः..... मन्त्रिनिधायिने राज्यम् (a kingdom is upheld by pithy ministers), Kumāras. 3, 14 the gods bear the epithet दुर्बलैर्द्वयः (whose adversaries are mighty). — Apart from the very common employment of अ, गु, दुः as the predicate in bahuvrhis, several particles and prepositions may be used so, as उत्, निः, त्रि, अति, अत्र etc., as नीरस (sapless), उद्वलितः "one with folded hands," Ragh. 2, 74 पुरमुत्पताकम् (a flagged town), Daṣ. 137 उदायुधः (with uplifted weapon), Harsha 9 तर्ह्विपल्लवः (a leafless tree), Bhoj. 8 वृद्धगणकोपं कृत्वा जगाम.

Rem. Compounding with न°, नर्° and the like has the same power, as English - *ful*, similarly English - *less* is expressed by compounds, beginning with अ°, नि°, त्रि°, विगत°, वीत° etc.<sup>1)</sup>.

1) PATANJALI enumerates also different species of bahuvrhis: a) those, the members of which are samānādhikaraṇa as चित्रम्. b) the former part of which is an avyaya, as नीचैर्मुख, c) whose former part is a locative or something compared as कण्ठेकाल, उद्गुम्ब, d) where it is a *gen. generis* or a *gen. materiae* as केशचूट (with one's hair tied up, liter. "[bearing] a knot of hair"), सुवर्णलिङ्गार् (wearing golden ornaments), e) whose former part is one of the gaṇa प्राद्व्यः [P. 1, 4, 58] as प्रपर्ण (unleaved), f) negation + noun, as अपुत्र. In the case of c) an ellipsis is stated of a middle element, कण्ठेकाल representing कण्ठेस्यः कालोऽस्य and उद्गुम्ब being = उद्गुम्बमिव मुखमस्य. As to e) and f) Patanjali states the option between saying in full प्रपतितपर्णो वृक्षः and the abridgment प्रपर्णो वृक्षः, likewise between अविद्यमानपुत्रः and अपुत्रः. Cp. f.i. Daṣ. 35 उदतद्यापलोचनं तमपृच्छम् with ibid. 176 सा..... उद्ग्राप्योवाच; here the full उदतलोचन and the short उद्ग्रा are synonymous.

**226.** As bahuvrihis of three and more members are excessively frequent, we will adduce some instances of them.

1. the subject is a compound. Panc. 322 व्यक्ताहारक्रियाः (abstaining from taking food) here the subject of the bahuvr. is आहारक्रिया, a tatpurusha; Vâr. Yog. 1, 8 क्षयितधनराज्ञो भवति (he loses his wealth and his kingdom) here the subj. is a dvandva धनराज्ञे "wealth and kingdom;" Daç. 78 a Jaina monk is thus qualified प्रकीर्णमलपङ्कः प्रयत्नकेशलुञ्चनव्यायः प्रकृष्टतमक्षुत्पिपासादिदुःखः (v. a. covered with dust and mud, enduring a heavy pain by pulling out his hair, suffering very much from hunger, thirst and the like) here the subjects of the three bahuvr. are respectively the dvandva मलपङ्कः, the tatp. केशलुञ्चनव्यायः and the tatp. क्षुत्पिपासादिदुःखम् and of them the two tatpurushas are themselves made up of more than two themes, as it is the compound केशलुञ्चन which qualifies व्यायः, and similarly the compound क्षुत्पिपासादि, which is the cause of दुःखम्.

2. the predicate is a compound. — Instances of this category are very often met with, especially such bahuvrihis as exhibit this type: qualifying noun-case + adjective or participle + substantive. Panc. 42 ततर्ता मद्विद्वलाङ्गः = मदेन विद्वलान्वङ्गानि यस्य न; Kathâs. 72, 180 प्रापार्कमेतपूषिकतां महामृगिम्, here the bahuvr. is to be analyzed अर्केण सेतपूषः मिकता यस्यां मा [महामृगिः]. But also other types, as: Mudr. III, p. 124 vultures (नृधराः) have the epithet दीर्घनिर्यकम्पयन्ताः, here the analysis is येषां दीर्घा निर्यकम्पायन् गन्ताः, the predicate, therefore, is an adjective-dvandva (208). Çâk. VII a curse is said to be अदुःस्तीय-कदर्शनावगानः = यस्यादुःस्तीयकस्य दर्शनमवगानं स प्रापः.

3. both subject and predicate are compounds. Kâd. I, p. 46 तत्र त्रिसद्व्यवृत्तिकुलायसद्व्यापि.... शुक्रशकुनिकुलानि प्रतिवसन्ति स्म (crowds of parrots and [other] birds were dwelling there, building confidently thousand(s) of nests), here त्रिसद्व्यवृत्तिकुलायसद्व्यापि is the predicate and कुलायसद्व्यापि the subject of the bahuvrihi, the analysis of which is of course येषां त्रिसद्व्यवृत्तिकुलानि [०तं] कुलायानां सद्व्यापि [०म].

**227.** In the case of non-compound words, adjectives carrying the notion of *having*, *possessing*, as is taught in Sanskrit etymology, may be made by putting some

Suffixes,  
denoting,  
possession  
as °इन्,

derivative suffixe as °मन्त्, °वन्त्, °मय्, °इत्, °इन् etc. to the substantive, as अग्निमन्त् (fiery), पुत्रिन् (having a son) and the like. Of these suffixes, °इन् is very common<sup>1</sup>).

Kathās. 24, 9 किरीटो कुण्डलो दिव्यः खड्गो चावातरत्युमान् (a divine person descended wearing a diadem, earrings and a sword), cp. R. 3, 50, 21. <sup>P. 5, 2, 128.</sup>

They may also be put to dvandvas. Mhbh. 1, 126, 21 तटान्निनी (wearing tresses and a deer-skin), Pat. I, p. 1 साम्नालाङ्गलकुटुबुत्रिषाणिनां संप्रत्ययो भवति स [गो]शब्दः.

sometimes  
added even  
to bahu-  
vrihis.

Now, sometimes, these suffixes are added even then, if they are in no ways necessary for the understanding. So R. 3, 15, 11 पद्मैः सुरभिगन्धिभिः..... रम्या पद्मिनी (a pond charming by its sweet scented lotuses), likewise Panc. 53 the weaver, who has assumed the attributes of Vishnu, is said to be त्रिष्णुचिह्नितः = त्रिष्णोश्चिह्नैश्चिह्नितः, Bhoj. 2 a brahman is said सकलत्रियाचातुर्यवान् = सकलासु त्रियासु चातुर्येषा युक्तः. In these cases no suffix was required, for the bahu-vrihis सुरभिगन्ध, त्रिष्णुचिह्न, सकलत्रियाचातुर्य would be quite regular and plain. Compare Panc. I, 46 सुवर्णपुष्पिता पृथ्वी = सुवर्णपुष्पा पृथ्वी. This rather pleonastic idiom is especially used in some standing compounds. Grammarians teach and practice confirms °इन् being readily added to compounds in °शोभा, °शाला, °माला, °धर्म, °शैल, °वर्ष. <sup>P. 5, 2, 132.</sup>

### ‘TYPICAL COMPOUNDS.

**228.**  
Typical  
com-  
pounds.

So I call such compounds whose latter element is almost used in a **typical** sense, which is more or less remote from their primitive meaning. By them the great importance of compounding for Sanskrit composition appears best. Such among them, as are fit for phrasing case-relations, have already been dealt with in Chapter IX, especially 188—196. Of the others the most remarkable are: 1. those in **आदि**,

1) See P. 5, 2, 115; 116; 128 with the vārttikas on them.

°आद्य, °आदिक, °प्रभृति, which are expressive of „and so on,” 2. those in °पूर्वम् and °पुरःसरम्, which may serve to make adverbs of manner, 3. those in °पूर्व = „formerly —,” 4. those in °मात्रम्, which does duty of a limitative particle, वाञ्छात्रम् being nearly the same as वागेव, 5. those in °कल्प, °देश्य, °देशीय, °प्राय, to express „nearly, almost,” 6. those in °तूप, if तूप may be rendered by „namely,” 7. those in °अन्तरम्, when having the worth of „some” or „other.” And so on.

**229.** To give a fuller account of them, we will treat of them se-

1. °आदि parately.

etc

1. Those in °आदि, °आदिक, °आद्य, °प्रभृति are bahuvrihis, meaning properly »the beginning of which is —,” as is still plain f. i. in M. 1, 50 एतदन्तास्तु गतयो ब्रह्माद्याः (the existences, at the head of which stands Brahmâ, end here). Commonly they are expressive of »etc.; and the like.” Panc. 8 तस्यैर्धुदेहिकक्रिया वृषोत्सर्गादिकाः सर्वत्राश्रकार् (he performed in his honour all the funeral rites, viz. the vṛshotsarga etc.), Hit. 123 सुवर्णवस्त्रादि प्रसाददानं क्रियताम् (bestow on them presents of the king's favour, gold, clothes and so on), Panc. 62 सर्वे गत्स्य-कच्छपप्रभृतयस्तं पप्रच्छुः (all [aquatic animals], fishes, tortoises etc. —). In these examples the compounds are adjectives, but often they are used as substantives too [see note 1 on p. 165], as Bhoj. 64 ब्रह्मणि ब्राह्मणपुत्रः। त्वामत्र श्रयानं वीक्ष्य कमण्डलूपत्रोतादिभिर्ब्राह्मणं ज्ञात्वा भवदासरासान् एवाहं प्रमुञ्चः, Panc. 27 अद्यप्रभृति प्रसादनिग्रहादिकं त्वयैव कार्यम् (from to-day it is you by whom favour, punishment, etc. are to be administered.)

2. °पूर्व,  
°पुरःसर.

2. When adjectives, those in °पूर्व and °पुरःसर may have the same purport as those in °आदि etc. Panc. 20 व्याघ्रदीपिकपुरःसराः सर्वे (all of them, tigers, panthers, wolves and the rest). When adverbs, the latter member is almost meaningless: प्रेतिपूर्वं भागते = सवीति भागते. Hit. 7 तस्य चतुर्भानपुःसरं पुत्रानामर्पितवान् (respectfully he gave over his sons to him)



3. भूतपूर्व  
and the  
like.

3. Those in पूर्व may also signify 'having been formerly so and so,' but now being so no more: ब्राह्मपूर्वः 'one who once has been rich,' भूतपूर्वः (of old). N. 1, 13 न कुचिद् दृष्टपूर्व (never seen before), Çāk. VI सत्यमूढपूर्वा तत्रभवती रुदसि प्रकृतला (indeed, I once have wedded secretly the Lady Çāk.)<sup>1)</sup>.

α) °मात्रम्.

4. α) Compounds in °मात्रम् are bahuvrhis, used as substantives of the neuter, and properly have the meaning 'the exact measure (मात्रा) of which is —.' Yet, as a rule they are used as if their latter member were some limitative particle and °मात्रम् may be translated by 'but, only.' Prabodh. I, p. 13 किंवदन्तीमात्रमेतत् (it is but a vain rumour), Panc. 192 कोऽपि ते वाचात्रेणापि सहायत्वं न करिष्यति (nobody will make you his friend only on account of your voice), R. 3, 71, 22 नाममात्रं तु ज्ञानमि न रूपं तस्य रक्षसः. This translation, however, does not suit all instances. Sometimes °मात्रम् signifies, that the whole class is meant, not single individuals belonging to it. Pat. I, p. 242 ब्राह्मणो न हन्तव्यः सुरा न पेयेति ब्राह्मणमात्रं न हन्यते सुरामात्रं च न पीयते (since it is said: 'one may not hurt a brahman, nor drink strong liquor', one does not hurt anybody, that is named brahman, nor drinks anything, to which the appellation 'strong liquor' is applicable). Comm. on R. 2, 12, 100 कैकेयीदोर्जन्यं दृष्ट्वा राजा प्राक्केन खिमात्र निन्दति (the king seeing the foul conduct of K., by his sorrow chides the whole feminine sex). — In this meaning °ज्ञातम् is almost synonymous, as Daç. 22 चोऽपेयनादिसंस्कारज्ञातमलगत (he obtained the cauda, the upanayana, in short the whole set of sacraments), Bhoj. 62 अखिलेष्वपि कोशेषु यद्विज्ञातमस्ति तत्सर्वं देवेन कविर्गो दत्तम्.

β) Adject.  
in °मात्र.

β) °मात्र is also put to participles; then it is an adjective and signifies 'as soon as —.' Panc. III, 3 ज्ञातमात्रं जनुं प्रणमं नयेत् (one must abate a foe, as soon as he has arisen), ibid. p. 58 भगवता नारायणेन स्मृतमात्रो त्रैलोक्यः संप्राप्तः, Kathās. 36, 111, etc.

Rem. The adjectival employment of those in °मात्र is however

1) One is wont to analyze भूतपूर्वः by पूर्व भूत. and so on, see f. i. Kāç. on P 5, 3, 53, but that analysis does not give a satisfactory account of the nature of the compound. If the adverb पूर्व were compounded with the noun भूत, one would expect पूर्वभूत in the same way, as f. i. M. 9, 267 पूर्वतस्कराः 'people who have formerly been thieves.'

not restricted to the case that the former member is a participle. See but Panc. II, 95 नाममात्रा न सिद्धो हि धनहीनाः... नराः (poor people do but bear the name of men, as they are of no use whatsoever).

5. °कल्प, 5. »Almost, nearly, like" is signified by °कल्प, °देश्य, °देश्यीय, °प्राय, °देश्यीय, which have almost got the nature of pure formal suffixes, and, indeed, the former three are taught as such by Pāṇini (5, 3, 67). Of them, those in °कल्प and °प्राय are the most frequent. R. 3, 16, 39 वाक्यान्वयमृतकल्पानि (speech like ambrosia), Kumāras. 3, 14 कर्म स्वयं नः प्रतिपन्नकल्पम् (you have nearly engaged yourself to do our affair), Kathās. 6, 51 इन्द्रोऽगः कश्चिदित्युक्तां विदुःप्रायेणा केनचित् (some Sāmavedin was thus addressed by somebody like a rake), Mālat. IX, p. 149 एवं पर्यवसितप्रायेऽयं नः प्रत्याशा (in this manner all my hope is almost gone), Panc. 202 पक्कालिप्रायं देशं गतः (gone to a country, where a good deal of the paddy was ripe), Daç. 78 त्रिप्रलम्भाप्रायमिदमन्यत्रम् (this way of unrighteousness, full of deception). Those in °प्राय are, indeed, bahuvrīhis, to be analyzed thus: »the greater part of which is —," just as those in °कल्प properly are = »the manner or mode of which is —."

6. Those in °रूप are likewise adjectives. As रूपम् means not only »shape, form" in general, but also »a beautiful shape, a beauty," so the bahuvrīhis ending in it admit of either acceptation. Pāṇini (5, 3, 66) mentions the latter, when teaching such compounds as ब्राह्मणारूपः, पञ्चतिरूपम् to be praise-denoting.<sup>1)</sup> But, in practice, those in °रूप are not often met with in this meaning, by far oftener they are employed for the sake of qualifying some general kind by describing its species. Then we may often translate them by means of »f. i.; viz." Instances are chiefly found in commentaries and the like. Sāy. on Ait. Br. 2, 37, 1 [p. 272 ed. Aufrecht] रथभङ्गुरूपो व्यामोहः.

1) Pāṇini speaks of °रूप as of a taddhita. Kāç. when commenting on our sūtra shows °रूप to be used to signify the highest pitch of a quality, as वृषलक्ष्मणोऽयं यः पलाण्डुना सुरां पिबति. Blame, inversely, is expressed by compounds in °प्राय (P. 5, 3, 47), as in this verse of Bhojapr. (p. 7) स्वाम्युक्ते यो न यतते स भृत्यो भृत्यप्रायकः (the attendant, who does not exert himself, when ordered by his master, is a bad attendant).

7. °अवधि. 7. Bahuvrhis in °अवधि (limit) may be synonymous of यावत् in both of its acceptations (169 with Rem.). See f. i. Kathās. 4, 100 प्रत्यागमावधि (till I shall have come back); 52, 146.
8. °विशेष. 8. Tatpurushas in °विशेष, when meaning »excellent species,” are expressive of something »first-rate, excellent.” See f. i. Ragh. 2. 7.
9. °अन्तर. 9. Tatpurushas in °अन्तरम् are often to be rendered by »some” or »other.” Properly speaking, अन्तरम्, विशेषः and भेदः mean variety, »species,” and as a »variety of something” is »something different”, the transition of meaning may easily be accounted for. — Mālav. III, p. 60 पूर्वस्मादवस्थान्तरमुपावृत्ता तत्रभवती (v. a. the lady has changed her former attitude to another), Panc. I, 132 शुभाशुभफलं सद्यो नृपाद् दैवाद्भवान्तरे (the fruit of good and evil deeds comes instantly, when from the king, but in some other existence, when from Destiny), ibid. p. 83 लघ्ननामपि दुर्जनानां मध्ये वस्तु न प्रकथते। उपायान्तरं विधाय ते नूनं वृन्ति (one cannot dwell among wicked people, for they will hurt you by some means or other). The proper meaning of °अन्तरम् is not rarely transparent, as in the example quoted first. Likewise Panc. 248 भर्तृन्निगमन्तिरेषामन्तः, Panc 205 युवयोर्मह्यन्तरे सप्यङ्गं शृणोमि (I do not hear distinctly, of what kind of things you speak).
10. °विधि. 10. Tatpurushas in °विधिः may denote, that the action spoken of is done »in due form.” Panc. I, 335 प्रधानविधिना.... संप्राप्यते फलम्, Daç. 80 तद्गारे श्युदारमभ्यवहारविधिं कृत्वा (in his house I gave a stylish dinner).

This list may be easily enlarged.

### FINAL OBSERVATIONS.

- 230.** Any Sanskrit compound belongs to one of the great classes mentioned before. Now, as not only the members of a compound but even their constituent elements may be compounds themselves, hence arises an almost unlimited freedom of enlarging compounds by taking up into them all sorts of nouns or adverbs serving to qualify the whole of the compound or part of it. In this way, very large and very intricate compounds are

Intricate  
compounds.

available, and in fact they often occur, albeit that the field of combinations and images is in some degree limited by conventional usage and by the examples of the best authors. For the rest the frequency and the nature of those intricate and bulky compounds will much depend on the style of the literary work. It requires, therefore, a good deal of training to catch forthwith the purport of many an intricate compound.

A few instances will suffice. Kādam. I, p. 15 the king, it is said, saw a lady कृषितर्क्षुताशनेन दक्षमानमदनधूममलिनोक्तामिव रतिम् who was like Rati, stained by the smoke of Kāma burning by the fire of angry Śiva," for when analyzing the complex, we get कृषितस्य तर्क्षुस्य दुताशनेन दक्षमानस्य मदनस्य यो धूमोऽधूमेन मलिनोक्ताम्, apparently a tatpurusha, the former member of which is also a tatpurusha the former member of which is also a tatp. and so on. Now a bahuvrīhi. In the same Kād. (p. 39) a forest अरण्यम् bears the epithet दशरथसुतनिजितशरनिकरनिपातनिहतशनोच्चरत्नचक्रुत्तुल्यरुधिरमिश्रमूलम् (where the roots [of the trees] had been moistened by the abundant blood of the army of the Rāxasas killed by the shots of the crowd of sharp arrows [discharged] by the son of Daśaratha), here मूलम् is the subj. of the bahuvrīhi, the preceding complex being its predicate, an intricate tatpurusha, as it is thus to be analyzed दशरथस्य सुतस्य निजितानां शराणां निकरस्य निपातैर्यन्निहतं रत्नोच्चराणां चक्रं तस्य बहुलेन रुधिरैः मिश्रम्. This whole clause is comprehended within one compound. And so often.

- 231. Case-nouns standing outside the compound** are very often to be construed with it or with one of its members. This is but consistent with the whole spirit, which pervades Sanskrit composition. A great liberty is left to the speaker to prefer either a rather synthetical or a rather analytical mode of expression. He has the opportunity of enlarging compounds by making enter within them any noun or adverb serving to qualify the

Case-nouns  
standing  
outside the  
compound,  
but to be  
construed  
with it.

whole or any part of it. But on the other hand nothing compels him to do so. The qualifying noun may as well be a self-existent word having its own noun-case.<sup>1)</sup> So Çak. V हिमवतो गिरिरूपत्यकारणवासिनः (dwelling in the forests on the slope of mount Himavân), here हिमवतो गिरिः stands outside the compound as to its form, but belongs to it by its meaning, as it qualifies the member उपत्यका. — Panc. 42 a weaver returns home to his wife, प्रमेव कर्णपर्या तस्याः श्रुतापवादः 'having heard evil report on her account;' when using a mere analytical expression, the author of the Pancatantra would have said तस्या अपवादं श्रुत्वा or श्रुते तस्या अपवादे etc., when a mere synthetical one श्रुततदपवादः, but he has here availed himself of a mixed idiom. — Mâlav. V, p. 140 रजरः पौत्रेण प्रत्याहूताश्वः (S., who had the horse brought back by his grand-son); Kumâras. I, 37 एतावता नन्वनुमेयशोभिः.... [अस्या] अङ्गम्, here एतावता qualifies अनुमेय the former member of the compound; Mahâv. I, p. 6 प्रकृत्या पुण्यलक्ष्मीको कावेत, here प्रकृत्या also is intimately connected with the compound. These few examples will suffice. as the idiom is met with on almost every page of Sanskrit

- 232.** By this equivalence, and to a certain extent also, promiscuousness of analytical and synthetical expression it is also explained that there must be some freedom in using the so called figure of ellipsis even in compounds. Nala 1, 13 the beauty of Damayanti is said to surpass that of all other women, even of time past, न.... तादृशपूवती कुचित्.... दृढपूवया श्रुता, here श्रुत is of course = श्रुतपूर्वा. By a similar abridgment Mâlav. V, p. 137 moon and sun are named शीतोष्णाकिरणौ 'the hot- and the cold-rayed'."

1) I wonder, what reasons may have induced WHITNEY (§ 1316) to speak of this idiom as something irregular. On the contrary, nothing can be more regular.

2) A striking example is afforded by R. 3, 20, 12, if I am right reading there राजसास्ते चतुर्दश उचुर्वचि सुसंक्रुडा ब्रह्मणाः शूलपापावः । मरुत्तनयना घोरा

## SECTION III.

## ON THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

## CHAPT. I. Substantive. Adjective. Adverb.

**233.** In ancient languages the difference between adjective and substantive is generally not so strongly marked as in modern ones. So especially in Sanskrit. Both classes of nouns have the same declension, and a great number of them have sometimes an adjectival meaning, sometimes they are substantives. They are only different as to their gender, substantives being nouns of one gender, but adjectives of three, as they must take the gender of the nouns they qualify <sup>1)</sup>: शुक्रो वर्णः, शुक्रा सुधा, शुक्रं वासः.

Adjectives proper, when used as substantives, may be distinguished thus: a) the substantivizing results from

रामं संस्कलोचनं। पृथा मधुराभावं दृष्टादृष्टपराक्रमम्; the Bomb. edition has दृष्टा-दृष्टप०. There is antithesis between the पृथा: [in full पृथाभावाः] Rāxasas and Rāma मधुराभावाः, and likewise between them दृष्ट[पराक्रमाः] and Rāma who was अदृष्टपराक्रमः. The *sandhir ārśhaḥ* दृष्टा[:] [अ]दृष्टपराक्रमम् is admitted in the Rāmāyana, see f. i. 2, 51, 8; 74, 13; 3, 64, 23.

1) By this way we may account for the fact, that Indian grammar, full as it is of accurate and minute observations and of acute and sharp distinctions, does not possess proper terms expressive of categories of words as common and as indispensable to Western grammar as »adjective" and »substantive." The *gunavaccana* of the vernacular grammarians encompasses more than our »adjective"; neither the *dravyāṇi* nor the *jātayas* are the exact equivalent of our »substantives". The term *vīcchana*, used by Pāṇini himself, comprises both the apposition and the attributive adjective. The only term adopted to point out the adjective as such is नाम त्रिलिङ्गम् »noun of three genders."

the ellipsis of the concordant subst., as शीताः [viz. आयः] „cold water,” पलिताः [viz. केशाः] „grey hairs;” b) they are substantives when having got some special meaning, as तनु adj. „thin,” subst. fem. „body;” हरि adj. „brown,” subst. masc. „lion; monkey; Indra; Vishnu;” c) they are used as substantives while retaining their general signification, as प्रियः when meaning „a or the beloved one,” पापः „a (the) wicked man.” The last category is the sole regarding us here, for any adjective may in this way turn substantive. The diversity of the endings for the different genders and numbers enables to express by one single word such phrases as „a rich man,” „a young woman,” „a business of weight,” resp. आद्यः, तरुणी, मकुत्. The plural of course, if a plurality of things is meant; hence तानि „that” when = those things, Lat. *ea*, भद्राणि Lat. *fausta*, वहुनि *mulla*, etc.

Like other substantives, the substantivized adjectives may be an element in compounds. Hit. 94 हीनसेवा न कर्तव्या कर्तव्यो महदाश्रयः (one must not serve a weak [master], but join a mighty one), ibid. 102 प्रत्नमेनातोतोपालम्भेन (enough of this chiding the past).

### ABSTRACT NOUNS.

**234.** Abstract nouns are much used in Sanskrit composition. They are partly derivatives of verbs, partly of nouns. The **verbal abstracts** are not rarely to be paraphrased in translating, especially if the predicate of the sentence be made up by them. Then, our language generally prefers finite verbs. R. 3, 2, 11 the man-eater says to Râma

Abstract  
nouns.

ऊयं तापसयोवा च वासः प्रमदया सह (and how is it, that you dwell with a woman, being ascets?), Daç. 101 अमुना मनोचनाय प्रपयः कृतो गग च रूस्थानिर्भेदाय (he took an oath, he would release me, and I, not to reveal the secret), *ibid.* 95 शीलं हि मदोन्मादयोर्मागेणाप्युचितकर्मखेव प्रवर्तनम्, *Mreçh.* I, p. 32 न पुष्पमोषमर्हत्युद्यानलता (the garden-creeper does not deserve to be stripped of its flowers), *Mudr.* V, p. 180 (Malaya-ketu to Râxasa) आर्य तातेन धृतपूर्वाणामाभरणविशेषाणां विशेषतश्चन्द्रमूक्तहस्तगतानां वणिग्भ्यः क्रयादधिगम इति न युज्यत इतत् (sir, it is inconsistent, that by purchase from merchants you should have come by precious jewels, once worn by my father, especially as they have passed into the hands of Candr.).

235. Of the **nominal abstracts** the most important are those in °ता, °त्वम् and °भावः, as they may be derived of any noun. Of मृदु (weak) the abstract „weakness” is not only मर्दित्वम् or मृदिमा (see P. 5, 1, 122), but also मृदुता, मृदुत्वम् and मृदुभावः. Nothing, too, impedes making them of compounds, as श्रेष्ठपत्न्यता or °त्वम् or °भावः „the being the child of a *set*” or चतुर्मुखत्वम् (°ता, °भावः) „the having four mouths”<sup>1)</sup>. Hence the abstracts in °ता and °त्वम् and their synonyms are a fit means for expressing clauses and the like in a concise form, especially when attended by a subjective genitive. So देवदत्तस्य श्रेष्ठपत्न्यत्वम् = „the fact of N.N.’s being a merchant’s son,” ब्रह्माणश्चतुर्मुखाता „the four-facedness of Brahma.”

Here are some examples of this widely used idiom: *Panc.* I, 222 कन्यापितृत्वं बलु नाम कष्टम् (it is a calamity to be father to a daughter);

1) The suffixes for making these abstracts are taught by Pāṇini 5, 1, 119—136. Those in °भाव are evidently tatpurushas, भाव meaning „the state, the being.” For this reason Pāṇini is right not mentioning them.



ibid. p. 71 दृढा न्यास्य पिङ्गलकस्य सारासाराता (I have scrutinized the good qualities of P. as well as his vices); Kumâras. I, 48: if animals felt shame, the female yaks, it is said, when seeing the beautiful hair of fair Umâ, would have abated their pride of their tails कुरुवलिप्रियत्वं प्रियत्वं चमयः; Daç. 36 प्रवहणस्य समतया सर्वेषु निमेषेषु (as all were drowned because of the ship's foundering); Panc. 73 त्वयास्य सखित्वात्सर्वोऽपि राजधर्मः परित्यक्तः (by having him as your friend you have neglected the whole of your royal duty); Çâk. II: king Dushyanta, as his presence is wanted at different places at the same time, says कृत्यागिनिदेष्टव्याद् दैशेभ्यवति मे मनः; Utt. II, p. 35 घन-त्रिरुलभावः "the density and the being scattered," that is "the relative density;" Comment. on R. 3, 42, 10 पञ्चननगर्योर्राजधानीराजधानीत्वेन भेदः (the difference between the words *pattana* and *nagara* is this that the former does not signify the king's residence, the latter does). The last example shows also the fitness of this idiom for the sake of explaining and demonstrating. By grasping the different links of a sentence into one single word, scientific or philosophical matters may be treated in the very clearest and plainest manner, complex ideas being rendered by complexes of words, whereas the relation of the abstract noun with the other words of the sentence is sufficiently pointed out by its case-ending.

**236.** Some idiomatic employment of the abstracts — chiefly those in *ता* and *वम्* — must be insisted upon.

Idiomatic employment of them.  
I Verbs of going and reaching with the accus. of an abstract noun.

I. Their **accusative** with verbs of going and coming is often used to express the passing from one state to another, cp. **39**. Hitop. 94 महानव्यक्ततां गानि (even a mighty one may become mean), Prabodh. IV, p. 78 quotes the verse प्रायशः कृतिनां कार्ये देवा गान्ति सहायताम् (— become helpers), Var. Brh. 2, 17 दैवज्ञत्वं प्रपद्यते (he becomes an astrologer), Panc. 38 तदेनं मायावचनैर्विश्राम्यादं द्वात्रतां व्रजामि (— I will become his disciple), ibid. 62 सतः] जीर्णं जीर्णं गम्यति (the lake will soon grow dry), Bhoj. 28 तल्लदो बल्लभतामेति सर्वलोकाय.

**237.** II. Their **instrumental**, may signify *in what quality* somebody or something acts (**67**). Then it may be

11. The instrumental of an abstract noun expressive of *in what quality*; "as."

rendered by means of "as." So Hitop. 103 कश्चिद्वकी द्वितीयत्वेन प्रयातु (let some other heron go with him as [his] second); Ratn. IV, p. 114 अयि प्रिये किमग्रापि मध्यस्थतया वर्तसे (why, my dear, do you behave as if you were indifferent even now?).

This idiom is much used with verbs of *acting*-, *behaving*-, *being as*; *knowing*-, *considering as*, *taking for*; *calling*-, *signifying as*; *treating as* and many others. Instead of the phrase ब्राह्मणं त्वं जानामि संभावयामि व्यवदिशामि one may say ब्राह्मणत्वेन त्वं जानामि etc.

Examples: Kathās. 26, 8 कर्णधारतया स्थित. (being steersman); Prabodh. IV, p. 81 तस्य कामः प्रथमो वीरस्तस्य प्रतिवीरतयास्माभिर्भ्रातॄन्व निरूपितः (Kāma is his chief warrior, it is you we have looked for as his match); Daṣ. 76 ऋषिमुक्तश्च रागः संश्रयात्वेनास्फुरन् (and the glow [of passion], which had been loosened from the holy man, [now] shone as twilight); Ragh. 14, 40 दृष्ट्वा हि भूमेः प्राणिनां मलत्वेनापिता शुद्धिमतः प्रतापिः (on spotless moon people have thrown earth's shade by way of a spot); Daṣ. 112 मां तु न कश्चिदित्य ईदृक्त्वा जनां जानामि (nobody here knows me as such); ibid. 93 त्वया नियतमस्मि तदानन्तिव्हेनाहमपदेष्टुः (you cannot but denounce me as the person, you have got it from); ibid. 144 इयं... तवैव ज्ञायात्वेन समकल्प्यत (she has been destined a wife for you); ibid. 94 स एव तपस्वी तस्करत्वेनार्यपतिरग्राह्यत (it was the unhappy Arth. who was seized as the thief); Pat. I, p. 399 when treating of the karmadhāraya कृष्णतिलाः, says तिलाः प्राधान्येन चिबज्जिता भवन्ति कृष्णा विप्रोषणात्वेन; Kathās. 52, 60 दासीत्वेनाश्रयसि राजपुत्रम्; Mhbh. 1, 43, 24 गच्छध्वं द्यूयमव्याया राजानं कार्यवज्रया. <sup>1</sup>).

1) The germ of this much used idiom is found already in the Rgveda-mantras, in such phrases as पुरुषता (instr. = skrt पुरुषतया). Rgv. 10, 15, 6 मा हिंसिद् वितर्ः केन चिन्नो वद्भ्रातः पुरुषता कर्तम (do us no injury, fathers, on account of any offence, that we, after the manner of men [as being men], may have committed against you).

Rem. In the instances quoted the abstracts are ending in °तया and °त्वेन. But although these suffixes are the most employed ones, any other abstract has the same effect. Daç. 15 तदीयमिकयोर्मन्त्रार्थ-  
त्रोगात्रेण पत्रिकल्पितादम् (I was appointed nurse of the twins, his children); Kâç. I, p. 16 स्वमिति ज्ञातिधनयोः संज्ञात्रयेण वर्तते (*sva* is used as a designation of kinsmen and property); Pat. I, p. 230 उमानो-  
न्दिगाणि कदाचित्स्वातन्त्र्येण त्रिवर्जितानि भवन्ति तथया। इदं मेऽस्ति सुदु पश्यति।  
कदाचित्स्वातन्त्र्येण। अनेनात्तया सुदु पश्यामि. For this reason, different ab-  
stracts made from one noun are as a rule promiscuous; compare f. i Kathâs. 13, 132 प्रयाति स्म दूतया with Hit. 97 प्रयातु दौत्येन, both  
दूतया and दौत्येन signifying in the quality of a messenger."

**238.** Occasionally — but not often — an ablative will do the same  
Other  
similar  
idioms: duty as the instrumental of 237. R. 3, 6, 10 त्वामावाय महत्मानम्....  
श्रयित्वान्नाय व्रत्तवामः (— we will address you, Lord, as supplicants),  
cp. Kathâs. 72, 165.

Loca-  
tive. The locative of the abstracts may also be used so, as R. 3, 36, 17 गृणु तत्कर्म साहाय्ये यत्कार्यं व्रत्तनान्मम (be informed of the matter, which you must perform as *my helper* on my order). It is especially used with verbs of *appointing, choosing, designing* to some rank or dignity. Panc. 26 स्वामी यदि कथयति ततो भृत्यन्त्रे नियोजयामि (— I will make [him] your attendant); Nala 3, 23 नेवामन्यतमं देवं पतित्वे वर्यस्व ह (choose one of those devas for your husband); Hit. 91 च पत्तिराज्ये ऽभिषिक्तः.

Note that of abstracts of the feminine gender the ablative and locative are not used so, only the instrumental (cp. 102).

**239.** The dative of the abstracts with verbs of appointing etc. will  
Dative: occasionally occur. Mhbh. 1, 139, 1 योवराज्याय स्यापितो धृतराष्ट्रेण युधिष्ठिरः;  
Kathâs. 38, 153 वृत्तवान्मित्रत्वाय नृपो नृपम्.

Rem. In the ancient liturgical books we met with two datives, one of the person and one of the abstract noun, both attending on the same verb, especially स्या and कल्प्. Ait. Br. 4, 25, 8 इन्द्राय वै देवा श्रेष्ठाय श्रेष्ठाय नातिदन्त (the devas did not yield to Indra as to the eldest and most excellent [of them]). सो ऽब्रवीद् बृहस्पतिं यात्रय मा द्वादप्राहेनेति। तमयात्रयत्। ततो वै तस्मै देवा श्रेष्ठाय श्रेष्ठयायातिदन्त etc., cp. T. S. 2, 2, 11, 5. Ait. Br. 7, 17, 7 Viçvâmitra thus ad-

dresses his sons शृणोतन..... ये के च भ्रातृः स्यन् । अग्रे दौष्ट्याय कल्पध्वम् (— attend on him [Çunahçepha] as your eldest), cp. 7, 18, 8. Note the attraction in this idiom. — Cp. a similar employment of the locative: Ait. Br. 4, 25, 9 समस्मिन्त्वा श्रेष्ठतायां ज्ञानते »his kin acknowledge his authority.”

### ADVERBS.

240. Sanskrit adverbs, as far as they are not old words of uncertain and forgotten origin — as गुरुः, द्राक्, मृग, मत्तु, अलम् and the like — are noun-cases either distinctly felt as such or in some degree petrified. The accusative of the neuter singular is as a rule employed, if adjectives be wanted to act as adverbs <sup>1)</sup> (55).

Bahuvrihis, like other adjectives, may do duty of adverbs, when put in the accus. of the neuter. Daç. 169 अमुं च..... आन्-निर्विशेषं पुषे (and he took no less care for him as for himself); Panc. 55 इति वदत्यां मातरि राजपुत्री भयलज्जानताननं प्रोवाच (as her mother spoke thus, the princess lowered her head for fear and shame and said); Çâk. I प्रोवाभङ्गाभिरामं मुदुनुपतति स्यन्दने दृचदृदि: ([the stag] runs on casting now and then a look on the chariot so as to cause to turn its neck ever so neatly); Âçv. Grhy. 1, 9, 1 पाणिग्रहणादि मूलं परिचरेत् here the first word is an adverb »from his marriage, beginning with his marriage.”

When derived from substantives, the adverbs are mostly modal instrumentals and ablatives (77, 104). Daç. 136 स्मरन्ति किमद्याप्यायथातथ्येन मयोक्तृर्दम्, here आद्यथातथ्येन = »falsely;” R. 3, 61, 20 निखिलेन »wholly”. Likewise पयसिण »alternately,” लीलया »jokingly,” etc., and ablatives, as हठात्, स्वभावात्.

241. For the sake of comparison one uses adverbs in वत्. They may be made of any noun, and are to be rendered in वत्.

1) Adverbs are styled क्रियाविशेषणानि »attributes of verbs.” The acc. neuter of an adjective, when used adverbially, is named कर्म क्रियाविशेषणम्, see f. i. Kâç. on P. 2, 3, 33.

by „as” or „like.” When paraphrased, they are = यथा or इव with any noun-case wanted by the context, therefore सिद्धवत् may be = सिद्ध इव or सिद्धमिव or सिद्धायेव and so on. — R. 3, 45, 5 सौमित्रे मित्ररूपेण भ्रातृस्त्वमसि प्रवृत्तः [= प्रवृत्तिः] (in the shape of a friend, Laxmana, you are like a foe to your brother); Mhbh. 1, 148, 15 शुचोन्पाण्डुदायादान्दद्यामास प्रवृत्तः [= यथा प्रवृत्तः] (the innocent Pândavas he did burn as if they were his enemies); Kâm. 3, 31 पूज्यते देवताः सदा । देवतावदुत्तममात्मवच्च सुदृढमन्त्रम् [= देवता इव and आत्मानमिव]; Mhbh. 1, 159, 4 तद्वच्च पूज्यमग्रा [= पूज्येनेव] (pass over by me as if by a vessel); Hit. 10 मातृवत्परदारिण्ये पार्द्वेषु लोष्टवत् आत्मवत्सर्वभूतेषु यः पश्यति स पण्डितः (he who looks on the wife of another as on his mother, on the goods of another as on clay, on all creatures as on himself, such one is a wise man).

Rem. 1. Compare with them Latin adverbs as *regaliter*, when meaning «kingly, like a king.” Mhbh. 1, 145, 1 पाण्डवाः..... भीष्मस्य पादौ ऋगुद्वारिवत् (*suppliciter*).

Rem. 2. Like other compounds, the adverbs in °वत् may have their former member standing in construction with some other word outside the compound. Panc. I, 260 अग्निमुखां नाशं याति वृद्धौ पतङ्गवत् = यथा वृद्धौ पतङ्गे याति.

- 242.** Adverbs in °तः involve the dissolution of a whole into many parts. Mâlat. VIII, p. 135 लवणं दूरां निकृत्य दुःखमरणां करामि (I will cut her into pieces and cause her to die a miserable death).

As to those in °तः see 302 R.

- 243.** Sometimes — but not so often as in Latin and Greek — Adjectives doing duty of adverbs. adjectives are used, where one might expect adverbs. Of the kind are f. i. विवशः — Lat. *invitus*, केवल (mere). Kathâs 28, 70 रम्या विवशा सा तिरोदधे (R. disappeared against her will); Kathâs. 29, 120 यन् मुक्तमुगिस्तत्र कारणं केवलं विधिः (that she did not die, the cause thereof was nothing but Destiny, Germ. *nur das Schicksal*). Likewise others, which in fact serve to qualify the verb, though they do formally agree with some substantive (31, V). R. 3, 60, 25 मम विवशः कथयस्व (tell it me confidentially), M. 3, 101 तृपानि भूमिरुदकं

वाक् चतुर्थो च मृता (grass, earth, water, and fourthly, friendly speech). Compare these more instances, taken from the ancient language: Ait. Br. 1, 7, 13 उत्तमामदितिं यत्नति (finally he worships Aditi). Ch. Up. 6, 6 स ऊर्ध्वः समुदीयति (it rises upwards), Âçv. Grhy. 1, 11, 5 उद्वं नयन्ति (they lead [the victim] to the north).

### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

**244.** Of two persons or things, possessing the same quality, the **comparative** is to point out that which is endowed with the *higher degree* of it: साधुतरस्तयोः (the better of these two), वचो मधुनः स्वादीयः (words, sweeter than honey). Even if the person or thing compared with, be implied, not expressed<sup>1</sup>, the comparative may be used. We then translate it by „tolerably, rather<sup>1</sup>).” Daç. 159 ततोऽल्पयोगा कालेन रात्रः प्रियमद्विषो पुत्रममृत (not very long hereafter —), Prabodh. II, p. 30 नया स्वमृदिषो प्रियस्वपि प्रोद्विक्ता (I have abandoned my wife, though I loved her very much), Panc. 35 तच्छ्रुत्वा पिङ्गलकः सादृतरं तमुवाच (after hearing this, P. addressed him in a rather respectful manner). — Occasionally the comparative may even express „too.” Mhbh. I (Paushyaparva) Upamanyu, when asked by his master why he looks fat though every opportunity of getting food has been intercepted to him, answers he has drunk the foam, given back by the calves after having drunk the milk of their mothers. But even that livelihood displeases his spiritual teacher, for एते त्वदनुकम्पया गुणवन्तो वत्साः प्रभृततरं केनमुदिरन्ति। तदेवमपि वत्सानां वृक्ष्युपरोधं करोषि (these virtuous calves give back *too much* foam, for pity on you, for this reason you prevent also their being fed).

**245.** The **superlative** expresses not only the „highest” but also a „very high” degree, just as in Latin and Greek. पापिष्ठ may be sometimes = *very bad*, sometimes = *the worst*. When denoting the highest degree, there is ge-

1) Cp. *Vâmana's Stilregeln* by CAPPELLER, ch. Çabdaçuddhi, s. 62.

nerally some word added, as सर्वेषाम्, लोके etc. Mhbh 1, 143, 3 अयं समाजः सुमहान्नमणीयतमो भुवि (this great assembly is the most pleasing on earth). But for the rest it signifies excellency among three or more, the comparative being destined for denoting it between two. Of two brothers one is the ज्ययान्, the other कनीयान्; of more one the ज्येष्ठः, another the कनिष्ठः.

**246.** Yet carelessness in the employment of comparative and superlative is not rare in Sanskrit. <sup>1)</sup> Sometimes the comparative is used instead of the superlative. Pat. I, p. 77 गया तर्हि ब्रह्म पुत्रेयेतदुपपन्नं भवत्ययं मे ज्येष्ठः पुत्रो अयं मे मध्यमो अयं मे कनीयानिति — instead of कनिष्ठः. Panc. I, 408 it is said that of the shâdgunya the danḍa is the worst expedient, here we find वापीयान्, not वापिष्ठः, ibid. p. 305 among four individuals one is said the ज्येष्ठतरः <sup>2)</sup>.

Sometimes again the superlative is used instead of the comparative. Kathās. 43, 23 of two brothers one calls himself कनिष्ठः, and his brother ज्येष्ठः. Panc. 113 स्वायमात्ययोरेकतमस्य त्रिनिपातः (a mischief of either king or minister). Cp. ibid. V, 36 त्रियाया बुद्धिर्दृष्टमा (judgment is better than learning), here the superl. is of necessity, as the comp. उत्तर does not purport the meaning of excellency. For a different reason प्रथम a superl. as to its form, is the equivalent of both »first” and »former.” So f. i. Mālav. II, p. 35 अत्रात्रतोराचार्ययोः कतरस्य प्रथमं प्रयोगं दृक्ष्यामः (of whom of those two honourable professors shall we see the performance the first?).

**247.** The suffixes 'तर and 'तम may be put even to substantives. Instances are scarce in the classic language <sup>3)</sup>. Panc. 326 एव सत्रनि-

1) Further investigation will decide for how much of that seeming irregularity we are indebted to the faults and the sloth of copyists, and how much of it is really good Sanskrit.

2) As to the form cp. R. 2, 12, 26 भूयस्तरम् and WHITNEY *Sanskrit Grammar* § 473, al. 4.

3) They are somewhat more frequent in the ancient dialect, see WHITNEY § 473, al. 1. Classic Sanskrit possesses some, which have a special meaning, as अश्वतरः (mule), वत्सतरः (Ragh. 3, 32) »an older calf.”

प्रानवलोक्य तं राक्षसमश्रुतम् विज्ञायाधिरुः (and he [the horse-thief] examined all the horses, saw that the rākṣasa [who had assumed the figure of a horse] was the best of them [liter. "the most horse"] and mounted him).

**248.** The comparative and superlative being wanted to do duty of adverbs, they are put in the accus. of the neuter, just as is done with all other adjectives (55). So

भूयः is adverb of भूयान्, प्रथमम् of प्रथमः, etc. Pat. I, p. 10 ननु ये कृत्यतास्ते सार्थयः शब्दान्प्रयोक्त्यन्ते (will they, who have studied [grammar], apply words the better?); Çāk. IV भूयिष्ठं भव दक्षिणा परित्ने.

**249.** Degrees of comparison may be made from undeclinable words; then they end in °तराम् and °तमाम् as उच्चै-स्तराम् (higher). Mālav. II, p. 36 अतितरं कान्तम् (exceedingly charming), cp. P. 1, 2, 35

तम्यतितर- Such comparison is made also of forms, belonging to the P. 5, 3, 56, ताम् and finite verb. Instances of comparatives, made from the 3<sup>d</sup> like. person of the present not rarely occur in literature. R. 2, 64, 72 हृदयं सीदतेतराम् (my spirits almost lower). Prabodh. IV, p. 87 विनाशो तत्त्वस्य व्ययतितरं न त्वनुदयः (to lose something gained before grieves more than having gained nothing at all). Vikram. V, p. 178 प्रव-तितरं.... भुवङ्गिणोर्वियम् (even of an infant-snake the poison is rather strong). Ratn. III, p. 74 रम्यतितराम्. — Kathās. 102, 35 we meet °तराम् put to a 3<sup>d</sup> person of the perfect: अदूदधेताराम्.

Instances of the superlative I do not recollect having met with, but they must be or have been not less allowed, as both degrees are equally taught by Pāṇini.<sup>1)</sup>

**250.** Than with the comparative is expressed by the ablative, see 105. But the particles न, नच, नतु, नपुनः are also used for that purpose, especially with वरम्.

has with  
the compa-  
rative.

1) WHITNEY § 473, al. 3 says that both compar. and superl. of verbal forms are "barbarous forms;" for what reason, I do not understand. Is it perhaps, because KALIDĀSA wrote barbarous Sanskrit, or because PĀṆINI did not know well the idioms of his language?



Kathās. 29, 113 मृत्युर्मम श्रेयान्न पुनः शीलविप्लवः (death is better for me than parting with my virtue); Panc. 213 वरमनारम्भो न चारम्भविघातः (not beginning at all is better than ceasing after having commenced); ibid. I, 451 पण्डितोऽपि वरं शत्रुर्न मूर्खो हितकारकः (a wise foe is even preferable to a foolish friend').

**251.** A high degree may be expressed also by several other idiomatic phrases, as:

Concurrent idioms, expressive of a high degree.

1. by °कल्प<sup>2</sup>), °दृश्य, °श्रेय, °प्राय, see 229, 5<sup>th</sup> inasmuch as they are a concurrent idiom of the comparative in one of its meanings:

2. by putting बहु<sup>°</sup> or परम<sup>°</sup> before. Panc. I, 191 ज्ञानाववादे ज्ञानि बहुचित्रे (slander being rather manifold in the world); R. 3, 53, 1 ज्ञान-कात्मता दुःखिता परमोद्दिग्ना; Mālav. I, p. 10 some female is said to be परमनिपुणा मेधाविनी च. Properly बहु<sup>°</sup> means »tolerably, nearly" see P. 5, 3, 68, परम<sup>°</sup> »exceedingly."

3. by such phrases as प्रियाप्रियतरम् (liter. »dearer than dear" = the very dearest), सुखानुखतरम्; Mahāv. I, p. 21 प्रियाप्रियतरं नः (we are exceedingly rejoiced at it); Panc. 326 त्रेगादेगतं गच्छति (247).

4. by putting the word twice, see 252.

5. by adding °व्य, see 229, 6<sup>th</sup>.

**252.** For different reasons a word may be put twice, either when put two times as a separate word, as शनैः शनैः, or when making up some kind of compound, as पटुपटुः<sup>3</sup>).

Putting a word twice.

1) In a well-known passage of the Hitop. (p. I, 3) वरम् is construed with न च but not followed by a nomin., as one might expect, but by the instrumental:

वरमेको गुणो पुत्रो न च मूर्खशतैरपि  
एकशतद्विंशत्यै हन्ति न च तारागणैरपि.

The instrum. must be that, which expresses: equivalent to; exchangeable for. »Better is one virtuous son, and [»not to be given up for," that is] outweighing even hundreds of stupid ones; one moon dispels the darkness, outweighing even crowds of stars." Cp. 70.

2) पचतिकल्पम् and the like are among the examples of the common-taries on P. 5, 3, 67. Cp. 249.

3) Pāṇini deals with this idiom at the commencement of his eighth

1. Adjectives may be put twice, the two making but one word, in order to signify our „—like,” „rather.” Daç. 149 क्षामक्षामापि देवतानुभावादनतिक्षीणवर्णाविकाशा सीमन्तिनी (a woman, who though [of a] rather thin [aspect] had by divine power not too much lost of the brightness of her colour), R. 3, 67, 14 तं दोन-दोनया वाचा..... अभ्यभाषत, Panc. II, 50 भीतभीतः पुरा प्रवृत्तमन्दं मन्दं विरपति (in the beginning a foe sneaks along very slowly, as one being rather afraid). So एकैक, when = „alone,” and cp. such phrases, as पूर्वपूर्वं पुष्प्यन्ते, प्रयमंप्रयमं पच्यन्ते (they blossom-, they ripen the very first) ¹). Instances of adverbs put twice are not rare, as क्रमेः क्रमैः (slowly, by degrees), मुहुर्मुहुः (repeatedly), पुनःपुनः (again and again), etc. Daç. 172 शालीन् .... मृदु मृदु वर्षयन्ती.

2. In the same way substantives, gerunds, participles when put twice, may indicate the non-interruption of some time or action. R. 3, 10, 5 कालकालेषु (in uninterrupted time), Málav. IV, p. 105 पयि नयनयोः स्थित्वा स्थित्वा तित्तिभवति क्षमात्, P. 8, 1, (at the very moment she is standing on the path of my looks, P. 8, 1,

adhyāya (8, 1, 1—15). In interpreting sūtra 9, the commentaries are wrong accepting it as teaching the formation of the word एकैक. The sūtra एकं बह्व्रीहिवत् cannot have this purport; its literal sense is „if a unity, [it is] bahuvrīhilike.” If Pāṇini had meant the word एकैक, he would have written एकस्य, not as he does एकम्; cp. the constant genitives in sūtras 5—8. Our sūtra refers to the cases, mentioned by s. 4—8. There the employment is taught of the „two (द्वे)” spoken of in 8, 1, 1. Sūtra 9 teaches, how these two are to be accepted, for it says: „[but these two may be] one; then the whole is as if a bahuvrīhi”, likewise in the case of s. 10. But from s. 11 the unity is as if a karmadhāraya. Pāṇini's words in 9—11 are: एकं बह्व्रीहिवत्. आत्राथे च। कर्मधार्यबहुव्रीहौ. From the conclusion of Kāç. on P.'s sūtra 9 I infer that the right interpretation had been proposed by somebody, but that it has been objected to by Patanjali. On the other hand, such forms with distributive sense as पूर्वपूर्वः being by necessity instances of the idiom, taught P. 8, 1, 4 afford some evidence for my own acceptance

1) See vārtt. 7 on P. 8, 1, 12 in the commentary of the Kāçikā. Cp. also P. 8, 1, 13, which teaches to say सुखसुखेन and प्रियप्रियेण, when = „with all one's heart.”

she suddenly disappears), Daç. 95 अहं रागमञ्जरीः..... सानुनयं पायितायाः पुनः पुनः प्रणयसमर्पितमुखमधुगण्डूषमास्वादमास्वादं मदेनास्पृश्ये.

3. Moreover, putting a word twice is also often a <sup>P. 8, 1.</sup><sub>4</sub> proper means for signifying a distributive sense (*vipsā*). Instances of this idiom are frequent. Kāç. on P. 8. 1, 4 पुरुषः पुरुषः निधनमुपैति (every man is mortal), Panc. 42 पदेपदे प्रस्वलन् (stumbling at every footstep), Daç. 99 अहरहश्च नवनवानि प्राभूतान्युपहरन्ती (offering [her] always new presents day after day), ibid. 216 षण्मासे षण्मासे पिच्छमेकैकं परित्यजन्ति (every sixth month they lose one single feather); R. 2, 91, 53 अद्येकमेकं पुरुषं प्रमदाः सप्त चाट च समापेतुः (singulos viros septenae vel octonae mulieres appetierunt), Âpast. Dh. 1, 13, 18 संवत्सरे संवत्सरे द्वौ द्वौ गावो समाहित आचार्यकुले वसेत्, M. 2, 20 स्वं स्वं चरित्रं जित्तेरन् (they must learn every one his own duty). So दिशि दिशि (in every region), अहरहः (day after day) and so on. This idiom is as old as the Vaidik dialect. It is also used of gerunds. Pat. I, p. 44 मण्डूका उत्पत्योत्पत्य गच्छन्ति.

Here as a rule the case-endings of the former member remain.

**253.** Sanskrit likes juxtaposition of different grammatical forms of the same word or of kindred words. Hence the type *manus manum lavat* is of course very common in Sanskrit. Mreeh. I, p. 34 रत्नं रत्नेन संगच्छते (pearls string with pearls), Vikram. II, p. 31 तप्तेन तप्तमयया घटनाय योग्यम्; Pat. I, p. 233 व्रतां व्रासश्चादयति (one cloth covers the other), Panc. 322 वनाद्धनं पर्यटति (he rambles from forest to forest), ibid. 267 पदात्पदमपि प्रचलितुं न शक्नोति, Daç. 61 करिषाः करिषामवपृत्य (jumping from one elephant's back on another).

**254.** Of a somewhat different nature is the type represented by R. 2, 12, 8 किं कृतं तत्र रामेण पापे पापम् (what evil has Rāma done to you, evil-minded woman?); cp. the Greek *κακὸς κακῶς ἀπόλοιτο*. Here the inclination towards homophony is still more pronounced than in the idiom of 253. Compare Mhbh. 1, 145, 14 तांसायात्राद्दिनः पौरान्दुःखितान्दुःखकर्जितः । उवाच (tristes tristis ost allocutus cives); Kathās. 38, 153 नृसिंहः.... तं.... वृत्तान्मित्रत्वाय नृपो नृपम्.

It is here not the place to expatiate upon this predilection of

Sanskrit for bringing together words kindred in sound and playing with the different meanings inherent to them. Nearly all literary documents from the Vedas to our days afford the most ample evidence of it. For this reason, one must always be prepared to have to deal with riddles and the most various kinds of quibbles and puns. More information on this subject is to be given by works on Sanskrit rhetoric and Sanskrit literature.

**255.** It may be of some use to mention here the figure *yathâsam-*  
 Putting the words *yathâsam-*  
*khyam* *khyam* 1), as it is employed not rarely and as its nature should be called rather grammatical than rhetorical. By it a series of substances named together with a series of attributes or predicates are so to be understood that the first substance is to be construed with the first predicate or attribute, the second with the second and so on successively. R. 3, 40, 12 अग्नेर्दिन्दुस्य सोमस्य यमस्य ब्रह्मस्य च। ओष्णं तथा विक्रमं च सोम्यं दण्डं प्रसन्नताम्। धारयन्ति महात्मानां रत्नानः (the kings possess the qualities of the five devas, Agni etc., viz. the glow [*aushtnya*] of Agni, the strength [*vikrama*] of Indra, etc.), Âpast. Dh. 1, 5, 8 यत्किं च मनसा वाचा चक्षुषा वा संकल्पयन्ध्यायत्याहामि विप्रश्यति वा = यत्किं च मनसा संकल्पयन्ध्यायति वाचा वा सं° आह चक्षुषा वा सं° अभिविप्रश्यति (whatsoever he, desirous to accomplish it, thinks in his mind or pronounces in words or looks upon with his eye).

## CHAPT. II. Pronouns.

### 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS AND THEIR POSSESSIVES.

**256.** The personal pronouns are less used, than in English  
 Personal pronouns. and many other modern tongues, as they are often not expressed, especially when implied by the personal endings of the verb (10). Nor are their oblique cases always wanted in Sanskrit, when indispensable in English. So in this sentence Hit. 24 तत्तां दिनेषु गच्छन्तु पत्तिज्ञात्रकानां कालद-  
 मानेन प्रत्यहं वादति, the word पत्तिज्ञात्रकान् is at the same time object of आक्रम्य, of आनोय, of वादति; it is of course put once, but

1) I borrow that designation from P. 1, 3, 10, which s. may be compared.

the pronouns referring to it are omitted as being easily supplied by the mind, whereas the English translator is bound to say »she [the cat] reached the young birds, took *them* to her hole and devoured *them*." Cp. *ibid.* 96 भावन्ते चन्द्रमसं प्रणम्य प्रसाद्य च [sc. एनम्] गच्छ, Mhbh. 1, 154, 30 निवृत्त्येनं ब्रह्मादूमां पशुमारुममादयत्, where the pronoun एनम् though being construed with two verbs is put but once, Daç. 152 अहं च तत्र संनिहितः किञ्चिदस्मेभि<sup>1)</sup> संनिधिनियमपास्तु मे वृद्धविरः कोऽपि ब्राह्मणः शनकैः स्मितहेतुमपृच्छत्, sc. माम्, as is plain by the foregoing अहम् and मे.

Likewise the possessive pronouns may be omitted, if there can be no doubt as to the possessor, especially of course when referring to the subject. Hit. 7 तस्य त्रिणुगर्मणः पुत्रान् [sc. स्वान्] समर्पितवान्<sup>2)</sup>.

**257.** 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person. — The short forms of the acc., gen., dat.<sup>3)</sup> are enclitic, and used therefore if there is no stress to be laid on the pronoun. It is useless to give examples of them, as they are met with on almost every page. The acc. मा and त्वा are however not so frequent as the other enclitic forms<sup>4)</sup>.

1) By a common error the printed text has असौमि.

2) So was already taught by Patanjali (I, p. 62) मातरि वर्तितव्यं पितरि शुश्रूषितव्यमिति । न चोच्यते स्वस्यां मातरि स्वस्मिन्वा पितरोति संवन्धाच्चैतदस्यते वा यस्य माता यश्च यस्य पिता.

3) Epic poetry affords sundry instances pointing to the fact, that the short forms of the gen. and dat. were once, it seems, available for all oblique cases. At least, R. 3, 43, 49 ते is doubtless = त्वया, and Mhbh. 1, 230, 15 नः = अस्मासु. The former passage runs thus अप्रमत्तेन ते भावमाश्रमस्थेन (you must keep watchful in the hermitage), the latter मा त्वं..... तेहं कार्योः मुनेषु नः Cp. *Vāmana's Stutregeln* ch. ('*abdaçulldhi*', s. 11.

4) As मा and मां, त्वा and त्वां are easily exposed to be confounded in manuscripts, it is possible that the enclitical forms have sometimes disappeared in our texts, if the following word commenced by a consonant. At all events, they seem to occur oftener in the ancient dialect than afterwards.

They are of necessity unavailable, if some emphasis of the pronoun be wanted. For this reason they are forbidden: a) when heading a sentence, or in poetry even a pāda, b) when immediately after a vocative, which heads the sentence, c) when followed by some particles, that give them some emphasis, viz. च, वा, इ, अतः, एव. See P. 8, 1, 18; 20; 24; 72. Mhbh. 1, 229, 24 त्वानेकनाहुः ऋतव्यव्यानाहुर्विचित्रं पुनः [here त्वा would not be allowed]; Kāc. on 8, 1, 18 त्वदा विचित्रव्यरो देवो युष्माकं कुलदेवता [त्रः instead of युष्माकन् cannot be, as it heads the pāda]; Hit. 110 दाताहमन्निगमन्वात्मर्द्धं मा कृयाः [नन not मे, according to b)]; R. 3, 55, 22 अस्त्र नीति मामेव (— none but me); Mālav. I, p. 21 अत्रभवतः किल मम च [not: मे च] मन्दपञ्चलयोगादिचान्तरम्.

Rem. According to P. 8, 1, 25 they are also forbidden with verbs of seeing, when used in a metaphorical sense.

**258.** The plural of the first person may refer either to a plurality of speakers at the same time or in most cases to *we* = *I* + *others with myself*. Similarly the plural of the 2<sup>d</sup> person may be used, even when addressing one, for the sake of signifying *you and others with you*. Panc. 258 the monkey, being invited by the makara to go with him, declines, for says he अग्रे वनचरा युष्मदोगे च व्रज्वाते गृहम् (we monkeys are living in the forest, and your abode is in the water). Mhbh. 1, 152, 26 Hidimbā says to the single Bhīmasena अहं प्रेषिता भ्रात्रा..... त्रिभक्तयिषता मांसं युष्माकम् »I have been sent hither by my brother, who is eager to devour the flesh of all of you [viz. of your mother, your brothers and yours]."

**259.** The pronoun of the 2<sup>d</sup> person is used without respect to social relations; the singular त्वम् is applied to superiors as well as to equals and to inferiors. The only case of वयम् denoting a single individual is mentioned before (24).

Yet, when addressing in a polite manner, one avails one's self of भवान्, f. भवती, plur. भवन्तः, f. भवत्यः — being a popular reduction both in form and meaning of

भगवान् „Lord” Like Spanish *Usted*, Italian *Elle*, भवान्, though being exponent of the second person, does agree with the 3<sup>d</sup> person of the verb, therefore किं करोति भवान्(भवती), when addressing one, किं कुर्वन्ति भवन्तः (भवत्यः), when addressing more <sup>1</sup>).

Rem. Both modes of expressing the 2<sup>d</sup> person, either by the pronoun त्वम् or by the title भवान् may be used promiscuously. It is very common to see them used alternately. Panc. 73 Damanaka says to the lion संतीव्रकः गल्पमांती भवान्मांसादस्तत्र प्रकृत्यश्च ([the bull] Sanj. is an herbivorous animal, but you [भवान्] and your [तव] subjects feed on flesh); Kathās. 30, 17 गान्धर्वत्रिधिना भार्या कुर्याद्व्रतनिगमं दृष्ट्वा... असी तव... सेत्स्यति (make her your wife by the Gāndharva-rite, in this way she will become yours). In the first book of the Hitopadeśa (p. 35 of B. K. Vidyāratna's ed.) the sly cat thus addresses the blind vulture युष्मान्धर्मज्ञानरतान्विश्रामभूमय इति पक्षिणः सर्वे सवदा ममाग्रे प्रस्तुवन्ति। अतो भवद्भ्यां त्रिधावयोनृदेः यो धर्म आत्मसिद्धमतः [अहम्], as to the plural युष्मान्, भवद्भ्यः see 24.

260. By pointing out भवान् as the proper term for addressing in a polite manner, it is by no means said it is the sole. Many other titles, such as signify *sir*, *lord*, *reverend*, *master* are used according to duty, custom, dignity, age. So holy men are duly addressed by भगवान्, f. भवती, kings by देवः, respectable merchants and the like by शर्मा, matrons by आर्य, the wife duly addresses her husband by आर्यपुत्रः, the charioteer his prince by आयुष्मान् etc. As a rule a greater respect is shown by such titles than by using the general term भवान् (vocat. भोः). Another difference is this: they may as well denote the 3<sup>d</sup> person as the 2<sup>d</sup>, whereas भवान् is only fit for denoting the 2<sup>d</sup> person.

Moreover there are some general terms, made up of भवान् pre-

1) Instances of भवान् construed with the 2<sup>d</sup> person of the verb are extremely rare and the idiom undoubtedly vicious. So Çāṅkh. Grhy. 2, 2, 8 ब्रह्मचारी भवान्ब्रूहि, instead of ब्रवीतु or ब्रूताम् - say, you are a *brahmachārin*."

ceded by some pronominal prefix, viz. अत्रभवान्, तत्रभवान्, सत्रभवान्. As सत्रभवान् and तत्रभवान् point at somebody absent, but the अत्रभवान् is always present, so the former two cannot refer but to a 3<sup>rd</sup> person, but अत्रभवान् may denote as well the person spoken of as the person addressed. Utt. I, p. 1 the director thus *addresses* the spectators अयं खलु.... आर्यमिश्रान्वितापयामि। एवमत्रभवन्तो विदां कुर्वन्तु, but Çāk. VII Dushyanta when *speaking of* Çakuntalā says अये सेवयत्र-भवती शकुन्तला.

**261.** For the **third person** Sanskrit does not possess a Third person, proper personal pronoun, like our *he, she, it.* Its duties how expressed. are discharged by demonstratives. When wanted to be emphasized, by स, अयम्, अस्मी, otherwise by the oblique cases derived from the pronominal roots अ, अन्, एन्, or what is practically the same, in the acc. by एनम्, एनाम्, एनत्, plur. एनान्, एनाः एनानि, in the other cases by the forms belonging to अयम्. The nomin. is not expressed but with some emphasis. See **274.**

**262.** The **possessive pronouns** are relatively less used than the genitives of the personal ones. One will oftener meet with मम सूनुः, सूनुर्मे or मत्सूनुः (a *shashthisamāsa* **316**, 1°) than सूनुर्मादयः.

The difference, which exists in English between *my* and *mine*, *your* and *yours* etc., is not known in Sanskrit; मादयं or मम पुस्तकम् may be as well „my book” as „a book of mine,” also „the book is mine;” मत्पुस्तकम् of course cannot have the last meaning, for subject and predicate are by necessity unfit for being compounded.

Rem. 1. Apart from the regular possessives of the 2<sup>nd</sup> person त्वमादय and युष्मादय, there exists also भवमादय



derived from the polite भवान्. Panc. 168 भवदीयसाहसेनाहं तृष्टः [= भवतः साह° or भवत्साह°].

Rem. 2. The possessive of the 3d person is तदीय (if wanted एतदीय), but here too the genitive of the demonstrative or a shashthisamāsa are generally preferred.

**263.** The reflexive pronouns स्व and आत्मन् refer to all persons. — 1. आत्मा, acc. आत्मानम्, instr. आत्मना etc. is the proper equivalent of English *myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, one's self; ourselves, yourselves, themselves*. It is always a masculine and a singular, even when referring to a plural or a not-masculine. Properly it is a subst. meaning "soul, spirit, individuality" and in this meaning it has always remained in common use. But even when pronoun, its origin is more or less perceptible. Occasionally it may be rendered as well by a pronoun as by a subst.<sup>1)</sup>.

2. स्व generally — though not always — does duty of a possessive; it does denote the subject being possessor and may be rendered, according to sense, by *my, your, his, her, our, their*. Often it is compounded with its noun.

**264.** Examples of आत्मन्, when a refl. pronoun. — a) 3d person: Panc. 263 सर्पस्तेनात्मना स्वालयं नीतः (he *himself* brought the serpent to his dwelling); Var. Yog. 1, 19 प्रज्जोर्विधाय सचिवं प्रुभदैवयुक्तं। अज्ञातपेन्पतिरात्मनि द्वैवहीने (if the king be *himself* not favoured by Destiny, he should charge his minister, who is, to destroy his enemy); Mālat. II, p. 38 वासवदत्ता राज्ञे संतयाय पित्रा प्रत्नमात्मानमुदयनाय प्रायच्छत् (Vāsav., though betrothed by her father to king Sanj., gave *herself* to Udayana); R. 2, 64, 29 तौ पुत्रमात्मनः स्पृष्ट्वा तपस्विनी (both of them touched [the body of] *their son*); Panc. 184 पुनर्जतिमिव्रात्मानं मन्यमानाः (they..... feeling *themselves* as if they were born again); —

1) Compare the similar use though less developed of Latin *animus*, आत्मानं विनोदयामि = *animum oblecto*. Panc. 160 मयात्मा प्रदत्तोऽयम् (I have given him my heart = *myself*).

b) 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person: Hit. 107 आत्मनः किमुत्कर्षं न साधयामि (why should I not elevate *my own* rank?), Qāk. I पुणवायमदर्शनेन तावदात्मानं पनीमहे (in the meanwhile, let us purify *ourselves* —), Qāk. IV भर्तृमात्वसदृशं सुकृतैर्गता त्वम् (by your good actions you have got a husband becoming to *yourself*); — c) referring to a general subject: Panc. III, 174 यः करोति नरः पापं न तस्यात्मा ध्रुवं प्रियः (who does evil, certainly does not love himself).

As appears from the instances quoted, the gen. आत्मनः or आत्म<sup>o</sup> in compounds are used to denote the reflexive possessive. There exists even a possessive आत्मीय, as Kād. I, 19 तदयमात्मीयः क्रियताम् (take him [the parrot] as yours).

Rem. 1. It is plain, that स्व आत्मा is said in the same meaning as आत्मा. R. 2, 6, 21 राज्ञा] तात्वा वृद्धं स्वमात्मानं राज्ञे राज्ञे अभिषेच्यति.

Rem. 2. The instrum. आत्मना when added to the reflexive lays stress on the fact, that the subject is acting by himself. Mhbh. 1, 158, 30 तार्यात्मानमात्मना (help yourself); Panc. 276 न शक्नोम्यात्मानमन्यात्माना ब्रूतुम् (I cannot bear my own self); R. 3, 47, 1 सीता] शशि-नाम्नानमात्मना (Sītā named herself [to her guest])<sup>1</sup>.

265. Examples of स्व. — a) 3<sup>d</sup> person: Nala 3, 13 अक्षिपन्ती.... प्रभां शशिनाः स्वेन तेजसा (scorning as if it were at the moon's splendour by *her own* brightness); Panc. 230 अयासो प्रत्यृप उत्थाय स्वगृहान्निर्गतः (then at daybreak he rose and went out of *his* house); Qāk. I दृतास्तपस्विक-त्वक्ताः स्वप्रमाणानुवैः सेचनवद्वैः etc. (these girls of the hermitage, with watering-pots as to suit *their* size); — b) 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person: Panc. III, 177 देहं स्वः.... शोषयिष्याम्यहम् (I will dry up *my* body); Hit. 137 अस्माकं परमृनिश्चानां स्वदेशमगमनमपि दुर्लभं भविष्यति (when residing abroad it will be hard for us to go to *our own* country); Qāk. VI त्वमपि स्वं निवागमशृणु कुम् (and you, do *your* duty without fault); Vikram. I, p. 2 स्वयं स्थानेष्ववहितैर्भविताद्यं भवतिः (you are requested to listen with attention on *your* seats).

Yet स्व is not necessarily a possessive. It may also be equivalent to आत्मा. Hit. 109 स्वस्य राजानं प्रणातवान् = आत्मनो राज्ञे; Panc. 305 नास्मै स्वोपाजितं दास्यामि (I will not give him, what I have earned

1) आत्मना may even stand alone. Kathās. 25, 133 गच्छाम्यहमात्मना (I will go [by] myself); Kumāras. 2, 54.

myself), here स्वोपार्जितम् = स्वेनोपा° = आत्मनोपा°; Schol. on R. 2, 40, 39 रामा मातरं राजानं च स्वमनुगतौ ददर्श (R. saw his mother and the king following after himself). This idiom is less frequent in classic literature than in commentaries and the like<sup>1</sup>). Note स्वतः »by one's self" f. i. Kathâs. 34, 56; 37, 49.

As स्व may be = आत्मा, it has also a possessive; viz. स्वीय. Panc. 162 स्वीयपितृमातरो.

Rem. 1. स्वक, poss. स्वकीय, is a diminutive of स्व and स्वीय as to its form, but there is scarcely any difference of meaning. Nala 5, 40 उय तत्र यथाकामं नैषधः... त्रगाम नगरं स्वकम्, Panc. 233 स्वकीयामेव योनिं बहुमन्यसे (it is but your own kin you take regard of).

Rem. 2. Like Latin *suus*, स्व also signifies »one's relations," »one's property,"<sup>2</sup>) therefore, स्वजनः »one's kindred, one's family, attendance," स्वम् »one's goods," सर्वस्वम् »one's whole property."

**266.** As a third reflexive we may consider निज »own," as it may not rarely be rendered by the possessive pronoun. Panc. 56 the king says to his daughter संज्योभ्योऽय त्वया निजभर्ता यथा मम व्रतव्यापादयति (you must to day exhort your husband, that he may destroy my enemies). Inversely स्व may also be = »own": Kathâs. 39, 53 स्वसुखं नास्ति माध्वीनां तासां भर्तृसुखं सुखम्.

**267.** The reflexives are not bound to refer exclusively to the grammatical subject. In passive sentences they often refer to the agent, in clauses and the like to the main subject. Instances hereof have already been given in 264 and 265, viz. Panc. 263; Panc. III, 174; Kâd. I, 19; Hit. 137; Vikram. I, p. 2. Here are some more: Panc. 24 न प्रोभनं कृतं मया यत्रस्य विश्वासं गत्वात्माभिप्रायो निवेदितः, here आत्माभिप्रायः is of course ममात्मनोऽभिप्रायः; R. 2, 11, 22 वाञ्छात्रेणा तदा राजा कैकेया स्ववशं कृतः sc. कैकेया वशम्.

Rem. On the other hand, one may meet with instances of pronouns not-reflexive, in such cases as where one might expect

1) As it is good Sanskrit, it makes doubtful how to explain स्व° in such compounds as स्वगृहम्, स्वधर्मः, whether = स्वस्य गृहम् or = स्वं गृहम्.

2) Çâpatakoça ed. ZACHARIAE, vs. 187 स्वशब्दो वदति ज्ञातिमात्मात्म्यीय-धनानि च.

reflexives. So R. 3, 62, 3 त्वमप्रोक्तस्य शाखाभिः..... आवृणोमि शरीरं ते [not स्वम् or आत्मनः]; Kathās. 36, 102.

**268.** The indeclinable स्वयम् does nearly the same duty as Latin *ipse*. It may be added to some other pronoun. Mhbh. 1, 161, 8 न त्वरं वधमाकाङ्क्षे स्वयमेवात्मनः (nor am I desirous of my own death).

**269.** The reciprocal pronouns अन्योन्य, परस्पर, इतरेतर have almost assumed the character of adverbs. As a rule, they are used in the acc. of the masc. अन्योन्यम् etc. while being applied to every gender and every case-relation. Çāk. I उभे [मित्रौ] परस्परमवलोकयतः (the two friends look at each other); Vikram. I, p. 18 अन्योन्यं हस्तं स्पृशतः (they shake hands); Panc. 216 एवं च परस्परं द्वैधमुत्पन्नम् (and in this manner discord arose between them); Daç. 151 उभो..... त्रयया साध्वत्सेन ब्रान्वा-न्यमात्मानं न विवृण्वते (both, either by shame or by confusion, do not open their soul to each other); Çank. on Ch. Up. p. 42 सना-नमित्तरं प्राणादित्यौ (the principle of life and the sun are identical to one another); Pat. I, p. 426 सार्थिकानामेकप्रतिग्रह्य उचितानां प्रातस्तूत्याय प्रतिष्ठमानानां कश्चित्परस्परं संवन्धो भवति. Cp. also Kām. 2, 42; Mālav. I, p. 24; Kathās. 2, 41 etc.

Yet they admit also of other case-endings, f. i. Panc. III, 200 परस्परस्य गर्माणि ये न रक्षन्ति व्रतवः (they who do not observe the weak points of each other); Harshac. 2 तेषामन्योन्यस्य विवादाः प्रादुरभूवन् (disputations arose between them). So Nala 5, 32 तौ परस्परतः प्रीताः. Nala 1, 16 the acc. अन्योन्यम् is depending on the prep. प्रति. And so on. See Kāç. on P. 8, 1, 12 vārtt. 9 and 10; vārtt. 10 teaches the optional employment of forms in °आम्, if feminine and neuter words are concerned f. i. इतरेतराम् [or °रम्] हमे ब्राह्मणकुले — हमे ब्राह्मण्यौ — भोक्तव्यः.

The same meaning is carried by the adverb मित्रः (mutually), which is not less used.

## 2. DEMONSTRATIVES, RELATIVES, INTERROGATIVES.

**270.** In ancient language the demonstratives are often

Demon-  
stratives;  
general re-  
marks.

indicating the things they are to point at in a more significant manner than in modern tongues. For this reason, when translating from the Sanskrit, it is many times indispensable to render demonstrative pronouns otherwise, f. i. by the pronoun *he*, *she*, *it*, by *the*, by adverbs (*here*, *there*), sometimes even by putting instead of them the very noun, they are referring to. In the same way, indeed, the demonstratives of Latin and Greek must be translated.

We will dispense here with adducing instances exemplifying each of the somewhat freer translations, as have been named. It will suffice giving a few samples of Sanskrit demonstr. pronouns to be rendered by English adverbs. Panc. 204 भो भो कृषिञ्चल एष नदीतीरे तपस्वी धर्मवादी तिष्ठति (say, woodcock, *here* on the riverside a holy devotee stands); Vikr. I, p. 15 the king says to his charioteer घृत इदं तच्छैलशिखरम् (— *here* is that mountain-top); Cāk. IV Kaṇva asks »where are Ārṅgarava and Āradvata,” they answer भगवन्निमो ह्यः (Reverend, *here* we are). From the Vaidik writings I add Ath. V. 1, 29, 5 उदसो नृयो अग्रादुदिदं गायकं वचः (*there* the sun has risen and *here* has my spell).

**271.** Of the four demonstratives, used in classic Sanskrit,

Difference  
of employ-  
ment be-  
tween  
them.

अयम् and एष are opposite to स and असौ. Their different nature is well described by a vernacular grammarian, when pronouncing that एष is expressive of *nearness* but असौ of *remoteness*, and that अयम् implies *presence* but स *absence* <sup>1)</sup>. Indeed, both एष and अयम् point at something near to the speaker or his time, whereas

1) See the kārīkā, quoted in a foot-note on p. 188 of ĀRĪRĀMAMAYA-ŚARMA's edition of Mṛcchakāṭī (Majumdar's series):

इदम् प्रत्यक्षरूपं समीपतत्त्वमिति वैतदो वृषम्  
अदसस्तु विप्रकृष्टं तदिति परोक्षे विज्ञानीयात्.

असौ and स indicate something remote either by space or by time. Therefore, the latter couple may be compared to Lat. *ille* and *iste*, Gr. *ἐκεῖνος*, Engl. *that*, the former to Lat. *hic*, Greek *οὗτος* and *ὅδε*, Engl. *this*.

The difference between them will appear better when perusing Sanskrit texts, than from instances detached from the context they are taken out. Yet, here are several, which may give some idea of it.

1. एष and अयम्. — Vikram. I, p. 14 Purûravas points with his hand to Urvaçî her attendance: एताः says he सुतनुं मुने ते राव्यः पश्यन्ति (Lat. *haec amicae* —); Nala 3, 4 Indra declares to Nala the name of himself and his comrades: अग्निन्द्रो अग्निश्च तथैवायमपि पतिः... यमोऽयमपि पार्थिव (Lat. *ego Indrus, hic Agnis* etc.).

2. असौ and स. — Nala 3, 2 Nala asks the devas, for what purpose they wish him to be their messenger कद्यानां यस्याहं दूत ईप्सितः किं च तद्गो मया कार्यम्, here both असौ and तन् answer to Latin *iste*; — Mudr. II, p. 77 the minister Râxasa, when hearing from his spy that the physician, whom he had despatched to empoison king Candragupta, had been prevented from performing that plot by the vigilance of Cāṇakya, exclaims ऋतः खलुसौ ब्रूतः अयं न वैयः कथम्, here both असौ and स are = Lat. *ille*.

3. Examples of *this* and *that* in opposition to one another. — Ch. Up. 2, 9, 1 अमुमादित्यमुपासीत.... तस्मिन्निमानि सर्वाणि भूतान्यव्यायज्ञानि (let him meditate on *that* sun.... it is on *that* all *these* beings [here on earth] are depending upon), ibid. 1, 3, 2 समान उ दृष्टाये चागौ चोष्णाः यमुष्णाः सौ (this breath here and that sun there are indeed the same, this is hot and that is hot); Utt. II, p. 27 अयमत्रावश्यकविघ्नः *hoc illud studiorum impedimentum* "that well-known hindrance now presents itself." — In the first act of the Mudrarâxasa the minister Cāṇakya, after having put the jeweller Candanadâsa into prison, thus expresses his contentment: हन्त त्वच्च हृदनीं राक्षसाः कुतः

त्वत्प्रियव्रत्प्रापान्यया तस्यावसापदि

तथैवास्यापदि प्राणा नूनं तस्यापि न प्रियाः

तस्य refers to Râxasa, अयम् and अस्य to Candanadâsa. In Latin one would say likewise: ut *hic* in *illius* re adversa suae vitae

jacturam facit, sic profecto et *ille* vitam pro nihilo putabit in *hujus* calamitate. — In the Vikramorvaçi king Purûravas designates his beloved Urvaçi by the pronoun अयम्, as long as he knows her present and sees her (1<sup>st</sup> act), but in the second act, when thinking her absent, he speaks of तस्यां आसनम्, expresses his disappointment about her female attendant coming सख्या विरहिता तया, and says on account of her पयस्युकां कथयसि प्रियदर्शनां ताम् आर्तिं न पश्यसि पुञ्जवस्त्रदर्शाम् — whereas in the first act, when looking at her face, he admires इदं रूपम्, exclaims नेत्रे तपस्विनः सृष्टिः, is uneasy, as अस्या भयकम्पः is noticed by him.

272. Though एष may be styled the emphatic अयम्, both pronouns are sometimes used almost promiscuously. Mhbh. 1, sarga 154 Kuntî asks Hidimbâ, who she is: "are you a deity of this forest?" अस्या वनस्य देवता, Hidimbâ answers यदेतत्पञ्चसि वनम् etc. In the second act of the Vikramorvaçi the king offering a seat to Citralekhâ says एतदासनमस्यताम्, in the first act of the Mudrarâksa Cānakya to Candanadâsa इदमासनमास्यताम्.

273. अयम् — not एष — is the proper word, if the speaker wishes to denote something belonging to himself by a demonstrative rather than by the possessive of the 1<sup>st</sup> person. अयम् referring to the 1<sup>st</sup> person. अयं वाक्: may signify "this arm of mine," ईडे ó πρῆξυς, hoc braccium. Vikram. II, p. 46 Purûravas laments हृदयमिषुभिः कामग्यान्तः सशल्यमिदम् — viz. मन, Mreeh. IV, p. 141 न खलु मम विषादः सात्सेऽस्मिन्मम वा (I feel no remorse nor fear on account of the rash deed, I have committed).

Rem. Hence अयं वनः a modest phrase to designate the speaker himself, cp. Greek ईडे ó δὲξῆρ. Vikram. II, p. 56 the king when taking his leave from Urvaçi says मर्त्यवांसे वनः; Mreeh. VII, p. 238 Cārudatta tells his friend, he longs for Vasantasenâ तत्रैवैव वसन्तगनादश्रान्मुकोऽयं वनः; Daç. 164 सोऽवगमिष्वावाक्ये वनोऽव्यर्गमनुहिनः (my lord has much gratified his most obedient servant).

274. Pāṇini teaches, there is some difference in the flexion of अयम् according to its being used either when referring to somebody or something already spoken of before, or

when pointing at or showing. In the former case 1. the cases, derived from the root **अ** are treated as enclitics, 2. the accus. is **एनम्, एनाम्, एनत्** in the singular, **एनान्, एनाः, एनानि** in the plural, **एनां, एने** in the dual, 3. the instr. of the sing. **एनेन, एनया**, 4. the loc. of the dual is **एनयोः**.

*anvā-  
deṣa.*

It is in such instances of *anvādeṣa* (reference to something already named before), that the pronoun bears almost the character of our *he, she, it*. — 1. **अस्म** etc. enclitic: Mrech. I, p. 55 **यदा तु भाग्यक्षयपीडितां दृशां नरः कृतान्तापहृतां प्रपद्यते। तदास्य मित्राण्यपि शत्रून्वाभिमित्रताम्** (if a man has by Destiny been reduced to poverty, then even his friends become enemies to him), Ṭāk. I **एतास्तपस्त्रिकान्यकाः.... इत एवाभिवर्तन्ते। अहो मधुनासां दर्शनम्** (these girls of the hermitage approach hither, it is pleasant to look on them), Vikram. I, p. 2 **परिपदेवा पूर्व्यां कवीनां दृढरूपप्रचन्धा। अहमस्यां कालिदानम्-यितव्यमुना नवेन श्राद्धकनोपश्रयान्**; — 2. instances of **एनम्** etc. Mhbh. I, Paushyap. **तमुपाश्रयमुपगत्यो प्रोवाच चैनम्** (he made his compliment to his teacher and spoke to him), Vikram. III, p. 72 **अये। इत एव प्रस्थिता देवः.... यात्रेनमवलोकाक्रमणे प्रतिपालयामि**, Nala 13, 24 **तां प्रमादगतापश्य-द्राक्षमाता तनैर्वृताम्। धात्रीमुवाच गच्छैनमानवेह ममान्तिकम्** (her the king's mother saw from the balcony, as she was followed by the crowd, and said to the nurse: "go and bring her to me"), Mhbh. 5, 16, 29 Indra receives a deputation of devas, rshis etc., and after being addressed by them **इवाच चैनान्प्रतिभाष्य**, Ait. Br. 1, 29 treats of the two **हविर्धानि** (carts in which the soma-herb is carried) in § 6 **देवयन्तो ह्येने गानुषाः प्रभर्न्ति**, *ibid.* 1, 30, 3 **ह्येनो** refers to **अन्तोषां**, mentioned before.

NB. The instr. **एनेन** and **एनया** seem to be extremely rare; **अनेन** at least and **अनया** are regularly used, when *anvādeṣa* is required. Mālav. I, p. 14 the minister of king Agni-mitra reads a letter from the king of Vidarbha; when asked about its contents, he answers to Agn. **इदमिदानीमेनेन** [not: **ह्येनेन**] **प्रतिनि-ब्रितम्**. And so often..



**275.** *The pronoun स and its employment.* स likewise points at somebody or something known, and therefore, like अयम्, it is fit for doing duty of the pronoun *he, she, it*. Yet, they are not synonymous. Like Greek, especially Homeric, *ὁ, ἡ, τό*, it signifies, that the person or thing referred to is well-known, or has been named just before, or will be named forthwith. It is therefore never an enclitic, and is sometimes = Lat. *ille*, sometimes = *is* „the afore said.” Hence its fitness to be rendered by „the.” When referring to the relative त्व, it may be equivalent to „he,” German *derjenige*. It is also used to indicate the changing of the subject, f. i. स आह् or सोऽप्याह् = „the other said, answered.” Yet it may as well point at the same throughout a succession of sentences, in which case one is inclined to put it at the head, as Daç. 12 वामदेवनामानं तपोधनं त्रयामः तं प्रणम्य तेन कृता-  
तिथ्यस्तस्मै कथितकृत्यस्तदाश्रमे..... कंचित्कालमुपित्वा.... मुनिमभाषत; Nala 1,5  
Bhîma king of Vidarbha has been named, it follows स प्रतार्ये परं यत्-  
मकरोत्..... तमुच्यगच्छद्, ब्रह्मर्षिर्दमनां नाम..... तं [viz. दमनं] स भीमः [the  
aforesaid Bh.] प्रताकामस्तोषयामास..... तस्मै प्रसन्नां दमनां वरं ददौ. Cp. also  
the examples adduced 271, 3°.

Examples: 1. of स = *ille* (the well-known, the famous). Çāk. VII तत्कोटिमत्कुलिशमाभरणं मघोनः (the *renowned* thunderbolt, Indra's attribute, Lat. *fulmen illud Jovis*).

2. स = „the afore said.” Çāk. IV Kanva says to Çakuntalā ययातेरिव शर्मिष्ठा भर्तुश्चक्षुमता भव। पुत्रं त्वमपि सम्राज्ञं सेव पूजयामासि, here  
सेव „as she” means of course Çarmishthā; Kathās. 27, 109 उपाध्या-  
यस्य ऋष्यचित्। ब्राह्मणास्याभवन् शिष्याः सप्त ब्राह्मणापुत्रकाः। (110)न तान् शिष्या-  
नुपाध्यायो धेनुं दुर्भिक्षोदयतः। गोमतः प्रवशुरादेकां याचितुं प्राहिणोवतः। (111)ते च  
गव्यान्प्रदेशयन् दुर्भिक्षतामकुल्लयः। तं तांदुरा तच्छशुरं तच्छिष्या मां याचिरे। (112)तां वि-  
द्वत्किरीमेकां धेनुं तेभ्यः समर्पयत् (some teacher of the brāhmaṇa class  
had seven disciples, brāhmaṇas they too. Once because of famine

he despatched these disciples to beg one cow from his father-in-law, who was rich in cows. They set out, suffering much from hunger, to the foreign country, where dwelled that man, and begged a cow of the father-in-law of their teacher, in his name. The father-in-law gave them one, fit to procure [them] a livelihood. Here we have several instances of *स* referring to something mentioned before, and even such accumulation as in vs. 111 ते... ते तद्गिरा etc., ते pointing at the disciples, ते at the father-in-law, तत् at the teacher. It is, indeed, always allowed to employ *स* many times in the same sentence, though pointing at different persons or things, f.i. Mhbh. 1, 2, 395 यो मोक्षतं कनकशृङ्गमयं ददाति । विप्राय वेदविदुषे च द्युभ्युताय । पुण्यां च भारतकयां गृणुयाच्च निवाम् । तुल्यं कलं भवति तस्य च तस्य चैव, the last words mean: "of the one as well as of the other."

3. *स* when adj. = "tho." R. 3, 35, 27 a tall fig-tree is described, whose branches are of enormous size: तत्रापश्यत्..... स्वप्राथम्..... गगन्तापस्य ताः प्राव्याः [*the branches of which*] "प्रलयोन्नमयताः"; Utt. II, p. 29 one asks अयं स राजा किमाचारः गच्छति (but what is *the* king doing now?) another answers तेन राजा क्रतुरष्टमेधः प्रक्रान्तः (*the* king has commenced an aśvamedha).

4. *स* in correlation with *य* = Germ. *derjenige*. Mhbh. 1, 74, 40 सा भार्या या गृहे दत्ता सा भार्या या प्रतावती. Generally the relative clause precedes, see 452, 2<sup>d</sup> and 455.

Rem. Now and then *स* refers to persons or things not expressed, but only implied by the foregoing. Mhbh. 1, adhy. 157 it is told, that Kuntī and her strong son Bhīmasena hear cries of distress in the house of the worthy brahman, whose hospitality they are enjoying of. Though the family of the brahman has not been named in the foregoing, vs. 10 introduces them by the pronoun तान्. The same idiom exists in Latin.

276. *स* may point at a general subject, see 12. Occasionally it may be rendered by „such a one." Mhbh. 1, 158, 31 धर्मज्ञानात्तगानादुर्न हन्यात्स च नामपि (rāxasas, it is told, know the dharma, nor would such a one kill me); Kumāras. 5, 83 न केवलं यो मह्योऽपवापते । गृणोति तस्मादपि यः स पापमाकू (not only he, who speaks evil of the mighty, but likewise he, who listens to a such, commits a sin).

Rem. When put twice, स means »manifold, various, all sorts of —." R. 3, 9, 31 आत्मानं नियमैस्तैस्तैः कर्षयित्वा प्रयत्नतः। प्राप्यते निपुणैर्धर्मः, Kathās. 29, 169 महादेवो च तैस्तैस्तामुपचारैरूपाचरत् (— with all sorts of civilities —). For the rest स put twice is mostly met with in the apodosis after a double यः preceding. Nala 5, 11 ययं हि ददूषे तेषां तं मेने नलं नृपम् (287). This repeated स has accordingly a distributive meaning, see 252, 3°.

**277.** With एव added to it, स = „the very," often „the same," Lat. *idem*. For the rest comp. 398.

स एव  
= „the  
same."

Panc. 172 तावैव द्वौ पुरुषौ मिया मन्त्रयतः (*the same two men keep counsel together*); *ibid.* V, 26 तानोन्द्रियाण्यविकलानि तदेव नाम। सा बुद्धि-  
रप्रतिष्ठा वचनं तदेव। अर्थोऽप्येषा विरहितः पुरुषः स एव। वाक् सः क्षणं भवतीति  
त्रिचित्रमेतत् (his senses are the same, without defect; his name is the same; his is the same vigour of mind, the same speech; yet — how curious it is — the self-same man, when having lost the splendour of his wealth, becomes forthwith a stranger). The latter example shows, that if स is plainly conveying the meaning »the same," एव may be omitted, cp. Ch. Up. 5, 4, 2 तस्मिन्नेतस्मिन्नागौ.

**278.** स may be added to other demonstratives, to personal pronouns, to relatives. As to the last combination यः स, see 287.—सोऽयम्, स एष and the like, सोऽहम्, सा वम्, etc. mostly are to express the worth of a conclusive particle, therefore, for this reason, then," as will be shown further on, when describing the connection of sentences, see 445.

**279.** Some other observations on the demonstratives. —

Demon-  
stratives,  
when first  
members of  
compounds

1 In compounds, तत् and एतत् are considered as the themes, which represent स and एव; likewise मत्, त्वत्, अस्मत्, युष्मत्<sup>1)</sup> are respectively the thematic shapes of अहम्, त्वम्, वयम्, यूयम्. — अयम् and

1) By this orthography here and elsewhere I follow the rules of Sanskrit euphony; etymological reasons would rather require to write तद्, एतद्, etc.

असौ are seldom used in compounds, if they are, the neuter (इदम्, अद्:) is employed. But, as a rule, एतत् and तत् are substituted for them. In other terms: in compounds, एतत् has the meaning of Lat. *hic* and तत् that of Lat. *is* or *ille*. Mṛcch. I, p. 3 the director informs the public यदिदं वयं मृच्छकटिकं नाम प्रकाशं प्रयोक्तुं व्यवसिताः..... एतत्कविः etc., while speaking of the poet of the piece he has named. Kathās. 64, 25 अवार्यत पान्येन तदधात् (he was prevented from injuring them by a passer-by), here तदधात् refers to अमोभिः.. लोमशैः [sc. तापसैः] in vs. 24.

Idiom: 2. The idiom, represented by Latin *is pavor = ejus rei pavor* 1) is *is pavor* not unknown in Sanskrit. Mhbh. 1, 6, 11 Agni says त्रिभेति को न = *ejus rei pavor*, here अयं व्यतिक्रमः, here अयं व्यतिक्रमः = अयं [जागम्य] जति° (who is not afraid of my curse, who has an escape from it?). Panc. 158 a boy has been turned out of doors by his father मृदातिःपारितः. The author proceeds स च तेन निर्वेदेन देशान्तरं गत्वा, apparently तेन निर्वेदेन is here = तस्य [निःसारणस्य] निर्वेदेन »by despair caused by this expulsion". Cp. Kumāras. 3, 17, Kathās. 1, 33.

ग्रहो in formulae. 3. In formulae one uses असौ as significative of the proper name of him, whom the formula is to be applied to. When employing them, the proper name is substituted for it. See f. i. Pār. Grhy. 1, 18, 3 असौ तत्र शर्दः गन्तु, Âṣv. Grhy. 1, 20, 5.

neuters of demonstratives, used as adverbs. 4. In the archaic dialect, especially in the liturgical books, the acc. of the neuter singular of demonstratives is often used adverbially. Ait. Br. 1, 9, 6 सर्वत्र इन्द्रोभिरिष्टा देवाः स्वर्गं लोकमत्रयन्त- येत्येतद् यत्प्रमाणः.... स्वर्गं लोकं त्रयति, here एतत् means »in this case." Cp. ibid. 1, 4, 2; 1, 15, 4, Ch. Up. 4, 2, 1 तद् = »then," etc. etc. The classic language has retained adverbial functions of तत् and यत्, see 444 and 463.

280. The interrogative pronoun is क. Its comparative कतर and its superlative कतम are likewise used. The po-

1) See f. i. Livy 21, 46, 7 Numidae ab tergo se ostenderunt. Is pavor perculit Romanos. Cp. Virg. Aen. 1, 261, Neros Lys. 3. 1.

Inter-  
roga-  
tives.

sitive क simply asks „who ?” „what ?” „which ?”, कतर, like Lat. *uter*, arch. Eng. *whether* „which of the two ?”, कतम who etc. of many ? They are wanted both in direct questions and in the so-called indirect questions. One says, therefore, को भवान् (who are you ?), देवदत्त इत्ययोः कतरः (which of these two is Devadatta ?), Vikram. I, p. 5 परिज्ञायते कतमेन दिग्विभागेन गतः स जाल्मः (is it known, in what direction the rascal has departed ?). Cp. 411.

If wanted, क may be the former part of a bahuvrīhi. Daṣ. 30 एतत्कटकस्थितिः किं नामधेयः (what is the name of the chief of this encampment ?); *ibid.* 74 — an ascetic speaks — अर्थकामवाननिमित्तं त्रयं त्रेयो चेमो किञ्चिदपि किञ्चिद्वारं किञ्चिन्लो.

Rem. 1. The distinction between क, कतर and कतम is not always strictly observed. Rām. 1, sarga 38 Rāma asks Viçvāmītra, which of the two, Kadrū or Vinatā will have one illustrious son, and who sixty thousand sons कः कस्याः सुता ब्रह्मका बहुजनयिष्यति, here क is used, not कतर. — Panc. 284 सागदीनानुपायानां मध्ये कस्यात्र त्रियः (for which of the six well-known expedients, *sūma* etc., it is now the fit time ?) here कस्य is used within the proper sphere of कतम. — R. 2, 85, 4 Bharata asks Guha कतरेण नमिष्यामि भद्रदत्तायनं पत्न्य, though the country is wholly unknown to him, and he, therefore, does not want to be informed „whether” but „which” of the many ways will conduct him to Bharadvāja 1).

Rem. 2. On the faculty of putting in the same sentence two or more interrogative pronouns referring to different things, see 409, 2°.

281. At the outset क was both an interrogative and an indefinite pronoun, cp. Lat. *quis*, Gr. *τις* and *τις*. In classic Sanskrit it has occasionally still the function of an indefinite; yet, as a rule, क is then combined

1) Cp. 248 and the foot-note 1) on page 188 of this book.

Indefinites.

with some particle: **चित्** or **अपि** or **चन**. Hence **कश्चित्**, **कश्चन**, **कोऽपि** are the proper indefinite pronouns, expressing *some(any)body*, *some(any)thing*; *some*, *any*. To them we must add **एक**, for this word, properly meaning „one,” does not rarely duty as an indefinite, and is to be rendered by „some” and even by the so-called article „a.” — **सर्व** is „every; all.”

काश्चित्,  
etc. and  
एक.

Instances of **कश्चित्**, **कश्चन**, **कोऽपि** 1) it is superfluous to give. As to **एक** = „a.” R. 2, 63, 32 **अहं चैकेषुणा हतः** (I am hit by an arrow), Daç. 25 **कदाचिदेकस्मिन्कान्तारे** मदीयगृहचरणेन निवार्यमानं भ्रातृमेकमत्रलोच्य (once in some forest I saw some brahman being about to be hurt by the crowd of my companions). Even **कश्चित्** etc. may be = „a”: Daç. 132 **सा कंचित्सुतं सूतवती** (she was delivered of a son). It is consistent, that **एक** may also be combined with some other indefinite. Kathâs. 27, 89 **कस्यायेकस्य त्रिणवः साधुः कर्मकरो गृहे** (an honest servant in the house of some merchant), Panc. 9 **एकस्य कस्यचिच्छिल्पिनः**.

Kathâs. 1, 56 may be an instance of the sole **क**, bearing the character of an indefinite: **नान्यो ज्ञानाति कः** (and nobody else knows it). Cp. R. 2, 32, 42 **वृणोष्व किं चेदप्यं व्यवस्यसि** (choose something else, if you have made up your mind).

**विश्व**. Rem. 1. The old dialect possessed a synonym of **सर्व**, viz. **विश्व**: in the classic language it is no more used, save in some standing phrases as **विश्वे देवाः**, being the name of some special class of deities, **विश्वं जगत्** or simply **विश्वम्** „the Universe.”

**सर्व**. Rem. 2 **सर्व** is = „every” and „each,” **सर्वः** „everybody,” **सर्वम्** „everything.” Nala 20,6 **सर्वः सर्वं न जानाति सर्वतो नास्ति कश्चन** (not everybody does know everything, nobody is omniscient).

1) According to the Petrop. Diet. the indefinite pronoun **कोऽपि** was made in a latter period than the other combinations, as it does not occur in the older literature, Manu included (see II, p. 6 s.v. क). Yet in the Mahâbhârata and the Râmâyana **कोऽपि** and such adverbs as **क्वापि**, **कथमपि** are as well met with as those in **चित्** and **चन**. R. 2, 52, 45 **क** and **अपि** are separated by **च**, **अहं किं चापि वक्ष्यामि**.

**282.** By adding to the foresaid indefinite pronouns the negation न one expresses the negative indefinites „nobody, nothing, no, none.” It is indifferent at what place one puts the negation. Nala 3, 24 प्रविशन्तं न मां कश्चिदपश्यत् (nobody saw me, as I entered), Hit. 95 कोऽप्युपायोऽस्माकं जीवनाय नास्ति (we have no livelihood), M. 9, 26 न विप्रेषोऽस्ति कश्चन (there is no difference), Kathās. 34, 120 दरिद्रश्च एकस्य नासीत्त्र (there nobody could be named poor).

It is not only said न कश्चित् and न कोऽपि, but also न कश्चिदपि. Panc. 71 न किञ्चिदप्युक्त्वान् (he said not a single word).

**283.** There are several words for „other”, viz. अन्य, अपर, पर, इतर. Of these अन्य is the most common and has the most general meaning.

Other—  
how  
expressed.

1. अन्य generally denotes „somebody or something else.” In such phrases as अन्यस्मिन्नुह्नि, „once on a day” it is almost = कश्चित्. Yet it may also signify „the other.” So Hit. 102 when a messenger wishes to speak secretly to the king, the king removes his attendance ततो राजा मन्त्री च स्थितौ तत्र। अन्ये अन्यत्र गताः (— the others withdrew).

2. अपर properly means „the subsequent, the following;” hence it has got also the meaning of „other,” but commonly it retains its proper nature of signifying what is named in the second place. Mrech. I, p. 55 इयं सा रदनिका। इयमपरं का (this is Radanikā, but this other, who is she?).

3. पर is etymologically related to our *far*, and accordingly it serves also to denote the opposite of स्व. Hence it displays all shades of meaning, as are directly opposite to the notion of „own, proper.” It may be sometimes = „strange” and „stranger,” sometimes = „enemy,” sometimes also when used in a broader sense = „other.” Nala 3, 8 कथं नु ज्ञातसंकल्पः स्त्रियमुत्सहते पुमान्परार्थमोदृशं वक्तुम् (how should a man bear to speak in this way for the sake of another to a woman, whom he desires for himself?). Mrech. I, p. 55 न युक्तं परकलत्रदर्शनम् (it does not become a man to look on the wife of his neighbour). Its adjective परकीय = *alienus*. Çāk. IV अयो हि कन्या परकीय एव (a daughter is a possession one cannot call one’s own).

4. इतर, the comparative of the pronominal root इ, bears a strong affinity to Latin *alter*. It is used, indeed, to signify "the one" and "the other" of two. Brh. Âr. Up. 1, 4, 4 चउवेतरान्वदश्ववृष इतरः, cp. M. 4, 137, Kathâs. 19, 50. When dual or plural, it denotes the other of two parties. Mrech. I, p. 33 वृक्षसप्तत्रविंशस्तरन्ति च यया नावा तयैवेतरे, Mudr. V, p. 184 तेषां मध्ये ये त्रयः प्रधानतया मदीयां भूमिं कामयन्ते ते...। इतरौ तु द्वौ हस्तिबलकामौ हस्तिनैव धात्येताम्. — Cp. 217, 2.

Rem. 1. To the foresaid pronouns we may add भिन्न "different," as it sometimes may be rendered by "other." Kâç. on P. 2, 3, 29 भिनो देवदत्तात् = अन्यो देवदत्तात्.

Rem. 2. अपर and अन्य, when qualifying some noun, may be used in a somewhat particular manner. Panc. p. 77 contains the story of the jackal who, being hunted by a band of dogs, fled to some dyer's and there jumped into a pot filled with dye. As he got out, he had got a blue colour, तत्रापरे सारमेयास्तं घृणालमज्ञानतो यथाभीष्टदिशं ऋणुः. Here अपरे सारमेयाः means "the other, namely the dogs," not "the other dogs." Compare ibid. p. 83 कस्मिंश्चिद्वनोददेशे सिंहः प्रतिवसति स्म। तस्य चानुचरा अन्ये द्वीपित्रायसंगोमायवः गन्ति. Here अन्ये does not mean "other panthers etc.," but "others, namely a panther, a crow and a jackal." Cp. R. 2, 71, 61 अन्या विधवा = "some widow," Schol. अन्येत्यस्य विवरणं विधवेति. — The same idiom exists in Latin and Greek, f. i. Od. β, 411 μήτηρ δ' ἔμμε οὐ τι πέπυσται, οὐδ' ἄλλαι δμῳαί.

284. "Either," Lat. *alteruter*, is expressed by एकतर. Mudr.

एकतर IV, p. 146 तयोर्द्वयैरेकतरं ज्ञाति.

and एकतम. एकतम denotes "one out of many," cp. कतन (280). Panc. 12 संधिविग्रह्यानासनसंश्रयद्वैधीमात्रानामेकतमेन संधिधन्ये (I will arrange it by means of one of the six expedients: *sandhi*, *vigraha* etc.). Likewise अन्यतम, »see f. i. Daç. 101.

How "neither" is to be expressed, may appear from these examples. Ch. Up. 5, 10, 8 अथैतयोः पर्यायं कतरेण च न तानीमानि भूतानि भवन्ति (on neither of these two ways these foresaid beings are moving), Panc. 50 ते द्वावपि न ज्ञास्यतः (neither of them will know it).

285. For denoting "one... another" one may repeat अन्य or कश्चित् or एक, or use them alternatively; अपर may also be used, except in the first link. If



अन्य... there are more links, they may alternate in various manners. As to एकम्... अपरम् = „first...secondly” and the like. see 439.

Examples: 1. of अन्य... अन्य. R. 2, 108, 15 यदि भुक्तमिहान्येन देहमनन्य गच्छति (if what is consumed by one, goes into the body of another —), Mhbh. I Paushyap. 174 अन्यस्मिन्करणे तु कार्ये पार्थिवसत्तम। व्याख्यादिवान्यदेव त्वं कुरुते (you do other things, my prince, than what you should have done). — 2. of एक, कश्चित्, etc. Pane. 297 तेऽंगे ताड्यमाना एके मृता अन्ये भिन्नमस्तकाः कूटकर्तुमुपचक्रमिरे (and as he struck them, some of them died, some others had their heads broken and began to cry violently), M. 9, 32 आहुः... केचिदपरे... त्रिदुः, — 3. of more links connected. Varâh. Brh. 32, 1 क्षितिकम्पनादुरंके वृहदन्तर्जलनिवासिगन्धकृतम् । भृगुर्बिन्दुदिग्गतविश्रामसमुद्भवं चान्ये । अनिलोऽनिलेन निहतः क्षितौ पतन्सखनं करोत्येके । केचिन्नुद्वेगकारितमिदमन्य प्राहुराचार्याः (some say that an earthquake is caused by some huge animal living in the midst of the waters; others, however, that it arises when the elephants of the quarters, being tired of the earth's load, are taking breath; a wind falling down upon earth with noise, as if struck by another wind, say some; others, however, maintain that it is ordained by unseen powers; other masters again narrate the following,” p. 140 of KERN's translation). Cp. Nala 12, 87.

**286.** The relative pronoun is य. A full account of its employment will be given in the Section, in which there will be treated of clauses and relative sentences. Here it suffices to point out that य and स are standing complements of one another.

Rem. The comp. and superl. यत्, यतः are restricted to the archaic dialect.

**287.** The relative pronoun may be generalized in various ways: a) by putting य twice, then यो यः = „whosoever,” and it requires स स in the apodosis; b) by adding to it one of the indefinite pronouns so as to make up the com-

Relative  
pronoun.

How  
generalized.

bination यः कश्चित्, यः कश्चन or यः कोऽपि; c) by putting together य and स in the same case, gender and number, यः सः = „whosoever it may be, any.” For the rest, cp. 453.

Examples of a). Nala 5, 11 is quoted 276; Bhojapr. 36 ग्रं नृपो ऽनुरागेण संमानयति संसदि। तस्य तस्योत्सार्णाय यतन्ते राजवल्लभाः (the king's favourites always plot to the ruin of whomsoever the king loves and honours in his court).

b.) Mudr. IV, p. 158 यः कश्चिन्मां दृष्टुमिच्छति स त्वया प्रवेशयितव्यः (whosoever it may be, that wishes to see me, you must admit him), Nala 4, 2 अहं चैव यच्चान्यन्ममास्ति किञ्चन (myself and whatsoever belongs to me). This idiom is used so as to be synonymous with the simple indefinite pronoun, as Hitop. 10 सुवर्णकङ्कुपां यस्मै कस्मैचिद् दातुमिच्छामि (I desire to give the golden bracelet to whomsoever); Schol. on R. 3, 10, 19 यस्मै कस्मा अपि प्रतिज्ञां प्रतिज्ञाय न वक्ष्याम्.<sup>1)</sup>

Rem. The archaic dialect used also यः कश्च = यः कश्चित्. So f. i. Ch. Up. 3, 15, 4 प्राणो वा इदं भूतं यदिदं किञ्च (*prāṇa* means all whatever exists here), Ait. Br. 2, 6, 5 यस्मै कस्मै च देवतायै पशुरात्मभ्यते सैव नैवपतिरिति. It occurs also sometimes in epic poetry. So Hit. 20 the verse यानि कानि च मित्राणि कर्तव्यानि शतानि च proves by its very language to be borrowed from some ancient epic poet.

c.) Kathās. 27, 208 इत्थं क्रियासु निवसन्वपि यासु तासु। पुंसां श्रियः प्रबलस-  
न्न्यह्निष्कृतासु (in this way fortune dwells in *any* action, done by men, when carried out with vigorous energy).

## 288.

## 3. PRONOMINAL ADVERBS.

The pronominal adverbs may be divided into four main classes: 1. those in 'त्र, doing duty as locatives, 2. those in 'तः, mostly doing duty as ablatives, 3. those

1) यः कोऽपि seems to occur much less than the other combinations. The Petr. Dict. gives no instance of it, ANUNDRAM BOROAM does not mention it.

Prono- in दा expressive of time, 4. those in था significative  
 minal of manner. They are derived of the roots क(कु), अ, इ,  
 ad- त, य, अन्य, एक, सर्व etc. and display the same differ-  
 verbs. ences of meaning and employment as the pronouns,  
 which they are made from; they are therefore in-  
 terrogatives or demonstratives or relatives or indefi-  
 nites.

1. Those in °त्र are: Interr. कुत्र (where?); Dem. अत्र (here), तत्र (there), अमुत्र (yonder); Rel. यत्र (where); Indef. अन्यत्र (elsewhere), एकत्र (1. at one place, 2. somewhere); सर्वत्र (everywhere), etc. To these we must add two of a similar meaning, but made with different suffixes, viz. Interr. क्व = कुत्र and Dem. इह (here).—By putting °चित्, °चन or °अपि to the interrog., one gets the indefinites क्वचित्, कुत्रचित् etc. „somewhere, anywhere;” यत्र क्वचित् (or कुत्रचित् etc.) = „wheresoever” (287 b).

2. Those in °तः are: Interr. कुतः (whence?); Dem. अतः (hence), इतः (hence), ततः (thence), अमुतः (from yonder); Rel. यतः (whence); Indef. अन्यतः (from some other place), एकतः (from one place, etc.), सर्वतः (from every place), and so on. — By putting °चित्, °चन or °अपि to the interrog., one gets the indefinites कुतश्चित्, कुतोऽपि, कुतश्चन; of course यतः कुतश्चित् etc. = „from whatever place.” (287 b).

3. Those in °दा are Interr. कदा (when?); Dem. तदा (then); Rel. यदा (when); Indef. अन्यदा (at some other time), एकदा (once), सर्वदा (always). Besides, the dem. तदानीम् is the emphatic „then,” इदानीम् and अधुना = „now.” — By putting °चित्, °चन or °अपि to the interrogative, one gets the indefinites कदाचित् etc. = „at some time;” यदा कदाचित् etc. = „whenever.” (287 b).

An other set of temporal adverbs are कर्हि (when?), तर्हि, एतर्हि, यर्हि, यर्हि कर्हिचित्. Of these, all but तर्हि are restricted to the archaic dialect and even in the epics they are seldom used, except the phrase न... कर्हिचित् (nowhere).

4. In °था there are: Dem. तथा (so); Rel. यथा (as); Indef. अन्यथा (otherwise), सर्वथा (in every manner at all events). The Interr. is slightly different, being कथम् (how?). Demonstr. are also एवम्, इत्थम् and इति = „thus, so, in this manner.” — By putting °चित्, °चन or °अपि to the interrog., one gets the indefinites कथंचित् etc. = „somehow;” of course यथा कथञ्चित् etc. = „howsoever.” (287 b).

Rem. 1. The archaic idiom यः कश्च (287 R.) is of course also represented in the adverbs of the ancient dialect. Âçv. Grhy. 1, 3, 1 यत्र कु च होष्यन्त्यात् (wheresoever he may intend to make oblations), Ait. Br. 2, 23, 7 तस्य यत एव कुतश्च प्राप्नोयात्.

Rem. 2. The adverbial suffixes are not limited to the adverbs, enumerated above. So it is said परत्र »in the world to come” (f. i. Panc. 39), अपरत्र (f. i. R. 3, 11, 25), पूर्वत्र; सदा (always), नित्यदा (f. i. R. 3, 5, 18), etc.

Rem. 3. A negation added to the indefinites कुचित्, कुतश्चित्, कदाचित्, कथञ्चित् and their synonyms, serves to express „nowhere,”

»from no place," »never," »in no ways," cp. 282. Kathās. 3, 57 चिन्ता मे पुत्र यद् भार्या सदृशी नास्ति ते कुचित् (I am anxious that nowhere there is a fit wife for you to be found); Nala 4, 19 दोषो न भविता तत्र एतन्कथंचन (at any rate, you will incur no sin, my king); Panc. 34 मया.... कदापि चिर्मटिका न भक्षिता (I never have eaten cucumbers); ibid. 149 न मया तत्र हस्तलगाया कुचिदपि लब्धं सुखम् (since I am depending on you, I have nowhere enjoyed pleasure).

Rem. 4. The idiom एः एः = »whosoever, any" (287 c) has of course its counterpart in the adverbs derived from the roots ए and त. Mreeh. X, p. 360 गुरुपतिभवनस्या यत्र तत्र स्थिता वा (staying at the king of the gods, or anywhere).

Rem. 5. कथञ्चित् and कथमपि have also got the sense of Lat. viz. Panc. 71 चेतनां ममासाय कथमपि (after having scarcely recovered his spirits). With emphasis, one says even कथंकथमपि. — Similarly कदापि etc. may be used almost synonymous with our »perhaps." Panc. 200 द्रुममिहिने अडेयवचनात्कदापि निवर्तते (if one speaks thus [to the king of the elephants] he will perhaps withdraw by the force of so trustworthy speech).

Rem. 6. अन्यथा may signify »wrongly, falsely." Hit. 95 उपतेष्वपि शस्त्रेषु दूतो वदति नान्यथा. Likewise Çāk. I अन्वगम्यानन्यथा संगच्छ (do not take me for another person, as I am). As to अन्यथा when = »otherwise" see 485 R. 2.

**289.** The adverbs in ञ्त्र and तः are not restricted to the denoting of space. Their province is the same, as that of the locative and ablative <sup>1</sup>). Such words as अतः and

ततः have the value of the ablatives अस्मान्, तस्मान् etc., that is of the ablat. of the stems अ and त in all

1) ञ्त्र is a common suffix expressive of the abl., and accordingly put also after nouns (108). Locatives in ञ्त्रा made of nouns are taught by P. 5, 4, 55 sq. But such forms as ब्राह्मणञ्त्रा, देवञ्त्रा, मर्याञ्त्रा are only met with in the archaic dialect. Yet, though obsolete in the classic period of Sanskrit literature, they must have been in common use in the time of PĀṆINI.

P. 5, 3,  
7 sqq.

Prono-  
-minal  
adverbs  
in ञ्त्र and  
तः  
doing  
duty as  
locati-  
ves and  
ablati-  
ves.

genders and numbers. Similarly **अत्र**, **तत्र** are identical with the locatives **अस्मिन्**, **तस्मिन्** etc. For this reason, like the real ablatives and locatives, they express not only space, but also time and circumstances, and refer equally to persons and things. When pointing to a singular, they may even be used as attributes of ablatives and locatives of substantives. The adverbs **क्व** and **इह**, though not made with the suffix °त्र, have similarly the functions of the locative of the stems **क्व** and **इ** in all genders and numbers.

Examples: 1. of their not referring to space. Kathās. 4, 20 वर्षस्य शिष्यवर्गो महानभूत्। तत्रैकः पापिनिनाम तद्व्युदितरोऽभवत् (Varsha had a great crowd of disciples; among them there was —). Mudr. IV, p. 145 किमिदानीं चन्द्रगुप्तः स्वराज्यकार्यधुरामन्यत्र मन्त्रिणवात्मनि वा समासय — (why has Candrag. now put the yoke of government on [the shoulders of] some other minister or his own....?). Çāk. III अयं स ते तिष्ठति संगमोत्सुकः। विप्रकुसे भीरो यतोऽवधीराम् (he, from whom you are apprehending a refusal, that man stands here longing to meet you). Kumāras. 2, 55 इतः स दैत्यः प्रापृर्धर्नित एवार्हति क्षयम् (it is from this man [me, cp. 273] that the Daitya has obtained his glory, therefore it is not I, who must kill him). Mudr. II, p. 86 अमात्यनामाङ्कितेयं मुद्रा। तद्वितो ब्रह्मदेवायैव भवन्तममात्यस्तोऽप्यिच्छति (this ring is engraved with the name of the minister; for this reason, he will reward you with more than [is the worth of] this [ring]). Cp. Nala 13, 44.

2. of their qualifying some substantive. — Panc. 273 तत्र वने भ्रमन् (rambling in that forest), ibid. IV, 71 परस्मिन्निह लोके च (in the other world and in this), ibid. p. 146 भिक्षाश्रेष्ठे च तत्रैव भिक्षापत्रे निधाय (— put the rest of the alms in that very begging-bowl), ibid. 147 एकत्र कुशसंस्तरे द्वावपि प्रसुप्तौ (they slept both on one couch of kuṣa-grass), Kathās. 27, 4 प्रसङ्गे कुत्रापि (at some emergency), Daç. 80 अहं स च किञ्चित्पमाददत्तप्रारिक्ते क्वचित्कितवे (and I laughed somehow at some player making a rash move); — Panc. 308 ततः स्यानात्स्वदेशं

गताः (from that place they went to their country), *ibid.* 286 कुतोऽपि धनिकात्किञ्चिद् द्रव्यमादाय (he took some money from a moneylender), *Prabodh.* I, p. 6 कुतोऽपि कारणावघातात् (by some cause), *Daç.* 96 मां कदाचिद्वर्णादितस्तारयिष्यति (perhaps, it will rescue me from this misadventure).

P. 2, 4.  
33.

Rem. 1. It must be mentioned, that in the case of the *anvâdeça* (274) अत्र and अतः are enclitics. So neither इह nor इतः can be used.

Rem. 2. Instances of the adverbs in °त्र and °तः denoting time, are not rare. So one uses अतः परम् = »afterwards,» ततः = »then,» क्वचित्..... क्वचित् may be = »sometimes.... sometimes.»

**290.** There is no proper adverbial suffix for the category of the „whither.” Nor is it necessary. For the locative being expressive of the aim and scope with the words of *going, arriving, entering* and the like (134), it results, that one says क्व गच्छामि, तत्र प्रतस्ये and so on, as well as नगरे गच्छामि, नगरे प्रतस्ये. On the other hand, since the adverbs in °तः may have the meaning of „on the side of,” *cp.* 103, कुतः may be „on what side?” इतः „on this side” etc. Moreover they may even signify „in what direction,” *f. i.* ततः = „towards that place.”

a) *Panc.* 154 अचिन्तयं च किं करोमि क्व गच्छामि, *ibid.* 289 यदि कश्चिदिह व्याघ्रः समायाति (if some tiger come hither), *Mhbh.* 1, 163, 4 भीमसेनो ययौ तत्र यत्रासौ पुत्रपादकः.

b) *Mâlav.* I, p. 17 इत आस्यताम् (sit down on this side).

c) *M.* 2, 200 गन्तव्यं वा ततोऽन्यतः (or you must go from that place to another), *Kull.* तस्माद्वा देशाद् देशान्तरं गन्तव्यम्; — *Çâk.* I एतास्तपस्विन्यकाः.... इत एवाभिर्वर्तन्ते (— are moving on in this direction).

#### 4. PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

**291.** Pronominal adjectives are : I. कियन्त् (how great, *quantus*), Dem. इयन्त्, तावन्त् and एतावन्त् (*tantus*), with the relat. यावन्त् „[as great] as.”

Prono-  
minal  
adjec-  
tives.

II. कोदृश (*qualis?*), Dem. ईदृश, तादृश, एतादृश (*talis*, such), Rel. यादृश „[such] as”, Indef. अन्यादृश „like another.” They are also made of personal pronouns: मादृश (somebody like me), त्वदृश, भवादृश etc. — All of them may end also in °दृश् and in °दृक्ष.

II. कति (how many?), Rel. यति „[as many] as”, Indef. कतिचित् (some, any). Like the kindred Latin *quot*, *aliquot*, they are indeclinable.

The Dem. तति is not used.

**292.** Observations on the pronominal adjectives.

1. The mutual relations and combinations of the different classes: relatives, demonstratives, etc., are the same as with the pronouns. In this way it may f. i. be observed, that इयन्त् and ईदृश are to तावन्त् and तादृश, what अयम् is to स; that यावन्त् and यादृश require an apodosis with तावन्त् and तादृश; that such a combination as यादृश-स्तादृश: = »of whatever quality” (Panc. I, 420 उपदेशो न दातव्यो यादृशे तादृशे ज्ञे); that यति कतिचित् = »however many,” etc.

2. Those of Group I may be the former member of compounds in °दूरम्, °चिरम्, °वारम् and the like. F. i. कियद्दूरम् »how far?,” कियच्चरिम् »how long?,” कियद्द्वारम् »how many times?”. Bhoj. 28 राज्ञा कियद्द्वारं मम मनोरथमपूरयत्, Panc. 63 कियद्दूद्रे स जलाशयः, Kathās. 13, 137 इयच्चिरं मया धर्मो न ज्ञातः.... अयम् (for so long a time I did not know this duty), Panc. 56 कियन्मात्रास्त्विते तव पितुः शत्रवः (but how insignificant are these enemies of your father).

3. Instances of कति, कियान् and its adverb कियत् used as indefinites [281] are now and then met with. Panc. 211 कति व्यापादयति कति वा ताडयति (he kills some of them, some others he wounds). — Note the compound कतिपय = »several, sundry.”

CHAPT. III. On nouns of number.

**293.** As Sanskrit grammars not only teach, which are the different nouns of number for the unities, decads



Express-  
ing  
nouns  
of num-  
ber by  
various  
combi-  
nations etc., but also how to make the interjacent ones (see f. i. WHITNEY § 476 and 477), this point may be passed over here. It will suffice to give some instances of the most usual idioms for expressing numbers higher than 100. So Varāh. Brh. 11, 5 शतमेकाधिकम् = 101, Ch. Up. 3, 16, 7 श्रोत्रं वर्षशतम् \*116 Cp P. 5 2, 45. years" [liter. a hundred of years, determined by sixteen]. — Of addition, as f. i. पञ्च दश च = पञ्चदश, instances are found very often, especially in poetry. — Expressing numbers by multiplication is not rare, either by saying f. i. द्विः पञ्च instead of दश, or by using the type तिस्रो श्रोत्रः = 240 [lit. three eighties], cp. 295. Mhbh. 1, 32, 24 नवत्या नवतीर्मुखाणां कृत्वा (having made 8100 mouths) we have an instance of multiplication expressed by the instrumental of the multiplier.

Rem. 1. A very singular manner of denoting numbers between 200 and 1000, mentioned by WHITNEY § 480, is met with now and then in the dialect of the liturgical books and in epic poetry. Çāṅkh. Br. 3, 2 ओषि षट्त्रिंशतानि संवत्सरस्याह्नाम्, the meaning of which is "360 is the number of the days of a year," not, as one would infer from the very form,  $3 \times 160$ . Çāṅkh. Çr. 16, 8, 9 द्वे अष्टो-  
त्तिशते = 280. So R. 2, 39, 36 त्रयः शतशतार्था मातरः are not  $= 3 \times 150$ , but = 350, cp. ibid. 2, 34, 13, where the same number is thus expressed: अर्धसप्तशताः = half-seven hundreds, that is  $3\frac{1}{2} \times 100$ .

Rem. 2. In the ancient dialect cardinal nouns of number show in some degree a tendency to become indeclinable words. See WHITNEY § 486 c), who gives instances from vaidik works. But classic Sanskrit disapproved that loss of flexion and checked it<sup>1)</sup>.

294. From 1—19 the cardinal nouns of number are ad-  
How  
the  
nouns  
of num-  
ber are  
con-  
structed.  
jectives, but 20 and the rest are properly substantives. So  
विंशतिः does not signify „twenty" fr. *vingt*, but „a  
number of twenty," fr. *une vingtaine*. For this reason,  
विंशतिः and the rest, शतम्, सहस्रम् etc. are not only

1) As a rest of it we may consider, that M. 8, 268 and Kathās. 44, 77 the nom. पञ्चाशत् does duty of an accusative.

singulars having a gender of their own, but they are also construed with the genitive. Yet, this construction is not used exclusively. By a false analogy side by side with the regular construction, as **विंशतिः पुराणाम्, शतं पुराणाम्**, one says also **विंशतिः पुराणि, शतं पुराणि**, instr. **विंशत्या पुराणाम्** or **पुरैः**, **शतेन पुराणाम्** or **पुरैः**, etc. The same applies of course to the compounds in **‘विंशतिः’, ‘शतम्’** etc., expressive of the interjacent numbers. — It is a matter of course, that instead of using the genitive, it is allowed to compound the substantive with the noun of number.

Examples: 1. *a*) of a genitive depending on the noun of number: Varāh. Brh. 54, 75 **विंशत्या पुराणाम्** (by 20 men); Ragh. 3, 69 इति क्षितोऽग्रे नवर्ति नवत्रिंशत् महत्क्रतूनां.... ततान् (thus the king performed 99 great sacrifices); R. 2, 54, 31 **शतं शतम्**; Mhbh. 14, 88, 35 **शतं शतम्** निवृत्ता चासोत्पन्नानां त्रिंशतो तया (300 animals were then fastened to the sacrificial piles); Kathās. 18, 124 **ददो**.... **विद्रुपकाय सख्यं ग्रामाणाम्**; Daṣ. 142 **सुगठानामनेकसहस्रस्येव**. — *b*) of compounding: Rāj. 1, 311 स वर्षासप्ततिं भुक्त्वा भुजम् (after having reigned seventy years), M. 8, 237 **धनुःशतम्** (a hundred bow-lengths), Kathās. 44, 77 **उद्धृष्टशततो** (500 camels).

2. of **विंशति** etc. concurring in case with their substantives. — R. 3, 14, 10 **प्रतापतेस्तु दत्तस्य अमृतम्**.... **वष्टिर्दुहितारः**, Gaut. 8, 8 **चत्वारिंशता संस्कारैः संस्कृतः** (purified by 40 sacraments), M. 3, 40 **तोत्रन्ति शतं समाः**, ibid. 4, 87 **वाति**.... **नरकानेकविंशतिम्**, Kathās. 10, 39 **वयं दैत्यपतेर्वलः पौत्रो दशशतम्** (we are 1000 granddaughters of the chief of Daityas, Bali); Mhbh. 1, 16, 8 **वद्रे कदूः सुतान्नामान्सहस्रं तुल्यवर्चसः**.

Higher numbers, as **अयुतम्, लक्षम्, कोटिः**, are substantives, and always construed with the genitive of the object numbered. R. 1, 53, 21 **ददाम्येकां गवां कोटिम्** (I give a crore of cows); Panc. I, 251 **न गजानां सख्येण न च लक्षेण वाजिनाम्**। **यत्कृत्यं साध्यते राज्ञां दुर्गेष्वप्येकेन सिध्यति** (designs of kings, that do not succeed by a

thousand elephants nor by a hundred thousand horse, are successful by one stronghold).

Rem. 1. The double construction of विंशति etc. is as old as the R̥gveda. Cp. f. i. R̥gv. 2, 18, 5 चत्वारिंशता हरिभिः with R̥gv. 5, 18, 5 ये मे पञ्चाशतं ददुःश्रवानाम्.

Rem. 2. In epic poetry one meets occasionally with a plural of the decads instead of the singular. Nala 26, 2 पञ्चाशद्विह्वैः (with fifty horses) instead of पञ्चाशता ह्वैः.

On the other hand, a singular of the substantive construed with शत and सहस्र occurs now and then, as Hariv. 1823 सहस्रेषा ब्राह्मणा [instead of ब्राह्मिः or ब्राह्मणम्], Bhāg. Pur. 4, 29, 24 वर्षं शतम्<sup>1</sup>).

**295.** Multiples of विंशति and the rest are denoted by putting them in the plural. R. 2, 31, 22 कोसल्या त्रिभूयादार्या सहस्रान्मद्दिधानपि (the princess Kausalyā might entertain even thousands of men such as I am)<sup>2</sup>; R. 3, 53, 24 राक्षसा निहता येन सहस्राणि चतुर्दश (by whom fourteen thousand Rāxasas have been killed); M. 11, 221 पिपडानां तिस्रो ऽशीतिः.... मासेनाघ्नन् (eating in a month  $3 \times 80$  balls); Mhbh. 13, 103, 14 गृहीनां शतानि<sup>3</sup>); — Panc. 253 प्रयत्नतैरपि (even by hundreds of endeavours); Mhbh. 9, 8, 41 दश चाश्वसहस्राणि (and ten thousand horse); Kathās. 35, 96 नव काञ्चनकोटीश्च विप्रेभ्यः प्रतिपाद्य तः.... तपस्तेषु.

**296.** Numbers, given approximately, are expressed by such compounds as आसन्नविंशः (nearly twenty), अद्भर-<sup>P. 2, 2</sup><sub>25.</sub> त्रिंशः (not far from thirty), उपदशः (almost ten), अधिकचत्वारिंशः (more than forty).

»Two or three" is द्वित्राणि, »three or four" त्रिचतुराणि, »five or six" पञ्चषट्. Comp. Daç. 94 the compound adverb द्वित्रिचतुरम् »twice, three-, four times."

1) Another singular idiom occurs R. 1, 18, 8 ऋतूनां षट् समत्ययुः (the six seasons passed), as if षट् meant »a hexad," not »six." Cp. Verz. der Berliner Sanskrithandschriften, n°. 834.

2) सहस्र is masc. or neuter. See the gāṇa अर्थार्थादि on P. 2, 4, 31.

3) An irregular plural is Kām. 15, 11 तुरङ्गमानां पत्किल्पितानामेको गतः षष्टिशतानि हन्ति instead of either षष्टिशतम् or षष्टिं शतानि.

**297.** Note the use of the words द्वयम् and त्रयम्, or द्वितयम् and त्रितयम् = „couple” and „triad;” „tetrad” is चतुष्टयम्. They are often the last members of compounds. M. 2, 76 वेदत्रयम् (the three Vedas), Utt. III, p. 37 ततः प्रविशन्ति नदीद्वयं तमसा मृत्ता च.

**298.** Putting अपि after a cardinal expresses the completeness of the number. So द्वावपि „both of them,” त्रयोऽपि „all three of them.” One says even सर्वेऽपि, सकला अपि etc. = „all of them.” Bhoj. 91 अद्भुतः कपिभिर्गन्धर्वकलानि सर्वेऽप्यपि चानि-  
तानि.

**299.** Cardinals may often be the latter members of compounds, see **294** and **296**.

When former members, they may make up with their latter members the so-called **dvigus**. This term is applied to two different kinds of compounds, viz. 1. the collective compounds, made up of a cardinal + a noun subst., and employed in a collective sense; they must be of the neuter gender, as चतुष्पथम् (juncture of four roads), but themes in अ may be feminines in ई as well as neuters in अम्, as त्रिलोकम् or त्रिलोकी (the <sup>P. 2, 1</sup> 23 three worlds); 2. compound adjectives, which rank with the bahuvrihis, but the notion inherent to which is not that of „possession,” but some other. So the word द्विगु itself, meaning „bought for [having the value <sup>P. 2, 1</sup> 52 of] two cows.” Ait. Br. 1, 1, 6 एकादशकपालः पुनोडाशः (a cake dressed on eight plates).

Beside this special use, the cardinals may be parts of the general tatpurushas and bahuvrihis, especially the latter. Such bahuvrihis as दशास्यः (having ten faces), विंशतिबाहुः (with twenty arms), are, in practice, by

far more frequent than the adjectival dvigus. Yājñ. 2, 125 चतुस्त्रिद्व्येकभागाः स्युर्वर्णाशो ब्राह्मणात्मताः (the sons of a brahman *own* according to the caste [of their mother] four, three, two and one portions), Pat. I, p. 62 त्रिपदासं बहुव्रीहिः (this bahuvrīhi is of three elements).

**300.** Ordinal nouns of number, when latter members of a bahuvrīhi, are of course used as substantives (cp. 224 R. 1). So R. 2, 40, 17 सीतातृतीयानाब्रह्मन्तृष्टा (after seeing them mounted, having Sītā as the third, that is: them two with Sītā). — Note the phrase आत्मतृतीयः (himself with two others), आत्मपञ्चमः (himself with four others) and the like, cp. Greek αὐτὸς τρίτος (πέμπτος). An instance of the same phrase, but in analytic form, may be Mahāv. IV, p. 74 आत्मना तृतीयेन गन्तव्यमित्यम्नाया आदेशः. — As to °द्वितीय almost = "with" cp. 58 R.

**301.** Fractions are expressed, as with us, by ordinal numbers, *either* accompanied by some word meaning "part," as in the proverbial phrase कलां नार्हति षोडशोम् (see f. i. Panc. II, 61, M. 2, 86), Ragh. 2, 66 उपभोक्तुं षट्शतमुर्वीः (to enjoy the sixth part of the earth), or put alone, when substantives of the neuter gender. M. 8, 398 ततो विंशं नृपो हरेत् (the king must take the twentieth part of it).

Moreover, they may be denoted also by compounds made up of a cardinal number + such a word as भाग, अंश etc. M. 8, 140 अग्नी-तिभागं गृह्णीयात् (he may take  $\frac{1}{3}$ ); ibid. 304 ऋषयःषड्भागः (a sixth part of the virtue); Kumāras. 5, 57 त्रिभागशेषासु निशासु (when but a third part of the night is left); Varāh. Brh. 53, 25 षट्भागः =  $\frac{1}{6}$ .

Very common are अर्धम् =  $\frac{1}{2}$  and पदः =  $\frac{1}{4}$ . They are substantives and accordingly construed with a genitive, but often also compounded. Note such turns as Bhoj. 48 सपादशतं गतेन्द्राः (125 tall

1) This mode of designating fractions is however not free from ambiguity, as त्रिभाग may denote also three parts." See Mallin. on Kumāras. 5, 57. Nor are compounds, beginning with अर्ध° always exempt from it. So f. i. अर्धशतम् may be = half a hundred that is 50, or = a hundred + half of it, that is 150. R. 2, 34, 13 अर्धसप्तशताः is explained in the Petr. Dict., as being 750, but GORRESIO is right in accepting it = 350.

elephants, lit. a hundred + a fourth of it), R. 2, 39, 36 अर्धसप्तशताः प्रमदाः = half seven-hundred women, that is 350. Rāj. 1, 286 तत्सूनुस्त्रिंशतं सार्धं वर्षाणामन्वशान्महीम् (— reigned 45 years —). Such numbers as  $1\frac{1}{4}$ ,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  etc. are signified by the compounds अर्धद्वितीय, अर्धतृतीय etc., that are adjectives and bahuvrhis, literally meaning 'the second, third etc. being [but] half' <sup>1)</sup>. M. 4, 95 गुरुश्रद्धान्दांस्यधीयीत सासान्विप्रो ऽर्धपञ्चमान् (for  $4\frac{1}{2}$  month a brahman must study the vedic texts). 'One and a half' is also अर्धार्धम् [literally = 'with a half more'], as अर्धार्धशतम् = 150.

Rem. How the interest of money is denoted, may appear from this passage of Manu (8, 142): द्विकं त्रिकं चतुष्कं च पञ्चकं च शतं समम्। मासस्य वृद्धिं गृह्णीयादणानामनुपूर्वशः (he may take 2, 3, 4 and 5% a month according to the caste).

**302.** By being repeated, cardinals or ordinals acquire a distributive meaning, see **252**, 3°. Panc. 194 त्रिभिस्त्रिभिर्गुणैः = *per ternos speculatores*, Vār. Yog. 2, 35 पञ्चमे पञ्चमे ऽदि (every fifth day). The same duty may be done by adverbs in °शतः, especially by बहुशतः, शतशतः, सहस्रशतः 'by hundreds, by thousands,' also 'in hundred, thousand ways, manifold', गणशतः (by crowds), f. i. Cat. Br. 14, 4, 2, 24, etc.

The proper employment of the adverbs in °धा is to indicate a real division of a whole into so and so many parts. M. 7, 173 द्विधा बलं कृत्वा (divided his forces in two parts), Kathās 106, 133 तदा ते शतधा मूर्धा विदलियन्ति (— into a hundred pieces).

Our adjectives in ... fold, etc. are represented in Sanskrit by compounds in °गुण — see the dictionary — as द्विगुण (twofold, double), त्रिगुण, चतुर्गुण, सहस्रगुण. The standard of comparison is here of course put in the ablative, cp. 106 R. 2.

1) On this subject see the disputation of Patanjali I, p. 426 who, as is often the case, rather obscures than illustrates the subject which he treats.

## SECTION IV.

## SYNTAX OF THE VERBS.

## CHAPT. I. General remarks. Kinds of verbs.

## Auxiliaries. Periphrase of verbs.

**303.** The verbal flection, which plays a prominent part in books on Sanskrit Grammar, has not that paramount character in Sanskrit Syntax, at least within the limits of the classic dialect. In days of old, the full value and the different properties of the rich store of the various verbal forms were generally much better understood and more skilfully displayed in literature, than in and after the classic period. The history of the syntax of the Sanskrit verb is a history of decay. Some verbal forms get wholly out of use, others become rare or are no more employed in their proper way. In this manner the conjunctive mood (नेत्) has been lost between the Vedic Period and Pāṇini, and in post-Pāṇinean times the differences between the past tenses are disappearing, and upon the whole the tendency of substituting participles and verbal nouns for the finite verb -- see 9; 14, 1°; 234 -- is increasing. Similarly the faculty of expressing by means of mere flection, not only tenses, moods and voices, but also newly framed verbs: causatives, desideratives, intensives, denominatives, has been much impaired in practice, though it has never ceased to be recognised by theory. In fact, it is only the causatives that have retained their old elasticity and are still made of any verbal root, but the desideratives and denominatives are as a rule em-

ployed within a little circle of forms often recurring, and the intensives have almost fallen out of use.

304. The **causatives** are expressive of such actions, whose subject is not the agent, but he at whose prompting the agent acts, as **देवदत्तः कटं कारयति** (N. N. gets the mat made). They are much used both in the active and in the passive voice. Their special construction has been dealt with in full (49—51). P. 3, 1. 26.

On the middle voice of causatives see 318, espec. c.).

Rem. Occasionally the causatives are used without a causative meaning, as if they were primitives<sup>1)</sup>. R. 1, 5, 9 **पुरीमावासयामस** (he inhabited the town); Prabodh. II, p. 43 **वृत्रघातयत्सुरपतिः**, here **घातयत्** is quite synonymous with **घहन्**.

Panc. 168 **किं मामुपालभयसि** = **उपालभसे**, ibid. 257 **भो मित्र किमद्य चित्रेलायां समायातो ऽसि/कस्मात्साह्वानं नालापयसि** [= **नालपसि**]. Thus often in the *prākṛts*. Sometimes the primitive and its causative are used promiscuously, as **धरति** and **धारयति**, both »to bear.” Sometimes there is some idiomatic difference, as in the phrase **राज्यं कारयति** (to exercise the royal power), here the primitive is not used. Sometimes the primitive having got obsolete, the causative has been substituted for it, as **विवाहयति** (to wed) instead of the archaic **विवहते**; of which primitive it is only the participle **व्यूह** that is used in the classic dialect. In special cases refer to a dictionary.

305. The **desideratives** are expressive of the „wish of doing” the action, which is denoted by the verbal root: **चिकीर्षति** P. 3, 1. 7.  
= **कर्तुमिच्छति** (he wishes to do), **लिप्सते** (he wishes to obtain). Sometimes they simply denote the „being about:” **गियतिषति फलम्** (the fruit is about to fall). It is stated in express terms by native grammarians,

1) This employment of the causatives is termed by vernacular grammarians **स्वार्थे पिच्छ-**.



that the employment of the desideratives is optional <sup>1)</sup> whereas the causatives cannot be periphrased. Accordingly, desideratives are less frequent in literature than causatives. They are not only met with when being finite verbs and participles, but also their derivatives in °आ (subst.) and °उ (adj.), which may be made from any desiderative, as चिकीर्षा (the wish of doing), चिकीर्षु (wishing to do).

Examples: Daç. 90 इयमर्थनिर्पेक्षा गुणोभ्य एव स्वं यौवनं विचिकीर्षते कुल-  
स्त्रीवृत्तमेवानुतिष्ठामति (she does not care for wealth, it is for virtues  
alone that she wishes to sell her charms and she is desirous of  
behaving herself like a respectable lady), ibid. 25 मदीयसहचरमणेन  
त्रिवांस्रमानं भूसुरमेकमवलोक्य (as I perceived some brahman, whom  
the crowd of my attendants were about to kill), Kathās. 29, 157  
राजा ... सुमर्त्युद्युधितः (the king being about to die of illness).

**306.** The intensives are not frequent in literature. In the  
Inten-  
sives. brāhmaṇas and in the great epic poems they are more  
to be met with than in younger texts. The participles of  
them seem to be more employed than the finite verbs.

Examples: Mhbh. 1, 90, 4 नरकं ते पतन्ति लालयमानाः, R. 2, 95, 10  
प्राप्यमानानां परान्पश्य. Kathās. 81, 17 the glow of the sun at the hottest  
part of the day is thus described एष हि संप्रति । देदीप्यते स्फुरद्द्रुष्मिन्निवा-  
जालो ऽञ्जिनीपतिः. In Panc. V, p. 321 the ram, that flees into the  
stable, after having been driven away by the cook with a blazing  
stick, is called जाल्वल्यमानशरीरः.

**307.** Various classes of denominatives are explained by Pāṇini<sup>1)</sup> (3, 1,  
Denomi-  
nati-  
ves 8—21; 25; 27—30). Among these, some verbs are very common  
in literature, as आकर्षयति (to hear), मिश्रयति (to mix), शब्दायते (to cry),  
but they have nothing remarkable from a syntactic point of view,  
since the speaker uses them ready made and may use them even

1) P. 3, 1, 7 धाताः कर्मणः समानकर्तृकादिच्छायां वा sc. सन्, to be under-  
stood from s. 5. But in P. 3, 1, 26, which sūtra teaches the form and em-  
ployment of the causatives, the particle of optionality is wanting.

without being aware of their etymology. The denominatives which concern us here, are those which one can frame by one's self, if wanted, such as पुत्रायति intr. (he wishes a son), पुत्रायति trans. (he treats as a son), ज्ञेनायते काकः (the crow behaves as if he were a falcon) and the like. Examples of them are occasionally met with in literature. Panc. I, vs. 5 इह लोके हि धनिनां पुरोऽपि स्वजनायते। स्वजनोऽपि दरिद्राणां सदा दुज्जनायते (here on earth even non-relatives behave towards the wealthy, as if they were their kinsmen, but to the poor even their own family are rather bad), Kād. I, p. 30 नम्रेष्व देवीभिः स्वयं कर्तृलोपनीयमानममृतायते (everything which is given [to me] by the queen herself in her own hand, is as ambrosia), Bhoj. 61 सोमनाथेन त्वद्गृह्मिन्नुपाय मयि कल्पदुमायितम् (Somanâtha.... has become a cornucopias to me).

Incho-  
atives  
and  
Faci-  
tives.

Some of those in आयते convey the notion of coming into some state out of another quite opposite, as भूत्रायते (to become frequent [after having been infrequent]), दुमनायते (to grow sorry), प्रोद्यायते, मन्दायते. But the number of these *inchoatives* is limited, see Kâç. on P. 3, 1, 12. — Cp. 308.

P. 3, 1,  
12.

308.

**Inchoatives** may be made of any noun, by compounding it in a special manner with the verb भू (WHITNEY § 1094), as भूशीभवति (to become frequent), शुक्लीभवति (to become white). The same compounds, when made up with the verb कृ, signify „to bring something into a state, the reverse of that, in which it was before 1)“ as शुक्लीकरोति (to make white), कृष्णीकरोति (to make black). These inchoatives are very common. Some of them have got some special meaning, as स्वीकृ (to get possession of), अङ्गीकृ (to allow), क्राडकृ (to embrace) see f. i. Nâgân. IV, p. 62.

P. 5, 4,  
50.

P. 7, 4,  
26, 27  
and 32

1) Kâç. on P. 5, 4, 50 अशुक्लः शुक्लः संयतं शुक्लीभवति। तं करोति शुक्लीकरोति.

Examples: Daç. 59 सकलमेव कन्यान्तःपुरमाकुलीबभूव, Çāk. II कृत्ययो-  
र्मिन्देशत्वाद् द्वैधीभवति मे मनः; — Prabodh. II, p. 42 Krodha says अन्धी-  
करोमि भुवनं अंधीकरोमि (I make the world blind and deaf), Mreçh.  
VIII, p. 256 दुष्करं विषमोषधीकर्तुम् (it is difficult to change poison into  
medecine).

Rem. Pāṇini allows even inchoatives, made with the verb अस्ति.  
From the examples given by Kāç. it is likely, they do exist  
only in the optative: शुक्लीस्यात्. As far as I know, instances are  
not found in literature.

- 309.** Another mode of making inchoatives is putting the suffix °सात् P. 5. 4,  
to the noun and adding भवति, resp. करोति. This class is, however, 52.  
limited to substantives, for the suffix सात् expresses the complete  
transition of one thing into another, as अग्निसाद्भवति (it vanishes in  
fire), भस्मसात्करोति (he lays in ashes). According to 308 one may  
say likewise अग्नीभवति, अग्नीकरोति, अग्नीस्यात्, etc. — Mhbh. 1, 33, 7  
स तूर्णं भस्मसाद्भवेत्, Kathās. 5, 100 राज्ञा हन्ति निशम्य त्वामुपकोशाग्निसाद्दपः।  
अकरोत्.

Rem. 1. In the case of partial transformation one likewise uses P. 5. 4,  
°सात् करोति, भवति and also °सात् संपद्यते f. i. अस्त्रां सेनायामुत्पातेन सर्वं 53  
शस्त्रमग्निसात्संपद्यते (in this army all weapons become fiery by a mi-  
racle). See Kāç. on P. 5, 4, 53.

Rem. 2. The same idioms °सात् + करोति, भवति, संपद्यते may also P. 5. 4,  
signify »to make —, resp. to become the property of:» राज्ञसाद् 54.  
भवति (संपद्यते) »it becomes the king's.» Kathās. 38, 157 ब्राह्मणासादकृत  
वसतिं स्वाम् (she bestowed her estate on the brahmans), Panc. I, 224  
परसात्कृता [द्रुहिता] (given into marriage).

Rem. 3. Panc. 45 °सात् is construed with the verb नी. It is  
written there [देवा] मां भस्मसान्नयन्तु.

- 309.** The upasarga प्र° prefixed to the verb has sometimes the power  
of denoting the beginning of the action. Kāç. on P. 1, 2, 21 प्रयोतितः  
or प्रयुतितः (he commenced to shine), Panc. I, 195 हसन्तं प्रहसन्त्येता  
हृदन्तं प्रहृदन्त्यपि (if he laughs, they begin to smile at him, if he  
weeps, they shed tears).

- 310.** Periphrase of verbs by means of a general verb to do  
with an object denoting the special action meant, is

Peri-  
phrase  
of  
verbs.

not uncommon. It is chiefly कृ that is used for this purpose. So कथां करोति = कथयति, नादं करोति = नदति, अध्ययनं करोति = अधीति, प्रसाधनं करोति (to make one's toilet). In the same way the verbs, expressive of *being*, *becoming* etc. are employed for representing nominal predicates. Of the kind are भवति, अस्ति, वर्तते, तिष्ठति, संपद्यते and the like, cp. 3 and 4. It is proper to call them **auxiliaries**. But the same appellation should be shared by कृ which, in reality, is the causative of the former ones: ग्रन्थः शिथिलो भवति —, संपद्यते (the knot is —, gets loose), ग्रन्थं शिथिलं करात (he loosens the knot).

Examples: 1. of कृ and its synonyms. Çāk. I एष मृगो विप्रकृष्टः संवृत्तः (this deer has got out of reach), Panc. 51 क्रमेण त्वमकस्माद्विचेतनः संतातः (why did you swoon thus on a sudden?), Nala 9, 19 त इमे प्राकुना भूत्वा वासोऽप्यपहरन्ति मे (they, having turned birds, bereave me even of my garment).

2. of कृ. — Çāk. I कथमिदानीमात्मानं निवेदयामि कथं वात्मनः परिहारं करोमि (— or shall I conceal myself?), R. 3, 25, 25 आर्तस्वरं चक्रुः.... निशाचराः, Kumâras. 1, 48 कुर्युर्बलिप्रियत्वं शिथिलं चर्मयः (the female yaks would abate of their pride on account of their tails), ibid. 4, 41 अग्निला-  
पमुदीरितेन्द्रियः स्वमुतायामकरोत्प्रतापनिः, Panc. 58 Vishnu says कालिकगणेशे प्रवेशं करिष्यामि [= प्रवेक्ष्यामि]. Kathās. 27, 160 अनाययत्स तो पुरीषी.... ब्रह्मो चकार च [= ब्रन्धयामास च]. Çank. on Ch. Up. p. 71 explains ब्रह्मः by ब्राह्मं कुर्मः. And so on.

Rem. Other verbs of similar, though less frequent and more limited employment, are ददति, दधाति, वहति, अधाति. One says कर्णा दा »to listen," हस्ततालं दा »to clap hands," अगलं दा »to bolt the door;" वृत्तिं वह् »to behave" (cp. R. 2, 12, 8) and the like. Vikr. II, p. 38 नोपवनलतासु.... चक्षुर्ब्रधाति धृतिम् ([your] eye does not rest on the creepers in the garden); Mhbh. 1, 74, 101 कण्ठं न बोद्धुं त्वमि-

हार्हसि (you ought not to use deceit); Hariv. 531 नारायणो दधे निद्रां ब्राह्मं वर्षसहस्रकम् (Nar. was asleep —), Ragh. 2, 7 राजलक्ष्मीं दधानः; Mudr. IV, p. 137 अमात्यराजसन्ध्यापाक्ये ब्रह्मैरः (R. is at enmity with C.); Daç. 19 महदाश्चर्यं विभ्रातः (being much astonished). And so on.

**311.** The verb substantive has been dealt with in the opening of this book (2 and 3). Here some remarks may be added:

अस्ति  
and its  
employ-  
ment.

1. The negation put to भवति or अस्ति may signify »not to exist at all, to be lost or dead.” Mudr. VI, p. 197 येषां प्रसादादिदमासोत्र एव न सन्ति (those, by whose favor I enjoyed all that glory, are now dead); R. 3, 31, 31 सीतया रहितो रामो न..... भविष्यति. Even the mere negation without verb may have this meaning. R. 3, 41, 19 Mārīca dissuades Rāvana from carrying off Sītā, saying आनयिष्यसि चेत्सो-तामाश्रमास्तहितो मया। नैव त्वमपि नाहं वै नैव लङ्का न राजसाः.

2. अस्ति, the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. of the present, may be used almost as a particle in the beginning of tales and the like.<sup>1)</sup> It is then the very first word. Kathās. 1, 27 Çiva begins to tell a story: अस्ति मामीक्षितुं पूर्वं ब्रह्मा नारायणास्तथा..... हिमवत्पादमूलमवापतुः, here अस्ति may be rendered by »well.”<sup>2)</sup> Sometimes it has the force of »it happens that,” as Pat. I, p. 48 अस्ति पुनः कुचिदन्यत्राप्यपत्रदे प्रतिष्ठित उत्सर्गोऽपि न भवति (but it happens also elsewhere that —), ibid. p. 444 अयमग्निहोत्रशब्दोऽस्त्येव ज्योतिषि वर्तते..... अस्ति हविषि वर्तते.

3. अस्मि, the first person, is now and then used instead of अहम्. See Petr. Dict. I, p. 536 s. v. अस् 6). — Daç. 158 सोऽहमस्मि सुहृ-त्साधारणाभ्रमपाकारपाः सुहृषु..... महान्तमुत्सवसमाजमालोकयम्, here अहमस्मि seems to be quite the same as अहम्. Likewise अस्ति and त्वमसि may

1) Cp. the imperatives अस्तु and भवतु, which are used to express the necessity or suitableness of yielding to some outward circumstance, like Greek *ἵνα*. But the present अस्ति represents, that the request of him who wishes the tale to be told, is actually complied with.

2) The frequent employment of this idiom may be inferred from this. In the *Pancatantra* ed. Jivānanda there are 71 numbered tales. Of them, 45 begin with अस्ति, and though in most of them no finite verb is found in the first sentence — in 14 cases there is — yet in the great majority, if not in all, अस्ति is not necessary for the understanding. But in all of them, the tale is told at the request of somebody, likewise in the two passages from the *Kathāsaritsāgara*, quoted by the Petr. Dict., viz. 1, 27 and 22, 56.

be occasionally used = त्वम्, as is mentioned by Vâmana; see *Vâmana's Stilregeln* by CAPPELLER, *Çabdaçuddhi* s. 12.

- 312.** कृ, भू and अस् are also auxiliaries in another sense, in as far as they help to form periphrastic tenses, as the periphrastic perfect (333), the future in °तृ, the durative (378), etc. The same may be said of some others as सिञ्चति, वर्तते, आस्ते, when signifying the durative, see 378.

- 313.** The ancient dialect had the faculty of severing preposition and verb in compound verbs, the so-called *tnesis*<sup>1)</sup>. The sacred texts from the mantras up to the sūtras abound in examples. The greatest freedom is of course found in the sanhitās. Ait. Br. 1, 21, 7 उपाश्विनोः प्रियं धाम गच्छति = अश्विनोः प्रि° धा° उपाश्वच्छति, Ch. Up. 5, 3, 1 कुमारानुत्वाश्विपत्नित्ता = कु° अन्वशिपत्नित्ता पिता, Âpast. 1, 25, 10 एते त्रिभिर्विषैरप पापं नुदन्ते. Classic Sanskrit has lost this faculty<sup>2)</sup>.

## CHAPT. II. On voices.

- 314.** The Sanskrit verb has three voices: the active (परस्मै-पदम्), the medial (आत्मनेपदम्) and the passive. Of these, the active is formally different from the other two, but the medial and passive voices have many forms in common. The perfect चक्रे may be = „he made [for himself]” as well as „he was made,” the future धरिष्यते is either „he will bear [for himself]” or „he will be

1) P. 1, 4 80—82 ते प्राग्धातोः। इन्द्रसि परेऽपि। व्यवहितान् »these [viz. the *upasargas* and *gatis*] are put before the root; but in sacred texts (*chandās*) also behind and separated from it by other words.”

2) Perhaps something like a remnant of the antique *tnesis* may occasionally be met with. In my notes, I find two passages regarding us here Mudr. I, p. 20 तं गच्छन्त्यनु and R. 2, 9, 28 सोऽर्थो न त्वा क्रमेदति.

borne. 1)" But in the present and its system (present, imperfect, potential or optative, imperative, participle of the present) each voice has a different formal expression, कुरुते etc. serving exclusively for the medium but क्रियते again having exclusively a passive meaning.

315. The participle in °त may have a passive, an intransitive and a transitive meaning, as will be shown afterwards. See 360.

Passive  
aorist  
in °ह्  
and the  
tenses  
derived  
from it. Apart from the system of the present, it is but one single form, viz. the 3<sup>d</sup> pers. of the sing. of the aorist — as अकारि, अस्तावि — which exclusively serves for the passive.

Rem. At the outset even this aorist in °ह् was a medial tense. See WHITNEY § 845 and DELARÜCK *Altind. Tempuslehre* p. 53 अचेति, p. 54 अदृशि etc. Pāṇini teaches an intransitive employment for अपादि (has arisen, — come forth), अदोपि (has shone), अतनि (was born), P. 3, 1, 60; 61. अजोधि (has awaked), अपूरि (has grown full), अतायि (has extended), अप्यायि (has grown big). In classic literature अपादि is not rare. Kathās. 42, 134 रज्जो अपादि तत् (the giant died).

316. From this 3<sup>d</sup> person in °ह्, however, it is allowed to derive P. 6, 4. 62. several passive tenses of all such roots, as end in a vowel, moreover of ग्रह्, दृष्ट् and हन्, see WHITNEY § 998 d. So f. i. दृक्ष्यते, the

1) Cp. f. i. Mhbh. 1, 159, 6 the future परित्रास्ये (I shall rescue) with Daṣ. 96 परित्रास्येते (those two will be rescued) or Mhbh. 1, 188, 18 तामृहे चार्जुनो धनुः (and Arjuna took the bow) with Kathās. 71, 34 स तया कपटे तामृहे (he was embraced by her). It would be an interesting subject-matter for inquiry to draw a statistical account of the common forms of the *ātmanepadam* with respect to their being used with a medial and with a passive meaning. It seems, indeed, that of several verbs these forms, especially the perfect, have the tendency of conveying exclusively a medial meaning, whereas some others seem to be exclusively passives. Before, however, such an account from standard authors will have been made, it would be premature to state something with certainty on this head.

common future *âtman.* of दृष्ट, may sometimes have a passive meaning, sometimes it is medial, but the future दर्शयिष्यते — derived from अदर्शि — cannot be used except in a passive sense. In practice, these tenses of an exclusively passive meaning seem to be very rare. Daç. 132 मन्त्रिणाहमग्राहयिषि (I was addressed by the minister), *ibid.* 133 कयापि दिव्याकार्या कन्ययोपास्यायिषि.

**317.** The difference between the active voice and the medial is for the greater part only a formal one, at least in the classic language. Many verbs are used in the *parasmaipadam*, but not in the *âtmanepadam*, and inversely. The special rules, given for this by grammar (P. 1, 3, 17 sqq.), do not belong to Syntax. Even if the same root is employed in both voices, it is not always difference of meaning, that discriminates them; in poetry, for inst., particularly in epic poetry, an other voice than the legitimate one is often admissible for metrical reasons.

Compare the fact, that sometimes the same verb is a *parasmaip.* in one tense and an *âtmanep.* in another. So म्रियते (he dies), but the future is मरिष्यति.

**318.** Nevertheless, the original difference between active and medial is not lost. Not only the grammarians, who have invented the terms *parasmai padam* and *âtmanepadam*, but the language itself shows, it is well aware of it. Several verbs may be employed in both voices in this way, that one avails one's self of the medial especially to denote „the fruit of the action being for the subject," f. i. देवदत्तः पचते „N. N. cooks for himself," but पचति, when it is to be told, he cooks for others. Of the causatives the medial voice serves always for that purpose: कटं कारयते „he orders a mat to be made for his own behalf."

P. 1, 3,  
72 foll.

P. 1, 3,  
74.



Proper  
sphere  
of the  
me-  
dium.

Within this proper sphere of the medium some distinctions may be made. The action may be done *a.*) by the subject himself in his own behalf, as *Āpast.* 1, 25, 10

एते त्रिभिर्वर्षेभ्य पापं नुदन्ते (they remove the sin from themselves —), *b.*) by order of the subject, likewise for himself; of the kind is the medium of यज् यजते is said of the patron, who makes the priests officiate for himself and who obtains the fruit of the sacrifice, whereas the officiating priests यजन्ति, *c.*) so that the same person is both subject and object, as *Ch. Up.* 4, 4, 2 सत्यकाम

एव ज्ञावाला ब्रवीथाः (you must name yourself — Compare with *a.*) such Greek medial verbs as *πορίζομαι* „I acquire for myself,” with *b.*) such as *παιδεύομαι τὸν υἱόν* „I have my son instructed,” with *c.*) such as *καλύπτομαι* „I wrap myself.” Those in *c.*) are mere reflexives.

Instances of medial meaning conveyed by medial forms seem to be found especially in the older texts, yet they are not wanting in the classic literature.

*a.*) *Pār.* 1, 4, 12 a marriage-mantra contains the words परिधत्त व्रामः (put on the garment [yourself]), for परिधेहि would mean „put it on another;” *Ait. Br.* 2, 11, 1 देवा वै यजमानान् [for their own benefit]; *Kathās.* 42, 201 अवृणोत कामार्ता तं त्रिधाधर्कन्यका (she chose him [for her husband]) and in this meaning regularly वृणोते, *f. i.* *Kumāras.* 6, 78; *R.* 1, 61, 21 राजपुत्र नयस्व नान् (prince, take me with you); *Kathās.* 25, 232 — the king, being presented with a golden lotus, puts it into a silver vase, and says: I would I had another similar lotus to put it into the other silver vase — आस्यापयिष्ये चासुब्धिन्दितीये कलशेऽपि तत्; — *Pat.* I, p. 281 उन्नपते पाणी (he warms his hands), *ibid.* p. 282 आयच्छते पाणी (he stretches his hands); — *Panc.* 64 राज्ञोऽन्तःपुरं जलक्रीडां कुरुते (the king's zenana are sporting in the water); *Mhbh.* 1, 175, 33 सा गोः..... विप्रवामित्रस्य तत्सैन्यं व्यदूत्रयत सर्वशः.

*b.*) *R.* 2, 4, 22 Dacaratha says to his son Rāma तत्र पृथेऽभिषिञ्चस्व

(have yourself anointed —), and so always with this verb;

c.) Apast. 1, 6, 3 न चैनमभिप्रसार्यते (he shall not stretch out [his feet] towards him); Mbbh. 1, 121, 31 दर्शयस्व नरव्याघ्र (show yourself, gallant prince); R. 1, 75, 3 महद्भुः । पूरयस्व शरैर्षौव स्वयलं दर्शयस्व च.

Rem. 1. If a reflexive pronoun be added, one may use the active as well as the medial voice.

P. 1, 3,  
77.

Rem. 2. P. 1, 3, 68 teaches the use of the medial causatives भोषये and विस्मापये when meaning: „I cause [you] to fear (wonder at) myself,” whereas the regular forms भाययति, विस्माययति have no reflexive meaning.

Rem. 3. Reciprocity may be denoted by compound verbs beginning by जति°. These must be generally medial verbs. See P. 1, 3, 14—16 and Pat. I, p. 277.

319.

Passiv.  
voice

The passive voice is much used in Sanskrit both personally and impersonally, as has been pointed out 7 and 8.

P. 3, 1  
87.

Moreover it serves to signify such intransitive actions as *the rice boils, the wood splits पचत ओदनम्।मिद्यते काष्ठम्*'), whereas „I boil the rice, I split the wood” is expressed by the active voice *ओदनं पचामि।काष्ठं भिन्नामि*'). Pat. II, p. 14 कूलस्य निपतिपतो लोढाः प्रीर्यन्ते (from a river-bank, which is about to give way, lumps of earth are breaking off), Kumâras. 4, 5 न विदीर्ये (v. a. my heart does not break), Kathâs. 25, 45 वहनं समाश्रयत (the vessel burst), Çat. Br. 1, 5, 4, 5 व व्रजस्यतीनां फलानि मुच्यन्ते (the fruits fall down from the trees). Of the kind are दृश्यते (to appear, to seem), उपचोयते (to increase), अपचोयते (to decrease), युज्यते (to suit, to be fit) and the like

1) The passive, when personal, is styled कर्मणि (expressive of the object), when impersonal, भावे (express. of the state), see P. 1, 3, 13; 3, 1, 67. When having an intransitive or reflexive meaning, it is styled कर्मकर्तरि (express. of both subject and object).

2) Yet one likewise says f. i. साधु स्थाली पचति (the pot boils well), cp. Kâç. on P. 3, 1, 87.

Rem. 1. It is not allowed, however, to use that intransitive P. 3, 1, passive of all verbs. Pāṇini excepts the roots दुह्, स्तु and नम्. One 88. says दुग्धे - not दुह्यते - गोः स्वयमेव, नमते - not नम्यते - दण्डः स्वयमेव "the cow is milking; the stick bends." Patanjali extends the exception to others, especially to all causatives, and mentions a vārttika of the Bhāradvājīyas which enumerates even a larger list of exceptions. This statement of the Bhāradvājīyas has been accepted by the Kāçikā. At all events, this much is certain, that of several verbs the medial voice has also an intrans. meaning. A concurrence of medial and passive is taught by P. 3, 1, 62 and 63 for the aorist of roots ending in a vowel and also of दुह्; with intransitive meaning it may be said अकारि or अकृत, अदोहि and अदुग्ध, f. i. अकारि or अकृत कटः स्वयमेव.

On the other hand, the pure reflexive — 318 c) — is occasionally expressed by a passive; especially मुच्यते "to release one's self." R. 3, 69, 39 परिमुच्यस्व राघव.

Rem. 2. Note the idiom तप्यते तपस्तापसः, a passive with etymo. P. 3, 1, 89 logical object. See f. i. M. 2, 167.

**320.** **Intransitives** are often expressed also by the verbs of the so-called *fourth* class of conjugation, which chiefly comprises roots with intransitive meaning, as कृष्यति, कृष्यति, सिध्यति, भ्रश्यति. For the rest, intransitive meaning is by no means restricted to a special set of forms and may be conveyed by any. So f. i. स्वप् "to sleep" is formally an active स्वपिति, शो "to lie" a medial शेति, मृ "to die" a passive म्रियते.

The difference of accentuation which exists between the verbs of the 4<sup>th</sup> class and the passives, must not blind us to the incontestable fact of their close connection. At the outset, there is likely to have been one conjugation in °यति °यते with intransitive function, whence both the 4<sup>th</sup> class and the passive have sprung. Nor is it possible, even in accentuated texts, to draw everywhere with accuracy the boundary-line between them, see WHITNEY § 761,

especially *b.*) and *c.*) and 702, cp. also the rule of P. 6, 1, 195. — The old language, especially the dialect of the Mahābhārata, affords many instances of passive forms with the endings of the *parasmaipadam*, even with passive meaning. See f. i. Mhbh. 1, 24, 15; 38, 13; 51, 9; 102, 23; Nala 20, 31 etc.<sup>1)</sup>.

### CHAPT. III. Tenses and moods.

**321.** The Sanskrit finite verb comprises the following tenses and moods: 1. the *present* (लट्), 2. the *imperfect* (लङ्), 3. the *perfect* (लिट्), 4. the *aorist* (लुङ्), 5. and 6. the *future* in स्यति (लृट्) and the *periphrastic future* (लुट्), 7. the *imperative* (लोट्), 8. the *potential* or *optative* (लिट्), 9. the *precative* (लिट्ङाशिषि), 10. the *conditional* (लृङ्). To them we must add for the archaic dialect the *conjunctive* (लेट्), for the classic language the *participles* in त and तवन्त्, as far as they do duty for finite verbs. Of these, 1—6 and the said participles constitute that, which we are wont to call „the indicative mood;” the other moods are represented by 7—10 and by the लेट्.

Vernacular grammar makes no distinction between tenses and moods, which is, indeed, less developed in Sanskrit, than it is in Latin and Greek.<sup>2)</sup>

1) P. 3, 1, 90 mentions two roots, which are verbs of the 4<sup>th</sup> class, *paramaipada*, when being used as intransitive-reflexives, whereas they are otherwise conjugated, when transitives. But Pāṇini expressly states that the eastern grammarians teach so, the passive of them may, therefore, be also employed, f. i. कुप्यति or कुप्यते पादः स्वयमेव (the foot strikes), रज्यति or रज्यते वस्त्रं स्वयमेव (the garment is dying). Utt. V, p. 102 नेत्रे स्वयं रज्यतः.

2) In Pāṇini's grammar the 10 or 11 tenses and moods form *one* category,

**322.** Of the tenses, which constitute the indicative mood, the present is represented by *one*, the future by *two*, the past by *four* (aorist, imperfect, perfect, participles). Of the two futures, that in *स्यति* is the general exponent of the future. Likewise the aorist and the participles are the general exponents of the past. The other past tenses and the other future have but a limited sphere of employment. We may remark that those limits are quite different from what one would expect judging from the names, by which Sanskrit tenses have been termed by European scholars. Sanskrit imperfect and perfect have nothing in common with their cognominal tenses in Latin or French or Greek, and the difference f. i. between the employment of Skr. *लेखितास्मि* and *लेखिष्यामि* can in no way be compared with that which exists between Lat. *scripturus sum* and *scribam*.

Rem. Sanskrit makes no distinction between absolute and relative tenses. Hence, if one wants to denote what *was* about to be done in the past<sup>1)</sup>, one employs the same tense which is expressive of what *is* about to be done now, viz. the future. Similarly, the same past tenses, which signify that which *is* accomplished *now*, may serve also for the expression of the action, which *will be* accomplished at some future point of time. Nâgân. III, p. 55 *प्रिये गच्छ त्वमात्मनो गृह्महमपि मित्रावपुं दृष्ट्वा त्वरितमागत एव*, here the past tense *आगतः* has the value of the so-called *futurum exactum* of Latin, *ego advenero*.

For this reason too, the present does also duty for the durative of the past (327) and the past tenses are also significative of the remote past (339).

but do not bear a common appellation. The *Kātantra* names them *विभक्ति*, by the same term which is used for the »cases» of the nouns. See Kât. 3, 1, 11—34 with commentary.

1) This was at the outset the duty of the so-called conditional, but in classic Sanskrit this employment having fallen out of use, it is the future that is to express *scripturus eram* as well as *scripturus sum*. Cp. 347 R.

## PRESENT. (लट्).

**323.** The **present; tense** is in Sanskrit what it is every-  
 Pre-  
 sent where, the expression of facts present or represented as such. The notion „present" has of course the utmost elasticity. It applies to any sphere of time of which ourselves are the centre and it may have as small or as great a periphery as possible. Accordingly, facts which are represented as happening always and everywhere are put in the present. It is superfluous to illustrate this by examples.

**324.** Further, the present may denote a near past or a near  
 Pre-  
 sent, denoting a  
 near  
 future. future. P. 3, 3, 131

1. The *present denoting a near future* may be compared P. 3, 3, 5 and 6.  
 with such phrases as: I am going on a journey next week, instead of: I shall go. So कदा भुङ्क्ते = कदा भोक्ष्यते, etc.

Bhoj. 42 यदि न गम्यते श्रो राजसेवका अस्मान्निःसारयन्ति (if we do not go, the king's attendants will turn us out to-morrow), R. 3, 68, 13 क्षिप्रमेव विनश्यति (he will die soon), Panc. 143 धन्योऽहं यद्व्रता सह तत्र कालं नयामि (I am happy, I shall pass the time there with you).

In subordinate sentences the present is very often employed in this manner, especially in final and consecutive clauses, as will be shown afterwards.

Rem. 1. Panini gives a special rule concerning the present P. 3, 3, 4.  
 denoting the future with यावत् and पुरा. Example of यावत्: Panc. 286 एतो यत्नेन रक्षणीयो यावदहं समागच्छामि (— till I come back). As to पुरा, it may be 1. an adverb „erelong" 2. a conjunction = Lat. *priusquam*. The rule holds good for both. Daç. 136 क्षिणोति च पुरा स कृतघ्नो भवन्तम् (and that ungrateful man will ere long kill you), R. 2, 116, 19 पुरा.... प्राप्नोतीमुपदिंसां तपस्विषु । दर्शयन्ति हि दृढास्ते त्यक्त्या

रममाश्रमम् (before those wicked beings inflict any corporal injury upon the ascets, we will leave this hermitage).

Rem. 2. Another consequence of its fitness for denoting a near future is exhibited by its doing duty for a conjunctive (356).

**325.** 2. *The present denoting a near past.* It may be said

P. 3,  
131.

Pre-  
sent  
denot-  
ing a  
near  
past.

अग्रमागच्छामि „I arrive" by one, who has just arrived.

Utt. I, p. 3 धर्मसिनाद्धिशति वासगृहं नरेन्द्रः (the king has just retired from his seat of justice to his inner apartments). — Of this kind are the rules given by Pānini (3, 2, 120 and 121) for the employment of present and aorist in answers. If one asks »have you made the mat?», the answer may be, when using न, न करोमि or नाकार्षम् »no, I have not," or if an interrogation, »have I not?" Likewise with नु, अहं नु करोमि or, न्वकार्षम्. But with ननु exclusively the present: ननु करोमि »indeed, I have." 1).

Rem. Inversely, it may happen that a Sanskrit aorist is to be rendered by an English present, see note 1 on page 253 of this book.

**236.** Moreover, the present is often used in relating past actions. Then we may call it historical present.

Histo-  
rical  
pre-  
sent.

Properly it is distinguished by the particle स्म added,

P. 3, 2,  
118  
and  
119.

but स्म is occasionally wanting. Nala 3, 18 न तात्तं शक्नुवन्ति स्म व्याहर्तुमपि किञ्चन (they could not utter a single word to him), Kathās. 1, 33 इति वक्ति स्म पार्वती। प्रत्युवाच ततो भर्गः (thus spoke Pār-vatī, and Īva answered), Panc. 201 a story ends thus: प्राशकाश्च तद्दिनादारभ्य सुखेन स्वेषु स्थानेषु तिष्ठन्ति स्म (and since that day the haro lived happily in their dwellings); — Kumāras. 3, 13 व्यादिश्यते भूधरः तामवेक्ष्य कृष्णेन देहेद्वहाय श्रेष्ठः (Īsha has been appointed —).

**327.** But the most common employment of the historical present is that of expressing facts when „going on."

The  
present  
is the  
dura-  
tive  
tense

As Sanskrit imperfect (लङ्) has not the character of a durative, like the imperfect in Latin and French,

par ex-  
cellence.

1) A vārttika, expounded and agreed to by Patanjali finds fault with this rule of Pānini क्रियासमाप्तेर्विवक्षितत्वात्. See Pat. II, p. 122.

**अभरन्** may be both a synonym of Latin *ferebam*, and of *tuli* <sup>1)</sup>. But the present **भरामि** is by its nature a durative tense, and for this reason it is eminently adapted to signify the durative, even of the past. Of course, **स्म** may be added in that case (326), but it is not necessary and is generally wanting in the body of a narration. Accordingly, **भरामि** is often = Lat. *ferebam*.

Examples: Panc. 165 a new story begins in this manner अस्ति कस्मिंश्चिदधिष्ठाने सोमिलको नाम कोलिको वसति स्म (*habitabat*). स च.... पार्श्वोचितानि सदैव वस्त्रापयुत्वादयति (*is vestes conficiebat*). परं तस्य.... न भोजनाच्छादनाभ्यधिकं कथमप्यर्थमात्रं संपद्यते (*fiebat*); Ch. Up. 1, 2, 13 स ह नैमिषीयानामुद्राता बभूव (*fuit*). स ह स्वैभ्यः कामानामायति (*incantabat*); Mhbh. 1, 157, 5 निवेद्यन्ति स्म तदा कुन्त्या भैक्षं सदा निशि (at that time they delivered the food begged to Kuntī every night); Pat. I, p. 5 पुराकल्प एतदासीत् । संस्कारोत्तरकालं ब्राह्मणा व्याकरणां समाधेयते (*discebant*)..... तद्यत्वे न च्या; Bhoj. 40 तदाप्रभृति न निद्राति न च भुङ्क्ते न केनचिद्वक्ति केवलमुद्दिग्मनाः स्थित्वा दिवानिशं प्रविलपति (from that time he did not sleep or take food or converse with anybody, but with a heavy mind he lamented night and day); Panc. 145 begins the story of some monk, who did inhabit (प्रतिवसति स्म) some monastery, his ordinary life is described by a set of present tenses without स्म (समाचरति.... स्वपिति.... समाप्तापयति). — A past tense and the present may even be put close together. R. 2, 63, 14 Daçaratha relates to his queen देव्यन्ता त्वमभवो

1) In the brāhmanas the present with **स्म**, according to DELBRÜCK *Altindische Tempuslehre* p. 129, is always = Lat. imperfect, never = Lat. perfect: „Das Präsens mit sma steht im Sinne der Vergangenheit, jedoch — so viel ich sehe — nicht so dass damit ein einmaliges vergangenes Ereigniss bezeichnet würde. Vielmehr drückt das Präsens mit sma dasjenige aus, was sich öfters, besonders was sich gewohnheitsmässig ereignet hat.”

In the classic dialect, however, **भरति स्म** is both = *ferebat*, and = *tulit*. Plenty of instances may be drawn from classic literature. Only see the examples to P. 3, 2, 118; 119, and Kathās. 1, 33 quoted 326.



युवराज्ञो भवाम्यहम् (at the time you were not married and I was hoir apparent).

Rem. Pānini especially mentions the freedom of employing the present instead of a past tense with पुरा (formerly, before) So Panc. 202 the crow says कस्मिंश्चिद्गृहे पुराहं व्रसामि. Here the present is used, but the aorist f. i. Kathās. 25, 74 पुराभूत्सुमहात्रिप्रः, the imperf. f. i. ibid. 24, 19 अभवत्युरे..... पुरा राजा and Pat. I, p. 5 quoted above.

### PAST TENSES.

**328.** In defining the employment of the past tenses one must distinguish between such past facts, as have not lost their actuality, and such as have, and therefore belong to history. The historical past may be expressed by any past tense, but the actual past not. In other terms, as a rule, English *he did* and *he had done* may be rendered by Sanskrit aorist, imperfect, perfect or the participle (कृतवान्, कृतमनेन), but English *he has done* only by the aorist or the participle, not by the imperfect or by the perfect.

**I.** For expressing the **historical past**, the four past tenses are used almost promiscuously, and the historical present (326, 327) may be added to them as a fifth.

Examples: Kathās. 24, 10 it is told, one asked (अपृच्छत् imperf.), vs. 11 the other replied (अवादीत् aor.), vs. 13 the former asked again (पप्रच्छ perf.). Ibid. vs. 214 (भयान्न ते। यदा तस्याग्रकन्धकुं दूतान्विषयसुनुस्तदा। ते च.... तमब्रुवन् »as they could not tell it him [themselves], they sent messengers, who told him”) is an other instance of aor., perf. and imperf. used promiscuously and without the slightest difference of meaning. Panc. 276 we have this succession of facts: ब्राह्मणो भाग्यमभिहितवान् (participle)..... इत्यभिधाय प्रायासीत् (aorist)। अथ तस्यां पुण्यत्राणिकायां पङ्कुरीतमुद्गिरयति (histor. pres. with durative meaning »was singing)। तच्छ्रुत्वा तयाभिहितम् (partic.)..... पङ्कुरब्रवीत् (imperf.) and so

on. In an other story Panc. 51, we have this succession of facts: a weaver and a cartwright dwelled (प्रतिवसतः स्म) in the same town and lived always together (कालं नयतः). One day a great festival took place (संवृत्तः) and a procession, in the midst of which they behold (दृष्टवन्तो) a maiden of great beauty. On seeing her, the weaver fell in love with her and swooned (सदृसा भूतले निपपान). His friend the cartwright got him carried home (स्वगृहमागययत्) and by proper treatment he soon recovered (सचेतनो अभूत्). — Upon the whole, there seems to be a tendency to alternate the past tenses in literary compositions.

**329.** Now, the **imperfect** and the **perfect** are restricted to that sphere of employment. They cannot be used except of such facts as have lost their actuality for the speaker<sup>1</sup>). Both of them are only available for the historical past. They are to be rendered by our past tense, both **अकरोत्** and **चकार** being = „he did.”

Imperfect and perfect are restricted to the sphere of the historical past.

Both of them are equally applied to facts, that have happened but once (Lat. perfectum historicum), and to actions repeated or continuous (Lat. imperfectum).<sup>2</sup>

**330.** There is, however, a difference between the perfect and the imperfect. It is taught by Pāṇini in express terms, that *the perfect (लिट्) is restricted to such facts as have not been witnessed by the speaker*, and the practice of good authors is generally in accordance with this statement. It is somewhat uncommon to meet with a per-

Difference between imperfect and perfect.

P. 3, 2, 115.

1) This is meant by Pāṇini, when he teaches लङ् (and, as it stands under the same adhikāra, also लिट्) to be used अनयतने. P. 3, 2, 111.

2) Cp. Kathās. 24, 214 दूतान्विरसृजुस्तदा ते च तमव्रुवन् = nuntios miserunt, iique ei dixerunt, with Mhbh. 1, 68, 9, which verse describes the happiness of the subjects of Dashyanta during his reign स्वधर्मै रेमिरे वर्णाः..... आसन्धैवाकुतोभयाः = hominum ordines suis quisque officiis delectabantur, erantque ab omni parte tuti.

fect when expressive of an action the speaker has witnessed himself.

Good authors, accordingly, avoid using the perfect tense, if the facts narrated have been witnessed by the speaker. The *Daçakumâracarita* abounds in stories of adventures, told by the very persons who have experienced them; all past tenses are employed promiscuously, only perfects are wanting. But, in the same work, if the author himself is speaking, or if any of his heroes is relating a fable of olden times, the perfects make their appearance side by side with the other past tenses<sup>1</sup>). The same observation may be made with respect to the *Kathâsaritsâgara*<sup>2</sup>).

Yet, from this one must not infer, that on the other hand the imperfect is *restricted* to the relation of past facts witnessed by the speaker<sup>3</sup>). Even, if Pāṇini had taught

1) So there is not a single perfect in the whole story of Apahâra-varma, as he relates his own adventures; for the same reason perfects are wanting in the stories of other princes. The sixth ucchvâsa, *Mitrâ-guptacaritam*, has no perfects, while Mitragupta tells all what has happened to himself, but as soon as he is narrating to the giant the four little tales of Dhūmîni etc., perfects abound.

2) Exceptions may, however, occasionally be found. Daç. 110 and 111 prince Upahâravarma, when relating his own adventures, says twice हरोद, while speaking of a woman, who wept before his eyes. R. 3, 67, 20 the vulture Jaṭāyu informs Rāma, how Rāvaṇa सीतामादाय वैदेहीमुत्पपात विहायत्सम्. Kathâs. 6, 43 the clever merchant, who has made his fortune by trade, uses the perfect ददौ, while relating, that each woodcutter gave him two pieces of wood, as he presented them with a fresh draught. Likewise Nāgân. V, p. 77 पपात instead of the aor. of a fall, which the speaker has seen on the same day and with his own eyes. But, I repeat, such deviations are upon the whole very rare, at least in good authors.

3) The term परोक्षे for the sphere of the perfect, is a point of dispute with the commentators. It is asked, what kind of actions may be said to fall under this category, and as the term, when strictly interpreted, signifies 'beyond the reach of the eye,' it has been deemed necessary to give an additional rule in express terms, that 'well-known facts falling within the speaker's sphere of observation are to be put in the imperfect — not in the perfect — even if they have in fact not been

so <sup>1</sup>), such a rule would be in direct opposition to the constant practice of Sanskrit literature up to the Vedas. The imperfect is always and everywhere used both of past facts which are within the compass of the speaker's experience and of those which are not.

witnessed by him." This vārttika seems to be as old as Kātyāyana, it is expounded by Pat. II, p. 119.

1) It is not quite sure, that he has. Still, when looking closely at Pāṇini's own words about the employment of लङ् and लिट् and at the commentaries and disputes of his scholiasts, we may consider it a tenet of the grammarians, that लङ् is not available within the sphere set apart for लिट्. From 3, 2, 116 ह्यश्नतोर्लङ् च with ह and अश्नत् (forsooth) — cp. 397 R. 3 — लङ् may also be used within the sphere of लिट्, cp. s. 115, we can draw no other inference, than even this, that in any other case one would be wrong in using लङ् परोक्षे. But it is possible, that this sūtra 116 did not belong to the original work of Pāṇini. Indeed setting this sūtra apart, the very arrangement of the rules which treat of the suffixes and tenses of the past, would rather induce us to suppose Pāṇini having taught the employment of लङ् both अपरोक्षे and परोक्षे. From 3, 2, 84 up to 123 भूते is adhikāra, the suffixes taught there are accordingly expressive of "the past." Now, from 84—110 this "past" is not specialized and comprises *any past whatever*. With s. 111 the first restriction makes its appearance, it is stated that the imperfect (लङ्) is used अनद्यतने "denoting the not-actual past." From there अनद्यतने remains adhikāra till s. 119, but s. 115 a second restriction is added to the first: the suffixes are not only expressive of the past अनद्यतने but also परोक्षे. Now the question is simply this: Has Pāṇini meant sūtra 111 (employment of लङ्) to be an *exception* to 110 (employment of लुङ् "aorist") and likewise 115 (employment of लिट्) an *exception* to 111 — or is each of these rules to be interpreted separately and considered by itself? According to the former acceptance, the aorist is taught to be *restricted* to past actions that have happened to-day, the imperfect *restricted* to past actions before to-day, but witnessed by the speaker; according to the latter, the aorist is expressive of any past both actual and historical, and the imperfect of any historical past both witnessed and not-witnessed by the speaker. The former acceptance is that of Sanskrit grammarians up to Patanjali and the author of the vārttikas, the latter is in accordance with the practice of Sanskrit literature.

Rem. 1. In putting questions, the difference between perfect and imperfect vanishes, and it seems, also that between those tenses and the aorist. If I rightly understand P. 3, 2, 117, the employment of both perf. and imperf. in putting questions is prescribed by Pāṇini, even if the past action be »near in time” आसन्नकाले. Kāç. exemplifies this rule कश्चित्कंचित्पृच्छतिः अगच्छद् देवदत्तः । त्रगाम देवदत्तः. R. 3, 19. 6 Khara asks his sister Ūrpanakhâ कोऽयमेवं महावीर्यस्त्वं त्रिहृषां चकार ह् (what strong man has disfigured you thus?). Cp. Ch. Up. 4, 14, 2 quoted 345.

Rem. 2. Another rule of Pāṇini — 3, 3, 135 — forbids the imperfect, the perfect and the present with स्म<sup>1</sup>) in two cases: क्रियाप्रबन्धसामोपयोगोः. According to the gloss of the Kāçikâ *kriyâprabandha* is »uninterrupted action,” *sāmīpya* »the time which immediately adjoins the time of the speaker.” In these cases the aorist and the participles are stated to be employed, not the other past tenses. Kāç. gives these examples यावत्तत्रैवमनुमदात् (as long as he lived he distributed food [to the poor]), येन पौर्णमास्यातिक्रान्तेतस्यामुपाध्यायोऽग्निनायित (at the next full moon the teacher worshipped the holy fires). I do not know how far this injunction is confirmed by the evidence furnished by Sanskrit literature. For the rest cp. 341 R.

### 331.

The perfect of the archaic dialect.

Perfect, when a present tense.

At the outset, the perfect had not the restricted function, which it has in the classic dialect. In the old vedic mantras, like the aorist, it may denote every shade of the past, and occasionally it has even the power of a present tense, in the same way as for instance Greek *ἔσθην οἶδα*, Latin *memini consuevi*, Gothic *vait mag*, sim. So Rgv. 5, 60, 3 त्रिगाम »is afraid,” ibid. 1, 113, 3 तस्यतुः »they stand still” and the other instances to be found in DELBRÜCK *Altindische Tempuslehre* p. 103 sqq.

The classic language has but two perfects, expressive of the present, viz. वेद (he knows) and आह (he says); the latter may also be used of the past.<sup>2</sup>) From the litur-

1) Though not mentioned either by Kāç. or by Patanjali, the लिट् and the लृट् स्मे must needs be implied in the prohibition, for the *adhikāra* अन्वयतने implies them too.

2) My notes contain, however, two other instances. Panc. 246 आतृगाम

gical writings — where, for the rest, the employment of the perfect is already confined within the same limits as afterwards, see DELBRÜCK l. l. p. 131 — we may adduce moreover ईजे 'he rules' (f. i. Ait. Br. 1, 30, 3), जगार् 'he is awake' Ch. Up. 4, 3, 6 and perhaps some others, see f. i. Ait. Br. 2, 41, 4.

332. From the above it is sufficiently clear, that the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person of the perfect are hardly met with in classic Sanskrit, except of वेद् and श्राद्. — For the 1<sup>st</sup> person. Patanjali is at a loss, how to employ it, unless to relate facts done while being asleep or drunk.<sup>1)</sup> That the 2<sup>d</sup> person of the plural is not used, is evident from a passage of the commencement of the *Mahābhāṣya*; there it is observed, that such forms as ऊव, तेर्, चक्र, पेच exist in theory only, as one does not say कृ ऊव but कृ यूयमुचिताः. See Pat. I, p. 8, l. 23; p. 9, l. 11.

333. There is no syntactical difference between the perfect simple and that, which is made by periphrase with श्रास्, चकार med. चक्रे, and बभूव.

Peri-  
phras-  
tic  
perfect.

In the brāhmanas चकार and चक्रे are almost exclusively used for this purpose.<sup>2)</sup> Nor does Pāṇini teach other auxiliaries.<sup>3)</sup>

is used in the sense of Greek *ἔκω*. The serpent declares to the frogs ततो ऽहं युष्माकं वाहनार्थमाज्ञायाम् (by this [viz. the curse of the brahman, whose son he had bitten to death] I have come to you in order to be your carrier). In the Gauri recension of the *Çākuntala*, V, p. 109 of the 2<sup>d</sup> ed. of Tarivarāṅga (Calc. 1864) (Āṅgarava says to Dushyanta यन्मयः समयाहिमां मदीदां दूहितं भवानुपयेमे तन्मया प्रीतिमता युवयोर्नुज्ञातम्. In both instances the perfect is rather expressive of an action finished, than of an action past.

1) The example given is मन्त्रो — or सुप्तो — ऽहं किल विललाप. — Another case of its employment is in strong denials, as when one asks दन्तिपापयं प्रविष्टोऽसि and the other answers नाहं दन्तिपापयं प्रविष्टेज. See vārtt. on P. 3, 2, 115 in Patanj. II, p. 120; the instance given there is evidently a quotation from some literary work.

2) In the Aitar. Brāhm. the periphr. perfect with श्रास् is used but once. See the edition of AUFRECHT, p. 429.

3) To interpret P. 3, 1, 40 कृजः, as if it were a pratyāhāra of कृ + भू + अस्, is, not to mention other objections, too artificial and too subtle,

But even in the epic poems all of them are used, especially *अस*, which seems also afterwards to be the most frequent, whereas *अभूत्* is the rarest.

**334.** II. The **aorist** (लुङ्) is expressive of any past, either  
 Aorist. historical or actual; *अकार्षम्* may be = „I did,” and = „I have done.” Examples of the historical aorist have been given **328**.

When denoting the actual past, that is such past acts as are so recent as not to have lost their actuality at the time of their being related, the aorist is used side by side with the participles in *तवन्* and *त*; neither imperf. nor perfect are then available. „I have seen the man” is *अद्राक्षं पुरुषम्* or *दृष्टवानस्मि* [not *अपश्यम्* nor *दर्श*].

Examples of the aorist denoting the actual past. Ait. Br. 1, 6, 11 *तस्मादाचक्षाणमाहुरद्रागिति। स ययदर्शमित्याहायस्य अदूदधति* (for this reason, one says to an eye-witness: have you seen it? for if he says „he has,” they believe him); R. 2, 89, 5 Bharata has spent the night with Guha, the next morning his host asks him *कञ्चित्सुखं नदीतीरे ज्वात्सीः काकुत्स्थ शर्वरीम्* (have you past the night well?); Mhbh. 1, 167, 23 king Drupada having lost half his kingdom to Drona, goes to some brahman, who may procure him a means for avenging himself, and says *द्रोणः परत्रैष्ट माम्*; Daç. 27: it has been predicted to the brahman Mâtanga that he will soon meet with a prince, now, when he really meets with a prince, he tells him this prediction and adds these words *तदादिशानुगुणमेव भवदागम-नमभूत्* [neither *अभवत्* nor *अभूत्* are here admissible]; Çâk. VII Mâtali congratulates Dushyanta on finding back his wife with his son, the king replies *अभूत्संपादितस्त्वादुक्लो मे मनोरथः* (my desire is gone

to be true. Pânini knew, or at least approved, no other periphrastic perfect, than that which is made with कृ.

into sweet fulfilment); Kathās. 40, 108 तुभ्यं मया राजयमदां (v. a. I have made you king); Panc. 16 the jackal begs permission to appear before the lion, the doorkeeper grants it him with the words यथावादीह्वान्<sup>1)</sup>.

Rem. In the archaic dialect of the brāhmanas etc. the aorist seems to serve *exclusively* for this actual past<sup>2)</sup>. The contrast between the historical tenses and the aorist is so striking here that it cannot possibly be overlooked by anybody who peruses these writings. The most instructive passages are such, as mention the same fact twice, first when told by the author, afterwards when put into the mouth of one of the actors. Then we invariably find the imperfect or the perfect in the historical account, the aorist in the *oratio directa*. Ait. Br. 7, 14, 5 तस्य ह दन्ता जसिरे। तं होवाचाक्षत वा अस्य दन्ताः..... तस्य ह दन्ताः पेदिरे। तं होवाचापत्यत वा अस्य दन्ताः (then he got teeth; then he said to him: »he has, indeed, got teeth"..... then his teeth dropped out, then he said to him: »his teeth, have, indeed, dropped out"). Ch. Up. 5, 3 the following story is told: Çvetaketu once came (एयाय) to the meeting of the Pancâlas. To him the xattriya Pravâhana said (उवाच): »has your father instructed you?" (अनु त्वाशिष्यिता)<sup>3)</sup>. The other answered: »yes, Sir." Then Pr. put five questions to him successively, none of which he could solve, and said: »why have you said (अवोचथाः) yourself instructed, as you do not know these things?" Then Çvetaketu, being sad with grief, came (एयाय) to his father and said (उवाच): »why did you say (अगवान्मवोत्) I

1) We may translate here the aorist by a present: »as you say." Cp. Ç&k. II, p. 88 ed. Tarkavâḡiṣa सखे तावदेनां न जानासि येन त्वमेवमवादीः (you do not know her, since you speak thus). Cp. Greek *τί ἐγέλῃσας*; »why do you laugh?" and the like.

2) DELBRÜCK *Altind. Tempusl.* p. 128 »Niemals steht der Aorist [in this kind of works] im erzählendem Sinne, wie etwa das Imperf. oder Perf." Yet, Ait. Br. 2, 23, 8 the aor. अकृत is, indeed, used in a historical sense.

3) Such passages as this plainly show, methinks, that the system of the grammarians, according to which »past facts done on the same day as they are related" must be put in the aorist, but when done before that day, in the imperfect (resp. perfect), is refuted by the very facts.



have instructed you (अनु त्वाग्निम्), a simple xattriya has put (अप्राक्षीत्) five questions to me and I could not (नाशकम्) answer even one." So in the story of Uṣasti Cākrāyaṇa Ch. Up. 1, 10 etc. the perfect is used while the author himself is speaking, but 1, 11, 2 when the king excuses himself to Uṣasti, that he has not chosen him to be his officiating priest, the aorist appears भावन्ते वा अहमेभिः सर्वैरार्विद्यैः पर्यग्रायं भावतो वा अहमविद्यान्यान्वृषि (I have looked for you, for all these sacrificial offices, but not finding <sup>1)</sup> Your Reverence, I have chosen others). Cp. *ibid.* 6, 13, 1 etc. DELBRÜCK, *Allindische Tempuslehre* p. 117 etc. has given a great number of instances from the Ṣaṭpatha and the Aitareya.

**335.** The aorist is used throughout Sanskrit literature in both its acceptations, actual and historical. Instances of the historical aorist occur as early as the Ṛgveda-saṁhitā, though, I confess, not many are recorded <sup>2)</sup>; and afterwards it is no less frequent than the other historical tenses. For the rest, it may be observed that in easy proseworks and in compositions of rather simple style, the aorist is comparatively rare, and mostly limited to certain verbs often occurring, as अभूत्, अगमत्, अवादीत्. Yet, in more elegant style, in the works of such writers as Daṇḍin, Bāṇa, Somadeva, the aorist is employed as often and with as much ease as the other past tenses. <sup>3)</sup>.

**336.** The participles of the past in 'त and 'वन्त् may

1) Construe भावतो.... अविद्या, instr. of अविद्मि. The reading is good, and needs no correction.

2) A prayer-book, indeed, is not the fittest document from which to learn the historical style of a language. In epic poetry the historical aorist is common.

3) For this reason, I am astonished at the statement of WHITNEY (§ 532 of his Sanskrit grammar), that the aorist is "seldom" employed in classic Sanskrit.

The  
partic-  
ples in  
°त and  
°तवन्त  
doing  
duty as  
a past  
tense.

do the same duty as the aorist, whether they are attended by the verb substantive, or without it (9). They are expressive of facts done, finished, and it makes no difference, whether these facts belong to the historical past or have been done of late and have not yet lost their actuality. In both acceptations they are of the utmost frequency. They represent the younger idiom, the aorist the elder one.<sup>1)</sup> Accordingly they are rarely, if at all, thus employed in the archaic dialect.<sup>2)</sup>

1. Examples of the historical past. — a.) partic. in °त. Kathâs. 4, 36 यावत्किञ्चिद्गता तावन्निहता ता पुरोधसा 'when she had gone some steps, the purohita stopped her'; Panc. 51 कदाचित्..... यात्रामहोत्सवः संवृत्तः (once it happened that a religious feast with a procession took place); Daç. 111 स राजा... चिरं प्रमुञ्च चतस्रो देवो च अन्ध्रं गमिता; — b.) partic. in °तवन्त. Panc. 148 कंचिद् ब्राह्मणं वासार्थं प्रार्थितवान् (he asked a brahman for lodging); R. 1, 56, 14 ब्रह्मास्त्रं क्षिप्वान्माधिनन्दनः (the son of Gâdhi threw the *brahma*-weapon); Hit. 109 युक्तः..... स्वदेशं ययो ततो विन्याचलं गत्वा स्वस्य राजानं चित्रवर्णं प्रपातवान् (— made his obeisance to his king Cîtrayarna).

2. Examples of the actual past. — a.) partic. in °त. R. 3, 17, 24 Çârpanakhâ says to Râma राम त्वा... समुपेतस्मि (R., I am come to you); Kathâs. 42, 100 अनानसो कथं पित्रा गमितो ह्यो दत्तामिमाम् (how is it that our father has brought us that are guiltless, into this state?); Çâk. I [the charioteer to the king] दृय मृगो विप्रकृष्टः संवृत्तः; — b.) partic. in °तवन्त. R. 1, 76, 2 श्रुतवानस्मि यत्कर्म कृतवानसि भार्गव (I have heard, what deed you have done); Çâk. IV Kaṇva to Anasûyâ अनसूये नतवतो वां सहधर्मचारिणी (Anasûyâ, the friend and companion of both of you has departed); Mudr. III, p. 107 Cāṇakya to Candragupta वृषल सम्यग्महोत्तवानसि मद्राणम्.

1) Hence commentators often explain aorists by participles.

2) I do not recollect having met with them doing duty as finite verbs, in brâhmanas and upanishads. But, as I have not yet made a special inquiry into this subject, I refrain from affirming their entire absence from that class of works.

**337.** The participle in °त may be sometimes expressive of the present (361). सुप्तः कुमारः »the boy is asleep, is sleeping” as well as »he has just awaked from sleep” (actual past) or »he slept” (historical past). To remove all ambiguousness, one derives participles in °तवन्त् even from *intransitives*, as गतवान्, ज्ञातवान्, सुप्तवान्; such participles serve exclusively for the past. — Vikram. V, p. 173 यः सुप्तवान्मदङ्गे..... तं मे प्रेषय शिखिनम् (— the peacock, that has slept on my bosom), Panc. I, 224 जननीमनो ह्राति ज्ञातवती, Kathās. 81, 51 प्राविशत् सा च तत्रैव.... सन्नुशीलोऽप्यसौ तस्याः पश्चान्नत्र प्रविष्टवान्, Çāk. IV गतवती see 336, 2°, Hit. 109 प्रपातवान् see 336, 1°.

But if the participle in °त has a passive meaning, that in °तवन्त् is its corresponding active: उक्तम् (it is said, — has been said, — was said), उक्तवान् (he has said, he said). More about them 360.

**338.** The old and genuine participles of the perfect, as तस्यिवान् (f. तस्युषी) or चक्रापाः, had the same function as those in °तवन्त् and °त, which have almost wholly superseded them in the classic dialect (359, 2°). In the epic poems and in kāvyas several of them — at least in the active voice — also do duty as finite verbs; they are then expressive both of the actual past, as R. 1, 58, 2 उपेष्टिवान् (you have gone to —) and the historical, as R. 2, 12, 6 नराधिपः मोहमापेष्टिवान्. Cp. Kathās. 35, 41 and Çiçup. 1, 16.

**339.** Sanskrit lacks a special tense for the so-called re-  
 Remote past. mote past or plusquamperfectum. The general past tenses are used even then. It must accordingly be inferred exclusively from the context, in what case a Skr. past tense answers to our »remote past.” That f. i. Kathās. 25, 180 the words एत्रैव तपस्विवान्.... तत्रैव mean »on the very spot, where he *had* got it,” can only be shown by reproducing the whole story, from which they are quoted. — R. 2, 26, 3 Rāma has told his mother the cruel order he has just received from his father, to retire into the forest; now he goes to Sītā, who did not know anything about it वैदेही चापि तत्सर्वं न श्रुत्वा तपस्विनी (the unhappy princess *had* not yet *heard* anything of it). — Daç. 92 स खलु विमर्दकः.... तददरेव

गतिष्ठत = 'Vimardaka had indeed already departed that very day.'  
It is plain, that gerunds are especially fit to signify the remote past.

### FUTURE TENSES.

**340.** Sanskrit has two future tenses, 1. the so-called periph-  
Future  
in °ता. phrastic future (लृट्): कर्तास्मि, 2. the future made  
with °स्य (लृट्): करिष्यामि.

The former is a compound tense, being made up of a noun in °तृ + a formal element, expressive of the person, signified either by the auxiliary (अस्मि etc.), or by the personal pronoun<sup>1</sup>). Yet for the third person neither is wanted and the simple noun in °तृ may suffice: one says कर्तास्मि or कर्ताहम्, कर्तासि or कर्तावम्, but in the 3<sup>d</sup> person the simple कर्ता is available. In the dual and in the plural °ता remains unchanged, when attended by the auxiliary, therefore कर्तास्वः, कर्तास्मः, but in the 3<sup>d</sup> person कर्तारौ, कर्तारः, and

1) Pāṇini does not mention the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person formed by simply putting together the noun in °ता and the personal pronoun. Accordingly this mode of formation has been excluded from the official paradigms of the periphrastic future. Yet वक्ताहम् is quite as correct and as much used as वक्तास्मि. That Pāṇini left it unnoticed, may be due to his system of explaining grammatical forms. To him वक्तास्मि, वक्तास्वः are forms to be dealt with, because by the union of both elements a new word arises, bearing one accent, but वक्ता + अहम् and the like are units syntactically only, not so from a formal point of view. Hence, to Pāṇini the noun in °ता is not even the nomin. of a noun, but a simple stem to which the personal suffixes are to be added. Upon the whole, the information to be got from him about this future, is scanty, see P. 3, 1, 33; 2, 4, 85 and 7, 4, 50—52, cp. BOETHLINGER's note on 7, 4, 52.

of course also कतारावावाम्, कर्तारो वयम्, sim. Both pronouns and auxiliaries are occasionally severed from the verbal noun; the pronouns may precede as well as follow. Even the auxiliary sometimes precedes in poetry.

Examples: 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person: Kathâs. 26, 31 गन्तास्मि (I shall go), R. 3, 69, 40 अधिगन्तासि वैदेहीमचिरेण, Mâlav. I, p. 15 मोक्षा माधवसेनं ततोऽहम् (then I shall release M.), R. 2, 118. 10 तथावृत्तिश्च यत्ता त्वं पतिषुश्रूयया दिवम् (— you will go to heaven), Mudr. V, p. 175 पञ्चधैर्येभिर्वयमेव तत्र गन्तारः (— ourselves shall start), Mhbh. 1, 136, 39 किं ददामि ते। प्रब्रूहि राजशार्ङ्गं कर्ता क्स्मि तथा नृप, ibid. 1, 120, 26 अपत्यं गुणगोपनं लब्ध्वा मोक्षिकं क्स्मि.

3<sup>d</sup> person: Ch. Up. 4, 6, 1 अग्निष्टे पादं वक्ता (Agni will tell you a fourth part [of it]), Mhbh. I, Paushyap. 56 अग्निर्गो स्तुहि। तां देवमिन्द्रो त्वां चक्षुष्मन्तं कर्तारो, Bhojapr. 55 न ज्ञाने यातार्यस्व रिषवः केन च पथा, Nala 7, 5 नलं ज्ञेता भवान् हि सद्दितो मया.

Rem. 1. The future in °ता may be also used with a feminine subject — R. 1, 38, 8 एका ज्ञायता पुत्रम् —, but occasionally the fem. in °त्री is used, at least भवित्री, see f. i. Kathâs. 35, 105. — Some krtas in °इन्, fem. °इन्ती, especially भाविन्, are also significative of a future tense (see 359). Vikram. V, p. 181 सुरासुरत्रिमर्दो भावो (a quarrel between gods and demons will take place).

Rem. 2. The medial endings of this futuro — or rather, of the auxiliary — are scarcely met with in the archaic dialect (WHITNEY, *Sansk. Gramm.* § 947). In the classic language they seem to be no more employed. Without auxiliary, there is of course no formal distinction between the active and the medial voices. One says अध्येता (he will study) from the medial अधीयते, Panc. 161 अहं परित्राता from परित्रायते, as well as f. i. दूता or वक्ता. Even a passive meaning may be conveyed by this future. Kirât. 3, 22 एते.... उन्मूलयितारः कपिकेतनेन (they will be eradicated by Arjuna), R. 3, 56, 5 यद्यहं.... त्वया वै धर्षिता चलात्। प्रयिता त्वं हतः संख्ये (if I shall be violated by you perforce, you will perish in battle). Of such roots, as may have special passive aorists, futures, etc. (316), a special passive form is accordingly available, 'he will be killed'

may be either हन्ता or दान्ता, "it will be given" either दाता or दाहिता, see Kāṣ. on P. 6, 4, 62 = II, p. 311 of the Benares-edition.

Rem. 3. Mhbh. 3, 176, 20 this future is construed with an ob-  
jective genitive भूयो दृष्ट्वा तत्रास्मि (I shall see you again). Likewise  
Nāgân. IV, p. 65 कस्याता तत्र पुत्रक, the meaning of which, as ap-  
pears from the context, is "who will protect you, my son?" As  
a rule, however, the object is put in the accusative.

**341.** As regards its function, the tense in °ता cannot be P. 3, 3,  
15.  
used of every future, but only of such actions, as will  
not occur soon, in other terms which have not yet  
actuality. It is, therefore, a *remote future*. The future  
in स्यति, on the other hand, is the *general future*, and  
may be used of any future action, whether intended  
or not, whether actual or remote. Hence, for the  
future in °ता one may everywhere substitute that in  
°स्यति, but not inversely.

Em-  
ploy-  
ment  
of the  
two fu-  
ture  
tenses.

That the future in °स्यति may express also purpose,  
intention etc. will be shown hereafter, see 344.

The grammarians make the same distinction between लृट् and  
लुट् as between लुङ् and लङ्. Both imperfect (लङ्) and लृट् are  
restricted to the अनद्यतन<sup>1)</sup>.

1) Commentators explain the term अनद्यतने भविष्यत् as meaning "future  
facts, not to happen to-day, but to-morrow and afterwards." According  
to them, that which will happen to-day cannot be signified by लृट्.  
When exemplifying this tense, they are wont to add प्रः. The Kātantra  
names it even प्रवर्तनी. Yet, this explication of अनद्यतन is no less narrow  
as regards the future, as it has been shown to be for the past, see  
note 1 on p. 249 and note 3 on p. 253 of this book. Nor are instances want-  
ing from literature of लृट् denoting facts to happen on the same day. Panc.  
161 some bride has been left alone by her bridegroom and the whole  
marriage-train, who have fled at the threatening approach of a wild

Rem. The past *अन्यतने*, as has been stated above (330 R. 2), is to be expressed by the *general* past tenses in two cases. Similarly the future *अन्यतने* finds its expression by the *general* future in *स्यति* in the same cases, viz. "uninterrupted action" and "the time adjoining immediately that of the speaker," therefore *वावस्ती-वमनं दास्यति* [not *दाता*], *येयमामावास्यागामिन्येतस्यामुपाध्यायोऽग्नीनाथास्यति* (at the next new moon the teacher will worship the holy fires). Some additional remarks are made by P. 3, 3, 136—138 to exclude *लुट्* in a few other cases; but nothing, he says, prevents the use of *लुट्*, if the time be exactly defined by a word meaning "day" or "night." The employment of *लुट्* together with such words is proved, indeed, by instances, drawn from literature.

341. In most cases, therefore, it is indifferent, what future is employed. Often both alternate. R. 1, 70, 17 *वक्ता..... वसिष्ठः*, but in the following *śloka* *एष वक्ष्यति वसिष्ठः*, cp. R. 1, 38, 8 and 2, 8, 22. This alternation is most apparent in conditional sentences; then either *लुट्* is used in both protasis and apodosis (Ait. Br. 1, 27, 1), or in the apodosis only, but *लृट्* in the protasis (Kathās. 28, 131 *सोऽस्य..... यदि वक्ष्यति। तस्यापि भविता मृत्युः*), or conversely (Kathās. 1, 60 *यदा तस्मै कथामिमां पुष्पदन्त प्रवृत्तासि तदा शापादिमोक्ष्यसे*), or the future in *स्यति* in both (Kathās. 39, 67). In putting questions, in uttering prophecies the future in *प्ता* is, indeed, often employed<sup>1)</sup>, but the future in *स्यति* is even there more frequent.

elephant; then a young man comes to her rescue, takes her by the hand and says *मा भैषीरहं पत्रिजाता*. Prabodh. VI, p. 134 Puruṣa exclaims *सायंगृहो मुनिरहं भवितास्मि सद्यः*. Inversely, the other future is used even with *प्रवृत्ता*, f. i. Mālav. II, p. 46 *त्वदीयमुपदेशं श्रुत्वा दूक्ष्यामः*.

1) DELBRÜCK, *Altindische Wortfolge* p. 6—8, treats the future in *प्ता*, as far as it is employed in the *Çatapathabrāhmaṇa*. He concludes that it is the "objective future, denoting the certainty of the future fact, apart from any wish or desire on the side of the subject." Though this will hold good in the majority of cases, it is not always supported by facts. A strong desire, an intention, etc. are occasionally also denoted by *लुट्*. R. 1, 20, 3 Daśaratha offers to Viçvāmitra to fight, himself and his army, against the demons: *अनया [viz. सेनया] सहितो गत्वा योदाऽहं*

**341\*\*.** According to the vernacular grammarians the general future in °स्यति may even be expressive of the past in this case, if a verb of *remembering* be added to the past action related. The imperfect, then, is forbidden and the future to be employed instead of it. Kāç. gives this instance अभित्तानासि देवदत्त कर्मोरेषु वत्स्यामः, likewise स्मृत्सि, ब्रुथसे, चेतयसे.... वत्स्यामः = »do you remember, that we dwelled —?» But this substitution of the future cannot be, if the action remembered or reminded is introduced by वन्. A third rule of Pāṇini on this head is explained as allowing both imperf. and future, if the verb of remembering introduces two or more past actions, of which the preparatory action is first named, the main action afterwards. See Pat. II, p. 119.

P. 3, 2,  
112.P. 3, 2,  
113.P. 3, 2,  
114.

Of this strange and rather awkward idiom I know no other instances but those, adduced by grammarians or such authors, as aimed at exemplifying the rules of Pāṇini<sup>1</sup>).

#### CHAPT. IV. Tenses and moods (*continued*).

**342.** The subjunctive mood is expressed in Sanskrit by four tenses: 1. लिङ्, called by some *optative*, by others *potential*, 2. आशिषि लिङ् the *precative* or *benedictive*, 3. लृङ् the *conditional*, 4. लोट् the *imperative*. The dialect of the Veda (mantra and brāhmaṇa) has moreover a fifth tense called लट् by vernacular,

Subjunc-  
tive  
mood.

तेर्निश्चाचरैः।..... अहमेव धनुष्पाणिर्गोपा समर्मूर्धनि; when he then adds यावत्पाणान्धरिष्यामि तावद्योत्से निश्चाचरैः, he must needs use the other future, as the action is a permanent one, cp. 341 R.

1) In fact, I cannot persuade myself, that Pāṇini's words have been well understood by the commentators. Especially the phrase अभित्तावचने is likely to mean something different. If it could be proved, that Pāṇini used अभित्ता in the sense of »purpose» अभिप्राय, all difficulty of interpretation would be removed. Then, indeed, Pāṇini would simply teach the future in °स्यति doing duty as a future's past (322 R.), वक्ष्यति = *dicturus erat*



conjunctive by European grammarians, which was already obsolete in the days of Pāṇini. The duties of the missing tense are performed by the imperative, partly also by the present (लट्). Nor is the present the only tense, which apart from its expressing the indicative, may sometimes have the force of a subjunctive; for the future in 'स्यति— and, in prohibitions, even the aorist — is occasionally concurrent with लिङ् and लोट्. That the conditional (लृट्) was at the outset an indicative tense, appears sufficiently not only from its outer form, but also from its original employment. Upon the whole, the boundaries between indicative and not-indicative are less marked in Sanskrit than in Latin and Greek.

**343.** The subjunctive mood finds its general expression in the tense termed लिङ् by Pāṇini, and which one The लिङ् (optative or potential) is the energetic exponent of the subjunctive mood. is wont in Europe to name either **optative** or **potential**, though it is not restricted [to the expression of both wishes and possibility. In fact, any shade of meaning, inherent to the Latin conjunctive, may be imported by it. Its manysidedness entails the great variety of its translation. According to sense कुर्यान् may be = *I can (could) do, I may (might) —, will (would) —, shall (should) —, must do, let me do, sim.*

Its subdivisions.

We may make some main distinctions:

a.) लिङ् is used in exhortations and precepts: hortative.

b.) it is expressive of wishes: optative.

c.) it is a potential, that is, it may purport a

possibility, or a probability, on the other hand also uncertainty and impossibility or improbability.

d.) it is used in hypothetical sentences.

e.) it may be used in such relative sentences, as bear a general import.

f.) it may be used in subordinate sentences expressive of a design or of inevitable consequence.

a.) hor-  
tative.

a.) Ch. Up. 7, 3, 1 मन्त्रानधीयोय (let me study the mantras), कर्माणि कुर्वेय (let me do sacrificial acts); Panc. V, 103 एकः स्वादु न भुञ्जीत नैकः सुषेणु तामृयान्। एको न गच्छेद्भवानं नैकश्चायमिच्छन्ति ये (one must not take sweetmeats alone, nor wake alone among sleeping people, nor must one walk alone nor consider one's affairs alone); Kumāras. 4, 36 इत्यनं.... त्वर्येदक्षिणात्रातवीतनैः (you [Spring] must inflame the fire by the breezes of the southwind); Daç. 152 दृषा चारं पिबुते गार्दमलं प्रत्युपसर्गेयम् (and now, I might return to your father). — From these examples it appears, that the hortative लिङ् is expressive of any kind of exhortation. मन्त्रानधीयोत may be = "you must study" or "you may," "you might," "you are allowed to study," "it is your duty, the due time —" etc. See P. 3, 3, 161; 163; 164 with comm.

P. 3, 3,  
161.

b.) op-  
tative.

b.) R. 3, 19, 20 Çûrpanakhâ utters this wish तस्यास्ययोगात् त्वरिं पिब्रेयमहमाद्रे (o, that I might drink their blood). To this pure optative often the particle अयि is added or अयि नाम. Mudr. II, p. 89 अयि नाम दुरात्मनश्चाणव्यवहृतकामन्दगुणां भियेत; R. 2, 43, 9 अपोदानो न कालः स्यात्.... पश्येमहि राघवम् (if that time were already present and I should see Râma hero). — The verb of "wishing" being added, it may also be put in the लिङ्. One says either इच्छामि भुञ्जीत भवान् or इच्छेयं भुञ्जीत भवान्. Cp. R. 3, 58, 5.

P. 3, 3,  
157  
and  
159.

c.) po-  
tential.

c.) The potential लिङ् comprises various kinds:

P. 3, 3,  
160

1. *possibility and ability*, as Panc. 226 कदाचित्पुं ब्राह्मणो गोशब्देन बुध्येत (perhaps this brahman will awake by the lowing of the cows), Mreçh. VII, p. 238 पश्येयुः क्षितिपतयो हि चारुद्वयं (for princes can see through the eye of their spies), Kathās. 2, 37 सकृच्छ्रुतमयं ब्रालः सर्वं चाधारयेद्दि (this boy is able to retain by heart all he has heard but once).

2. *probability*. Mrcch. VIII, p. 268 the rake says अथवा यदि गते नृपसो हन्यादेनाम् (in my absence the cruel man will kill her), Kathās. 25, 24 ज्ञानीयात्स वृद्धो ज्ञातुं तां पुरीम् (that old man, methinks, will know that town);

3. *doubt*. Çāk. V किमुद्दिश्य भगवता काश्यपेन मत्सकाशमृषयः प्रेरिताः स्युः (for what reason may the Reverend K. have sent holy men to me?), Panc. I, 215 एकं हन्यान् वा हन्यादियुर्मुक्तो धनुष्मता। बुद्धिर्बुद्धिमतोत्सृष्टा हन्ति राट् रणावकम् (the arrow shot by an archer may hit one individual or may not hit him, but the wit of a witty man hits a [whole] kingdom with its ruler);

4. in negative and interrogative sentences लिङ् may express *improbability* or *impossibility*. Daç. 92 निमुषामन्विष्यतोपलब्धवान् [sc. एनम्]। कथं खोपलभ्येत (he sought carefully, but did not find him; how could he?), Mrcch. VII, p. 236 अपि प्राणानहं ज्ञातां न तु त्वां प्ररणागतम् (I had rather forsake my life, than you who are a suppliant to me), R. 2, 37, 32 लोके नहि स त्रियेत यो न राममनुव्रतः;

5. A special kind is the लिङ् being employed for asserting one's power 'he may even do this.' R. 3, 49, 3 Rāvana boasts उद्धेयं भुजाभ्यां तु मेदिनीमन्त्रे स्थितः। आपित्रेयं समुद्रं च मृत्युं हन्यां रणे स्थितः। अर्कं तुषां प्ररैस्तीक्ष्णैर्विग्न्यां हि महीतलम् (I am able to lift up the earth with my arms, drink up the ocean etc.). So often with अपि (or उत) see P. 3, 3, 152. — But if one says 'he may even do this,' in order to express blame on that account, the present is necessary, and the लिङ् is forbidden (P. 3, 3, 142). Kāç. gives this example अपि — or ज्ञातुं — तत्रभवान् वृषलं यातयति (he is even able to officiate for a çūdra).

P. 3, 3,  
154.

d.) hy-  
pothe-  
tical.

d.) the hypothetical लिङ् is used, if it is wanted to say, what will happen or would happen, if some other fact occur or should occur. It is used in the protasis as well as in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences. Mhbh. 1, 82, 21 Çarmishthā says to Yayāti त्वत्तोऽपत्यवती लोके चर्यं धर्ममुत्तमम् (if I had offspring from you, I would walk in the highest path of duty), Pat. I, p. 2 यो कृतानन्वै ब्राह्मणं हन्यात्सुरां वा पित्रेतोऽपि मन्ये पतितः स्यात् (for he, who should kill a brahman or drink strong liquor without knowing it, even such a one would be an outcast, methinks), Panc. III, 203 यदि

स्यात्पावकः श्रोतः प्रोक्षणी वा शशलाञ्छनः। स्त्रीणां तदा सतीत्वं स्यादिति स्याद् दूर्जनो  
हितः. Cp. 489 and 471 R. 4.

e.) लिङ् used in relative sentences of general import. Âçv. 1,  
3, 1 यत्र क्व च ह्यप्यनस्यात् (wheresoever one has the intention of per-  
forming oblations), Panc. I, 165 कालातिक्रमणं वृत्तेर्यो न कुर्वति भूपतिः।  
कदाचित् न मुच्यन्ति भर्तिता अपि सेवकाः (the king who duly observes  
the time of paying the wages to his officials, him —), ibid. I,  
271 अथराज्यहरं भृत्यं यो न हन्यात्स हन्यते.

f.) लिङ् expressive of a design or a consequence. Kathās. 36,  
106 हरिं शरणमाश्रये येन स्यां नैव दुःखानां पुनर्भातिनमोदृष्टाम् (I betake my-  
self to Hari, in order that such grief may never again befall me),  
R. 3, 13, 11 आदिषि मे देणं.... यत्र त्रसोयम्, ibid. 3, 50, 18 स भारः सोम्य भर्तव्यो  
यो नरं नावसादयेत् (one must bear only such a burden, as will not  
exhaust its bearer).

Rem. मा — in epic poetry also न — with लिङ् = „lost.” Cp.  
405 R. 1.

It needs no argument, that the subdivisions laid down here and other similar ones are somewhat arbitrary. It is one and the same लिङ् that is involved in all of them, and it is only for the sake of developing the variety of the logical relations, which are signified by that so-called „optative” or „potential,” that we have tried to distinguish at all.

344. Apart from the many-sidedness of its employment,  
The idioms, it is to be observed, that the लिङ् is in most cases not  
concurrent with लिङ्, indispensable. The imperative the present, the future,  
the krtayas are often concurrent idioms, occasionally the conditional. The imperative in the subdivisions a),  
b) and c), as will be shown hereafter (348—352), the present in the subdivisions e) and f), as will plainly  
appear when we treat of subordinate sentences (458 b

**468, 471**)<sup>1)</sup>. On the *krtyas* see **357**, on the conditional **347**.

Especially the  
future  
in 'स्य-  
ति.

But it is especially the **future** in 'स्यति that often is employed so as to express a kind of subjunctive mood. The difference which logically exists between the positive statement of some future fact on one hand and the utterance of an exhortation, a wish, a doubt, a supposition, sim. on the other, is not so strong a bar practically as to keep wholly apart the functions of the future tense and the subjunctive mood. Occasionally the same grammatical form may do duty for both. As far as Sanskrit is concerned, we may even state that in the majority of cases there is no boundary between the two. Indeed, the future in 'स्यति is available in almost every subdivision, belonging to the department of the लिङ्, save the hypothetical mood.

Examples of the future = subjunctive mood.

a.) *exhortation and precept*. R. 1, 61, 2 दिग्रामन्यां प्रपत्स्यामस्तत्र तप्स्यामहे तपः, from the context it is evident that these words mean: *let us go to another region, let us do penance there*. Kathās. 43, 86 तदच्छ पावर्त्ते तस्याय प्रभाते द्रुतमेष्यसि (— you shall return quickly at daybreak).

b.) *wish*. R. 2, 96, 21 अपि नौ वज्रमागच्छेत्कोविदारुध्वजो रणे। अपि द्रुक्ष्यामि भरतम् (o that I might see the banner —, that I might see Bharata).

1) The interchangeableness of present and optative in such relative sentences will be made clear by this. In Panc. I we have a series of ten *ślokas* (54—63) expounding what kind of people are fittest for attending on a king. All of these *ślokas* are framed on the same scheme, three *pādas* being made up of a relative sentence, whereas the fourth makes up the apodosis, being the refrain स भवेद्भ्रातृवल्लभः. Now, in five *ślokas* out of the ten, the verb of the protasis is an *optative*, but in three it is a *present*, in one it is wanting. In the tenth the optative is employed *together with* the present (I, 55) प्रभुप्रसादज्ञं विन्नं सुपात्रे यो नियोजयेत्। वत्सायं च दधात्यङ्गे स भवेद्भ्रातृवल्लभः.

c.) *possibility and doubt*. Panc. 282 धूर्तश्चिन्तयामास । किमहमनया..... करिष्यामि । किंच कदाप्यस्याः पृष्ठतः कोऽपि समेष्यति तन्मे महाननयः स्यात् (the rogue reflected: What shall I do with her? And perhaps somebody will come after her; then I shall get into great inconvenience). — Especially the future of the auxiliary, भविष्यति, often expresses *probability*. Mhbh. 1, 76, 32 व्यक्तं हतो मृतो वापि कचस्तात भविष्यति (I am sure, father, Kaca will have been injured or has died), Panc. 176 the deer Citrāṅga tells how himself has escaped the hunters, but मम गृहं तैर्लुब्धकैर्व्यपिदितं भविष्यति (my<sup>1</sup> flock is sure to have been killed by them).

Rem. 1. If such phrases, as »I blame,» »I do not believe,» »I cannot endure,» »I wonder if (यदि),» »I suppose, surmise,» »it is time» are added to the potential statement, लिङ् is idiomatic (see P. 3, 3, 147—150; 152—153; 168), the future being but rarely allowed, cp. P. 3, 3, 146 and 151 with comm. But if the said verbs are only implied, the future in °स्यति is used side by side with the optative.<sup>1)</sup>

f.) *purpose*. Pat. I, p. 7 the master of the house comes to the potter and asks him कुरु ग्रहं कार्यमेन करिष्यामेति (make me a pot, that I may make use of it). Likewise R. 2, 54, 28 Bharadvāja says to Rāma दशक्रोश इतस्तात गिरिर्वस्मिन्निवस्यसि (at a distance of ten kroṣa from here there is a mountain where you may dwell, cp. Lat. *mons in quo habites*). Cp. also न with fut. = lest 405 R. 1.

344<sup>1</sup>. Inversely a sanskrit optative may occasionally be rendered by a future. Mhbh. 1, 160, 1 Kuntī asks the brahman, at whose house she dwells, why he and his family are lamenting [दुःखं] विदित्वा-व्यपकर्षेयं शक्यं चेदपकर्षितुम् (I will remove your pain, if possible, fr. *je chasserai votre douleur*). So Panc. 282, which example is quoted above, optative and future alternate; likewise Panc. 65 एवं कृते तव तावत्प्राणायान्ना क्लेशं विनापि भविष्यत्यस्माकं च पुनः सर्वोच्छेदनं न स्यात्.

344<sup>\*\*</sup>. Even the future in °ता may sometimes express a subjunctive mood. As far as my information goes, this employment is limit-

1) The sūtra P. 3, 3, 146 is accepted too narrowly by the commentators. It enjoins the future in °स्यति for expressing the notion »to be sure, certainly,» and s. 147 is to be considered an exception to it.

ed to the dominion of the potential mood. Mhbh. 4, 12, 3 अयं हयानीक्षति मामकान्दृढम्। ध्रुवं ह्यज्ञा भविता विचक्षणाः (he examines my horses, he is sure to be a connoisseur in horses), Pat. I, p. 250 तथा विदूरे ऽव्यक्तमात्रं दृष्ट्वा वक्तारो भवान्ते महिषी त्वमिव आक्षणी त्वमिव (likewise, if at a distance one sees a person of whom one can only discern the outline, one is likely to say: it looks like the wife of a prince, it looks like the wife of a brahmana).

**345.** Sanskrit makes no distinction between the different tenses of the subjunctive mood. The लिङ् expresses the past as well as the present. कुर्याम् may be occasionally = „I might, I would etc. *have done*.” Ch. Up. 4, 14, 2 when the teacher asks his disciplo „who has taught you, my dear?” सोम्य को नु त्वानुश्रुतास, the other replies को नु मानुश्रिष्यात् (who should have taught me?), Gaut. 12, 1 ब्रूदो द्विजातीनतिसंध्याभिहत्य ब्राह्मणपुत्राभ्यामङ्गं मोच्यो वेनोपहन्त्यात् (a çûdra, who has intentionally reviled twice-born men — shall lose the member, whereby he has offended), Mrech. III, p. 124 Cârudatta speaks चिरयति मैत्रेयः। मा नाम वैकुल्यादकार्यं कुर्यात् (Maitroya tarries; how, if, in his distress he should have done some forbidden thing!). Yet an optative of the past may be made by adding स्यात् or भवेत् to the participle of the past, f. i. Kathâs. 27, 32 किं मयापकृतं राज्ञो भवेत् (in what can I have offended the king?).<sup>1)</sup> Likewise, by putting them to the participle of the future one gets the subjunctive mood of the future.

For the rest, Sanskrit can hardly be said to possess something like *tenses* of the subjunctive mood.<sup>2)</sup> Only a kind of op-

1) So already in the archaic dialect. Ât. Br. 1, 4, 1 यः पूर्वमनीतानः स्यात्तस्मै (to such a one, as has not sacrificed formerly), ईतान is the partic. of the perf. âtm. of यज्.

2) The R̥gvedamantras, indeed, contain many optatives, belonging to the aorist, some also, which are made of the stem of the perfect. But they have early disappeared from the language. — In the archaic dialect the conditional may occasionally do duty of the past of the लिङ्, see 347 R. and cp. P. 3, 3. 140.

tative of the aorist has survived, but it is not what we should call a tense. It is rather a kind of mood, see the next paragraph.

**346.** The **precative** or **benedictive** (आशिषि लिङ्). This P. 3, 3,  
173.

Precative.

mood is restricted to benedictions, and even there it has a concurrent idiom: the imperative. Mālat. VII, p. 91

विश्रयासुर्देवाः परमरमणीयां परिणतिं । कृतार्थो भूयासम् (may the gods make the issue as happy as possible, may I obtain my desire), Utt. I, p. 5

किमन्यदाशास्महे । वीरप्रसवा भूयाः, Daç. 164 अचष्ट च बृहः कोप्रादासः । भूयासमेवं यावदायुरायतान्ति त्वत्परादस्य पात्रमिति. <sup>1)</sup>

**347.** The so called **conditional** (लृङ्) is properly the past

Conditional.

of the future in 'स्यति. In classic Sanskrit its employment is limited to the expression of the so called *modus irrealis*, that is the mood significative of what would happen or have happened, if something else should have occurred, which really has not taken place. Then, mostly, both protasis and apodosis contain the conditional. <sup>2)</sup>

Ch. Up. 6, 1, 7 यद्वेत्तद्वेदियन्कथं मे नावक्ष्यन् (for if they had known it, why should they not have told me so?), Panc. 237 तद्यदि तस्य वचनमकरिष्यन्ते तदा न स्वल्पोऽप्यनर्थोऽभविष्यदेतेषाम् (for if they had done according to his words, then not the least misfortune would have befallen them), Daç. 111 तो चेद्राजपुत्रौ नित्यद्वयवैवाचरिष्येतामियता कालेन तत्रेमा वयोव्रश्यामस्यक्ष्येताम् (if these two princes should have grown up without accidents, they would have reached your age by this time), Kumâras. 6, 68 नागश्चास्यत्कथं नागः.... अ इमातन्मृत्लाङ्गमत्रालम्बिष्यया न चेत् (how would the serpent [Çesha] bear the earth, if you [Vishnu] had not lifted it up from the bottom of hell?), Ch. Up.

1) Nala 17, 35 the precative भूयास्त does the duty of an hortative imperative.

2) P. 3, 3, 139 लिङ्गिमित्ते लृङ् क्रियातिपन्नो.

140 भूते च. — Kāy. भूते च काले लिङ्गिमित्ते क्रियातिपन्नो तत्त्वां लृङ्प्रत्ययो भवति.



1, 10, 4 न वा अतोत्रियमिमानवाद्न् (forsooth, I should have died, if I had not eaten them). In the examples given, the conditional in the apodosis sometimes denotes a hypothetical past, sometimes a hypothetical present, but in the protasis it is always expressive of a past. I do not recollect having met with any instance of the conditional denoting the hypothetical present in both members; M. 7, 20 f. i. it is signified by the लिङ् in the protasis and by the conditional in the apodosis नदि न प्रपायेद्वाता दपउं दपयेष्वतन्द्रितः। शूले मत्स्यानिवापच्यन्दुर्बलान्बलवत्तराः (if the king were not prompt to inflict punishment on those, who deserve it, the stronger would roast the weaker like fish on the spit). For the rest, it is everywhere allowed to use the लिङ् instead of the conditional, f. i. R. 2, 64, 22 यथेतद्गुभं कर्म न स्म मे कथयेः स्वयन्। फलेन्मूर्धा स्म ते रात्रन्सयः शतसहस्रधा (if you had not told me yourself this evil deed, your head would have fallen off in a thousand pieces), कथये; and फलेत् = अकथयिष्यः and अफलिष्यत्.

Rem. In the archaic dialect the conditional had a larger sphere of employment. Though rarely used in its original meaning of a futuro's past (f. i. Rgv. 2, 30, 2 यो वृत्राय सिनमत्राभर्षिष्यत् »who was about to take away the provision of Vrtra"), it occurs there occasionally as the past of the लिङ्, even in not-hypothetical sentences. Maitr. S. 1, 8, 1 स तदेव नाबिन्दत्प्रज्ञापतिर्वदह्यत् (Praj. did not get what he could sacrifice) 1), Çat. Br. 14, 4, 2, 3 तत एवास्य भयं वीर्याय कस्मादूध्यभेष्यत् (from that moment his fear vanished, for of whom could he have been afraid?) 2).

1) Even here and in similar instances the conditional shows its origin. The sentence quoted from the Maitr. S. treats of an action put into the past, if it were a present one, the sentence would assume this shape न विन्दति यदोष्यति or नुहुयात्. In other terms, अहोष्यत् may here be considered as the past of होष्यति.

2) In a well-known passage of the Chândogya-upanishad (6, 1, 3) the conditional is hidden under a false reading उत तमादेशमप्राक्ष्यो येनाश्रुतं श्रुतं भवति etc. Çankara explains अप्राक्ष्यः by पृष्टवानसि, the Petr. Dict. accepts it as an aorist, though it is then a barbarism, for if aor., it would have been अप्राक्षीः. Replace अप्राक्ष्यः and all is right »had you but asked the instruction, by which etc." Cp. P. 3, 3, 141.

## IMPERATIVE.

**348.** Sanskrit imperative (लोट्) comprises more than [is conveyed by its European name. It is not only the equivalent of what *we* are wont to understand by this mood, but it is also expressive of wishes, possibility and doubt.

We will treat severally of its different employment:

1. The mood of precept and exhortation.

I. The imperative, like ours, signifies an *order* or *injunction*, *permission*, *precept*, *exhortation*, *admonition*.

Examples: 2<sup>d</sup> person. Kathâs. 81, 56 अस्मत्स्वामिनीकृते । भद्रस्वातिथ्यमुन्निष्ठं ग्राहिं भुङ्क्षु ततः परम् (enjoy the hospitality of our mistress, get up, take a bath, thereafter take food), Çâk. IV वत्सो भगिन्याः पन्थानमादेशयतम् (my children, show your sister the way), Prab. V, p. 103 हा पुत्रकाः कुं गताः स्य दत्तं मे प्रतिवचनम्; — 3<sup>d</sup> person. Daç. 132 अपसरतु द्विरदकीष्ट एष (let this wicked elephant withdraw), Nala 17, 32 प्रयतन्तु तव प्रेक्षाः पुण्यश्लोकस्य मार्गणे (your attendants must try to find out Nala), Mâlav. V, p. 137 तो पृथग्वरदाकूले शिष्टामुत्तरदक्षिणे (they may rule over —); — 1<sup>st</sup> person. Çâk. III वयनुमन्यसे तद्दमेनां विशदो कर्वाणि (if you permit, I will make —), Mhbh. 1, 146, 29 चराम वसुधामिमाम् (let us wander over this country), Nala 7, 7 नलं वीरं पुष्करः परवीरहा दोषावेत्यब्रवीद् भ्राता

Rem. In exhortations, some particles are often added to the 2<sup>d</sup> person, as अहि, अद्भ, ननु etc. See 418.

**349.** In courteous injunctions and requests it is very common to use the imperative of the passive instead of the 2<sup>d</sup> person of the active. Then the agent is commonly not expressed (10). Ratnâv. IV, p. 100 king to messenger कथय कथामतिविस्तारतः, messenger to king देव श्रूयताम् (listen, Sire). Panc. 48 the barber enjoins his wife भद्रे शीघ्रगानीयतां क्षुरभाण्डम् (please, my dear, fetch me my razorbox). Vikram. I, p. 4 the apsarasas are bewailing their companion Urvaçî, carried off by the Dânavas, Purûravas intervenes and says अलमक्रान्दितेन । पुत्रवसं मामेत्य कथ्यतां कृतो भवत्यः परित्रातव्या इति. — For the rest, भवान् is of

course here likewise available (Mālav. I, p. 4 त्वरतां भवान्) and when showing respect and reverence, one uses the title of the person addressed instead of it (260). So Panc. 86 तस्य मां भक्त्यित्वा प्रापान्धारयतु स्वामी is a more respectful mode of inviting, than स्वामिन् प्रापान्धारय, cp. ibid. 48 शृण्वन्तु भवन्तः सभासदः (v. a. I request the judges to listen).

**350.** अर्हति  
when  
peri-  
phra-  
sing  
the im-  
pera-  
tive. Another manner of expressing polite request, equally frequent, is using the verb अर्हति. One says श्रोतुमर्हसि = श्रूयताम्, cp. our „deign to listen.” Nala 3, 7 Nala says to the gods मां न प्रेषयितुमर्हन् (please, send not me), Çāk. V the door-keeper to the king कश्चिदेवमुपाध्यायसंदेशस्तं देवः श्रोतुमर्हति.

Rem. The लिङ् and the future in ण्यति are concurrent idioms with the imperative, the former especially in exhortations and precepts (343, a), the latter, when giving instructions (344, a). The future does, however, not cease to be a future; in other terms, it is not used in orders or permissions to be acted up to immediately, but if two or more injunctions are given, then often the one prior in time is put in the imperative, the latter expressed by the future. Mālav. III, p. 79 भद्रे यास्यसि। मम तावदुत्पन्नावसरमर्थित्वं श्रूयताम् (you may go, but first hear —). Hit. 108 the old jackal instructs the others, how to get rid of the blue jackal, their insolent kinsman. When giving the general precept, he uses the imperative कुरुत, but the future करिष्यय, when giving the special injunction, to be acted up at a fixed point of time in the future<sup>1</sup>).

**351.** II. The imperative is expressive of *wishes* and *benedictions*.

II. Im-  
pera-  
tive ex-  
pres-  
sive of  
wishes. Examples: Such phrases as चिरं जीव, Hit. 118 नञ्च वित्तयो भव,

1) In this very meaning a few passages of the Mahābhārata afford a 2<sup>d</sup> pers. plur. of the medial future in ष्वम्, instead of ष्वे, in other terms a formal difference, which stamps these forms as *imperatives of the future*. Bopp, *Vergl. Gr.* § 729 quotes three instances: Mbh. 1, 17, 13: 3, 228, 8; 6, 27, 10, see HOLTSMANN, *Grammatisches aus dem Mbhāta* p. 33. To them I can add a fourth, Mbh. 1, 133, 13: Drona being seized by a shark, calls upon his disciples for rescue ग्राहं हत्वा तु मोक्षयध्वं माम्.

Nāgân. IV, p. 61 चित्रयेतां कुमारं (may the princes be victorious), Panc. 16 शिवास्ते पन्थानः सन्तु (v. a. God speed you on your way), Mudr. VII, p. 231 चिरमवतु महीं पार्थिवश्चन्द्रगुप्तः. — Here the precative (346) and the लिङ् are concurrent idioms.

Rem. It is to benedictions that the imperative in °तात् is limited <sup>P. 7, 35.</sup> in 'he classic language. Daṣ. 16 एनमायुष्मन्ते पितृव्यो भवानभिरुक्ततात्. <sup>1)</sup> In the ancient dialect it had a wider employment, only see the series of precepts quoted Ait. Br. 2, 6, 13—16. <sup>2)</sup>

**352.** III. The imperative is a kind of potential mood, expressive of *possibility* and *doubt* (cp. 344). It is especially used in interrogations.

III  
Impe-  
rative  
expres-  
sive of  
possi-  
bility  
and  
doubt.

Examples are frequent of the 1<sup>st</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> person. — Panc. I, 225 it says, a serpent even a not-poisonous one, is to be dreaded विषं भवतु मा भूयात्कटाद्योपो भयंकरः (it may have poison or not, the swelling of a serpent's crest is dreadful), Mhbh. I, 37, 8 अपि मन्त्र-यमाणा हि हेतुं पश्याम मात्तने (perhaps by deliberation we may find some means for rescue), Mālav. IV, p. 117 आःकये नु खल्वस्मात्कटाङ्गाच्चावहे (how may we be rescued from this danger?), Utt. I, p. 21 प्रलेतु कस्तदुचि (who on earth will believe it?), Vikram. V, p. 184 मा रत्नान्किं ते भूयः प्रियं करोतु पाकणासनः (say, king, what may Indra more-over do for you?), Hīt. 118 कथमयं ज्वाह्यतां महामनुः (how may this great-hearted man be praised [as he deserves]?).

**353.** IV. The imperative with मा or मास्म serves to express *prohibition*. Yet this idiom is comparatively little used, but instead of it *either* अन्तम् or कृतम् with the instrumental of a verbal noun, or the aorist without

IV.  
Impe-  
rative  
with मा  
and

1) Another instance is pointed out by prof. KERN as occurring in a Sanskrit inscription on a stone, originating from Java, which stone is now in the Museum of Antiquities at Calcutta. Vs. 4 of this metrical inscription has this close: स त्रयतादेर्लङ्कनामा नृपः (king Erlanga may be victorious). See KERN's paper in the *Bijdragen van het Instituut voor de Taal- Land- en Volkenkunde van Nederlandsch Indië*, 1885 (X, p. 1—21).

2) DELBRÜCK, *Altindische Wortfolge*, p. 2—6 has endeavoured to prove that the imper. in °तात् did duty of an imperative of the future in the dialect of the brāhmana-works.

other constructions, expressive of prohibition. augment, preceded by मा or मास्म. „Do not fear” f. i. P. 3, 3 175.

= अलं भयेन, कृतं भयेन or मा भैषीः

Examples: 1. of imper. with ना and मास्म. Panc. 294 मा त्वं वैराग्यं गच्छ, Kathās. 39, 233 गत मास्मेद् तिष्ठत (go on, do not stay here); —

2. of अलम् and कृतम् with instrumental. Mudr. I, p. 46 अलमाश्रय्या (no hesitation more), ibid. p. 53 अलालं विषादेन (be not sorry, my dear), Panc. 64 अलं संभ्रमेणा, Çāk. I कृतं संदेहेन; — 3. of aor. with मा.

Daç. 143 मास्म भवत्यो भैषुः (do not fear, ladies), Mhbh. 1, 153, 34 मा चिद् कृयाः (do not tarry), R. 2, 42, 6 कैकेयि वामकाङ्क्षानि मा स्पर्शतीः वापनिश्रये (do not touch my body, you evil-minded woman).

Rem. 1. अलम् is also construed with a gerund or an infin. Mudr. III, p. 124 अलमुपालभ्य (do not censure me any longer), Mr̥ch. III, p. 106 अलं सुपुत्तनं प्रबोधयितुम् (do not awake the sleeping people).

Rem. 2. In the epic dialect the augment is not always dropped in the aorist with मा. So in the famous imprecation R. 1, 2, 15 मा निषाद् प्रतिष्ठां त्वमगमः प्राप्स्यतीः समाः Cp. Mhbh. 1, 37, 7 मा नः कालोऽप्यगादयम्.

Rem. 3. With मास्म not only the aorist is allowed, but also the imperfect tense, of course without augment. R. 2, 9, 23 मा स्मैनं प्रत्युदीक्षेया मा चैनमभिभाषथाः, Daç. 160 मास्म नाथ भवकृतेऽथवस्यः साहसम्.

Rem. 4. मा with optative is of course a concurrent idiom. In the prākṛts also मा with future in °स्यति. Likewise in the epic dialect. Mhbh. 1, 30, 15 the three idioms are used side by side पुत्र मा साहसं कार्ष्णिर्मा सद्यो लप्स्यसे जयाम्। मा त्वां दहेयुः संक्रुद्धा बालविलया मरोचिषाः.

### 354. The aorist with मा is not restricted to prohibition.

It does occasionally duty as an optative with negation. Mr̥ch. VIII, p. 280 वसन्तसेने। अन्यस्यामपि ज्ञातो मा वेष्ट्या भूस्त्वं हि सुन्दरि। चारित्र्यगुणासंपन्ने जायेथा विमले कुले, R. 2, 30, 19 मा वशं दिषतां गमम्. It may even express a doubt (352): Kathās. 42, 114 सहसा हि कृतं पापं कथं मा भूद्विषय्ये (how can a crime, recklessly perpetrated, fail to cause mishap?). Or anxiety: Pat. I, p. 418 नैवं विज्ञायि (lest one should decide thus).

### 355. In classic Sanskrit the 1<sup>st</sup> person of the imperative

Archaic is less used than the other two (cp. 356). In fact, these  
 con-  
 junctive 1<sup>st</sup> persons belong to another set of forms, viz. the so-  
 (लेट्). called **conjunctive** (लेट्). In both dialects of vaidik  
 compositions, in mantras as well as in brāhmaṇa-works,  
 this conjunctive is still to be met with. But Pāṇini already  
 qualifies it as archaic. In epic and classic Sanskrit, in-  
 deed, its 2<sup>d</sup> and 3<sup>d</sup> persons exist no more, whereas its 1<sup>st</sup>  
 persons are the very forms considered to make part  
 of the imperative (लेट्).

the  
 1<sup>st</sup> per-  
 sons of  
 the im-  
 perative be-  
 long to  
 the लेट्.

This vaidik conjunctive shows a great relationship both in form  
 and employment to Greek conjunctive, especially that of the Homeric  
 dialect. It may express both, the hortative mood and the op-  
 tative, and is much used in subordinate sentences, conveying a  
 doubt or a purpose or having general bearing. Here are some  
 instances of its use. Ait. Br. 2, 2, 5 यदि च तिद्रामि यदि च त्रयसौ दृविषामे-  
 वास्मासु धत्तात् (whether you are standing or lying down, give us  
 wealth), R̥gv. 10, 85, 36 the marriage-mantra नृणामि ते सौमनत्वाय  
 हस्तं मया पत्या तद्दृष्टिर्यासः, ibid. 39 दोषगिरुस्या वः पतिर्देवाति शरदः शतम्  
 (may her husband have a long life, may he reach a hundred  
 autumns), TS. 6, 5, 6, 2 वांस्ता त्रयाता अस्माकं स दृकोऽसत् (who shall  
 be born of her, must be one of us).<sup>1)</sup>

Rem. 1. Like ण with optative in the epic dialect (451 R. 1),  
 so नेत् with conjunctive in the vaidik works may be = "lest."  
 Nir. 1, 11 नेङ्गित्वा वन्तो नरकं पताम (lest by going astray we shall  
 go to hell), Ait. Br. 2, 12, 2 नेम ह्येऽन्विप्रोता देवान्गच्छान् (lest they  
 should go to the devas unsatisfied).

Rem. 2. Some few conjunctives, occurring in the archaic texts,  
 belong to the system of the aorist, as क्त्वा in R̥gv. 10, 15, 6 आ

1) Instances from R̥gv., AV., Çat. Br., Ait. Br. are brought together  
 by DELBRÜCK in his treatise *Der Gebrauch des Conjunctivs und Optativs  
 im Sanskrit und Griechischen* Halle 1871, especially p. 107--190. — It  
 may be observed, that the Chândogya-upanishad has not a single instance  
 of the लेट् in the 2<sup>d</sup> or 3<sup>d</sup> person.

हिंसित्वा पितरः केन चिन्नो यद् ग्रामः पुरुषता कराम (do us no injury, fathers, on account of any offence, which we, after the manner of men, may have committed against you).

**356.**

1st per-  
son of  
the pre-  
sent  
(त्तद्)  
em-  
ployed  
as an  
impera-  
tive.

Instead of the 1<sup>st</sup> persons of the imperative, classic Sanskrit often uses the present (त्तद्), sometimes when having the nature of a hortative, as गच्छामः when = „let us go,” but especially in dubitative interrogations: किं करामि क्व गच्छामि (what shall I do, where shall I go?)

a.) present with hortative meaning. R. 2, 96, 20 अथवेहैव तिष्ठामः संनडावुपतायुधो (let us stand still here --), Panc. 86 तस्यात्मशरीरदानं कुर्मः (let us present him with our body), Prabodh. II p. 29 भवतु। अस्मिन्नास्ते समुपविशामि [= विशानि], R. 3, 61, 18 वनं सर्वे विचिनुवः (let us search through the whole forest).<sup>1)</sup> — The idiom is regular with तावत्. Çāk. I भवतु। पादपान्तरितं दृष्ट्वा विप्रस्तां तावदेनां पश्यामि (well, I will look on her --), Mudr. IV, p. 138 Malayaketu to Bhāgurāyana ततोपसयात्रः शृणुवस्तावत् (therefore, let us not approach, let us rather listen), Panc. 261 अत्रैव दुर्गे स्थितस्तावदेति कोऽयं भविष्यति. Cp. यावत् with present 478 al. 2.

b) present in dubitative interrogations: Panc. 40 किं.... शस्त्रेण मारयामि किं वा त्रिपं प्रयच्छामि किं वा पशुधर्मेण ज्ञापयामि (shall I kill him with a weapon, or give him poison or put him to death as one kills a beast?), Hit. 95 कुं नामः किं वा कुर्मः, Mhbh. 1, 155, 42 किं करोम्यहमयाणां निःशङ्कं वदतानघाः (friends, tell me frankly, what shall I do for you -- किं कर्वाणि°). An instance of this idiom in the passive voice may be Panc. 37 तत्किं क्रियते [sc. यावत्-याम्] „what shall be done by us?”

1) If these instances occurred only in verbs of the 1<sup>st</sup> conjugation, where the formal difference between the endings of the present and those of the imperative is a slight one, one could account for them in a satisfactory way by supposing errors of the copyists. But, in reality, instances being likewise found among the verbs of the 2<sup>d</sup> conjugation, it must be recognized, as we do, that the present instead of the imperative is idiomatic for the 1<sup>st</sup> person. Such phrases as कुर्मः, शृणुवः = कर्मावाम and ज्ञप्तावाम should have moved CAPPELLER in his edition of the

## K TYAS.

**357.** The **krtyas**, as far as they do duty for finite verbs, may rank with the tenses, which are expressive of the subjunctive mood. They have the nature of Latin gerundivum, and, like this, they belong to the passive voice. But their sphere of employment is wider. They signify not only that, which one is *obliged* to do or what is *prescribed* to be done, but also what must happen *by necessity* or that which is *fit, expected, likely* to happen. P. 3. 3,  
163;  
171;  
172.

The  
many-  
sided-  
ness of  
their  
em-  
ploy-  
ment.

**Examples:** 1. *duty, precept.* Yājñ. I, 117 वृद्धभारिन्पुत्रात्स्त्रीरंगि-  
वृत्तक्रिणां पत्या देयः (one must make room for an old man, one  
charged with a burden, for a king, a *snātaku*, a woman, a sick  
man, a bridegroom and one in a carriage), Nala I, 19 हन्तव्योऽस्मि  
न ते रातन् (do not kill me), Çāk. I आश्रमगुणोऽयं न हन्तव्यः (— may not  
be killed), Panc. 269 शृगाल आह। अयाप्येकवारं तवान्तिके तमानेष्ट्यामि पं-  
त्न्या सन्नोक्तक्रमेण स्यात्तव्यम्. When substituting for these *krtyas* the  
active voice, one would get in the first example पत्यानां द्यात्, in  
the second मा त्वधीः, in the third न कश्चिदनुमर्हति, in the fourth तिष्ठ.

2. *necessity.* Panc. 167 मयात्रयं देशान्तरं गन्तव्यम् (I must needs go  
abroad), ibid. I, 450 मूर्खाणां पण्डिता देव्या निर्धनानां महाधनाः (blockheads  
are the natural enemies of the learned, the poor of the wealthy).

3. *probability, conjecture, expectation, etc.* Çāk. III अस्मिन् त्वतामण्डपे  
मंनिहितया तया भवितव्यम् (she is sure to be in the neighbourhood of  
the bower), Panc. 240 सिंहश्चिन्तयामास। नूनमेतस्यां गुहायां रात्रौ केनापि सन्नेना-  
गन्तव्यम् (the lion reflected: surely some animal will come into this  
hole to-night), Prabodh. V, p. 106 कुचिदुपकृतिः कार्यमितिः कृता क्रियते  
स्यवा (are they likely to confer any benefit or have they done so  
before or are they doing so now?). The last example plainly shows,  
that the *krtya* borders upon the sphere of a participle of the fu-  
ture, कार्य being here almost = करिष्यमाण. Thus भवितव्य or भाव्य  
may be even = »future,» भवितव्यता »the future.»

*Ratnāvali* in BOETHLINGK's *Chrestomathy* to leave intact the presents of the  
kind, he has changed into imperatives.



4. Even *desert* and *ability* find their expression by them. Kāç. on P. 3, 3, 169 gives this example भवता खलु कन्या वोढव्या = भवान्खलु कन्यां वोढेत् = भवानेतदर्हेदिति, and on sūtra 172 भवता खलु भारो वोढव्यः = भवान्निःशक्तः. — The kṛtyas may be also expressive of *indignation* at some fact, not expected. Mudr. VII, p. 220 Rāxasa, when hearing the glory of his foe Cāṇakya proclaimed in the very streets of Pātāliputra, exclaims एतदपि नाम राज्ञसेन श्रोतव्यम् (and even this Rāxasa must hear!); Daç. 78 the wretched Jaina monk deploras his misfortune and the necessity, he has been put to, to break with the faith of his fathers मम तु मन्दभाग्यस्य..... अफलं विप्रलम्भाप्रायमोदृशमिदमधर्मवर्त्म धर्मवत्समाचरणोपयमासीत् (thus, on such a road of disbelief, as this, which gives no fruit, but rather deception, I must walk, as if it were the true faith).

Rem. Some kṛtyas are restricted to »necessity,” viz. those in °आद्य, cp. P. 3, 1, 125. — Other irregularities of meaning are caused by the improper employment of the passive voice, as दानोय, when denoting »the person who deserves a gift,” संधेय »one fit to make an alliance with” (Panc. III, 8), उद्वेकनीय »to be dreaded” (ibid. III, 142). Some may have even an active meaning, see P. 3, 4, 68.

## CHAPT. V. Participles and participial idioms.

**358.** When laying down the syntax of the participles, there must be distinguished between the participial forms and the participial employment.

Participles.

*As to their form* the **participles** are adjective nouns, derived by constant suffixes from any verbal root, and which are the proper exponents of participial employment. Sanskrit possesses 1. three participles for the continuous action, one in each voice (कुर्वन्, कुर्वाणः, क्रियमाणः), which are named *participles of the present*<sup>1)</sup>, 2. two *participles for the future*, one in the

Different classes of them.

1) In Sanskrit, this term is less improper, than in many other languages, because its present has chiefly the character of expressing the durative (वर्तमान), see 326.

active voice (करिष्यन्) and one serving both for the medial and the passive (करिष्यमाणः), 3. the *krtyas*, which are passive participles for the future, but with a special employment, see 357, 4. two *participles for the past*, to signify what is done, achieved, completed as कृतः and कृतवान्, the latter of which has always an active meaning, as to the former see 360.

It must be kept in mind, that the participles, unless they themselves do duty as finite verbs, denote the past, present or future only with regard to the time, involved by the chief verb of the sentence.

359. Additional remarks. — 1. As participles of the future in the active may be considered also a.) the *krts* in °उ, derived from desideratives, as चिकीर्षु (wishing to do, being about to do), cp. 52 a, f. i. Daç. 166 तत्र च स्त्रादु पानोद्यमेभ्यसि कन्दमूलफलानि संनिवृत्तवः..... अवातराम (and there [on that island] we descended, desiring to take sweet water, fuel, turnips, roots and fruits); b.) some in °इन्, mentioned by P. 3, 3, 3, as गमो ग्रामम् (one, who will go to the village), they do even duty as finite verbs: Kathâs. 35, 104 उत्तिष्ठ रात्रभावी ते वीरो वंशधरः सुतः (get up, my king, a son will be born to you —), Vikram. V, p. 181 सुरासुरत्रिमर्दे भावी = भविता; c.) those in °अक, when put close to the chief verb; they are expressive of a purpose, cp. 52 c. 1).

2. Further there are the old participles of the past, formed with reduplication, such as चकृवान्, f. चक्रुर्वी, n. चकृवत् for the active voice, and चक्राणः for the passive. In classic Sanskrit they have almost wholly got out of use. Already Pānini restricts them to Holy Writ, with the exception of six, viz. रोदिवान्, उदिवान्, P. 3, 2, 106—109.

1) I was wrong, in doubting, on p. 39 N. 3 of this book, at the correctness of the example (Mbh. 3, 73, 25 = Nala 21, 22) भवन्तमभिवादकः quoted by WHITNEY. When reading once more not only that passage, but the whole sarga, I clearly saw, that भवन्तम् cannot but depend here on अभिवादकः.

गुञ्जवान्, the compounds अनाग्रवान्, उपेयिवान्, अनूचानः. The participle in °वान् (वांस) is, however, oftener met with in the post-Pāṇinian literature, than would be expected by this rule, but it occurs chiefly in epic poetry and in kāvyas. Mhbh. 1, 44, 10 वितर्हिवान्, R. 1, 26, 25 विनेदुषी, Kathās. 25, 72 अनिद्रस्य निपेदुषः, Kumāras. 2, 4 नमस्तु. वं. . . . भेदमुपेयुषे, ibid. 6, 72 पदमातस्युषा त्वया, ibid. 6, 64 इत्युचिवांस्तमेवार्थम्, Kathās. 81, 31, Çiçup. 1, 17 etc. That it may even do duty as finite verb, has been mentioned 338. But the participle of the past in °अन has wholly antiquated, and is only met with in the archaic dialect, see f. i. Çat. Br. 3, 9, 1, 1; 11, 1, 6, 8 etc.

**360.** Of the participles in °त the great majority have a passive meaning, hence it is customary to call the whole class the passive participle of the past. But some others are not passives, but intransitives, as गत (gone), मृत (died), भिन्न (split). Some again may be even transitive actives, as पीत (having drunk), प्राप्त (having reached), विस्मृत (having forgotten), विभक्त (having divided), in this case they may generally convey sometimes a passive, sometimes an active meaning. For instance:

आवृत्त act. Daç. 138 आवृत्तश्च लांको गयाययमुच्चैःस्थानानि.	pass. R. 2, 83, 5 जतं सह्यापयश्चानां समावृतानि (the scholiast adds सादिभिः).
------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------

With this verb, the active meaning is the more common.

प्रसूत act. Utt. III, p. 38 तत्र दार्कद्वयं प्रसूता [sc. सीता].	pass. Ragh. 1, 12 तद्व्यये शुद्धिमिति प्रसूतः..... दिलीपः.
अपराध act. Çāk. I कथमपराधस्तपस्विनामस्मि (how, have I offended the holy men?)	pass. Kathās. 17, 48 देव्या नैवापराधं ते (there is no offence done to you by the queen).
प्रविष्ट act. Vikram. II, p. 29 आदर्शनात्प्रविष्टा सा म सुखलोप्रसुन्दरी हृदयम्.	pass. R. (Gorr.) 5, 56, 28 प्रविष्टं ते मया वक्रम्.
प्राप्त act. Mudr. I, p. 7 अगमिताः भवनमतिथयः प्राप्ताः (welcome guests are come to my house).	pass. Hit. 24 गन्तिभिः..... तत्काण्डे प्रवकास्योनि प्राप्तानि.

Moreover in accordance to what has been stated above the neuter sing. of all intransitive participles may be employed also in a passive sense. Instead of अयं गतः. अयं मृतः, one says as well गतमनेन, मृतमनेन. Cp. Pat. I, p. 468.

Rem. 1. If a participle in °त is used with intransitive meaning, then the transitive passive is commonly expressed by the corresponding part. of the causative. भिन्न means »split by itself" भेदित »split [by somebody]," प्रबुद्ध »awake" but प्रबोधित »roused," ज्ञात »born" but जनित »engendered," गतित »fallen" but गतित »thrown" etc.

Rem. 2. As far as I know, the participles in °त never convey a transitive active meaning; they are, as a rule, intransitives, as गत, भिन्न, मृत.

361. Occasionally the participles in °त are used of the present. They are then expressive of an action achieved, completed, finished. So गत and स्थित when = „being," शक्त „able," मृत „dead," भग्न „broken."

362. II. We will now treat of the **participial employment**. Before defining it, abstraction is to be made of the case in which the participles are nothing more or less than simple attributive adjectives, as विरुद्धा धर्मः, when = „a forbidden law," or even substantives, as वृद्धः when = „old man," शिष्यः „when = disciple.<sup>1)</sup> Apart from this adjectival function, the participles serve to express attending circumstances or other qualifications

1) A special rule of Pāṇini (3, 3, 114) teaches the neuters of participles in °त to be admissible as nouns of action. So Mhbh. I, 157, 41 सर्वैः सह मृतं श्रेयो न च मे जीवितं क्षमम् (it is better to die together, nor can I bear to live). Pat. I, p. 11 हिक्कितहसितकपडूयितानि नैव दोग्या भवन्ति नाथ.युद्धाय (hiccupping, laughing and scratching are neither sinful nor pious actions).

of the main action, whether temporal or local, causal, concessive, conditional, hypothetical, etc. In other terms, in Sanskrit, as elsewhere, the participles are a concurrent idiom of subordinate sentences, of which, indeed, they may be said to exhibit the rudimentary form.

Examples: 1. the participle equivalent to a simple relative clause. Panc. 2 अत्र च मद्भक्तं वृत्तिं भुञ्जानानां पण्डितानां पञ्चशती तिष्ठति (here are five hundred scholars, who enjoy a salary which I give them).

2. the participle denoting time, state, condition, circumstance. Panc. 268 शृगालः कोपाविष्टस्तमुवाच (the jackal being filled with anger, said to him), Bhoj. 17 एवं विनादिव्ययं कुर्वाणं राजानं प्रति कदाचिन्मुखाया-  
त्येनेत्यभ्यधायि (now, as the king made such expenses of money etc., his first minister once addressed him thus), Mr̥ch. VI, p. 222 वरं  
व्यायच्छते मृत्युर्न मृहीतस्य बन्धने (better to die while showing prowess,  
than in fetters after having been seized).

3. the participle denoting cause, motive. Panc. 58 ते तथा कर्तव्या  
यथा पलायन्तो हन्यमानाः स्वर्गं न गच्छन्ति (they must be brought to such  
a pass as to be excluded from heaven, being killed in the flight),  
here the complex पलायन्तो हन्यमानाः points at the cause of their  
not reaching heaven; R. 1, 1, 99 पठन् रामायणं नरः प्रेत्य स्वर्गे महीयते  
(by reading the Rāmāyana one gains heaven).

4. the participle equivalent to a concessive sentence. Panc.  
304 भो निषिद्धस्त्वं मयानेकशो न शृणोषि (though I have dissuaded you  
several times, you do not listen to me). In this meaning, अपि  
is generally subjoined to the participle, see 423.

5. the participle expressive of the protasis of a conditional or  
hypothetical sentence. Daç. 140 अस्य तु पाणिग्राहकस्य गतिमननुप्रपद्यमाना  
भ्रातृकुलं कलङ्कयेयम् (if I should not follow the path of my [deceased]  
husband, I should dishonour your family), Kathâs. 77, 92 अतल्पतो  
ज्ञानतस्ते शिरो यास्यति खण्डशः (if you do not say it, and know it, your  
head will fall off into a thousand pieces).

6. the participle denoting a purpose, aim, intention. Thus is  
the proper employment of the participle of the future. Kathâs. 38, 157 त्यज्यन्ती तं देशं ब्राह्मणासादकृतं वसतिं स्वाम् (being about  
to leave her country, she ceded her house to the brahmins),

Daç. 79 प्रकृतिस्थानमून्निधास्यन्कर्षीसुतप्रहिते पयि मतिमकरवम् (as I wished to bring them back to their natural state —) Mhbh. 1, 163, 16 वृक्षमादाय रान्ततः। ताडयिष्यस्तदा भीमं पुनर्यद्वृक्षं चलो (the giant took a tree and ran once more at Bhīma, that he might strike him).

363. As a rule, the mere participle suffices for this purpose. Now, as this is by far less done in modern languages, different connectives are to be added, when translating, as *when*, *if*, *though*, *because*, *as*, *while* sim. In short, participles in Sanskrit are as significant as they are in Latin and Greek.

The only particles added are *इव*, to denote comparison, and *अपि*, the exponent of a concessive meaning. Panc. 54 पश्यतास्या रान्तकन्यायाः पुरुषोपभुङ्गाया इव प्ररोराद्यववा विभाज्यन्ते (her body looks, *as if* she were —), *ibid.* 278 परिनोद्यमानापि न प्रसोदति (*though* she is being satisfied, she is not kind), *ibid.* II, 173 सकृत्कन्दुकपातेन पतत्यार्यः पतन्पि (a noble-minded man falls as a ball does, *if he* should fall *at all*).

364. The participial employment is not limited to the participles. Any adjective may be employed as if it were a participle. It is then usual to add to it the participle *सन्तु* (being). Yet, *सन्तु* is not indispensable and is often wanting, especially if it is a bahuvrihi that has a participial employment.

Nouns  
with  
participial  
employment.  
*सन्तु*  
added.

Examples: a.) of *सन्तु* added. Çāk. IV वनोक्तोऽपि सन्तो लोकिक्कात्रयम् (though living in the forests, we know the world), *ibid.* III कुतस्ते कुसुमायुधस्य सतसौत्थयमेतत् (how did you come by that sharpness, you, whose arrows are but flowers?), Kathās. 24, 67 त्रादं गया गा नगरी दृष्ट्वा विद्यार्थिना सता। भ्रमता भुवम् (I saw that town, indeed, while I wandered about when a student), Panc. 44 कथं दृढवन्धनचटा सतो तत्र गच्छामि (how can I go there, being tied with strong fetters?).

b.) of the mere adjective. Panc. I, 109 किं भक्तेनाममर्गेन किं प्रक्तेनापकारिणा (what is the use of a faithful [servant], if he be not able, what, of an able, if he be not faithful?), Çāk. II two young ascetics are approaching, the king, before their being ushered in, knows them by their voice and says अये धीरप्रशान्तस्वरैस्तपस्त्रिभिर्वितव्यम् (by

the sound of their voice, which is strong and soft at the same time, they must be inferred to be ascetics), Hit. 91 तामाख्यातुकाम एव सत्त्वरमागतोऽहम् (wishing to tell it [sc. the news वाताम्], I have come here).

Rem. 1. Bahuvrhis, the predicate of which is a participle, generally share the participial employment. Panc. 130 अथ ते दृष्ट्वा प्रङ्कितमना व्यचिन्तयत् (when he saw him, he became anxious and reflected), Ven. I, p. 25 देवि समुदतामर्षेस्माभिरागतापि अवती नोपलक्षिता (Madam, by the angry mood I am in, I have not noticed your coming here), Mudr. III, p. 112 अयिँषौवं सर्वतो निरुद्धचेष्टाप्रसरस्य मम अन्धनमिव राज्यं न राज्यमिव (if my lord in this manner crosses my liberty of movement, my kingdom seems a prison to me, not a kingdom).

Rem. 2. सन्त्, however, is occasionally added even to real participles. Panc. 126 तेन मूर्खेण वानरेण क्रुडेन सता.... प्रहारो विहितः (now, that stupid monkey, being in an angry temper, gave a blow), ibid. 335 सोऽपि कर्कटस्तत्रैव स्थितः सन्सर्पप्राणानपाहृतम् (while standing on that very spot, the crab etc.), Mhbh. 1, 166, 2 स. .... पूर्वमेवागतां सतीं दृष्ट्वाप्सरसं तत्र, here सती added helps the understanding of the remote past. Cp. Panc. 248, 1. 7.

#### ABSOLUTE CASES.

**365.** As the participle is an adjective noun, it needs must rest on some substantive, of which it is the predicate, and with which it is to agree in gender, number and case (27). We may call this substantive the *subject* of the participle. When being a pronoun, it is often not expressed (10), as little when a general subject. But, whether understood or expressed, it is likely to form part of the chief sentence, and by its noun-case, which is at the same time that of the participle, it marks the nature of the logical relation, which exists between the principal action and the subordinate one.

Yet, the participial employment is not restricted to

the case, that the subject of the participle occurs in the chief sentence. In Sanskrit, like many other languages, it extends also to the absolute cases, by which name one denotes the participle with its subject, if they are but loosely connected with the principal sentence, their noun-case not being grammatically dependent on any word or phrase in the chief sentence. Sanskrit has two absolute cases: the *locative* and the *genitive*. Of these, the former is the general one, the latter has a much narrower employment.

- 366.** The **absolute locative** is a very frequent idiom. It is the Sanskrit counterpart of the Latin absolute ablative and the like genitive of Greek. It shares the whole P. 2, 3, 37.  
Absolute locative.
manysidedness of signification of the participial employment. In other terms, it is equivalent to any kind of subordinate sentence: temporal, modal, causal, conditional, hypothetical, concessive, etc.

Examples: Kathās. 5, 106 दिवसेषु गच्छत्सु (time going), ibid. 28, 134 एतस्मिन्मृते राजसुते कोऽर्थो गमासुभिः (that prince being dead, what care I for my own life?), Çāk. I पौरवे वसुमतीं ज्ञापति (*while* a Paurava rules the land), Daç. 118 तममि विवृम्भिते.... उत्थिते क्षपाकटे..... यथोचितं शयनीयमगते (*when* darkness had spread and the moon had risen, I went to bed), Çāk. I कर्णं ददात्यमिमुखं मयि भाग्यमाणा (*when I speak* in her presence), Hit. 96 एवमुक्त्वानि वृते (after the messenger had thus spoken), Nala 5, 33 वृते तु नैयधे भैर्या लोकपाला महोत्तसः..... नलायाष्टो वरान्ददुः (Nala having been chosen by the daughter of Bhima, —), Panc. 17 अथोपसृत्य दमनको निर्दिष्ट आसने पिङ्गलकं प्रणम्य प्राप्नोत उपविष्टः.

- 367.** It is not necessary, that the predicate of the absolute locative be a participle. It may be also a noun (adjective or substantive). Often, however, सन्, वर्तमान, स्थित etc. are added.



Examples of सन्त् etc. added to the participle or noun. Panc. 242 सूर्योदये ऽन्धतां प्रापेत्पल्लवेषु सत्सु (at day-break, when the owls had become blind) [cp. 364 R. 2], ibid. I, 310 रात्रौ दीपशिखाकान्तिर्न भानाबुद्धिरेव सति (it is at night-time that the light of the lamp is pleasant, not when the sun has risen), ibid. 56 the king says to his daughter पुत्रि त्वयि दूहितरि वर्तमानायां नारायणे भगवति तामातरि स्थिते तत्किमेवं बुध्यते यत्सर्वे पार्थिवा मया सह चित्रहं कुर्वन्ति (my child, as you are my daughter, and Lord Vishṇu my son-in-law, how etc.)

Examples of a nominal predicate without auxiliary. Panc. 62 द्रुतस्तरः शीघ्रं शीघ्रं वास्यति । अस्मिन् शुष्के.... दृते नात्र वास्यन्ति (this lake will soon become dry, when it will be dry, they will perish), Bhoj. 12 राज्ञि धर्मिणि धर्मिणः पापे पापयन्तः सदा [viz. प्रजाः] (if the king be virtuous, the subjects will be virtuous, if wicked, they too will be fond of wickedness), Çāk. V कथं धर्मक्रियाविश्वः सतां रक्षितरि त्वयि (— while you are the protector), Prabodh. II, p. 39 कामक्रोधादियु प्रतिपक्षेषु कुत्रेयमुद्देष्यति तथापि लक्ष्मीस्यपि रिपौ नानवहितेन त्रिगोपुषा भाव्यम् (as Love, Anger etc. are her adversaries, how will she [Vishṇubhakti] march against them? Nevertheless, no one, who is desirous of victory, must be careless, even if his enemy is rather weak).

368. Occasionally the subject in the absolute locative is understood, as **एवं सति** ([this] being so), **तथानुष्ठिते** (after [this] had been performed in this way). Of course, it is always wanting with impersonal verbs, as Daç. 107 तेनऽयुपाते (after his having consented), Mhbh. 1, 154, 21 गन्तव्ये न चिरं स्वातुमिह प्रव्रजाम् (since we must start, we cannot stay here long), ibid. 1, 150, 4 विदिते धृतराष्ट्रस्य धर्मराष्ट्रो न संशयः दृष्टवान्पापमुदायादान्.

369. Sometimes the **absolute genitive** is a concurrent idiom of the absolute locative. It is far from bearing the general character of the latter. It is limited, indeed, to the expression of some action not cared for while performing the main action. Sometimes the absolute genitive may be rendered by „though, notwithstanding, in spite of” and the like, sometimes it is simply pointing out, which action is going on at the time

when the main action intervenes, then we may translate it by „while” or „as.” Other restrictions of its employment are: 1. its predicate must have a durative meaning, and is therefore in most cases a participle of the present, or at least a partic. or adjective, which does duty as such; 2. its subject must be a person. Upon the whole, the absolute genitive is usually found in standing phrases <sup>1)</sup>).

According to P. 2, 3, 38 the absolute genitive is expressive of some action not cared for, while performing the action of the chief sentence. The commentary illustrates this rule by the example हृदतः प्रावृत्तीत्, which is interchangeable with हृदति प्रा°, because it means हृदन्ते पुत्रादिकमनादृत्य प्रवृत्तिः (he has forsaken the world not caring for the tears of his family). <sup>2)</sup>).

1) These rules have chiefly been fixed by F. DE SAUSSURE in his valuable and exhaustive treatise *de l'emploi du génitif absolu en Sanscrit*.

The rule of the subject being a person is violated Kumâras. 1, 27 अनन्तपुष्पस्य मधोर्हि चूते दिरेफमाला सविशेषसङ्गा (though spring has an immense variety of flowers, the rows of bees cling especially to the âmrâ-flower), unless it be supposed that Kâlidâsa means the personified Spring. — In this passage of the Rāmâyana (3, 11, 58) ततो भुक्तवतां तेषां विप्राणामि-  
त्त्वलोऽब्रवीत्। वातापे निष्क्रमस्वेति a participle of the past in °तवन्त् is the predicate.

2) Pāṇini's sūtra runs thus: षष्ठो चानादरे. The preceding s. 37 यस्य च भावेन भावलक्षणां enjoins the employment of the absolute locative. Now, s. 38 allows the genitive too, but only for the case, that there is to be expressed अनादर. One may ask, what is the exact meaning of this term. Does it mean „disregard,” or has it rather a more general import, that of „indifference?” The former interpretation needs implies the participial action being known to the agent of the main action, but this is no requisite to the latter. If we consider the practice of Sanskrit phraseology, it becomes very probable, we must take अनादर in its widest sense. Then all cases of absolute genitive may range under it. In such phrases as R. 1, 60, 15 सप्तर्षीरो नरेश्वरः। दिवं जगाम काकुत्स्थ मुनीनां पश्यतां तद्। (under the eyes of the *munis*, the king [Triṇanku] ascended to heaven) the *anādara* is to be found in this, that the chief action is going on

Examples: 1. the gen. = *though, in spite of, notwithstanding.*

Panc. 193 यदेते मया पृष्टाः सचिवास्तावद्वा स्थितस्यापि तत्र तत्परीक्षार्थम् (that I have asked them, though you were here, was but to make a trial), Mudr. III, p. 124 नन्दाः.... पश्य इव हताः पश्यतो राज्ञस्य (— under the very eyes of Râxasa), Panc. 152 मूषकः] पश्यतो मे परिभ्रमन्, Mhbh. 1, 102, 70 विचित्रवीर्यस्तरूपो यक्ष्मणा समगृह्यत। सुहृदां यतमानानामापैः सह चिकित्सकैः। जगाम.... यमसादनम् (Vicitravîrya became consumptive, when being young, and died in spite of the efforts of his friends and skilled physicians), R. 2, 100, 4 न हि त्वं जीवतस्तस्य वनमागन्तुमर्हसि (do not go to the forest during his lifetime [= *eo vivo*]). In the last example the notion of disregard appears, if one eliminates the negation: »the action of going to the forest though he is living, must not be done by you.”¹).

2. the gen. is expressive of a situation, existing at the time, when the main action intervenes, Eng. *while, as*. Panc. 131 एवं वदतस्तस्य स लुब्धकस्तत्रागत्य.... निभृतः स्थितः (while he was speaking thus, the said hunter came and concealed himself), ibid. 44 the barber's wife asks her friend नायं पापात्मा मम गताया उन्मिषतः (the rogue [she means her husband] has not risen [from his couch] during my absence, has he?), Kathâs. 18, 356 इति चिन्तयतस्तस्य तत्र तौर्यार्थमाययुः.... स्त्रियः (while he reflected thus, females came), ibid. 3, 11 तेषां निवसतां तत्र.... तीव्रो दुर्मिषतः समन्नायत.

Rem. 1. Between these two different kinds of absolute genitive there are, of course, interjacent links. The *anādara* of the action conveyed by the absolute genitive may be more than simple independence and less than full disregard. Mhbh. 1, 153, 7 अहमेनं हनिष्यामि प्रेक्षन्त्यास्ते सुमध्यमे »I shall kill him, beautiful lady, and

quite independently of the circumstance, that the holy men were its spectators. Then, the term *anādara* holds also good for the case, that the absolute genitive is merely expressive of the situation.

The Mahābhāṣya has no comment on our rule, the Kātantra does not mention it at all, see Trilocanadāsa on Kāt. 2, 4, 34 (p. 499 of EGGLING's ed.).

1) See DE SAUSSURE, p. 23. In the same book, p. 63—74 plenty of instances prove the frequency of the phrase पश्यतस्तस्य and the like.

even in your presence," here the absolute turn denotes the easiness of the enterprise. <sup>1)</sup>

Rem. 2. The absolute genitive seems to be very rare in the archaic dialect. <sup>2)</sup>

**370.** Apart from this absolute genitive, Sanskrit upon the whole shows a preference for employing genitives of the participle, either as dative-like genitives (129) or when depending on some substantive. The frequency of this turn makes it sometimes difficult to distinguish between the absolute and the not-absolute construction. In some phrases both seem to mingle. For them we may use the term of semi-absolute construction, for the logical relation between the genitive and the principal sentence, though not wholly wanting, is very loose, indeed. <sup>3)</sup> Here are some instances. Panc. 154 एवं चिन्तयतो महाकटेन स दिवसो व्यतिक्रान्तः ("he thinking so" or "for him as he thought so" the day passed slowly), Daç. 144 उह च ना वसन्तीनां द्वादश समाः समव्ययुः, and so regularly to denote "while somebody was doing so and so, some other arrived, the sun rose or set, time passed etc." See f. i. Panc. 56, l. 1, R. 3, 11, 68, Kathās. 15, 123, R. 2, 62, 19, ibid. 85, 14. This idiom borders on that, treated 128 R. 2.

The  
semi-  
abso-  
lute ge-  
nitive.

Of a somewhat different nature are such instances as Mudr. V, p. 180 चन्द्रगुप्तस्य विक्रेतुरधिकं लाभमिच्छतः कल्पिता मूल्यमतेषां क्रयं वा शयता ज्ञायम् (as Candragupta in selling them [the jewels], desired an ex-

1) DE SAUSSURE, p. 24 and 25 quotes a few passages pointing to the fact, that the absolute gen. occasionally may answer to fr. *pour peu que* = *for aught*.

2) The oldest instance of it, known to DE SAUSSURE, is Maitrāyaṇīyopanishad 1, 4 मियतो अन्धुर्वास्य महतो अयं व्यक्रामान्नाकादमुं लोकं प्रयाताः.

Another instance from the archaic dialect is Āp. Dharm. 1, 2, 7, 13 अग्रतोऽस्य, cp. the foot-note on p. 288 above.

3) See DE SAUSSURE p. 33—41.

orbitant profit, you, cruel man, have made ourselves the price), Panc. 162 तदेनं मुक्ता मम त्रीवन्त्या नान्यः पापिणं ग्रहीष्यति, Cāk. I कर्ं व्याधुन्व-  
न्याः पित्रसि रतिसर्वस्वमधरम्, Nāgān. I, p. 8 तन्निवासयोग्यमिदं तपोवनं मन्वे  
भविष्यतीह वसतामस्माकं निर्वृतिः. In the first of these examples the  
genitive may be accepted as a dative-like one (129), in the re-  
maining it depends on a noun (पापिणम्, मम understood, निर्वृतिः).  
Likewise Nala 24, 15, Panc. 57 यदि मम स्थानार्थमुद्रतस्य मृत्युर्भविष्यति, etc.  
etc. Cp. also the foot-note on p. 94 of this book.

Rem. The differences between the absolute and the semi-ab-  
solute genitives are sometimes very small, indeed. Panc. 156 एवं  
मे चिन्तयतस्ते भृत्या मम शत्रूणां सेवका ज्ञाताः, here the absolute turn would  
be doubtful but for the pronoun of the 1st person repeated. That  
in such phrases, as "while A. was doing this, B. arrived," the  
genitive is thought by Sanskrit-speakers an absolute one, is proved  
by this, that the absolute locative is used too. Mhbh. 1, 169, 1 वसत्सु  
तेषु प्रच्छन्नं पापउत्रेषु महात्मसु। आतृतामाय तान्द्रुं व्यासः, Kathās. 42, 165 अथैनस्वां  
च मयि च..... गर्णध्वजसायिन्योरागतस्त्वमिहाधुना.

**371.** It is no hindrance to the absolute construction, if its subject  
is a word, occurring also in the main sentence. Panc. 67 एवं  
चिन्तयतस्तस्य शत्रको मन्दं मन्दं गत्वा प्रणम्य तस्याग्रे स्थितः, here तस्य, the subj.  
of चिन्तयतः means the lion, तस्याग्रे the same lion. Kathās. 29, 77  
कदर्थयति मामेषा तवाम्ना त्वय्यपि स्थिते, here the absolute loc. is used,  
though its subject त्वयि is also represented in the main sentence  
by तव. Cp. R. 3, 57, 2; Nala 5, 33.

**372.** The semi-absolute employment must also be stated  
for the instrumental. Here are some instances. Kathās. 29,  
55 सखि भुक्तैः फलैरितैर्न न ते भविष्यति (by eating these fruits you will  
enjoy eternal youth), R. 2, 64, 18 स चोद्धतेन बाणोऽसौ सार्द्धा स्वर्गमास्थितः  
(as soon as the arrow had been drawn out, he mounted to heaven),  
Panc. 57 सुभगे समस्तैः शत्रुभिर्हृत्तैर्न पानं चास्वाहविष्यामि (my dear, I will  
not take either food or drink until after having killed all the eno-  
mies), ibid. 178 भद्रं न भेतव्यमस्मद्भिर्धैर्मित्रैर्विद्यमानैः (do not fear, with  
such friends as we are), Kathās. 55, 213 दृष्ट्वा विन्ध्यवासिन्या पत्नीपुत्रौ  
त्वमाप्स्यमि, Panc. 194 तैत्ततैः स्वपक्षः परपक्षश्च वश्यो भवति (Lat. his cog-

*nitis et tui et adversarii tibi obnoxii erunt*). In all of them the absolute locative might have been used. The instrumental represents the action, expressed by the participle, as the *cause* or *motive* or *means* of the main action, and in this respect it shows a close affinity to the Latin absolute ablative.

### OTHER PARTICIPIAL IDIOMS.

**373.** Other participial idioms are:

Parti-  
ciple  
added  
to a  
verb of  
affec-  
tion of  
mind.

I. The participle added to a verb, expressive of some affection of mind, to signify the motive of the affection. Panc. 149 किं न नन्दस एवं ब्रुवाणः (do you not feel ashamed at speaking thus?), *ibid.* 147 प्रोचितव्यस्त्वं गर्व गतः (one must pity you for having become proud), *ibid.* 112 अन्धोर्विरोधं वितन्वता त्वया साधु न कृतम् (you have not done well by kindling discord between them), Mhbh. 1, 145, 9 तान्राज्यं पितृतः प्राप्नोतुताराक्षो न मृष्यते (Dhrt. cannot endure their having obtained the kingdom from their father's side), Mahâv. I, p. 18 स्पृह्यामि राममद्रालङ्कृताय राज्ञे दम्नराय.

**374.**

Predi-  
cative  
accusa-  
tive and  
nomi-  
native  
express-  
ed by a  
partici-  
ple or a  
noun  
used as  
such.

II. The participle, which expresses the predicate of the object of the verbs of *seeing, hearing, knowing, thinking, feeling, conceiving, wishing* and the like. Since, of course, it must agree with the object, it is an accusative with the active voice, but a nominative with the passive of the chief-verb (6). So it is said मां प्रविशन्तमपश्यत् (he saw me enter), pass. अहमनेन प्रविशन्नदृश्ये. By using some other noun instead of the participle, we get the idiom, mentioned 32 c.), f. i. मां युवानमपश्यत् (he saw me being young = he saw, I was young).

This much used **accusative with participle** is the counterpart of Latin acc. with infinitive, which construction does not exist in Sanskrit (390 R. 2). Concurrent idioms are the *oratio directa* with इति and re-

lative sentences with the conjunctions **यद्** or **यथा** (491 foll).

Examples: a.) with an active chief verb. Panc. 51 काञ्चिद्वाज-  
कन्यां करेणुकाव्रतां..... समायातां दृष्टवन्तो (they saw some princess, ap-  
proaching on elephant's back), Mudr. IV, p. 158 न मां दूरीभवन्तमिच्छति  
कुमारः (the prince does not desire my being far), Çāk. IV वेत्सि न  
मामुपस्थितम् (you do not know, I am near), Hit. 2 स भूपतिरेकदा केनापि  
पठ्यमानं प्रलोकद्वयं गुप्ताव (once the king heard somebody read two  
çlokas), Kathās. 9, 74 अत्ररेण हठाक्रान्तमटव्यां सर्पमैक्षत, Çāk. VII अदुली-  
यकदर्शनादूहपूर्वा तद्दुहितारमवगतोऽहम् (on seeing the ring, I remem-  
bered that I had wedded his daughter). As to the last examples  
cp. 14, VIIy.

b.) with a passive chief verb. Mudr. III, p. 120 कस्मादर्थेणा-  
पक्रामन्नुपेक्षितः (why have you overlooked his withdrawal?), R. 3,  
67, 16 Jātāyū tells Rāma, he has seen the carrying off of Sītā  
द्रियमाणा मया दृष्टा रावणेन, Kathās. 41, 4 मित्रेण कथितोऽधुना..... अमुष्य  
भ्राता देशान्तरे मृतः (a friend has now told him, his brother died  
abroad), Çāk. III गान्धर्वेण विवाहेन बन्धो राक्षसिक्यकाः। श्रूयन्ते परिपो-  
तास्ताः पितृभिश्चाभिनिन्दिताः.

Predi-  
cative  
geni-  
tive.

Rem. If not a chief verb, but a nomen actionis is attended by  
the predicate of its object, both the object and its predicate are  
put in the genitive [110]. Panc. 67 the animals of the forest have  
engaged themselves to send every day one among them to the  
lion for food; when it was the turn of the hare, she went to the  
lion and said, she with four other hares had been sent by the  
animals मम लघुतरस्य प्रस्तावं विज्ञाय »as they knew me to be reputed  
[a] rather insignificant [animal]”, Mālav. I, p. 18 राज्ञः समक्षमेवावयोर्-  
धरोत्तरयोर्व्यक्तिर्भविष्यति (in the very presence of the king it will appear  
which of us is superior and which inferior).

**375.**

Sans-  
krit

possess-  
as the  
turn  
reges

III. In translating Sanskrit participles, it is some-  
times necessary to substitute for them infinitives or  
nouns of action. So the abs. locat. कृते शासने may  
be = »after performing the order.” This idiom, the coun-  
terpart of Latin *reges exacti* = *exactio regum*, is not rare,

*exacti*  
= *exactio* *re-*  
*gum.* especially in the instrumental <sup>1)</sup>. So f. i. Nāgān. I, p. 5 किमनेनावस्तुना चिन्तितेन वरं तताज्ञैवानुहितं (do not reflect on this nonsense, better would it be to act after your father's injunction), Panc. I, 5 वरं ज्ञातप्रेतो वरमपि च कन्यैव जनिता..... न चाविद्वान् वृषदूत्रिणा गुणयुक्तोऽपि तनयः (better is it, that he dies scarcely after being born, better is the birth of a daughter..... than an unlearned son etc.). <sup>2)</sup> So often the participle in °त with किम् or क्वल्. R. 2, 36, 30 तदलं देवि रामस्य श्रिया विहतया त्वया (therefore cease to destroy Rāma's happiness), Mrch. VIII, p. 244 किमनेन ताडितेन तपस्विना (why strike this poor fellow?).

### PARTICIPLES ATTENDED BY AUXILIARIES.

**376.** Sometimes participles are expressive of the chief predicate. In this case, **auxiliaries** are often wanted to denote the person or the tense or the nature of the action. The combination of participle and auxiliary effects a kind of periphrastic conjugation, which sometimes has an emphatic character, and sometimes serves to express special shades of tenses or moods, not to be pointed out by mere flexion.

Rem. It is only the past participles, that may do duty as finite verbs by themselves, without auxiliary. But even this is only admissible, if the subject is evident from the context. For this reason, in the 1<sup>st</sup> and 2<sup>d</sup> person the absence of the auxiliary commonly necessitates the expression of the pronoun, and inversely. See 11.

**377.** We may divide this periphrastic conjugation into the following classes:

1) See DE SAUSSURE, p. 94 N. 1.

2) An instance from the archaic dialect may be Ait. Br. 1, 13, 8 सर्वो ह वा एतेन [sc. सोमेन] क्रियमाणं नन्दति.



Peri-  
phras-  
tic  
tenses  
and  
moods.

I. To the past participle the present **अस्ति** or **भवति** is added, f. i. Prabodh. V, p. 103 हा पुत्रकाः क्व गताः स्य दत्त मे प्रतिवचनम्, Mālat. IV, p. 65 अयुषपन्नवानस्मि. This idiom falls together with the employment of the sole past participle as a past tense, see 336.

II. The past participle is attended by another tense or mood of **अस्ति** or **भवति**.

Here are some examples: Daç. 100 इत्थं च मयोपमन्त्रितोऽभूत् (and I addressed him with these words), Kathās. 79, 132 रात्राप्युच्चलितो ब्रम्हू = रात्राप्युच्चाल, Mhbh. 1, 42, 34 श्रुतं हि तेन तद्भूत् (for he had heard this). — Çāk. V किमुद्दिश्य भगवता काश्यपेन मत्सकाशमूषयः प्रेरिताः स्युः, here the optative of the past is expressed by periphrase, Kathās. 27, 32 किं मयापकृतं राज्ञो भवेत् (in what can I have offended the king?). From the archaic dialect I add Ait. Br. 1, 4, 1 यः पूर्वमनोत्तानः स्यात् (he, who has never before performed a sacrifice). Cp. 345.

Rem. By putting भविष्यति to the past participle, the future perfect may be expressed. Mhbh. 1, 162, 21 अथैा द्वावपि निष्पन्नौ युधिष्ठिरं भविष्यतः (both purposes will be performed), Prabodh. II, p. 45 ततः... शान्तिरुपपत्ता भविष्यति (then Çānti will have departed this life).

III. The participle of the future is accompanied by the auxiliary.

This idiom is almost limited to the archaic dialect. In the brāhmanas the participle of the future not rarely joins with भवति and स्यात्. Ait. Br. 2, 11, 6 तं यत्र निहनिष्यन्तो भवन्ति तदध्वर्युर्बर्हिर्हिर्यस्तादुपास्यति (on which spot they are to kill [the victim], there the adhvaryut hrows sacred grass [barhis]), Çat. Br. 3, 2, 2, 23 यत्र सुप्त्वा पुनर्नावद्रास्यन्भवति (when he, after having slept, is not to sleep again), Åçv. Gr̥hy. 1, 3, 1 यत्र क्व च होष्यन्स्यात्.

37

IV. The participle of the present with **आस्ते**<sup>1)</sup>, **तिष्ठति**, **वर्तते**, **अस्ति**, **भवति** is expressive of a continuous

1) Cp. the similar employment of Homeric ἴσθαι. II. α., 133 δὲ ἐθέλεις ὄφρ' αὐτὸς ἔχῃς γέρας, αὐτὰρ ἔμ' αὖτως ἴσθαι δευόμενον.

The continuous action expressed by periphrase.

action and is to be compared with English *to be* with the partic. in *-ing*, चित्तयन्नास्ते or तिष्ठति etc. „he is reflecting,” चित्तयन्नभूत् „he has been reflecting,” चित्तयन्नासीत् etc. — Panc. 42 कोलिकः..... स्वाकारं निगूहमानः मदैवास्ते (the weaver was always concealing his disposition), Kathās. 42, 140 एषोऽनया क्रीडन्नास्ते (he was sporting with her); Daç. 156 नृपात्मजा तु..... रुदन्येव स्यास्यति (but the princess will not cease weeping), Panc. 330 सा यत्नेन रक्ष्यमाणा तिष्ठति (she is being guarded carefully); Mhbh. 1, 11, 5 तस्याहं तपसो वीर्यं ज्ञाननासम् (I was knowing the power of his ascose), Utt. II, p. 34 एतन्नदेव हि वनं..... यस्मिन्नभूम् चिरमेव पुरा व्रजन्तः (this is the very forest, where we formerly dwelled for a long time), R. 2, 74, 2 मा मृतं रुदती भव (do not weep for the dead one).

Rem. 1. The participle in °त or a verbal adjective, provided that they have the meaning of a present, may be similarly construed with आस्ते, तिष्ठति and the rest. Panc. 285 सर्वोऽपि जनः स्वकर्मणैव रतस्तिष्ठति (everybody is content with his trade), ibid. 283 महान्मत्स्यः सलिलान्निष्क्रम्य बहिः स्थित आस्ते (— is staying outside the water), ibid. 160 तस्य रत्नकस्य बृहत्कन्या तत्र शयने सुष्रासीत् (— was sleeping on that couch), ibid. 318 परिपूर्णोऽयं घटः सन्नुभिर्वर्तते (this pot is filled with porridge), R. 2, 75, 29 मा च तं..... द्राक्षीद्राज्यस्यमासीनम् (and may he never see him occupy the royal dignity), Vikram. IV, p. 131 नीपस्कन्धनिषण्णस्तिष्ठति (— is sitting —).

Rem. 2. In the same way verbs meaning *not ceasing to do* are construed with the participle. Panc. 65 [तिहो] नित्यमेवानेकान्मृगशशकादीन्व्यापादयन्नोपराम (the lion did not cease killing —), ibid. 275 सापि प्रतिदिनं कुटुम्बेन सह कलहं कुर्वणा न विश्राम्यति.

Rem. 3. The archaic dialect expresses the continuous action also by the participle with the verb इ, occasionally चर (cp. WHITNEY § 1075, a and b). Ait. Br. 1, 25, 2 तां [sc. रपुं] व्यसृजन्तया पुरो भिन्दन्त आयन् (it was this, they shot off, and by which they destroyed the towns), Pancavimçabrāhmaṇa अदृष्टं दृष्टेन वृन्तश्चरन्ति <sup>1)</sup>.

1) Cp. this passage from a classic author (Panc. 282) सा [sc. भार्या] न कथंचिद्दृष्टे स्वैर्यमालम्बते केवलं परपुरुषान्खेदयमाणा परिभ्रमति.

Rem. 4. Note that the auxiliaries may also be put in the passive. See 32 b.

## CHAPT. VI. Gerunds.

**379.** The gerunds hold a place somewhat intermediate between infinitive and participle. As to their etymology, they are petrified noun-cases, and for this reason they are not declinable.

**Gerund in °त्वा** I. **The gerund in °त्वा (°य)** is the petrified instrumental of a verbal noun. At the outset कृत्वा was, as it were, a kind of infinitive of the aorist. This original nature is discernible a.) when the gerund is construed with किम् and अलम्, b.) if the action conveyed by it has a general subject.

a.) With किम् and अलम्, the gerund serves to express a prohibition, cp. 353 R. 1. Daç. 137 किं तव गोपायित्वा (»do not conceal," liter. »what [profit should be] to you by concealing?"). R. 2, 28, 25 अलं ते वनं गत्वा (have done going to the forest.<sup>1</sup>).

b.) Panc. III, 107 वृक्षांश्चिन्त्वा पशून्हत्वा कृत्वा रुधिरकर्मम्। यथेवं गम्यते स्वर्गे नरकं केन गम्यते (if by cutting down trees, by killing victims,

1) Something of the kind, indeed, is contained in a rule of Pāṇini (3, 4, 18) अलंखल्लोः प्रतिषेधयोः प्राचां क्त्वा »according to the eastern grammarians the gerund is to be put with अलम् and खल्, if they express a prohibition."

The following sūtra (3, 4, 19) उदीचां माङो व्यतीहारे has been wholly misunderstood by the commentators even up to Patanjali. Not the verbal root मा, but the particle of negation is meant. I am convinced, our sūtra does not contain a new rule, but it is the continuation and at the same time the explanation of the preceding, in other terms, it is an old vārttika. The eastern grammarians, it is said, teach the use of अलम् and खलु in prohibitions »in exchange for [= instead of] (व्यतीहारे) मा, prescribed by the Northern ones." In fact, अलं कृत्वा = मा कार्षीः. — Of खल् thus used I know no instances from literature.

by shedding streams of blood, if thus one goes to heaven, by what way does one go to hell?).

**380.**

It is  
employ-  
ed al-  
most as a  
partici-  
ple of  
the past.

But in its most common employment the gerund may be said to do duty as a past participle of the active. Like the absolute locative and the other participial employment it enables the speaker to cut short subordinate sentences and to avoid the accumulation of finite verbs (14, I). Indeed, it has the full function of a participle. As a rule, it denotes the prior of two actions, performed by the same subject. Accordingly its subject is that of the chief action. So it usually refers to a nominative, if the chief verb is active, or to an instrumental, if it is a passive. Nothing, however, prevents its being referred to other cases, since the main subject may occasionally be a gen., locat., dative etc.

P. 3, 4,  
21.

1. Instances of the gerund referring to a nominative or to an instrumental are so common as to be found on almost every page. Panc. 3 अयासो रत्ता तां प्रतिज्ञां श्रुत्वा..... तस्मै यादरं तान्कुमारान्गम्य परं निर्वृतिमाज्ञाय (then the king having heard this promise, entrusted the princes to him and was highly satisfied with this), here श्रुत्वा and समर्थ refer to रत्ता; — Panc. 70 अय तेन ते शत्रुं मत्वात्मानं तस्योपरि प्रक्षिप्य प्राणाः परित्यक्ताः, the gerunds मत्वा and प्रक्षिप्य refer to तेन.

2. Instances of the gerund referring to other noun-cases: 1. to an accus. R. 3, 41, 18 आत्मानं च हतं विदि हृत्वा सीताम् (be aware that yourself will be lost, when seizing Sitā); — 2. to a genitive. Nala 3, 14 तस्य दृष्ट्वैव अवृधे कामस्तां चार्हसिनीम् (his love increased as soon as he had beheld the fair one), Panc. 69 न युज्यते स्वामिनस्तस्य सामर्थ्यमविदित्वा गन्तुम् (it does not befit my lord to go before having explored his strength); — 3. to a dative. Kumāras. 2, 18 स्वाननं स्वानधीकारान्प्रभावैर्वल्लभ्य वः..... गुग्वाहुयः (welcome to you, mighty ones, who uphold your offices by your power); — 4. to a locative. Panc. 125 वानरे व्यजनं नीत्वा व्रातं विदधति, the loc. is the absolute one: as

the monkey having brought the fan, was fanning". - The subject of the gerund is comparatively often a genitive or a locative, owing to the frequent employment of the dative-like genitive (129) and of the absolute locative. For the rest, it is only from the context, that the subject of a given gerund is to be known. That f. i. Bhoj. 96 एकदा राजा धारानगरे विचरन्कुचित्पूर्णाकुम्भं धृत्वा समायान्तो पूर्वाचन्द्राननां कांचिद् दृष्ट्वा.... प्राह the gerund धृत्वा refers to काञ्चित्, but दृष्ट्वा to राजा, can be learned no otherwise.

3. The gerund may even refer to a subject not expressed, but understood. Utt. IV, p. 72 स्वयमुपेत्य वैदेहो द्रष्टव्यः, from the context it is plain, that त्वया is implied. Likewise Nāgân. V, p. 91 हा कुमारं कुम्भं प्राणभ्योऽपि वल्लभं जनं परित्यज्य गम्यते [sc. त्वया]. Or to a general subject, as f. i. R. 3, 48, 23. Cp. 379 b).

Rem. Like the participles, the gerund may serve to express different logical relations, as is evident from these examples. Daç. 149 नाहमिदं तन्नतो नावबुध्य मोक्ष्यामि भूमिशय्याम् (I shall not rise *before* having learned what this really is), R. 3, 21, 10 तान्भूमौ पतितान्दृष्ट्वा.... महंस्त्रासोऽभवन्मम (*when* I saw.... great fear arose within me), Panc. III, 77 उलूकं नृपतिं कृत्वा किं नः सिद्धिर्भविष्यति (what profit shall we have, *if* we make the owl our king?). Cp. 362.

### 381.

Gerund  
expressive of  
simul-  
taneous-  
ness.

Not always the gerund can be said to denote a past action, done previously to the chief action. Sometimes there is simultaneousness. R. 3, 43, 9 एवं ब्रुवाणं काकुत्स्थं प्रतिवार्य शुचिस्मिता उवाच सीता, here प्रतिवार्य and ब्रुवाणम् are simultaneous, »Laxmana thus speaking and dissuading her." Cp. Daç. 159 केन वा निमित्तेनोत्सवमनादूलौकान्ते भवानुत्कण्ठित इव.... तिष्ठति (by what cause do you keep apart, not caring for the feast, as if longing for somebody?), ibid. 182 अहं युष्मदाज्ञया पितृवनमभिरुच्य तदुपपत्तीवो प्रतिवसामि (by your orders I guard the cemetery and in virtue of this function it is there that I dwell). — Cp. also the idiom, taught 203.

Hence the gerund, in the same way as the participle of the present (378), may even attend such verbs as आस्ते, तिष्ठति, वर्तते, to signify a continuous action.

Kumâras. 1, 1 पूर्वपितॄन् तोयनिधौ वगाक्ष स्थितः पृथिव्या इव मानदपः (ex-

tending to both oceans, the eastern and the western, [Mount Himālaya] stands as the measuring stick of the earth). Daç. 177 सर्वपौरुषोत्तमो वर्तते (he is the foremost of all the townsmen<sup>1</sup>), M. 7, 195 उपरुध्यादिमासीत (he [the king] must keep the enemy invested).

Rem. Occasionally the gerund is even expressive of a predicative attribute. R. 3, 19, 4 कालपाशं समासय कण्ठे मोहान् बुध्यते (he is unaware, he has fastened the rope of Death round his neck), Mālav. V, p. 124 सबे। मयेक्षामनुब्रूयानया धारिण्या पूर्वचरितैः सम्भाव्यत एवैतत् (my friend, you only think so from Dh. having acted up to my desire by her former actions!). R. 2, 73, 4 अङ्गारमुष्णस्य स पिता मेनावबुद्धवान्.

## 382.

Gerund  
in अम्.

II. The other gerund, that in °अम्, is as to its origin the acc. of a verbal noun. It denotes some concomitant action and is comparatively seldom employed. When put twice, it is expressive of repeated or uninterrupted action. P. 3, 4, 22. Daç. 30 लाटेश्वरो देवास्यास्य पालयितुस्तनयां तरुणीरुत्तममगानलावण्यं श्रावं श्रावमवधूतदुहितुप्रार्थनस्य तस्य नगरीमरौत्सीत् (the king of Lāta always hearing of the matchless beauty of the daughter of the monarch —), ibid. 95 अस्वादमास्वादम् (savouring without interruption<sup>2</sup>).

For the rest the gerund in अम् is limited to standing phrases, at least in classic Sanskrit. Pānini (3, 4, 25—64) gives a list of them. Of the kind are P. 3, 4, 29 कन्यादर्शं वरयति (as soon as he sees a girl, he woos her), ibid. 52 प्रायोत्थायं धावति (after rising from his couch he runs), ibid. 50 केशग्राहं युध्यन्ते (v. a. they fight seizing each other by the hair), Daç. 144 जीवग्राहमग्रहोषम् (I captured him alive) cp. P. 3, 4, 36, Mudr. II, p. 76 लोष्टवन्तं हतः (was killed by lumps of earth) cp. P. 3, 4, 37, Mhbh. 1, 154, 30 निष्पिष्यैनं बलाद् भूमौ पशुमारममारयत् (he pressed him violently to the earth and killed him as one slaughters a victim), Kumāras. 4, 26 स्तनसंस्त्राद्यगुरो त्रघान (she beat her breast, injuring her bosom), cp. P. 3, 4, 55. Likewise

1) Cp. वर्तते with the instrumental 67 R. 1.

2) The same purpose is served by putting twice the gerund in त्वा. Pat. *passim* उल्लुप्योत्लुप्य मण्डूका गच्छन्ति (frogs move by jumping). See P. 3, 4, 22 and cp. Panc. II, 100.

ज्ञेयमास्ते = तूष्णीं भवति, see f. i. Viddhaç. II, p. 36. From the archaic dialect I add Ait. Br. 1, 21, 11 अङ्गसमाख्यायमेवास्मिन्तदिन्द्रियाणि दधति (he deposits in him the mental and motive powers, while calling each member by its name), cp. P. 3, 4, 58. In all these expressions the gerund is the final member of a compound. — Another P. 3, 4, 24. idiom is the employment of it with पूर्वम्, प्रथमम् or अग्रे, then both the gerund in °अम् and that in °त्वा are available, as प्रथमंभोजम् (or भुक्त्वा) व्रजति (he eats first, then he goes).

Rem. Upon the whole the gerund in °अम् is oftener used in the archaic dialect of the brâhmanas, than afterwards, and it is even in such cases as are not specialized by Pāṇini. Ait. Br. 2, 19, 7 यद्वग्राहमनुव्रूयात् (if he pronounces them piecemeal), Çat. Br. 12, 8, 3, 7 अभिगंसारं दिदृक्षितारः (people will go and see in crowds). — Pāṇ. 3, 4, 12 speaks of the gerund in °अम् with the verb शक् as a vaidik idiom. Maitr. S. 1, 6, 4 अग्निं वै देवा विभानं नाशकृवन् = विभक्तं नाशकृवन्. Cp. TBr. 1, 1, 5, 6.

## CHAPT. VII. Infinitive.

**383.** Sanskrit infinitive is a much employed form. It P. 3, 3, 10. serves to denote *aim* and *purpose*, almost to any extent and without restriction. As a rule, the infinitive in Sanskrit infinitive. Its employment. तुम् may be put to any predicate, just as the dative of the purpose, to which it is equivalent. In **87** we have quoted a striking instance of this equivalence, Çāk. I अतित्राणाय वः शस्त्रं न प्रहर्तुमनागति. Other examples of the infinitive being expressive of the aim may be Mhbh. 1, 160, 15 न च मे वियते विन्नं संक्रेतुं पुरुषं कुञ्चित् (and I have no money to buy some man somewhere), R. 2, 52, 9 तव..... तर्तुं सागरागमिनीं नौरियम् (here is a ship for you to cross the river), Daç. 40 दुष्टहृदयमेनं निहन्तुं मृदुस्वायः कश्चिन्मया चिन्त्यते (I devise some gentle means for killing that scoundrel), R. 1, 42, 24 तां वै धारयितुं राज्ञानां पश्यामि वृत्तिनः (I know no one but Çiva, to bear her [the Gangā]).

**384.** Sanskrit infinitive, like ours, acts in some degree as a complement to the main predicate. Pāṇini enjoins

its being phit to words of *being able, venturing, knowing*, P. 3, 4, 65.  
*being irksome, being fit, undertaking, taking, going, tolerating, deserving, being met with*, those of *sufficing, being* P. 3, 4, 66.  
*a match for*, and in such phrases as: there is *an opportunity, a time* for 'doing something. Of course, these P. 3, 3, 167.  
injunctions do not exhaust the sphere of the infinitive's employment, and may easily be enlarged. With the verbs of *wishing* the infinitive is likewise mentioned by P. 3, 3, 158.  
Pāṇini, but as he adds in express terms, provided that the subjects of both the infinitive and the verb of wishing are the same.

Examples: Mhbh. 1, 150, 23 गन्तुं न प्रक्लमः (we cannot go), Pānc. 70 कस्ते प्रतापं सोढुं समर्थः (who is able to sustain your splendour?), Kumāras. 4, 11 वसतिं प्रिय कामिनां प्रियास्वदूते प्रापयितुं क ईश्वरः (who, except you, my beloved [Kāma], has the power of conducting the loving maidens to their lovers?); — Ven. I, p. 36 संवर्त्मकार्णवान्तः पयसि विचरितुं पण्डिताः पाण्डुपुत्राः (the sons of Pāṇdu are skilled in acquitting themselves on the battle-field); — Mrcch. VIII, p. 256 दुष्करं त्रिषमौषधोक्तुम् (it is difficult to change poison into medicine); — Pānc. 315 अरं त्वां प्रदुमन्तः (I have come to you in order to ask), R. 2, 96, 17 आवां लुप्तं समयेति (he approaches in order to kill us); — Pānc. 195 नरे मन्त्रवितुमारब्धाः (all began to deliberate), Prabodh. I, p. 7 पृथिव्यामाधिपत्यं स्विरोक्तुमयमस्य संरम्भः (it is his intention to establish his sway on the earth), Daç. 112 भवानपारं जाक्रानगरनयाचारयितुं स्थितः (you are decided to cross to-day the shoreless ocean of sorrow), R. 3, 9, 25 न कथञ्चन सा कार्या..... त्वया बुद्धिर्वै विना लुप्तं राज्ञान् (you never should make up your mind to kill —); — R. 2, 44, 26 नारां त्वं शोचितुं देवि (you do not deserve to mourn); — Daç. 178 तोषितुं क्षिप्रेमि (I feel ashamed to live); — Kumāras. 5, 2 दुषे न कर्तुम् (she wished to make); — Çāk. VI त्राप्यसु न दृढात्वेनां दृढं चित्रगतामपि (my tears, however, do not allow me to see her even in a picture), Mālav. II, p. 45 देव महोयमिदानीं प्रयोगमवलोकयितुं प्रसादः क्रियताम् (Sire, do me the favour of looking now at my dramatic performance); — Daç. 203 नातुं भानुं च लभते (he gets a bath and food).



With काल and the like, f. i. Nala 20, 11 नायं कालो त्रिलम्बितुम्, Çāk. VII त्वामिन्द्रमुद्ये निवेदयितुमन्तरान्वेषो भवामि (I am looking out for an opportunity of introducing you to the teacher of Indra), Vikram. V, p. 172 चरितं त्वया पूर्वस्मिन्नाश्रमपदे द्वितीयमप्यध्यासितुं समयः.

Rem. 1. Among the words of *sufficing*, the particle अलम् is to be noticed. It is used with infin. sometimes in its proper sense of «being enough,” as M. 2, 214 अविद्वांसमलं लोके विद्वांसमपि वा पुनः। प्रमदा स्तुत्यं नेतुम्, sometimes also अलम् with infin. Expresses prohibition just as अलम् with gerund (353, R. 1). R. 3, 59, 14 अलं विक्रान्तां गन्तुम् (do not despair), Mrech. III, p. 106 अलं सुपुत्रं प्रबोधयितुम्. In the same way किम् with infin. Mudr. III, p. 107 भवतः किं फलान्वेषणेन वाचनसयोः खेदमुत्पादयितुम् (why should you worry your voice and mind by striving for success?).

Rem. 2. Instances of an infinitive with a verb of *remembering* may occur now and then. In this case the infin. is expressive of a *past* action, previously done by the same subject. <sup>1)</sup>

**385.** When depending on a noun, the infinitive is not allowed to be compounded with it, save the nouns काम and मनः. Bahuvr̥his made up of infin. + either of them are often used. Mālat. III, p. 49 किञ्चिदाख्येयमाख्यातुकामास्मि (I wish to tell something worth telling), Mhbh. 1, 146, 16 मामयं पापो दग्धुकामः पुरोचनः (P. desires to burn me), Panc. 71 किं वक्तुमनः भवान् (what do you intend to say?).

**386.** The infinitive has preserved its original nature of being a noun-case. The only difference, that exists between it and the datives and locatives <sup>2)</sup> of nouns of

1) Of this idiom prof. KERN has pointed out to me some passages, borrowed from an inedited Buddhistic work, written in good Sanskrit, the *Jātaka-mālā* (see HODGSON, *Essays* p. 17). Somebody, who has practised the virtue of *ahimsā*, says of himself स्मरामि यत आत्मानं यतः प्राप्नोऽस्मि वित्तताम्। नाभित्तानामि संचिन्त्य प्रापिनं हिंसितुं क्वचित्. Another, famous for his munificence declares न हि स्मराम्यर्थितयागतानामाश्रावित्सिंहतप्रभाषि। हिमानिलमपिपङ्कतानां समानदैन्यानि मुबानि कर्तुम् (v. a. I do not remember to have disappointed the expectation of those, who came to me as supplicants).

2) When depending on substantives, the noun of action may also be a genitive (110), f. i. कालः प्रस्थानस्य or प्रस्थानाय or प्रस्थाने or प्रस्थायितुम्.

action in *अन*, *अ*, *ति* etc., is that the latter are construed with the genitive of their object, but the infinitive with the accusative. For the rest, they are synonymous. It is the same, whether one says *अर्थं लब्धुं* or *अर्थस्य लाभाय पारयति*, *जयाय* or *जेतुं यतते*.

Rem. A gen. of the *krtya*, doing duty as inf., is rare. Panc. 242 नायं वक्तव्यस्य कालः (it is now no time for telling it). 1). Cp. वरम् with *krtya* 389 R.

**387.** Like the nouns of action, the infinitive by itself neither belongs to the active voice nor to the passive. It may be construed with both classes of verbal forms, and seems to have an active meaning, when it is the complement of an active verb, but a passive, when of a passive. Panc. 258 we read कथं शक्यते तत्र गतुम् sc. केनचित्, which is just as good as कथं कश्चिच्छक्नोति तत्र गतुम्; in the former sentence the subject is denoted by an instrumental, in the latter by a nominative, but in both it is the self-same infinitive, that completes the finite verb. Likewise it is equally correct to say मया कटः कर्तुं शक्यते as अहं शक्नोमि कटं कर्तुम्.

Instances of the infinitive attending in this manner a passive, are exceedingly frequent with शक्यते, शक्यः, शक्यम् (388), occasionally also with other verbs. Hit. 6 मया नीतिं ग्राहयितुं शक्यन्ते (by me they can be taught politics), R. 2, 86, 11 न देवासुरैः सर्वैः शक्यः प्रसहितुं युधि (he cannot be withstood by all the devas and asuras together); — Prabodh. VI, p. 119 कैः केनाहम्... ईहिता.... दासीकर्तुम्

1) The *krtya* doing duty as noun of action is an idiom not rarely found in the *prākṛts*. Especially in the type, represented by this passage of Çāk. I का तुमं विसर्जित्स्वस्स हृदिद्वस्स वा (v.a. who are you, that you should dismiss me or stop me?).

(how many have not endeavoured to bring me into bondage?), Viddhaç. I, p. 15 अद् यितुं न पारिता किं पुनरनुनेतुम् (I could not hold her, much less appease her). Cp. also Kumāras. 7, 57. This idiom is even used in such sentences, as Hit. 50 अत्रादयोराख्ये ऽग्निषेकुं भवान्निष्पितः (it is you who have been chosen to be anointed king in this forest), and Mudr. III, p. 106: Candragupta has sent for his minister Cāṇakya. When arrived, the minister asks the king, for what reason he has been sent for; after hearing the reason, he replies वृत्त । उपा-  
लव्यं तर्हि व्यमादूताः (then I have been ordered here to be upbraided).

Rem. With those participles in ण्त, which have sometimes an active and sometimes a passive meaning, the infinitive is accordingly used in both senses. Cp. (passive) Panc. 275 त्वया द्विगोऽर्थं दत्तकार्यमनुष्ठान्तुमारब्धम् with (intransitive) Panc. 276 अयं तो बलं पोत्वा वनपालानि भक्षयित्वा गन्तुमारब्धो. Of शक्, however, there exists a partic. शक्ति, which is exclusively to be used with an infinitive in the passive voice, whereas शक्त is always active<sup>1</sup>). Likewise गतित, not गत, is put to the infinitive, when bearing a passive meaning. Mhbh. 1, 154, 9 अयनेतुं च गतितो न चैव शक्तो मया.

388. The *krtya* शक्य may be construed in two manners.  
Infinitive  
with  
शक्य. It is equally correct to say स शक्यः —, सा शक्या द्रष्टुम्  
 as शक्यं स (or सा) द्रष्टुम् „one can see him or her.”

In the latter case शक्यम् is a neuter and remains unchanged. There is even room for a third idiom, which is effected by construing शक्यम् with the instrum. of its subject and the accusat. of its object, as शक्यं मया  
 तं (or तां) द्रष्टुम्

Examples of the indeclinable शक्यम्: a.) with nom. Mālav. III,

1) Kāç. on P. 7, 2, 17 teaches the form शक्ति for the passive, but he adds, that शक्त may also be used even then: सोनागाः कर्मणि निष्ठायां शक्तेरिति च विद्वन्ति विकल्पेन । शक्तो वटः कर्तुम् । शक्तो वटः कर्तुम्. but when impersonal passive, one always says शक्त, ibid. भावे न भवत्येव । शक्तमनेन.

p. 85 एवं प्रणयत्रो सा न हि शक्यमुपेक्षितुं कुपिता (for, being so loving, she must not be disdained in her anger), Daç. 58 अशक्यं हि मदिच्छ्या विना.... दशानच्छद एष चुम्बयितुम् (these lips cannot be kissed against my will), R. 2, 62, 16 शक्यमापतितः सोढुं प्रहारो रिपुहस्ततः। सोढुमापतितः शोकः सुसूक्ष्मोऽपि न शक्यते; — b), with instrum. Pat. I, p. 39 तत्राशक्यं त्रपेणाप्यनर्थकेन भवितुम् (there not a single letter can be meaningless), R. 3, 40, 4 त्वद्वाक्यैर्न तु मां शक्यं भेत्तुं रामस्य संग्रमे (but your words cannot withhold me from the struggle with Râma).

**389.** Another similar turn is the infinitive with **युक्तम्** (it is fit. it suits). If neither the subject nor the object of the action befitting is expressed, there is no difficulty; one should need say f.i. **न युक्तमिदं स्यात्तुम्**, no other turn of phrase being available. But when the subject or object or both of them are to be expressed, there is variety of idioms. 1. The object may be an *accusative*; 2. the object may be a *nominative* construed with **युक्तम्**; 3 the object may be a *nominative*, whose gender and number are transferred also to the adjective **युक्त**. As to the subject, it is put in the instrumental or in the genitive; 1) the latter seems to be more frequent.

Examples: 1 of **युक्तम्** with an *accus.* Mudr. I, p. 30 न युक्तं प्राकृतमपि रिपुमवज्ञातुम् (it is not judicious to disdain even a mean enemy), Varâh. Brhats. 47, 2 भूयो वराहमिहिरस्य न युक्तमेतत्कर्तुम् (V. ought not to treat the same matter again), Mhbh. I, Paushyap. 118 न युक्तं भवतानामशुचि दत्ता प्रतिश्रापं दातुम् (it does not become you, after having given unclean food, to return the curse);

2. of **युक्तम्** with a *nomin.* Mhbh. I, Paushyap. 106 न युक्तं भवताहमनृतेनोपचरितुम् (it is not right that you should treat me with lies); 2)

1) Cp. the promiscuousness of gen. and instr. with the kṛtyas (86 R.).

2) Cp. this prākṛt-passage of Çākuntala III युक्तं मे अहिलासा अग्निनिदिदं — skrt. युक्तमस्या अहिलाषोऽग्निनिदितुम्.

3. of युक्त agreeing in gender and number with the nomin.

Kathās. 22, 169 युक्ता परिपोतुमसौ मम (v. a. she suits me as a wife).

with  
न्यायः Rem. 1. In the same way न्याय with infinitive admits of two constructions. Sometimes it is a neuter with the acc. of the object, as R. (Gorr.) 6, 38, 28 न नपारं स्वयं न्यायं शपुमेवम् (it is not allowed to curse one's own grand-son in this manner), sometimes it is construed with a nomin. of the object, the gender and number of which itself adopts, and the instrum. of the subject, as Ragh. 2, 55 सेवे..... न्याया मया मोचयितुं भवतः (it is right she should be released from you by me).

with  
वरम् and  
असांप्र-  
तम्. Rem. 2. With the turn युक्तम् with nomin. may be compared the nominative with infinitive, attending such adverbs as असांप्रतम् and वरम्. Kumāras. 2, 55 विषवृक्षो ऽपि संवर्धय स्वयं हेतुमसांप्रतम् (even a poisonous tree should not be cut down by him, who has reared it); — Mālav. III, p. 55 उचितः प्रपायो वरं विहन्तुम् (it is better, that a love to which one is accustomed, should be repressed —), Daç. 94 वरमात्मा गोपायितुम् (it is better to defend ourselves). With वरम् one may also meet with the nom. of the kṛtya almost doing duty as infin., f. i. Nāgān. IV, p. 58 वरं रात्रपुत्र्याः सकाशं गन्तव्यम् (better is it to go to the encounter of the princess).

**390.** The original nature of the infinitive has not been obscured in Sanskrit. It has everywhere the character rather of an adverb, than of a noun<sup>1</sup>). Not only on account of its etymology, but also of its standing in some degree outside the common system of declension and conjugation, it may be called the counterpart of the Lat. supine<sup>2</sup>). It has no voices, no tenses. It nowhere serves to express the subject, predicate or ob-

Character  
of Sanskrit  
infinitive.

1) In vernacular grammar the infinitive always ranks with the *avyaya*-class. Likewise the gerund.

2) Occasionally, even the employment of Latin supine borders on that of Sanskrit infinitive. Cp. such phrases as *venatum eunt*, *spectatum veniunt* with Skrt. व्रजति भोक्तुम्, आगतः क्रीडितुम्.

ject of a sentence <sup>1</sup>). In such sentences as „to give is better than to receive,” Sanskrit avails itself of different idioms, chiefly by using nouns of action, but avoids using the infinitive <sup>2</sup>).

Rem. 1. Sometimes the 3<sup>d</sup> person of the present or the optative may be equivalent to our infinitive. Panc. II, 51 ददाति प्रतिगृह्णाति गुरु-माख्याति पृच्छति। भुङ्क्ते भोगयते चैव यद्विधं प्रीतिलक्ष्णम् (to give, to receive, to tell one's secret, to ask it, to be guest and host, these are the six tokens of friendship). Cp. R. 3, 47, 17 दद्यान् प्रतिगृह्णीयात्सत्यं ब्रूयान् चानृतम्। एतद् ब्राह्मणं रामस्य व्रतं धृत्स्मनुत्तमम् (to give, not to receive, to speak the truth, not to speak falsehood, this is the sublime vow, o brahman, practised by Râma).

Rem. 2. Sanskrit has not the turn: accusative with infinitive <sup>3</sup>).

1) In such expressions as विद्यते भोक्तुम्, लभते भोक्तुम् we may speak of the infinitive as the subject and object of the finite verb, but this is only so from a logical point of view; and it is, indeed, not considered so by Sanskrit-speakers.

2) F. i. दानं प्रतिग्रहादिशिष्यते or यो ददाति यश्च प्रतिगृह्णाति तयोर्ददद्गरीयान् or वरं दानं न तु प्रतिग्रहः.

3) JOLLY, *Geschichte des Infinitivs*, p. 253 sq. asserts its existence. He quotes but two examples: Kathâs. 20, 172 राजानं स्नातुं दर्श and Sâv. 5, 10 = Mhbh. 3, 297, 102 मां च जीवितुमिच्छसि. In the latter passage both the Calc. and the Bomb. edition of the Mhbh. read मां च जीवन्तमि and in the former स्नातुम् is an obvious misprint for स्नान्तम्. The participle is in both cases indispensable. So KAc. on P. 3, 3, 158 after giving उच्छति भोक्तुम् (he wishes to eat) as an example of the infinitive, contrasts with this the participial idiom देवदत्तं भुञ्जानमिच्छति यत्तदन्नः (Mr. B. wishes Mr. A. to eat). — Likewise R. 3, 24, 13 ed. Bomb. प्रतिकूलितुमिच्छामि नहि वाक्यमिदं त्वया the text is corrupt, the correct reading being प्रतिकूलितम्, nor is the infin. प्रतिकूलितुम् but प्रतिकूलयितुम्. A fourth instance would be Dac. 104 न चेदिमां वामलोचनामाप्नुयां न मृष्यति मां जीवितुं वसन्तबन्धुः (if I do not obtain this beautiful maiden, the God of Love will not suffer me to live), yet as मृष्यति is as a rule construed with acc. and participle (see but Mhbh. 1, 145, 9, M. 8, 346, Mhbh. 1, 95, 68, ibid. 4, 16, 28), I am convinced we have here likewise an error in the text, and जीवन्तम् must be put

Verbs of perceiving, thinking, telling etc. are construed with the accusative with participle (374).

**391.** The infinitive in °तुम् is the sole remnant of a great many similar forms, which existed in the ancient language, especially in the old dialect of the Vaidik mantras. WHITNEY, *Sanskrit Gramm.* § 970 gives a detailed account of them. All of them are oblique cases of nouns of action. We call them infinitives because they share the construction of the verb, from which they are derived. Most of them were obsolete as early as the period of the brâhmana-works, some indeed survived, but adopted the construction of the nouns. In such passages f. i. as Rgv. 9, 88, 2 स ई रणे न भूरियाउयोनि नहः पुत्रणि सातये वसूनि (like a much-bearing chariot he has been horsed, the mighty one, to bring us abundant boons), we are inclined to call सातये an infinitive, for it has its object put in the *accusative*; likewise still Ait. Br. 2, 1, 1 यज्ञस्य किञ्चिदे-  
पिष्यामः प्रजातै, since किञ्चित् is the object of प्रजातै. But in such passages as Ait. Br. 2, 17, 8 स्वर्गस्य लोकस्य गमद्गै (in order to gain heaven), the object is a *genitive*, and गमद्गै can no more be called infinitive. Now, the genitive with them is predominant in the brâhmanas and afterwards it is the sole idiom.

**392.** Two old infinitives, however, are still employed in the brâhmanas, those in °तोः and in °तवै. Of the latter I have even met with an instance in a writer of so comparatively recent a date, as Patanjali <sup>1)</sup>.  
1. The infinitives in °तोः are either genitives or ablatives. When genitives, they are hardly found unless depending on ईष्वर <sup>2)</sup>. The phrase ईष्वर with genitive in °तोः means "able to" or "liable to."

instead of ज्ञेयितुम्; I should not wonder, if the good reading were found in mss.

1) Pat. I, p. 2 तस्माद् ब्राह्मणेन न भेच्छितवै नापभाषितवै. The infin. is here equivalent to the *krtya*, according to what is prescribed by Pāṇini (3, 4, 14).

2) I know but one instance of a genitive depending on an other word. Ait. Br. 2, 20, 21 यज्ञोऽर्त्तायुषेत् ([it he] should strive after obtaining glory). In another passage Ait. Br. 6, 30, 7 the interpretation of the inf. प्रत्येतोः

It must be remarked that in this idiom ईश्वर sometimes agrees with its subject in gender and number, sometimes the masc. ईश्वरः is used irrespective of the gender and number of its subject, as if it were an indeclinable word. Ait. Br. 1, 10, 2 ईश्वरा हैनं नि वा रोढोर्वि वा मयितोः (they are able to check him or to crush him), ibid. 1, 30, 11 ईश्वरो ह वा एतो यत्मानं हिंसितोः; — ibid. 3, 48, 8 ईश्वरो हास्य विन्ने देवा अन्तोः (it may be that the gods are not gratified by his offering), Çat. Br. 5, 1, 1, 9 तस्येश्वरः प्रजा पापीयसो अयितोः.

When ablatives, they are employed after the prepp. आ and पुः. Then, however, they are commonly construed with the genitive of their object. Ait. Br. 2, 15, 9 पुः वाचः प्रवदितोरनूच्यः [viz. प्राननुवाकः], ibid. 7, 2, 6 आ अरीराणामाह्वोः.

2. The infinitive in °तत्रै is said by Pānini to be synonymous with the kṛtyas. This statement is confirmed by what we know about them from the ancient texts. In the Çatapatha they are much used, less often in similar works. Çat. Br. मृतान्युच्छेदये नृणां (he must order the roots to be cut off.)

93. Both classes of infinitives also admit of an other construction. The subject etc. of those in °तोः and the object of those in °तत्रै may be put in the same case, which is represented by the infinitive, but difference of number, when existing, remains. Âpast. in Sâyana's comment on Ait. Br. 2, 15, 15, p. 260 of AUFRECHT'S ed. पुः वाचः पुः वा व्योम्यः प्रवदितोः (— before the crying of birds), ibid. 2, 7, 6 ईश्वरो हास्य वाचो रक्षोभाषो वनितोः (verily, his voice is liable to become the voice of a raxas), ibid. 2, 1, 3 व्योम्यं क्षयस्तस्ये स्तर्तत्रै (to overthrow him, whom he is willing to overthrow<sup>1</sup>).

Rem. A third class of infinitives, those in °अः, which we are entitled to call infinitives of the aorist, as they are made of the most contracted form of the root, are occasionally construed in the same way, f. i. the vaidik phrase पुः जर्तयि अतृदः quoted by Kâç. on P. 3, 4, 17. Other instances may be met with in the Rgveda-mantras.

seems somewhat doubtful to me; the words प्रयेतोर्हन्ताहम् are likely to mean "I am, indeed, able to understand", as if ईश्वरः should be supplied.

1) Cp. the well known idiom of Latin gerundivum. And even Latin affords instances of concord in gender and case, but disagreement in number. Cic. Philipp. 5, 3, 6 *facultas agrorum suis latronibus consolandi*.



## SECTION V.

## SYNTAX OF THE PARTICLES.

**394** After treating the syntax of nouns and verbs, we now come to the words which are devoid of inflection. Part of them, indeed, have already been dealt with, viz. the adverbs in Ch. I of the Third, and the prepositions in Ch. IX of the Second Section. The rest are the so-called particles, most of them old little words as च, हि, वा, इव, अपि, whereas some others, as कामम्, तावत्, परम्, are petrified noun-cases. As to the employment of the particles, they serve different purposes, but they may be brought under two general heads: *modality* and *connection*. When modal, they are expressive of emphasis, negation, interrogation, exclamation and the like, when connective they are wanted to connect either whole sentences or parts of them. The distinction between these two classes of particles is, however, not an essential one. The same word may be sometimes a modal, sometimes a connective. So अपि may be a particle of interrogation, but also of copulation, वा commonly a disjunctive, serves occasionally to express emphasis. And so on.

Sanskrit likes putting together and even combining two or more particles.

## CHAPT. I. Particles of emphasis and limitation.

**395.** Affirmative sentences do not want to be marked as such by special particles, as is necessary with negative and interrogative sentences. Yet, strong affirmation, so-called emphasis, is expressed by such words as

Em-  
phatic  
parti-  
cles.

English *indeed, surely, verily*, viz. **खलु, किल, नूनम्, बाढम्, नियतम्, सत्यम्** or in full **यत्सत्यम्**. Of them,

**बाढम्** and the rest rather bear the character of such adverbs, as „certainly, undoubtedly.” Mudr. VII, p. 223 यत्सत्यं लङ्घित इवास्मि, Daç. 93 त्वया नियतम्..... ब्रह्मपदेशः.

Rem. **बाढम्** is especially used in answers „yes, indeed”. Kathâs. 24, 67 one asks कश्चिन्नुया सा कनकपुरे दृष्टा, the other answers बाढं मया सा नगरं दृष्टा. „Yes” is also तया. Kathâs. 81, 19 the king asks his attendant to fetch him some water, the other answers तया; in full, he would have said तया क्रियते यथाज्ञापयति देवः, of which sentence all but तया is understood. Sometimes the relative sentence यथाज्ञापयति etc. is expressed, but the rest understood. — अयं किम् is also = „yes”<sup>1)</sup>. Mudr. II, p. 78 न खलु विदितान्ते निवसन्तश्चापाकृतकेन। अयं किम् (Râxasa asks: the accursed Cānakya does not know they dwell in Pâtalip., does he? Ans. Yes, he does).

396. **नूनम्, ननु, खलु, किल, नाम** are the most frequent emphatic particles. The last three of them are not put at the head, but **नूनम्** and **ननु** are usually the first word of the sentence, at least in prose. Daç. 130 नूनमसौ प्राणान्निःस्पृहः किमपि कृच्छ्रं प्रपित्सते, Panc. 204 ननु स्वभावतोऽस्माकं शत्रुभूतोऽस्ति, (Uk. I आर्ये सद्यगनुवोधितोऽस्मि। अस्मिन्तपो खलु विस्मृतं मयैतत् (— but now, indeed, I did not remember it), ibid. I तपोवनसंनिहितसत्त्वर्त्तणायै सस्त्रीभवनं भवन्तः। प्रत्यासन्नः किल मृगयाचिराद्री गार्थिनां दुष्यन्तः, Mudr. V, p. 173 अधिकारपदं नाम निर्दोषस्यापि पुरुषस्य महदाजकाम्यायाम्.

**ननु** is properly an interrogative, which does duty as an emphatic<sup>2)</sup>.

Rem. 1. The said emphatics are of course not wholly syno-

1) Literally, as it seems, „but how [do you doubt of it?]”. Cp. Latin *Rogas*.

2) Yet **ननु** accompanies even the imperative. Kumâras. 4, 32 ननु मां प्रापय पत्युर्नतिक्रमम्.

nymous, the slight differences which exist between them, making it occasionally necessary to use one and to avoid another. It is also to be observed, that sometimes and in some degree the emphatics may act as a kind of connectives, in as far as they, too, are a means for linking sentences together. In the example quoted from Panc. 204, ननु may be called with some right a causal particle, likewise खलु and किल in the two, quoted from Çāk. I. On the other hand, the connective हि is sometimes a mere emphatic.

Rem. 2. Emphatic particles are sometimes used in an ironical sense, especially नाम and किल. See f. i. Kumāras. 5, 32.

- 397.** Ancient literature abounds in emphatic particles, many of which are obsolete in the classic dialect. Besides खलु, नाम, हि, we meet in archaic and epic works with वै, ह, स्म, नु, उ, उन, वा. Often these little particles only slightly strengthen the sense, and rather serve either to enhance the dignity of the style or to fill up the metre. Then we may call them expletives<sup>1</sup>). But they are not always used in this way, and each of them at the outset had its proper meaning.

Exp le-  
tive s

Accumulation of them is not rare, as ह स्म, ह व, उ खलु etc.

Rem. 1. वै is especially used to lay stress on the word immediately preceding. It is excessively frequent both in liturgical and in epic writings. Still Patanjali used it sometimes. Pat. I, p. 107 अकर्मका अपि वै सोपसर्गाः सकर्मका भवन्ति (nay, even intransitives become transitives, when compound). But afterwards it seems to be obsolete, at least in proso. — वा = वै is occasionally found in epic poetry.

Rem. 2. ह and उन are much liked at the end of a pada, the former after a finite verb क्त in the phrase इत्युक्त. But they may

1) And so does vernacular grammar. Even as ancient an author as Yāska knows of particles which serve पादपूर्वो.

also have other places; ह् is very frequent in the brāhmaṇa as well as in the epics.<sup>1)</sup>

Rem. 3. Some, as शब्दत् and वाच, are found in the brāhmaṇas, but not in the epics. The emphatic and also restrictive particle अह् is often met with in the mantras and in the Çatapathabr., चित्, ईम् and कम् are restricted to the mantras.

398. **एव**. The enclitic **एव** is put after a word, in order to denote: even this, not anything else. We may, therefore, call **एव** a **restrictive**. It is exceedingly frequent, being hardly ever omitted, when any stress, however slight, is to be laid on a word. Panc. 212 अहमेव करिष्यामि (I myself will do it), Mālav. I, p. 18 सप्रतिबन्धं कार्यं प्रभुर्धिमन्तुं सहाय-त्रानेव (one is able to undertake a difficult task, only with a companion), Çāk. I द्रुपिनेव भवतीनां पुरस्कृतोऽस्मि (the very sight of the ladies honours me), Panc. 186 नित्यमेव निशागमे समेत्यास्मत्पक्षकदनं कर्तामि, Mhbh. 1, 163, 11 Hiḍimba forbids Bhīma to eat, but the other, not caring for this, continues eating राक्षसं तमनादृत्य भुङ्क्त एव पराशुवः, Kathās. 30, 3 स तां दृष्ट्वैव त्रपेण त्रगन्निवमोहिनीम् । क्षोभे त्रगाम. As appears from the instances quoted, **एव** admits of manifold translations; it is often not translated at all. After pronouns it is sometimes = "the same, the very." Nala 2, 12 एतस्मिन्नेव काले (at that very time), Panc. 324 एकदैव (at the same time). Cp. 277.

Rem. 1. In poetry **एव** is sometimes omitted. R. 3, 25, 39 नादृष्टान् शरान्वोरान्विमुञ्चन्तं शरात्रगमान् । विकर्षमाणं पश्यन्ति राक्षसास्ते शरार्दिताः, here the scholiast is right in expounding विकर्षमाणमेव, "the rāxasas did not see him charging his arrows nor discharging them, they saw him *only* keeping his bow bent [so swiftly Rāma was shooting]." So Varāh. Yogay. 1, 18 भवति दैवयुतस्य सिद्धिः :: भ० दैवयुतस्यैव सिद्धिः, cp. KERN's annot. in the *Ind. Stud.* X, p. 200.

1) P. 8, 1, 60 mentions ह्, when denoting disapproval at some infringement on good manners. Kāç. illustrates this rule a. o. by the example स्वयं ह् रथेन याति।उपाध्यायं पदातिं गमयति. In this sense also अह् is used [P. 8, 1, 61], moreover, when orders are given to different persons at the same time, f. i. त्वमह् ग्रामं गच्छ।त्वमह् गच्छ (Kāç.).

Rem. 2. In the mantras ईम्, इत्, चित्, अह मा, do the duty of एव.

**399.** The other restrictives are केवलम्, परम्, कामम् and तावत्. Of these, केवलम् and परम् are = „only, at least, but.” Panc. 312 न वेत्ति त्वं गीतं केवलमुन्नहसि, Kathās. 32, 143 योगबलेन चेत्। एषा राक्षो नवा भार्या हन्यते तन् युज्यते। . . . . तस्माद् बुद्धिबलेनैषा राक्षो विश्लिष्यतां परम्.

कामम्. कामम् mostly announces some adversative particle, being almost = „to be sure” (442, 1°). It is but seldom used without adversative sentence. Daç. 126 यवप्सरोभिः संगच्छसे संगच्छस्व कामम् (if you have intercourse with apsarasas, so).

तावत्. तावत् has a peculiar employment. Properly it is an elliptical phrase, for at the outset it must have meant something like this: „as much [is certain].” Accordingly it advances a statement which is asserted „at all events” or „at least” or „before others.” As it is often an enclitic, the said translations are generally too forcible. In expositions of many links one likes to put तावत् to the first of them, then it may be compared with fr. „d’abord,” cp. 439. It is also much used in exhortations and with imperatives.

Examples: Kathās. 28, 60 अहो केयमसंभाव्यवपुर्वित्। न तावन्मानुषो (o! who may this beautiful woman be? She is, *at all events*, not a mortal). Panc. 318 a brahman thus reflects परिपूर्णांशं घटस्तावत्स-कुभिर्वर्तते। तद्यदि दुर्भिक्षं भवति तदनेन त्रयकाणां शतमुत्पद्यते (*well*, this pot is filled with porridge, now if there should be a famine, then —), ibid. 37 Damanaka says to Karataka आत्रां तावदप्रधानतां गतो। एष पिङ्गलकः. . . . स्वव्यापारपराशुलः संज्ञातः। सर्वोऽपि परित्तनो गतः। तत्किं क्रियते (*in the first place* we have lost our influence, next our king has become averse to his duty, and finally all his attendants are gone, what is to be done in these circumstances?), ibid. 23 तत्रावज्ञानानि कस्यायं वदः (therefore, I will know *at least*, whose voice it is). Mudr.

III, p. 114 यत्प्रलेख्यपन्नं तावद् दीयताम् (only, give up the letter). Çāk. VI the king eagerly exclaims धनुस्तावत् (my bow! = "I want to have my bow and to have it soon"); likewise Mālav. I, p. 20 the king greets the dancing-masters स्वागतं भवङ्गाम्, then turning to his attendance he continues आसने तावद्रजःवतोः, cp. Vikram. V, p. 180 अथोऽर्थस्तावत्.

ज्ञातु- Rem. ज्ञातु, an old emphatic particle, seems to be restricted to poetry and almost to negative and interrogative sentences: न ज्ञातु »not at all." Sometimes it may be almost = »perchance, perhaps." Kathās. 25, 24 ज्ञानीयान् ब्रूहो ज्ञातु तां पुरीम्. Sometimes चित् is affixed to it, see 402.

## CHAPT. II. Negation.

400. Sanskrit has three negative particles: न, मा and the prefix अ(न्)°. Of these the last mentioned is only used in compounds, मा is the special particle of prohibition.

401. The general negation is न. It negatives as well single words or notions as whole statements. In the former case it is put immediately before the word denied. Pauc. 147 परिज्ञातस्त्वं सम्यङ् गृह्णत् (I have clearly experienced you to be an unfriend).

When denying the whole statement, one is tolerably free where to put the negation. Commonly, two places are preferred: either at the head of the whole sentence — so regularly for rhetorical purposes, as in the case of antithesis, epanaphora, also in emphatical denials — or just before the verb. Yet, as has been said, any other place is admissible and very often met with, especially in poets.

Examples: न heading the sentence. Pauc. 26 न दीनोऽपि महान्तः कुप्यन्तीति न त्वं तेन निपातितः (as men of superior rank do not feel angry towards a wretch, he has not killed you), Mudr. IV, p. 137 न मया सुचिन्मपि विचार्यता तेषां वाक्यार्थोऽभिमतः (though I have been reflecting on it quite a while, I do not understand what

it is, they speak of); — of न just before the verb: Panc. 48 नापिता वक्तुं न शशाक, Hit. 95 कोऽप्युपायो ऽस्माकं जीवनाय नास्ति.

anaphora: Panc. I, 4 न सा विद्या न तद् दानं न तच्छिल्पं न सा कलाऽन्यार्थिभिर्न तत्स्थैर्यं धनिनां यन् गीयते (no knowledge, no munificence, no skill, no art, no perseverance can be imagined which is not praised in the wealthy by those who desire profit of them); — emphatic denial: Panc. 54 the weaver, who acts the part of Vishnu says to the princess सुभगे नाहं दर्शनपथं मानुषाणां गच्छामि.

Instances of another place, than at the head or before the verb: Daç. 198 तमलमस्मि नाहमुर्तुम् (I am not able to rescue him), Hit. 9 अहं.... न कथं विश्वासभूमिः, Kumâras. 5, 5 सुतां शशाक मेना न नियन्तुमुद्यमात्, Panc. I, 27 किं तेन ज्ञातुं ज्ञातेन.... आ-रोहति न यः स्वस्य वंशस्याग्रे ध्वजो यया; ibid. II, 168 वाञ्छा निवर्तते नार्थैः = नार्थैर्वञ्छा नि°; Kathâs. 24, 171 तत्किं त्वमेव मूल्येन गृह्णास्याभार्यां न तत्.

Rem. न is sometimes by itself the whole predicate, the verb being implied. Daç. 156 तस्मै चेयमनुमता दातुमित्यस्यै न (she was destined for him, not for another), Panc. 116 साधोः शिक्षा गुणाय संप्रवर्तते नासाधोः (education turns to advantage in a good man, but in a wicked one not so).

**402.** The combinations of न with indefinite pronouns or pronominal adverbs to express *none, no, neither, nowhere* and the like are treated **282** and **288** R. 3.

न com-  
bined  
with  
other  
parti-  
cles.

When accompanying connective particles, न precedes them as a rule, as नच [cp. Latin *neque*], न वा, नापि, नहि, न तु, न पुनः, नो[=न + उ]. Cp. 429. With नु it becomes the interrogative particle ननु (413).

„Not even” is न.... अपि, न.... एव; „not at all” न ज्ञातुं; „not indeed” न खलु, न नूनम्, न सत्यम् etc.; „not yet” न तावत्. Panc. 30 न रात्रावप्यधिज्ञेते (even at night he did not find his rest); — M. 2, 94 न ज्ञातुं कामः कामानाम्पक्षभोगेन शाम्यति

(lust is by no means quenched by enjoyment); here चित् is not rarely added, as Mhbh. 1, 49, 4 कल्याणं प्रतिपत्स्यामि विपरीतं न तातु चित्; — Çāk. I न खलु न खलु चापाः संनिपात्योऽयमस्मिन्मृदुनि मृगशरैरे; — R. 2, 30, 35 न सत्यम्; — Mhbh. 1, 24, 14 न तावद् दृश्यते सूर्यः (the sun is not yet visible).

Rem. 1. नो at the outset served to signify the negation + the adversative particle = "but not", yet उ having almost got obsolete in the classic dialect, नो is sometimes considered almost a synonym of the simple न and is used chiefly in poetry instead of it either as an emphatic negation, or for metrical purposes. See f. i. Mrech. IV, p. 135 नो मुष्णाम्यत्रलात् etc; ibid. IX, p. 314; Panc. II, 153; V, 24.

Rem. 2. The archaic dialect possessed a negation नेत् = न + इत्. It is sometimes a mere negation, but commonly it is = "lest", then it is construed with the conjunctive mood (ल्लेट्), cp. 355 R. 1.

403. <sup>अ° or अन्°.</sup> The negation अ° — अन् — is only used as the first member of compounds, both bahuvrīhis, and tatpuru-  
 rushas, see 218 and 223 c). In tatpuruśhas its force is not always the same. अमित्र f. i. not only denotes "not a friend" but also the very opposite of मित्र, viz. "foe." Of the latter kind are sundry common words, as अनल्प (much), अनेक (many), अयज्ञः (dishonour). The former type involves identity of meaning with the separate negation न, f. i. Daç. 69 देहिकस्य सुखस्यागात्रं तन्नोऽयम् (I am no vessel for wordly pleasure), Panc. 62 तेषां त्रियोगं दूदुगहृगमर्यः = न समर्यः, Daç. 199 कदाचिदप्रचिन्तुषां गुणेषु (not a single moment [he was] not thirsting for virtue).

Further अ° in tatpuruśhas may denote "all except this," अत्राक्षयः = "anybody but a brahman." M. 5, 18 in the list of eatable animals it is said भक्ष्यान्.... अदुरतुद्रांश्चैकतोदतः, Kull. comments तथाद्वर्जितानेकदन्तापङ्क्त्युपेतान्.

Rem. न is not wholly excluded from compounds, but it is rarely used so, f. i. नचिरेण = अचिरेण (soon) etc.; नानिद्रे (not far), ननुमक (eunuch; [the] neuter [gender]).

404. अ° may be compounded with verbal forms, viz. par-



ticiples, gerunds and infinitives. Panc. 67 अनिच्छन्पि (though not wishing it); Kum. 1, 37 Pârvatî being taken in his arms by Çiva, is said to ascend his shoulder अनन्यनारीकमनोयमङ्गम् (— not to be cherished by other women); — Panc. 69 न युज्यते स्वामिनास्व सामर्थ्यमविदित्वा गन्तुम् (it does not befit my master to go without having experienced his strength), Daç. 75 स्वभवनमगलैव तमृषिमभाषत; — R. 2, 48, 11 नैनं शक्यन्त्यनर्चितुम् (they cannot help honouring him), Pat. I, p. 230 अयमपि योगः शक्योऽवक्तुम् (this rule, too, might have remained unsaid). Of अ° with inf. I know no instances except such as are construed with the verb शक्.

Rem. A vârtt. on P. 6, 3, 73 allows अ° also put to the finite verb, provided that it be intended to express blame, as अयचसि त्वं तालम्, as if we should say: »you miscook" = »you do not cook well."

**405.** मा is the proper negation to be used with the imperative and its concurrent idioms; in other terms it expresses *prohibition*, or in a wider sense *the desire to keep off*. Examples of its employment with imperative, optative, aorist without augment have been given **353** and **354**. A strong prohibition is not rarely expressed by the sole मा or by मैवम् (not so) with ellipsis of the verb; मा तावत् signifies reprobation, as Mâlav. I, p. 3.

With imperative मा is also used, if the imperative expresses doubt or uncertainty. Mhbh. 14, 6, 8 गच्छ वा मा त्रा (you are free to go or not [as you like]). In the same meaning also with लिङ्, as Panc. I, 225 विषं भवतु मा भूयान् (there may be poison or not). More over मा with लिङ् may express solicitude. Mrçch. III, p. 124 अये चिद्यति मैत्रेयः मा नाम वैकृत्यादकार्यं कुर्यात् (Maitreya tarries long, in his distress I hope he will do nothing unbecoming). As to मा with the future in epic poetry and in the prâkrts, see **353** R. 4.

Rem. 1. When subjoined to some chief sentence, मा admits of being translated by „lest," as Mhbh. 5, 37, 45 मा वनं हिन्धि सव्याघ्रं मा व्याघ्रा नोऽनश्वनान् (do not destroy the forest with tigers, lest the tigers should disappear from the forest), cp. ibid. 1, 30, 15 quoted

353 R. 4. 1). (In other terms, मा with लिङ्, aorist or future may be synonymous with यथा न or येन न. — In epic poetry न with optative<sup>1</sup> is also used = »lest;” instances are not rare. Mhbh. 1, 154, 35 श्रीञ्च गच्छामः भद्रं ते न नो विद्यात्सुयोधनः (let us go instantaneously, lest Duryodhana should know of us), ibid. 1, 56, 23 तत्रे दयां वरं त्रिषु न निवर्तेत्कृतुर्मम, R. 2, 63, 43 तं प्रसादय न त्वां प्रपेत्, Nala 14, 14 etc. 2).

Rem. 2. न; not मा, is the negation to be used with the potential mood, in hypothetical sentences, in general procepts and with the लिङ् taught 343 e. 1. 3). Nala 13, 42 Damayanti says the conditions upon which she will be a maid-servant: उच्छिष्टं नैव भुञ्जीयां न कुर्यां पादधावनम् न चार्हं पुह्वानन्यान्प्रभाषेयम्, here न, not मा, is in its place.

406. Two negations in the same sentence are equivalent to a strong affirmation. Ch. Up. 4, 4, 5 नैतद्ब्राह्मणां विवक्तुमर्हति (no one but a brahman can thus speak out), R. 2, 30, 31 न खलुहं न गच्छेयम् (I cannot but go, indeed), ibid. 2, 32, 46 न तत्र कश्चिन् बभूव तर्पितः (there was no one there but was made content), Mālav. epilogue आश्राय्यमिति विगमप्रभृति प्रज्ञानां संपत्स्यते न खलु गोपूतिं नाग्निमित्रे, comm. न खलु संपत्स्यत इति नाग्निं तु संपत्स्यत इव<sup>1</sup>).

407. If two or more negative sentences are to be connected, the negation is often put but once. So

1) Panc. 325 मा = »lest” is construed with a present: दूरागच्छामि ना कश्चिन्माष्यनर्यो भवति. Instead of भवति one would rather expect भवेत्.

2) Sometimes न is construed so even with the future in °स्यति. Mhbh. 1, 146, 30 भोमं च विलसयैव क्वाम सुसंवृतम्..... न नस्तत्र हुताशः संप्रथक्ष्यति.

3) मा..... यदि = »if not” I have met with Mālat. IX, p. 160: अक्रष्टिष्यदसौ पापमतिनिष्कृषौव मा। माभविष्यमहं तत्र यदि तत्परिपन्थिनी. But माभ° may be a false reading instead of नाभ°.

4) R. 3, 47, 8 नाय भोक्ष्ये न च स्वप्स्ये न पास्ये न कदाचन is an instance of emphatic denial by means of repeating the negation, unless the reading be false and we must read न पास्ये च कदाचन. — In Panc. 116 the words मम वचनमश्रूषवन्नात्मनः शान्तिमपि न वेत्ति are erroneously resolved thus अश्रूषवन् नात्मनः°, they are = अश्रूषवन् + आत्मनः.

Nega-  
tion  
when  
omit-  
ted?

न..... च may be = „neither..... nor, not... nor”;  
न.... अपि = „not... not even;” न.... वा = „not...  
nor”. This omission of the negation in the second  
link is necessary in the idiom न.... यथा or इव „not....  
no more than.” R. 2, 59, 8 पुष्पाणि... नातिमान्यल्पगन्धोनि फलानि च  
यथापुर्म् (the flowers do not glisten..... nor do the fruits as be-  
fore), M. 4, 56 नाप्सु मूत्रं पुरीषं वा श्वेवनं वा समुत्सृजेत् (neither..... nor.....  
nor), Panc. IV, 53 माता यस्य गृहे नास्ति भार्या च प्रियव्रादिनोऽश्वपये तेन ग-  
तव्यम्; — Bhoj. 15 न ते राजानमिच्छन्ति प्रजाः वषट्मित्र स्त्रियः (such a king  
is not desired by his subjects, no more than a eunuch is by  
women); R. 3, 47, 37 नाहं शक्या त्वया स्पृष्टुमादित्यस्य प्रभा यथा (— no more  
than the sunshine).

But, in asyndetical connection of negative sentences the nega-  
tion is always repeated, cp. Panc. I, 4 in 401.

### CHAPT. III. Interrogations.

**408.** Interrogative sentences are twofold. Sometimes it  
is the whole action or fact, which is put in question,  
as „is he gone?”, sometimes it is not the fact itself  
but one of its elements, that is asked after, as: „where  
does he dwell? who has seen him?” Questions of the  
latter type are introduced by interrogative pro-  
nouns or adverbs, those of the former 1<sup>st</sup> by par-  
ticles, which partly are also derivatives from the inter-  
rogative pronoun, 2<sup>ly</sup> the interrogation is signified by  
the mere mode of pronouncing.

Inter-  
roga-  
tive  
pro-  
nouns  
and  
ad-  
verbs.

I. The interrogative pronoun is क, the interrogative  
adverbs, as क्व, कुतः, किमिति (why?), are its deriva-  
tives. As a rule they head the sentence, at least in  
prose; in poetry they may be put anywhere. Panc. 126  
केनोपायेनेषां धनं लभे, Daç. 82 कासि वासु क्व यासि, Pat. I, p. 427 कति

भवतो भार्या; Mrcc. IX, p. 302 अयेदानो वसन्तसेना क्व गता; Panc. II, 4 अक्षैश्चापि युधिष्ठिरेण सहसा प्राप्नो ह्यनर्थः कथम्.

Rem. Like other pronouns the interrogative may be part of a compound. Mrcc. IX, p. 302 किं नामधेयं तस्या मित्रम् (v. a. what is the name of her lover?), Daṣ. 74 जन्मनः प्रभृत्यर्थकामवातनिमित्ता वयं ज्ञेयो चेमो किं रूपो किं परिचारी किं फलो च (as long as I live, I have been unacquainted with the course of [those two objects of human pursuit] Profit and Pleasure, and I should like to know what is their shape, who are their attendants and what fruit they yield), Pat. I, p. 6 कथञ्जातीयक उत्तराः कर्तव्यः कथञ्जातीयको ऽपवादः (rule and exception being wanted, what is the nature of either?).

409. Other remarks on the interrogative pronoun and its derivatives. — 1. They may depend on participles, gerunds and the like, also subordinate sentences. Mhbh. 1, 162, 11 तस्य व्यवसितस्यागो द्युदिनास्याय कां त्वया (v. a. what motive has made you decide to abandon this [man]?), Mudr. I, p. 28 यदि किं स्यात् (if what would be?)

2. Nothing precludes the presence of more interrogatives, referring to different things, in the same sentence. Pat. I, p. 241 केव्येषु काञ्जान्प्रयुञ्जते (what sounds do they employ [and] in what meanings?), Kathās. 41, 37 कोऽर्थो प्रार्थयते कः किं कस्मै किं दीयतामिति (who is indigent? who begs [and] for what? to whom should be given [and] what?).

3. Some particles, viz. वा, स्त्रि, इ, नु, उ, नाम, are subjoined to them, in order to express some interest taken in the question by the speaker. Cp. the like duty of Lat. - *nam* and *tandem*, Greek *πρὸς*, French *donc*. Çāk. I मानुषीषु कथं वा स्यादस्य इषस्य संग्रहः (is it then possible, that such a beauty should be of human origin?); Mhbh. 1, 91, 8 कति स्त्रिदेव मुनयः कति मीनानि चाप्युत। भवन्तीति तदाचक्ष्व श्रोतुमिच्छामहे वयम्; R. 2, 38, 8 अपकारं कमित्र ते करोति जनकात्मजा (what possible injury can Janaka's daughter do you then?); Ch. Up. 4, 14, 2 ब्रह्मविद् इव सोम्य ते मुखं भाति। को नु त्वानुश्रवस (friend, your face shines like that of one who knows Brahman; who has taught you?); Kathās. 16, 9 किं नाम न सद्गते हि भर्तृभक्ताः कुलाङ्गनाः.

4. Note the phrase कोऽयम् (who is it, that — here?), f. i. Hit.

21 ततस्तमायान्तं दृष्ट्वा पत्तिशावकैर्मयार्तिः कोलाहलः कृतः। तच्छ्रुत्वा तद्दत्तवर्गोक्तः।  
कोऽयमायान्तिः।

5. किम् may do duty as a particle, see 412, 3°.

410

Rhetorical  
ques-  
tions.

Sanskrit has a pronounced predilection for rhetorical questions (14, VI). Hence, the interrogative pronouns and adverbs are often to be translated rather freely. Here are some examples: R. 2, 44, 7 किं न प्राप्सवात्मनः = सर्वं प्रा°, Hit. 22 ज्ञातिमात्रेणा किं कश्चिद्व्यथते पूज्यते कुचित् (v. a. nobly is punished or honoured anywhere on account of his birth alone), Kathās. 28, 10 ब्रूतेन च परस्वार्थे.... आत्मापि तृणावद् दत्तः का व्राके धने कथा (the Buddha has given up his own self like a grass-blade for the benefit of his neighbour, how, then, can there be question about [giving up] wretched riches?). Cp. Mhbh. 1, 74, 27, Çāk. I, vs. 19 etc. Cp. also अथ किम् = 'yes,' किं तु = 'but' (441), किं च = 'moreover' (437).

कथम्  
and  
कुतः

In a similar way कथम् and कुतः frequently precede the cause, reason or motive, when expressed by a new sentence. For this reason, one may sometimes render them by 'indeed.' Mudr. V, p. 157 अहो चिन्त्रितार्थचापाकानोतेः कुतः the reason is given in the strophe, which immediately follows, ibid. I, p. 29 कस्य परिज्ञाने नियुक्तो निपुणक इति न ज्ञायते। आ ज्ञातम्। अथ कथमयं प्रकृतिचिन्त्रपरिज्ञाने नियुक्तो निपुणक इति.

कु च...

...कुच.

Rem. The idiom क्व च.... क्व च serves to denote a great discrepancy between two things. Daç. 77 कु तपः कु च रुदितम् (v. a. to be an ascetic and to weep are incompatible), R. 2, 106, 18 कु चारण्यं कु च ज्ञानं कु तदाः कु च पालनम्, Çāk. I कु व्रत हरिणकानां शीघ्रितं चातिलोलं। कु च निश्चितनिपाताः सार्वभूताः प्ररास्ते. Cp. Kathās. 28, 6, R. 3, 9, 27 etc.

411.

Inter-  
rogati-  
ves and  
relati-  
ves in  
indi-  
rect  
ques-  
tions.

In indirect questions the interrogatives are employed, but instead of them the relatives are also admissible. Kathās. 39, 174 पश्यैनं व्रजये कथम् (see, how I delude him), Panc. 55 ज्ञायतां किमेतं कञ्चुकिना वदन्ति (be informed of what these guards are telling). On the other hand Kathās. 39, 87 तस्यै सर्वम्.... अत्र-  
ब्रूत्। योऽसौ यन्नामधेयश्च यस्य पुत्रो महीपतेः (he told her everything, who he was, of what name, whose king's son), the direct question would

have been कश्चिं किंनामधेयश्च कस्य पुत्रः. Likewise Mālat. II, p. 39 पितैव ते ज्ञानानि योऽसौ यादृशश्च, R. 2, 52, 60 शृणु. . . . यद्ये त्वां प्रेय्यामि पुरोमितः.

**412.** II. In such interrogative sentences, as put the whole fact into question, interrogative particles are sometimes added, sometimes omitted. When they are omitted, the verb mostly heads the sentence. When added, it is they that are usually put at the head. The said particles are अयि, उत, किम् and कश्चित्.

Inter-  
roga-  
tive  
parti-

a). Examples of questions *without* interrog. particle: Panc. 21 अि दमनक शृणोषि शब्दं दूरान्महान्तम् (say, Dam., do you hear a noise distant and great?), ibid. 326 अस्ति तस्य दुरात्मनः प्रतिपेधोपायः कश्चित् (is there any means for checking that scoundrel?), Mālav. IX, p. 159 कस्य जीवति मे प्रिया (say, does my sweetheart live?).

b). Examples of questions *with* interrog. particle:

1. अयि. — Panc. 35 अयि भवतः शिखम् (v. a. are you in good health?), ibid. 25 अयि सत्यम् (is it true?), Kathās. 24, 208 अयि ज्ञानोष (do you know?), Vikram. IV, p. 142 अयि दृष्टवानसि मम प्रियां वने.

2. उत, in simple questions very rare and obsolete, it seems. Kāç. on P. 3, 3, 152 उत दण्डः पतियति (will the stick fall?). As to its use in alternatives see 414.

3. किम्. — Daç. 170 शृणोषि किम् = Lat. *potesne?*

4. कश्चित्. — R. 1, 52, 7 कश्चित् कुशलं राजन्. . . . कश्चित् विजिताः सर्वे रिपवः (are you in good health, king? . . . have you subdued all your enemies?), Mhbh. 1, 5, 1 पुराणमखिलं तात पिता तेऽश्रोतवान्पुरा। कश्चिन्मपि तत्सर्वमश्रोषे, çp. Nala 4, 24, Kathās. 75, 93 etc.

Rom. Like the other interrogatives (409, 3<sup>o</sup>) the said particles may be strengthened by adding to them some other particle as इव, वा, नु, उ, नाम. Of the kind is अयि नाम, किं नु, किं नु खलु, किमिव and the like. — Çāk. I अयि नाम कुलपतेरियमवर्णीतेऽसंभवा भवेत् (can she have been born to the chief of the family from a wife of a different caste?); ibid. VII किं वा शकुन्तलेत्यस्य मातुराख्या (is Çāk. perhaps the name of his mother?); Bhoj. 64 ततः कविर्यचिन्तयत्। किमु राज्ञा नाश्रात्रि; Mhbh. 1, 151, 28 किं नु दुःखतरं शक्यं मया द्रष्टुमतः परम् (what

can I see more unhappy than this?); Mhbh. 1, 162, 11 कश्चिन् दुःखैर्बुद्धिस्ते विलुप्य गतचेतसः.

**412.** Many times the particle किम् may be compared to Latin *num*, as it makes a negative answer to be expected. Kathās. 28, 71 निरास्येनापि किं त्यक्तं विश्रामित्रेण ज्ञोवितं। मेनकायां प्रयातायां प्रसूयैव प्राकुन्तलाम् (Lat. *num* *Vicv. vita excessit* — ?), Mudr. I, p. 27 किं भवानस्मदुपाध्यायादपि धर्मवित्तमः (are you even more learned than our teacher?).

**413.** On the other hand, न put into the question announces an affirmative answer, like Latin *nonne*. It generally attends some interrogative particle, viz. अपि or किम्, but may also be used by itself. By combining न and नु one gets ननु which is to be considered a new particle, fully answering to Lat. *nonne*, Greek *οὐνοὺν*, and which for this reason has also the force of an emphatic (396). Examples: Ch. Up. 1, 10, 4 न स्थितेऽप्युच्छिन्ना इति (were not these [beans] also left [and therefore unclean]?); — R. 2, 72, 5 अपि नाश्वश्रमः शीघ्रं रथेनागतस्तव (are you not tired with the long way, having driven quickly?); — Ratn. III, p. 79 किं पदास्य रुचिं न हन्ति नयनानन्दं विधत्ते न किम् [viz. शक्रेन्दुस्तव] (does not [the splendour of your face] outshine the brilliancy of the white lotus and does it not cause delight to the eyes?); — R. 2, 22, 22 ननु देवस्य कर्म तत् (is not that the effect of Destiny?).

Rem. Yet, न put to कश्चित् = किम् *num*, since कश्चित् alone may be rather = *nonne*. R. 2, 72, 44 कश्चिन्न ब्राह्मणधनं हृतं रमेण कश्चित्, cp. ibid. 1, 74, 21; 2, 57, 7; Mhbh. 1, 23, 10.

**414.** Disjunctive interrogations are characterized by a great variety of particles. Commonly the former member begins with किम्, but there are many other combinations. Here are some instances:

1. In the former member किम्, in the latter वा or किं वा or

अथवा or उत or आहो or उताहा. — Daç. 149 किमयं स्वप्नः किं विप्रलम्भो वा (is this a vision or is it delusion?), Panc. 230 किमेनमुत्थाय हन्यथवा हेलयैव प्रसुप्तौ द्वावप्येतौ व्यापादयामि (shall I rise and kill him or shall I slay both of them while sleeping?), Mṛech. III, p. 113 किं लक्ष्यसुप्तमुत परमार्थसुप्तमिदं द्रव्यम् (are these two men sleeping indeed, or counterfeiting sleep?), Çāk. I त्रेखानसं किमनया वृतमा प्रदानात्..... निषेवितव्यम् अत्यन्तमेव..... आहो निवस्यति समं हरिणाङ्गनाभिः (must she keep the vow of chastity 'up to her marriage or is she to dwell with the antelopes of the hermitage for ever?). — To either member or to both another particle may be subjoined, f. i. instead of किम् one may say किम्, किं नु, in the second member instead of उत. आहो or उताहो, also किमुत, उतस्त्रित्, आहोस्त्रित् etc. Mṛech. X, p. 367 किं नु स्वर्गाप्नुः प्राप्ता..... किमुतान्येयमानता (is she come back from heaven, or is she another [Vasantasenā?]), Panc. 202 किं केनापि पाशेन बध्नु उताहोस्त्रित्केनापि व्यापादितः (has anybody caught him in a snare or has anybody killed him?).

2. The former member contains some other particle, not किम्. So f. i. नु..... नु Kumâras. 1, 46 तथा गृहीते नु मृगाङ्गनाभस्ततो गृहीते नु मृगाङ्गनाभिः (has she borrowed it from the antelopes, or the antelopes from her?); — कश्चित्..... वा Mhbh. 1, 162, 3; — उत..... वा Kumâras. 4, 8; — वा..... वा Pat. I, p. 6 एतत्प्राधान्येन परिचितं नित्यो वा स्यात्कार्यो वेति [sc. प्रवृत्तः].

3. The former member is without particle. Of the kind are Panc. 294 सत्योऽयं स्वप्नः किं वाऽसत्यो भविष्यति न जायते; Çāk. V मूढः स्वामहमया वा ब्रह्मेन्मिया (either I must be out of my wits or she must lie); Çāk. I श्रावन्ति वर्तन्ति तदन्ति नु श्रावन्तिस्ते.

Rem. If the second member is "or no," one says न वा. Panc. 329 किं प्रतिविधानमस्ति न वा (is there any remedy or no?), Daç. 140 एष मे पतिस्तवापकर्ता न वेति दैवमेव जानाति. — "Yes or no" is वा न वा. Nala 18, 24 नहि स जायते वीरो नलो ज्ञेयति वा न वा.

**415.** Disjunctive interrogations of three or more members of course show a still greater variety of interrogative particles. Kumâras. 6, 23 किं येन सुवसि व्यकुमुत येन चिर्मयि नत्। अथ चिश्चस्य संहरा भागः कतम एष ते (v. a. are you Brahmâ, Vishnu or Çiva?); Panc. 332 किं मम बधोपायक्रमः कुत्रास्य बोताहो अन्यस्य वा कस्यचित् (is it I, against whom the plot is laid or is it the hunchback or anybody else?): Daç.



89 किं विलासात्किमभिलाषात्किमकस्मादेव न ज्ञाने; Çāk. VI स्वप्ने नु माया नु मतिभ्रमो नु किं नु तावत्फलमेव पुण्यम् (was it a dream or a delusion or perplexity of mind or was indeed the store of my good works exhausted?); Panc. 177 किं सिंहादिभिः क्वापि व्यापादित उत लुब्धकैर्यवाऽनले प्रपतितो गताविषमे वा नवतृणलौल्यात्; Kathās. 72, 185; Pat. I, p. 5, l. 14 किम्..... आहोस्वित्... . आहोस्वित्; Panc. 48, l. 19; etc. etc.

#### CHAPT. IV. Exclamation.

**416.** Exclamation is *either* signified by simple interjections, as **हा** (alas), **अत** (ah), **अहह** (oh!) **आः**, **अहो** both expressive of surprise and strong emotion, **धिक्** (fy), and nouns used as such, as **कष्टम्** (it is a pity, alas), **दिव्या** (thanks to God), **साधु** (well done), **आश्चर्यम्** (marvellous), **शान्तम्** or **शान्तं पापम्** — see Rem. on 2 — or expressed by a full sentence, commonly beginning with one of the said interjections or exclamative particles.

Exclamative sentences, introduced by interrogative pronouns or pronominal adverbs are, not nearly so often met with in Sanskrit as in our language. Still, the idiom exists. Daç. 67 king Rājahansa rejoices when seeing again his comrades and exclaims कथं समस्त एष मित्रगाः समागतः को नामायमयुदयः. Ven. I, p. 25 Sahadeva to Bhīma का खलु वेत्ता तत्रभवत्याः प्राप्तायाः (how long it is, indeed, since My lady is here!).

Here are some examples of exclamatives: Panc. 25 अहो शोभनमापतितम्, here अहो is expressive of joy, but R. 2, 115, 3 जनश्चाहो दिवं रता it expresses sorrow; — R. 2, 12, 73 वैदेही अत मे प्राणाञ्जोचन्तो जपयिष्यति; — Kumāras. 3, 20 अहो and अत together: अहो अतानि स्पृहणीयदीर्यः; — Mhbh. 1, 157, 41 अहो धिक्कां गतिं त्वय गमिष्यामि; Panc. 158 धिक्पूर्त्वं (for shame, you blockhead, you —); — Mudr. III, p. 104 आ ज्ञानम् (o I, remember); Prabodh. *passim* आः पाप (o, you rascal!); — Mudr. II, p. 84 दिव्या दृष्टोऽसि तत्परिष्वजस्व माम्.

**417.** **अहो** and **धिक्** are often construed in a particular

**अहो** manner. **अहो** is apt to be used with the nominative of an abstract noun, expressive of the fact which causes the astonishment. But **धिक्** — or, in full, **धिगस्तु** — is attended by the accus. (sometimes also, but not so often, the nomin.) of the person or thing, which causes the indignation or anger.

Examples. 1. of **अहो** with nomin. — Nala 3, 17 Damayanti, when seeing on a sudden the beautiful appearance of Nala, exclaims **अहो** वपमहो कान्तिर्हो धैर्यं महात्मनः, Mudr. I, p. 38 Cānakya takes the letter, glances over it and says praisingly **अहो** दर्पनीयतान्तराणाम् (an excellent hand indeed), Panc. 92 the Ocean disapproving the words of the bird, which he has overheard, exclaims **अहो** गर्वः पत्तिकोटस्यास्य, Mudr. VI, p. 197 Rāksasa, when entering the old garden, being sad with grief, laments **अहो** तीर्णोयानस्य नाभिर्नृणोयता (how little charm this old garden has!).

2. of **धिक्** with acc. Mhbh. 1, 131, 23 धिमेतां वः कृतास्वताम् (shame over your skill at arms!), R. 2, 49, 4 रतानं धिदग्गणं कामस्य वृणमास्थितम्, ibid. 2, 47, 4 धिगस्तु खलु निद्रां ताम् (v. a. cursed sleep!), Kād. I, p. 18 धिन्विधातारमसदृशसंयोगकारिणाम्; — of **धिक्** with nom. Panc. 156 धिगिहं दग्धिता, ibid. I, 174 धिगार्याः कष्टसंश्रयाः.

Rem. 1. Occasionally **धिक्** occurs with a gen. Hariv. 8722 ह्योस्व भावस्य धिक्खलु.

Rem. 2. Pat. I, p. 443 हा देवदत्तम् affords also an instance of हा, construed with the accus.

**418.** Some particles are used in exhortations. They of course attend imperatives and such tenses as have the meaning of imperatives. The principal of them are **अङ्ग**, **हन्त** both = „well, come,” Lat. *age* and *agedum*. Kathās. 24, 143 हन्त प्रसीदानय तम्. With the 1<sup>st</sup> person = fr. *allons*. Ch. Up. 5, 11, 2 तं हन्ताभ्यागच्छामेति तं ह्याभ्यागतमुः (»Well, let us go to him.” Thus speaking, they went to him); R. 2, 96, 15 अङ्गवेक्षस्व संमित्रे (come, look here, Laxmaṇa). — Among others, ननु and अयि, as Kumāras. 4, 32 ननु मां प्रापय पत्युर्नितिकम् (do, bring me together with

my husband), Kâç. on P. 1, 4, 96 अपि सिद्ध, cp. Kâç on P. 8, 1, 33 अङ्ग पठ (pray, read). — Like our 'come,' the imperat. दृहि may assume the nature of a particle, f. i. Kathâs. 37, 200 दृहि तस्यान्तिकं... याव (come, let us go to him) and so already at so remote a period as when the marriage-mantras have been composed. Âçv. Grhy. 1, 7, 6 ताव्रेहि विवहावरे प्रज्ञां प्रदानयावहे.

Rem. Neither अङ्ग nor दन्त are however limited to this employment. Occasionally they accompany also the indicative mood. Kâç. on P. 8, 2, 96 अङ्ग देवदत्त मिथ्या वदसि (I say, my friend, you say the thing that is not), Mudr. I, p. 38 दन्त त्रितो मलयकेतुः. When addressing some person, while offering him something, one uses दन्त, fr. *voilà*. Schol. on P. 8, 2, 99 मां मे देहि भोः। दन्त ते ददामि.

**419** अयि  
and  
रे. All interjections readily join with vocatives. Two, अयि and रे, are especially employed so, since they serve to draw the attention of the person addressed, in a word, like भाः the vocat. of भवान् (259) — and Lat. *heus*. Kumâras. 4, 28 अयि संप्रति देहि दर्शनं स्मर (come, Kâma, show yourself now), Hit. 9 व्याघ्र उवाच। शृणु रे पान्य. — अयि is especially fit for gentle address 'prithoo. 1)'.  
-----

1) अयि is also asserted by lexicographers to be a particle of interrogation. I greatly doubt the correctness of this statement. अयि may easily be confounded in mss. with अपि, and, in fact, it is not rarely a various reading of the interrogative अपि, see the passages of Çâk. quoted by the Petr. Dict. s. v. अयि 2). The Petr. Dict. adds five more instances: a) three from the Kumâras., b) one from the Mṛcch., c) one from the Pancatantra. Of them, a) Kumâras. 4, 3 अयि जीवितनाथ जीवसि, though Mallin. comments thus on it अयि प्रश्नानुवयोरिति विश्वः। अयि जी० जी० प्राणिषि कश्चिदिति, it is by no means necessary to accept here अयि as an interrogative, better it is to keep to its duty as an interjection अयि जीवितनाथ 'o, my Lord' जीवसि 'are you alive?' So Mallin. himself explains Kumâras. 5, 62 अयोति कोमलामन्त्रगो. As to the remaining passage ibid. 5, 33—35, the edition of Prof. Tāranātha has अपि, not अयि. — b) In the two editions of the Mṛcch., I have at hand, the particle अयि is wanting, instead of अयि ज्ञानोपे they have भद्र ज्ञानोपे. — c). As to

A cognate particle is अये, sometimes = अयि, sometimes expressive of astonishment. Çāk. VI king Dushyanta, when perceiving on a sudden the charioteer of Indra standing near, exclaims अये मातलिः. Cp. Mrech. I, p. 17 अये सर्वकालमित्रं मैत्रेयः प्रापः.

**420.** As to the vocative, it is generally put at the head, at least in prose, for poets may give it any place, according to the exigencies of the metre or rhythm.

Vocative.

In flowery style the vocative is not rarely attended by epithets, as Mālat. VI, p. 87 आ दुरात्मन्मालतीनिमित्तं व्यापादितास्मदुरो माधव-हृत्क (accursed Mādhava, thou who hast murdered our teacher because of the wretched Mālati). In ordinary prose they are avoided.

#### CHAPT. V. Connective particles.

**421.** The most important connective particles are five monosyllables: च, वा, उ, तु, हि, and four dissyllables अथ, अपि, इव and उत. Of these, च, अपि, अथ and उत have the most general bearing, as they are simply copulating words = „and, also, further,” though they often admit of some special modification of meaning, so as to get the force of adversatives, concessives etc. For the rest, वा is the disjunctive, तु and the archaic उ are adversatives, हि is causal, इव is the particle of comparison.

Connective particles.

In the classic language उ and उत are no more used alone, but in some combinations they are, cp. 402 R. 1; 442, 2° and 4°. That अपि, उ and उत may also be interrogative particles, has been shown above 412 and 414.

Side by side with the said connective particles one

Panc. p. 38, 6, quoted by the Petr. Dict. = p. 44, last line of Vidyāsāgara's ed., this editor signifies by his very interpunction, that he considers अयि an exclamative, not an interrogative, as he has अयि! शिवं भवत्याः (my dear, has no harm befallen you?).

uses several adverbs, serving the same purpose, as **अपरम्** and **अन्यत्** or **अन्यच्च** „further, moreover,” **परम्** „but, yet,” **तथा** „likewise, and,” the conclusives **तत्** and **तस्मात्** „therefore,” the causal **यतः** „for,” **पुनः** „on the other hand, again, but.” They have completely assumed the nature of conjunctions.

Combinations of these particles either with each other or with other particles are excessively frequent. So **च** and **अपि**, **अथ** and **वा**, **परम्** and **तु** are very often combined, **एव** is often added to **च**, **अपि**, **वा**, **तु**. Some of them may be considered as units, as **अथवा** when = „indeed,” **तथापि** „nevertheless.”

**422.** As the connection of sentences is the subject-matter of the last Section of this Syntax, it will here suffice to give a succinct account of the connective particles severally, especially with regard to their linking together words within the compass of one and the same sentence.

च. 1. **च** is the copulative particle *par excellence* „and.”

It is as a rule subjoined to the word annexed, -as **रामो लक्ष्मणश्च**, but if it annexes a complex of words or a whole sentence, it is affixed to the first word, as **पिता मातुश्च स्वसा** (father and mother's sister). Panc. 225 चोरेण]

कश्चिद् दृष्टः। दृष्ट्वा च तं..... चोरोऽब्रवीत्. This order is seldom inverted in prose (f. i. Panc. 126 राज्ञो वल्लो द्विधा तानं राज्ञा मृतश्च instead of मृतश्च राज्ञा), oftener in poetry. Nala 1, 22 निपेतुस्ते गृह्यन्तः सा ददर्श च तान्नाणान्, Kathās. 44, '3: the preceding sentence is स पितुर्गृहे..... अवमत्सुखम्, then there follows एकदा पितुरास्थाने स्थितश्च पुरुषः..... ददर्श सः.

Sometimes in poetry **च** is put between the two links connected

by it. Mhbh. 1, 148, 2 अथ युधिष्ठिरः। भीमसेनार्जुनौ चोभौ यमो प्रोवाच (then Yudh. addressed Bhīm., Arj. and the twins), M. 9, 322 रह चासुत्र वर्धते (he becomes great in this world and in the other).

In poets, च is not rarely put to each of the members connected, also in archaic prose; see f. i. Ch. Up. 1, 3, 2, and cp. τε. . . . τε of Greek poets. But if it is necessary to state that the same thing is endowed with different qualities etc. at the same time, this idiom is also used in prose. Pat. I, p. 430 याज्ञिकश्चायं त्रैयाकर्षाश्च (he is an accomplished sacrificer as well as a grammarian), Prabodh. I, p. 15 मोदं त्रयति च संमोहयति च (it procures joy and perplexes at the same time). — As to च. . . . च expressive of simultaneousness, see 438 R. 2.

Rem. 1. If three or more terms are to be connected, च is generally put but once, and with the last of them. Panc. 6 भिक्षया नृपसेवया कृषिकर्मणा त्रियोपार्जनेन व्यवहारेण च (by begging, by attending on the prince, by agriculture, by turning one's learning into money, and by trade), Daṣ. 78 सुमतेन च मया स्वधनस्य स्वगृहस्य स्वगणस्य स्वदेशस्य स्वजीवितस्य च सैवेष्टव्यं कृता. Then च is rarely wanting, sometimes in rhetorical style, as Pat. I, p. 431 अहर्हर्नयमानो गानध्वं पुन्यं पणम्, R. 3, 69, 32 कर्माणां विविधान्कृता ऋत्नान्वन्तिगणान्मृगान्, and in some phrases, as Mrech. I, p. 20 भाव्यक्रमेण हि धनानि भवन्ति यान्ति (v. a. as soon as they have come, they disappear), Bhoj. 10 तत्रां मृत्युं भयं व्याधिं यो ज्ञानानि स पण्डितः.

Rem. 2. Sometimes च must be translated by a more energetic particle than „and.” It may be = „even.” R. 1, 1, 4 कस्य त्रियति देवाश्च (of whom are even the gods afraid?), it may be a slight affirmative and even have adversative power, cp. 441.

423. 2. अपि may be 1. = „and, too, moreover, also,” 2. = „even,” 3. = „though” Like च, it is commonly subjoined to the word — or first of the words — connected by it; in poets, it not rarely precedes. Examples of 1. Pat. I, p. 125 तत्राश्वो नष्टो ममापि रथो दग्धः (your horse is lost and my chariot is burnt). Panc. 246 the king of the frogs mounts on the back of the serpent Mandavisha; seeing this, the others too do so जेषा अपि यथाश्रेष्ठं तत्पृष्ठोपरि समाहृतः; Çāk. I अस्ति नः सच्चरितश्रवणलोभादन्यदपि

प्रष्टव्यम् (v. a. — I would ask you once more); — of 2.<sup>o</sup> Mudr. I, p. 30 न युक्तं प्राकृतमपि त्रिपुमवज्ञातुम् (it is not advisable to despise a foe, not even a mean one); — of 3. Kathās. 42, 28 अन्वगात्स च तं तृष्णीमनिच्छन्पि (and, though reluctantly, he followed him).

In poetry however, अपि occasionally precedes the word it attends instead of being subjoined to it. Mhbh. 1, 76, 52 कं ब्रह्महत्या न ददेदपीन्द्रम् (whom would not the hurting of a brahman consume? even Indra), Kumāras. 6, 59 Himavān says अपि व्यापृद्भिर्गन्तानि नाङ्गानि प्रावन्ति मे (my limbs though stretching in all directions, have no power —), Panc. III, 92 अपि स्वर्गे instead of स्वर्गेऽपि etc. Another instance of poetical license is such an arrangement as we have Nala 1, 30 त्वमप्येवं नले वद instead of त्वमेवं नलेऽपि वद (speak in this way also to N.).

Rem. Apart from being a connective, अपि has many more meanings. It may be a) an interrogative particle, see 412; b) with imperative it strengthens the exhortation, see Kāç. on P. 1, 4, 96 अपि सिद्ध (do, pour out); c) it often precedes the लिङ्, when doing duty as an optative (343, b) or in the idiom mentioned 343 c) 5°. In these cases अपि heads the sentence. — In other meanings again it is used, when subjoined to nouns of number (298), or when put to the interrogative pronouns and adverbs, see 281 and 288.

Moreover अपि, when of time, may be = 1. »only, but,» as मुहुर्तमपि प्रतीक्षस्व (wait but for a moment), 2. »still,» f. i. Kathās. 3, 18 बालोऽपि »when still a boy.»

**424.** 3. **उत** is almost a synonym of **अपि**. In the classic language it is obsolete. As to its employment as an interrogative particle see 412, 2° and 414, with optative it is also used like अपि, see 343 c) 5°, and cp. P. 3, 3, 152. — As a connective it is found in the old liturgical and epic literature. Mhbh. 1, 96, 24 मानाग्निरोत्रमुत मानगौने मानेनाधीतमुत मानयत्तः. At the close of verses or pādas, उत and अयुत are rather emphatics or mere expletives. — In classic prose one uses किमुत (442, 4°) and प्रत्युत (442, 2°).

**425.** 4. **अथ** serves to introduce some new element (person, thing or fact). It may be wholly = **च**, and connect

even single words, f. i. Panc. V, 11 व्याधितेन सप्रोकेन चिन्ताग्रत्नेन जन्तुना । कामार्तेनाथ मन्त्रेन दूष्टः स्वप्नो निर्त्यक्तः, here अथ is equivalent to च. Occasionally अथ may be a disjunctive, as Kathās. 79, 24 ज्ञानो ग्रहोऽथ विज्ञानो भवस्मिद्दुष्टिर्गुणतः.

Its most common employment, however, is to annex a new sentence, especially if there be a change of subject; hence it is not rarely an adversative. Sometimes it introduces the apodosis, sometimes it has a temporal meaning „afterwards,” <sup>1)</sup> moreover it may do duty as a conditional conjunction, as will be more fully explained in the last Section of this book.

Note its employment at the beginning of a book or chapter or section, where it is the traditional opening-word in profane writings, like the syllable **अथ** in Holy Writ. Pancatantra IV f. i. commences अथेदमाह्वयते लब्धप्रणाजं नाम चतुर्थं तन्त्रम् (now begins the 4<sup>th</sup> tantra —).

In prose it is the first word, but in poetry it may hold any other place.

**426.** **अथ** combines with other particles. So we have **अथापि**, **अथ च**, **अथा** (= **अथ** + **उ**), see f. i. Âçv. Grhy. I, 1, 3; R. 3, 11, 74; Panc. IV, 73. But the commonest of those combi-

**अथवा**. nations is **अथवा** which is almost looked upon as a unit. It is used for the sake of correcting one's self. It introduces, therefore, a statement more exact than the preceding one; in accordance with the nature of the contrast between the two, one may translate **अथवा**

1) Especially in the archaic dialect. Ait. Br. 2, 25, 1 तेषामग्निं यतामग्नि-सृष्टानां आयुर्मुखं प्रथमः प्रत्यपयतायेन्द्रो ऽथ मित्रावरुणावयाश्विनो (of them — Agni reached the aim the first, *after him* Indra, *then* Mitra and Varuṇa, *then* the Açvins).



by „or rather” or „on the contrary” or „no” or „but,” f. i. Panc. 23 अन्यतो वृतामि अन्यथा नैतयुक्तो (I will go to another place. But that will not do), R. 3, 60, 29 नैव सा नूनमयथा हिंसिता चाह्लासिनो (surely, it is not she, no, she has been hurt, my graceful lady).

As to अयं किम्, see 395 R.

- 427** तथा „so,” when = „likewise” that is „and, too,” may  
तथा: also be reckoned among the connectives. This employment is chiefly poetical.

For the rest, अपि, च and तथा may be strengthened by एव and may mingle together. Hence arises a great variety of combinations, especially in verse, as अप्येव, अपि च, चापि; चैव, एव च; तथैव, तथा च etc.

- 428.** The enclitic वा, like च, is subjoined to the word  
वा: which it annexes. It is the disjunctive particle „or.” अहं त्वं वा „I or you.” „Either. . . . or” is वा. . . . वा. M. 3, 26 पृथग्व्यावा मिश्रो वा विवाहो (the two modes of marriage either performed severally or conjoined), Kathās. 31, 39 न हि पश्यति तुङ्गं वा श्वभं वा शीतनोऽग्रतः। स्मरेण नीतः.

Rem. Instead of वा. . . . वा one says also वा यदि वा. R. 3, 11, 90 नात्र लोकेन्मृषावादी क्रूरो वा यदि वा शनः। नृशंसः पापवृत्तो वा (here no liar can live, nor a cruel man, nor a rogue, nor a barbarous one nor an evildoer), cp. R. 2, 109, 4, Panc. I, 118. — Likewise one uses वा... अपि वा or वापि, etc. As to वा in interrogations, see 409 3<sup>d</sup> and 412 R., on its force as an emphatic 397 R. 1.

- 429.** तु, हि and the enclitic उ are, like च and वा, sub-  
तु, हि and उ: joined to the first word of the sentence. हि was at the outset an emphatic, a weak „indeed,” but generally it is a causal particle, at least in prose; तु and उ are adversatives „but; on the other hand.” उ is no more used in the classic dialect, save when added to some

other particle, as नो = न + उ, अयो = अय + उ, cp. 402 R. 1.

430. इव „like, as” is the particle of comparison. It is always put after the standard of comparison, सिंह इव बलवान् (strong like a lion). Mreeh. I, p. 43 अन्धस्य दृष्टिरेव पुष्टिर्वातुरस्य मूर्खस्य बुद्धिरेव सिद्धिर्बालसस्य। स्वल्पस्मृतेर्ज्यसनिनः परमेव विद्या। .... सा वनष्टा (she has disappeared, like the sight of the blind, like the health of the sick, like the wisdom of the fool, like the prosperity of the sluggard, like the learning of the dull and dissipated), Çāk. VI कश्चिदहमिव विस्मृतवानसि त्वम् (have you perhaps forgotten it, as I have?). If the standard of comparison or the simile consists of more words, इव likes to be put in the midst of them. Çāk. VII किं नु बलु बाले ऽस्मिन्नोरस इव पुत्रे सिद्धयति मे मनः. Exceptions as to the place of इव may occasionally be found in poets.

यथा. The other particle of comparison is the relative यथा. It is especially used, if the standard of comparison is expressed by a full sentence, but it does the same duty as इव.

Rem. 1. It is a matter of course, that इव and यथा have no influence at all on the case of the noun they are construed with. Both the noun compared and the standard of comparison are put in the same case. Kumāras. 4, 25 तैः परिदेविताक्षरैर्हृदये दिग्धशरैरिवाहतः (struck by those lamentations, as if they were poisoned arrows); Nala 2, 28 तं दृष्ट्वा... ब्राह्मणं यथा रविम् (on seeing him who was bright like the sun).

Rem. 2. Note the idiom आभासत इव „he appears like,” f. i. Kumāras. 7, 3 [तत्पुंरं] स्वर्ग इवाभ्राभासे.

Rem. 3. इव and यथा are often used in similes. In this case they may be strengthened by adding to them such epithets as साक्षात् (in person), विग्रहवन् or विग्रहिन् (embodied), स्वयम्, अपर (cp. Lat. *Mars alter*) and the like. Nala 1, 4 the hero is said to have been an excellent archer and ruler of his subjects साक्षादिव मनः स्वयम् „as

if he were Manu himself," Daç. 116 a beautiful woman is called रतिरिव त्रिग्रहिणी (the goddess Rati embodied), Mhbh. 1, 85, 5 ययातिः पालयामास साक्षादिन्द्र इवापरः. Cp. Kumâras. 6, 11, Ragh. 2, 16, Mâlav. I, p. 24, Kâm. 3, 30, etc.

431. Moreover, **इव** is used to soften some expression, in the same way as German *etwa*, our *rather*, *almost*, *as if it were*. Mudr. II, p. 58 विकलमिव राजसप्रयत्नमवगच्छामि (I perceive that the exertions of R. are almost fruitless), R. 2, 85, 7 एवं ते महती सेना प्राक् तनयतोव मे.
432. Our „as," when not expressing likeness, is not rendered at all in Sanskrit or by **स्थाने** with gen. But तयथा „as" = „for instance, namely" is तयथा. Mudr. III, p. 117 वृषल इह खलु विरक्तानां प्रकृतीनां द्विविधं प्रतिविधानं तयथानुग्रहो निगृह्येति (well, Vrshala, there are two means to be put into effect against disaffected subjects, viz. favour and force).

## SECTION VI.

### ON THE CONNECTION OF SENTENCES.

433. In Section II—V we have treated of the different constituent elements of the sentence. This last part of the Syntax will deal with the various ways, in which sentences are linked together. Two main categories are here to be distinguished, 1. coordination, when — grammatically speaking — there is equality of rank between the sentences conjoined, 2. subordination, that is such a union, as makes one of the links depend upon the other, so as to constitute a period made up of a chief sentence and a clause or subordinate sentence. The former class is generally characterized by such particles as have been dealt with in the last chapter

of the preceding Section, the latter class by relatives.

Occasionally Sanskrit prefers coordination in such cases in which our language would rather use the other mode of junction, and inversely.

Example of coordination in Sanskrit, subordination with us: *Mrech.* III, p. 116 एतद्वर्हितं कर्म निन्दामि च करोमि च (though blaming it I do it).

Example of subordination in Sanskrit, coordination with us: *Daç.* 30 रत्नं तत्रैकगद्गतात् । तदादाय गत्वा कंचनाध्वानमस्वरमणेरत्युष्णतया गन्तुमक्षमः..... किमपि देवायतनं प्रविष्टः etc. In translating such sentences as this there is, as a rule, a greater deal of coordination in English f. i. "I saw there [in the water] a jewel, I took it and went on, until being tired by the exceeding glow of the sun, I entered some temple." Cp. 14, I.

## CHAPT. I. Coordination.

**434.** Coordination, though chiefly expressed by little particles, as च, is not exclusively signified by them. The demonstrative pronoun, especially स, may be a fit instrument for annexing a new sentence. Sometimes both particle and pronoun are wanting, and sentences are simply put together: the so-called *asyndeton*.

**435.** I. As to the **demonstrative**, some instances have been given **275**. I add one more from the beginning of the *Panchatantra* अस्ति दाक्षिणात्ये जनपदे महिलाराण्यं नाम नगरम् । तत्र..... अमरप्रतिनाम राज्ञा ब्रह्म । तस्य त्रयः पुत्राः..... ब्रह्मवृक्षः । Nothing prevents the employment of both dem. pronoun and particle together. So often स्यात्.

The acc. neuter 'तत्' and the abl. neuter 'तस्मात्', when = „therefore, for this reason," have wholly got the nature of particles. Likewise तेन.

**436.** II. The **asyndeton** is mostly met with either in short statements, to express antithesis, or for rhetorical pur-

2. the asyn-  
deton. poses, especially where the speaker is excited. Panc. 26  
अस्येवं स महात्मा वयं कृपणाः (so it is, he is a Lord and we are wretches),  
ibid. 113 न ते दोषा ये स्वामिनो दोषाः (it is not your fault, but that of  
your master), Mudr. III, p. 106 अनुभूयत एवैतन्नाशस्यते (this is already a  
real possession, not an expected one), Daç. 16 किं करोमि कु गच्छामि  
भद्रकिं किमदर्शि (what shall I do? whither shall I go? have you not  
seen [him]?). Panc. 134 सत्त्वर्मागच्छ गुरुतरं प्रयोत्तनमस्ति, here the second  
sentence enunciates the reason of the former one, but there is no  
causal particle. In a similar way वा is omitted in the passionate de-  
claration of Damayanti (Nala 4, 4) यदि त्वं भक्तमानां मां प्रत्याख्यास्यसि मानद।  
विपगमिं जलं रज्जुमास्थास्ये तत्र कारुणात्, likewise Kumâras. 6, 12 स्त्री  
पुमानित्यनास्यैवा वृत्तं हि महितं सताम् (whether man or woman, it matters  
not —).

**437.** III. When treating of sentences connected by **par-  
3. par-  
ticles.** ticles it is best to keep apart the logical categories.

Copu-  
lative  
parti-  
cles. Mere copulation is denoted by च, अपि, अथ — either  
single or combined, as अपि च, चापि, अथापि —, by  
किं च, अपरम्, अन्यच्च, by ततः and ततश्च. They an-  
swer to English *and, also, likewise, moreover, further, then,  
thereupon* etc. They are not quite synonymous, and each  
of them may have its proper sphere (as ततः to sub-  
join what is subsequent in time, किं च, अपरम्, अन्यच्च  
to signify the importance of what is added, अथ to im-  
port a change of the scene, of the action, of the actors  
etc.), yet it is neither easy nor necessary to draw the  
boundary-lines sharply between them.

Examples: 1. च. Daç. 83 निशि वयमिमां पुंनिं प्रविष्टा दृष्ट्वा समैव नायको  
दूर्ध्वोक्तेषां; — 2. अपि. Mudr. II, p. 69 प्रियंवदक. .... विप्रम्यतां परित्तेन । त्व-  
मपि स्वमधिकारमभूयं कुत (Priy., my attendants may keep their rest and  
you, discharge your duty); — 3. अथ. R. 3, 14, 4 स ते पितृसखं मत्वा  
पूजयामास राज्ञः. .... तस्य कुलमव्यग्रमथ पश्यन् नाम च, Panc. 3 the king  
first spoke to Vishnuçarman, *then* the other replied" अथ विष्णुः प्रमां

तं राजानमूचे; — 4. किं च. Panc. 214 किमत्र चिन्त्यते। अत्रिचारितमयं हन्तव्यः the reasons, why he is to be killed are then given: यतः..... किं च..... उक्तं..... श्रूयते च (for..... moreover..... then one says... it is also taught); — 5 अपरम्. Panc. 135 यदाश्रयाः सर्वा एते वराकाः। अपरं स्वकुटुम्बं परित्यज्य समागताः (all these poor fellows are depending on me, besides they have left their families in order to join me), *ibid.* IV 65 मित्रं हस्मित्रतां यातमपरं (secondly) मे प्रिया मृता गृहमन्वेन च (moreover) व्यापम्; — 6. अन्यच्च. Panc. 168 a heavenly being prevents Somilaka from suicide, and says मैत्रं साहसं कुरु..... तद्वद् स्वगृहं प्रति। अन्यच्च भवदो-यसाहसेनाहं तुष्टः; — 7. ततः. Daç. 138 अहं तु..... त्वया प्रवेष्टव्ये। ततः पितरमु-त्तीव्य तद्गिरुचितेनाभ्युपायेन चेद्विद्यामः (you must make me enter, then recall our father into life and act in the way that shall please him).

Rem. 1. अय is not seldom = "now", fr. *or.* Panc. 94 कस्मिंश्चित्ता-लाश्रये..... त्रयो गम्याः सन्ति। अय कदाचित् त्रैलाश्रयं दृष्ट्वा गच्छद्भिर्मत्स्यतोत्रिभिर्गु-ह्यम् (in some pond there were three fishes. *Now*, one day fishermen passed, looked at that pond and said).

Rem. 2. च, अपि, अय are sometimes to be rendered by *but, yet, nevertheless.* See 441.

438. च..... च, अपि..... अपि, च..... अपि etc. = „as well as;” „not only..... but also.” Utt. II, p. 29 विमृष्टश्च..... मेथ्यो ऽथ उपकल्पिताश्च ययाशास्त्रं तस्य रक्षितारुहोपामथिद्वाना लक्ष्मणात्मकश्च..... साधनान्वितो ऽनुग्रहितः (not only the sacrificial horse has been loosed to roam at will, but also guards have been appointed to it according to the ritual, and Laxmana's son has been sent after it).

Rem. 1. The archaic dialect has also the combination उत.... उत. The old verse उत त्वः पश्यन् ददर्श वाचमुत त्वः शृण्वन् शृणोत्येनाम् is commented on by Yâska in this way अथेकः पश्यन् पश्यति वाचमपि च शृण्वन् शृणोत्येनाम् (see Nir. 1, 19).

Rem. 2. A repeated च may occasionally denote *simultaneousness*. Kumâras. 3, 58 उमा च शम्भोः समासगाद प्रतिजित्भूमिम्। योगात्स च.... उपाराम (Umâ reached the entrance of Çiva's hermitage, and at the same time Çiva ceased his mystic exercises). *cp. ibid.* vs. 66, Ragh. 3, 40; 10, 6; Kathâs. 18, 120.

439. The foresaid particles are also used to connect three or more links. In enumerations, it is regular

to put तावत् in the first link (cp. 399). Panc. 281 एकः स्तावद्दृष्ट्वा अपरस्त्वद्धिनेन मित्रेण सह चित्रविश्लेषः (in the first place the loss of my dwelling, then the alienation of such a friend as you). The complete set of particles is: एकं तावत्, आदौ तावत् or प्रथमं तावत् in the first link, अपरम् or अथ or ततः or अन्यच्च etc. in the second and other links. Panc. 67 the lion chides the hare, who has been despatched to him by the other animals एकं तावन्नं लघुः प्राप्नोऽपरं वेलातिक्रमेण, Panc. 181 आदौ तावद्विज्ञानाशस्ततः परिवारभ्रंशस्ततो देशत्यागास्ततो मित्रवियोगः, Mudr. III p. 173 the three links of an argumentation are marked by तावत्, ततः and अतः.

**440.** Disjunctive sentences are characterized by वा, or Dis-  
junction. वा..... वा, वा यदि वा, अथवा. See 428 and 426.

Another kind of disjunction is that represented by „some..... others..... others again” and the like. Here indefinite pronouns are to be employed, as केचित्. केचित्; केचित् or एके..... अपरे, अन्ये etc. Likewise the adverbs made of them. Mudr. IV, p. 138 मन्त्रभङ्गभावाद्वाक्तां कथयन्त्यन्यथा पुरः। अन्यथा विवृतायेषु स्वैरालापेषु मन्त्रिणाः.

**441.** Antithesis may be variously denoted. In the first Anti-  
thesis. place it may be expressed by adversative particles, viz. तु (429), परम्, पुनः, also by such combinations as किं तु, परं तु, परं किं तु. Further च, अपि, अथ may be = on the other hand, on my-, your-, his part, again etc., or if stronger antithesis is implied, = but, yet. Nor is the asyndeton rare, in which case it is the mere arrangement of the two contrasting ideas, by which the antithesis appears, see 436.

Examples: a.) antithesis expressed by adversative particles. — तु. Mṛcch. IV, p. 141 स्त्रियो हि नाम खल्वेता निसर्गादेव वपिडताः। पुनूषणां तु पाणिदयं ज्ञानैरेवोपदिश्यते (woman-kind, indeed, are wise by nature,

but to men (wisdom is to be taught by manuals); — परम्. Panc. 315 अस्येतत्परं तथापि गृहिणीं पृच्छामि (it is so, yet I will ask my wife nevertheless); — किं तु. Hit. 106 दुर्गं तावदिदमेव चिरात्सुनिवृण्वितमास्ते महत्सुः। किं त्वेतन्मध्यद्वीपे भक्ष्यवस्तूनां संग्रहः क्रियताम् (well, this great lake has been very aptly chosen to be our fortress, but you must lay up provisions in the island in the midst of it); — परं तु. Panc. 304 शास्त्रपारं भूताः परं तु बुद्धिरहिताः; — परं किं तु. Panc. 16 सत्यमेतत्परं किं तु (this is true, but —); — पुनः. Panc. 72 अयं श्रव्यभोजी देवपादानां पुनः शत्रवो मांसाशिनः (he is an herbivorous animal, but your enemies are carnivorous).

Rem. 1. पुनः, like तु, is generally subjoined to the first word of the sentence. It must be kept in mind that its adversative power is but secondary; properly it means »again,” and may be used in the weakened meaning of »on the other hand, yet,” just as *again* in English<sup>1)</sup>

Rem. 2. Of the adversative उ instances are often met with in such works as the Aitareyabrâhmana and the Chândogyopanishad, occasionally even in the epic poems. It mostly joins with some particle or relative. Ait. Br. 2, 39, 11 यावतां वै स ज्ञातानां वेद ते भवन्ति। येयामु न वेद किमु ते स्युः (— but those, of whom he has no knowledge, what is to become of them?), Ch. Up. 6, 4, 6 यदु... यदु, ibid. 4, 15, 3 एष उ »but he.” Sometimes it is almost = च, for it has less adversative force than तु.

b). च, अपि or अय = *but, yet, nevertheless*. Nala 1, 5 Bhîma bears the epithet of प्रजाकामः, to which are added the words स चाप्रतः »beloved of his subjects [and at the same time »desiring to have children”], *yet* childless”. R. 3, 37, 2 सुलभाः पुण्या राज्ञस्ततं प्रियवादिनः। अप्रियस्य च पश्यस्य वक्ता भोक्ता च दुर्लभः (they who always speak things pleasant to be heard are easy to be found, *but* it is as difficult to meet with one who speaks an unpleasant yet wholesome word, as with one who listens to such a one), Mudr. III,

1) Yet, like »again,” it may occasionally head the sentence. Panc. 3 नाहं त्रिषाविक्रयं शायनशतेनापि करोमि। पुनरेतांस्तव पुत्रान्मासयद्दुर्केन यदि नीतिशान्त्वन करोमि ततः स्वनामत्यागं करोमि; Daç. 181, l. 14.



p. 105 Cāṇakya to the chief of the eunuchs अहो राक्षसप्रतिनस्य चाणक्यस्योपरि विद्वेषपक्षपातः। अथ क्व वृषलस्तिष्ठति (the king's attendants are indeed Cāṇakya's enemies. But where is the śūdra-king?). Likewise अथवा, cp. 426.

#### 442. Observations on the adversative particles.

Adversatives  
answering to  
limitatives

1. To emphasize the antithesis, a limitative particle may precede in the foregoing sentence. Then we have the type of Greek μέν..... δέ, Latin *quidem*..... *sed* or *vero*. Such limitative particles in Sanskrit are तावत्, खलु, केवलम्, कामम्, किल, सत्यम्, परम्. Panc. 313 अहं तावत्तेत्रपालमवलोकयामि। त्वं पुनः स्वेच्छया गीतं कुरु (I will look out for the farmer, but you —), *ibid.* 195 अस्माकं तावद्वैगतेयो राजा। स च..... न कामपि चिन्तामस्माकं करोति (it is true, we have a king, Garuda, but he does not care for us), *Mhbh.* 1, 48, 6 कामं च मम न न्यायं प्रष्टुं त्वां कार्यमोदृषां। किं तु कार्यगरीयस्त्वात्तत्स्वाहमचूचुदम् (to be sure, it does not befit me to ask you about such a matter, but owing to its great importance I have ventured to urge you), Panc. III, 171 स निनिन्द किलात्मानं न तु तं लुब्धकं पुनः (he accused himself, but not the fowler), *Kathās.* 39, 21 व्यसा परं कनिष्ठः सोऽभवत्तेषां गुणैर्नैष्ठतमस्त्वभूत्.

2. If the preceding sentence is negative, the adversative particle must be rather strong. Such strong adversatives are किं तु, परं तु, अपि तु अपि तु and प्रत्युत »on the contrary.” Panc. 203 न तत्रेदं गृहं किं तु ममैव, and Daṣ 77 न वपुर्वसु वा पुंस्त्वमूलमपि तु प्रकृष्टगणिकाप्रार्थयोवनो, हि यः स पुमान् प्रत्युत. (neither external beauty nor riches are the result of manhood, no, he is a man who is loved by the foremost courtesan), *ibid.* 100 राजा त्वां.... नोच्छेत्स्यति प्रत्युत प्रापयिष्यत्येव योवराज्यम् (he will [not only] not kill you, but he will even make you heir-apparent).

3. न केवलम् in the former, च, अपि etc. in the latter member are — च.... च »not only..... but also.” Panc. I, 33 न केवलमसंमानं लभते च विदम्बनाम्, *Nāgân.* V, p. 85 अयं वत्सो जीमूतवाहनो न केवलं ध्रियते प्रत्युत कृताञ्जलिना गह्वरेण शिष्येणोव पर्युपास्यमानस्तिष्ठति (not only my son Jîm. here is alive, nay he is even respected by Garuda, as a pupil reverences his teacher), *Ragh.* 3, 31 न केवलं तदुरुरेकपार्थिवः क्षितावभूरेकधनुर्धरोऽपि सः. — Similarly न परम्..... अपि or च or प्रत्युत sim., see f. i. *Kathās.* 33, 138. As to न परम्..... यावत् see 480.

Rem. If on the other hand न precedes and केवलम् or परम् introduce the second sentence, these particles may be almost = „but.” Panc. 122 न भवसि त्वं सन्ननः केवलं पापवृद्धिर्हि (you are not an honest man, you are but an evil-minded fellow), Prabodh. IV, p. 84 क्रमो न वाचां शिरसां न शूलं न चित्रतापां न तनोर्विमर्दः। न चापि हिंसा-दिर्नर्ययोगः प्रलाघा पं क्रोधनाये ऽहमेका (in the subduing of anger not fatigue of voice, nor head-ache etc., but I [forbearance] alone am to be praised).

किमु, 4. The phrases किमु, किं नु, किं पुनः, किमुत and कुतः have the  
किं meaning of Lat. *nedum* „how much more” or „how much less,”  
पुनः when heading the second member of a complex sentence. This  
and the idiom is much liked in Sanskrit. Utt. III, p. 39 ननु त्वामत्रनिपूढव-  
like. र्तिनोम्..... वनदेवता अपि न दृक्ष्यन्ति किं पुनर्गर्वाः (not even to the deities of the forest you will be visible, how much less to men?), R. 2, 30, 21 इमं हि सहितुं शोकं मुहूर्तमपि नोत्सरे। किं पुनर्दश वर्षाणि त्रीणि चैकं च दुःखिता (I cannot bear this sorrow not even for a moment, how much less for fourteen long years), Hit. 2 एकैकमप्यनार्यं किमु यत्र चतुष्टयम् (even each of them by itself suffices for mischief, how much more to him, who possesses them all four), R. 2, 48, 21 न हि नो त्रीवितेनार्यः कुतः पुनः कुतो धनैः.

443. The causal particle is हि (429). It may be compared with Greek *γάρ*, since like this it has a rather  
हि, the general employment when annexing sentences which  
causal contain some motive, reason, cause or even a mere illustration of that which precedes. For this reason, it may  
parti- sometimes be rendered by „for” or „because” or „since,”  
cle. sometimes with less emphasis, sometimes it is not to be translated at all. At the outset it was, indeed, a mere affirmative particle. Viddhaç. I, p. 7 श्रियः प्रदुग्धे विपदो हृणादि यशांसि मूले नलिनं प्रगार्दि। संस्कारशीलेन पं पुनीते शुद्धा हि बुद्धिः किल कामधेनुः (pure wisdom is indeed a cow of plenty; it milks blessings, it repels mishap, it produces glory, it cleanses the dirty, etc.) Kād. I, p. 20 the king has declared his astonishment at the great

gift of speech of the parrot which has been offered to him; in reply to this he is to d किमत्र चित्रम्। एते हि शुक्रप्रारिकाप्रभृतयो विद्वद्विशेषा यथाश्रुतं वाचनुच्चारयन्ति (why wonder at this? since parrots, magpies and the like birds well repeat the words they have heard), Hit. 4 आहारनिद्राभयमैशुनं च सामान्यमेतत्पशुभिर्निराणाम्। धर्मो हि तेषामधिको विशेषो धर्मेण हीनाः पशुभिः समानाः.

For the rest, if it be necessary to signify the cause or motive as such, the relatives यतः and यस्मात् are used. See 467.

**444.** As conclusive particles we may consider the demonstratives तत् and तस्मात्, ततः, अतः, तर्हि „therefore, hence, for this reason.” Hit. 5 पूर्वज्ञमकृतं कर्म तद् दैवमिति कथ्यते। तस्मात्पुरुषकारेण यत् कुर्यादतन्दिताः.

**445.** Especially तत् is exceedingly frequent, and in drawing inferences it is always added.

Rem. In the archaic dialect many other accus. neuters of demonstrative pronouns were to some extent used as particles: एतत्, अतः, इदम् almost = एवम्, इत्यम्, इति. See f. i. Ait. Br. 1, 9, 6; 14, 6; Ch. Up. 4, 2, 1; 6, 8, 3.

Even the pronoun स, when conjoined with another pronoun, especially a personal one, may import a conclusive meaning. Mhbh. 1, 146, 29 Yudhishtira advising his brothers that it is necessary to keep themselves hidden from Duryodhana, concludes thus ते वयं मृगयाशोलाश्रम वसुधामिमाम् etc. (let us therefore ramble over this country, being intent on hunting), Çāk. II Dushyanta is requested by his mother to return to his capital, but he wants to remain in the hermitage, to defend which from the evil spirits he has been entreated by the hermits; now he decides to stay there himself and to send his vidûshaka home in his stead, with these words सखे माधव्य त्वमप्यम्बाभिः पुत्र इव गृहीतः स भवति तः प्रतिनिवृत्त्य... तत्रभवतोनां पुत्रकार्यमनुश्रातुमर्हति (friend M., my mother treats you too as a son, therefore, do you go back home —),

Utt. I, p. 11 Sitâ perceives the portrait of the deity Gangâ; Râma praises the deity and concludes सा त्वमम् . . . . सीतायां शिवानुष्ठानपराम् (be, then, mother, propitious to Sitâ). Another instance illustrative of this idiom is Ragh. 1, 5, but it is too long to be quoted, for to translate it correctly the whole passage would have to be given. Cp. also Mhbh. 1, 153, 4.

Rem. Occasionally स is used so, even without the personal pronoun added. Daç. 141 पुत्र गयासि ज्ञातमात्रः पापया परित्यक्तः। स किमर्गमेवं मामतिनिर्दृष्ट्वा मनुगृह्णासि (I have abandoned you, my son, as soon as you were born, why, then, do you welcome thus your cruel mother?). Cp. f. i. Ait. Br. 1, 7, 3 सा वै वो वरं वृणौ.

**446.** *Nevertheless, however, yet* is तथापि. It commonly introduces the apodosis after a concessive protasis (483), but sometimes it may usher in a new sentence, as Panc 332 भोः सत्यमेतद् दैवानुकूलतया सर्वं कल्याणं गंपयते। तथापि पुरुषेणा सतां वचनं कार्यम् (it cannot be denied, that every success occurs according to Destiny, nevertheless a man ought to perform the prescriptions of the good), cp. 315, l. 22.

**447.** When connecting a negative sentence with an affirmative one, the negation, as a rule, precedes the connective particle. Therefore, न च = Lat. *neque*, न वा, न तु, नहि, नापि etc., likewise नो = न + उ, न ह, नात. Nala 3, 16 प्रशंसुश्च सुप्रीता नलं ताः [sc. परमाङ्गनाः] . . . . न चैनमभ्यभाषन्त (the women praised Nala, but did not address him), Panc. 241 एकैकां वनकाष्ठिकां दिने दिने प्रक्षिपति न च ते मूर्खा उल्लूका विज्ञानन्ति (day after day he throws down a little piece of wood, the stupid owls not being aware of it); <sup>1)</sup> M. 2, 87 कुर्यादन्यन्न वा कुर्यात् (he may

1) Occasionally this order is inverted: च न or च . . . न. Panc. 285 सर्वलोकानां चिरन्तनाश्चतुर्भूमिका गृहाः सन्ति मम च नात्र (— but not so have I), R. 2, 26, 3 वैदेही चापि तत्सर्वं न शुश्राव.

act otherwise or not); Daç. 141 सेव सद्गुणकारिणी। नहि मादृशो जनो  
तयार्हति कल्पप्रसापामृताति कर्माभ्यां पातुम् (she has done well, for a per-  
son like me does not deserve —); Vikram. IV, p. 148 उर्वशीमात्र-  
स्पर्शादिव निर्वृतं मे हृदयं न पुनरस्ति विश्वासः (— my heart is content,  
yet I cannot believe it to be true); M. 9, 270 न होढेन विना चोर्  
वातयेदार्मिको नृपः (indeed, a righteous king must never put to death a  
thief, unless the stolen objects [are found with him]). Cp. न  
चेत् 485

**448.** If the sentences connected are both negative, the  
b.) with nega-  
tive  
ones. negation of the latter may be omitted. Yet the nega-  
tion is often retained; and, if there is some antithesis  
between the two links, moreover in causal and in con-  
clusive sentences, it may not be wanting. One needs says  
न..... न तु and नहि and न पुनः.

Examples of negation omitted are given 407. To them may  
be added M. 2, 98 न हृष्यति ग्रायति वा (is neither rejoiced nor sad).  
This idiom is especially employed, if two or more negative sen-  
tences precede, to annex a last link. Nala 1, 13 न देवेषु न यक्षे  
तादृशपुत्रो क्वचित्। मानुषेष्वपि चान्येषु दृष्टपूर्वायवा श्रुता (neither among gods  
nor among yaxas nor among men and others such a beauty had  
been seen or heard of).

Examples of negation retained: Panc. 44 अथप्रभृति गृहान्निष्क्रमणं  
न करोषि न च परं वदसि (from this day forth you shall not be a  
gadding nor speak harsh words), ibid. 29 न कोऽपि तादृक्केनापि चतुरो  
दृष्टो नापि श्रुतो वा.

Examples of न..... नहि, न..... न तु etc. Panc. I, 48 यो न वेति  
गुणान्यस्य न तं सेवेत पण्डितः। नहि तस्यात्फलं किञ्चित्, Daç. 91 धनादृते न  
तत्स्वतनोऽनुमन्यते। न तु धनदायासाव्युपगच्छति (her kinsmen do not code [her]  
unless for money, but she does not accept [a lover] who buys  
her for money).

Examples of asyndeton न..... न neither..... nor." M. 4, 55  
नाशनीयात्प्राधिवेलायां न गच्छेन्नापि संविशेत्। न चैव प्रतिबेद्भिर्नात्मना उपहरे-  
त्यज्ञम्, Panc. III, 98 नाच्छादयति कोपो न दंशमशकापहम्। शुः पुच्छम् (a  
dog's tail neither covers the privy parts nor does it propel the  
vermin).

## CHANT. II. Subordination. Periods and clauses.

449. When subordinating some fact or action to some other one, there are two different manners for bringing this relation to grammatical expression, either by synthesis or by analysis. The synthetic expression takes up the clauses into the frame of the chief sentence, while denoting them by verbal nouns or nominal forms of the verb, as participles, gerunds, infinitives and the like. Then, the sentence contains but one finite verb significative of the principal action, the other actions appearing in the shape of nouns and nominal forms which by their noun-cases and modalities are to represent the relations existing between the main action and the secondary ones. By the analytic structure, on the contrary, both the principal and the subordinate fact are evolved into full sentences, either of them containing its finite verb. Then, the clause is marked by a relative, which by its form or its referring to some demonstrative, or even by the place occupied by it, points out the chief sentence on which it depends. A relative sentence by itself is nonsense, it demands some main sentence to depend upon, of which it is logically but a detached link.

Exactly speaking, it is the analytic expression alone that constitutes *subordination of sentences*. The synthetic expression of clauses does not create new sentences. For this reason, the participles etc. are no subject-matter of this chapter, and have been dealt with in Section IV.

In Sanskrit both modes have been used from time

immemorial. We have no evidence to decide which may be the oldest. For the rest, the relative system stands to participles, infinitives etc., almost as prepositions to noun-cases, as auxiliaries to verbal flexion.

- 450.** Sometimes the logical equivalence of a gerund, a participle etc. to the protasis of a period is grammatically expressed by a subsequent *अथ* or *ततः*. Ch. Up. 6, 13, 1 लवणमेतदुदके स्वधाय सा प्रातरूप-सोदथाः (v. a. place this salt in water, and then wait on me in the morning), Kathās. 13, 144 सापि प्रव्राजिका तस्माद्वर्णिकपुत्रचतुष्टयात्... आदा-यैकमथाययो, Nala 5, 10 तान्समोक्ष्य.... अथ वैदर्भी नाभ्यतानान्तं नृपम् (as Damayantī contemplated them, she did not recognize king Nala), ibid. 2, 14 तावर्चयित्वा गधवा ततः कुशलमव्ययं प्रच्छानामयं चापि तयोः, M 11, 91 तथा स्वकाये निर्दग्धे मुच्यते कित्त्वपान्ततः (by this [penance] such a one, when his body is wholly burnt, is then released from sin).

- 451** Subordinate sentences, then, are characterized by <sup>The relative system.</sup> **relatives**. By this name I designate the pronoun *य* with all its derivatives, whether they may be called pronouns as *यः* (who), *यावान्* (Lat. *quantus*), *यादृशः* (Lat. *qualis*), or pronominal adverbs as *यतः* (whence), *यत्र* (where), *यथा* (as), and conjunctions as *यदि* (if). They have in common the property of referring to some demonstrative, either expressed or implied in the main sentence. Such a couple of relative and demonstrative, standing one in the clause the other in the main sentence, may be compared to a system of hook and eye holding together two different parts of a piece of cloth. Of the kind are *यः*..... *स*, *यादृशः*..... *तादृशः*, *यत्र*..... *तत्र*, *यदा*..... *तदा*, *यदि*..... *ततः* or *तदा* or *अथ* etc.

- 452.** From observing the practice of Sanskrit authors the

following general rules about the relative sentences may be laid down.

Its pro-  
perties.

1. The demonstrative is chiefly the pronoun स, सा, तत् and its derivatives, as तत्र, तथा, तदा, ततः. Yet, it must be kept in mind that relative adverbs do not necessarily require demonstrative adverbs of the same category; in other terms, one is not compelled to use the type यतः..... ततः, यत्र..... तत्र alone, but sometimes some other demonstrative, f.i. a noun-case of the pronoun may answer to the relative adverb, as यत्र तमवसः स देशो रमणीयः (it is a charming country where you dwelled)

2. Sanskrit likes to put the relative sentence first. In this case we have a period consisting of a **protasis** or former member, which is the relative sentence, and an **apodosis** or latter member, the principal sentence. This order is the regular one and much more used than inserting the relative sentence in the main one, as is generally done in modern European tongues. The demonstr. is commonly expressed, sometimes it is understood.

Examples: Panc. II, 20 यस्माच्च येन च यदा च यथा च यच्च यात्रस्य यत्र च शुभाशुभमात्मकर्म तस्माच्च तेन च तदा च तथा च तच्च तावच्च तत्र च त्रिधातृवशादुपैति (good and evil works of the individual are so requited by the Divine Power as to reach [the performer] by the same cause, by the same agent, at the same time, in the same way, at the same spot, and to be of the same quality and quantity), M. 1, 42 येषां तु यादृशं कर्म भूतानामिह कीर्तितं। तत्रया वो ऽभिधास्यामि (now, what duties are assigned to the different beings in this world, I will tell you), Utt. III, p. 42 यत्र दुमा अयि मृगा अपि ब्रन्धवो मे। यानि प्रियासहचरश्चिरमथ-वात्समूर्तानि तानि ब्रहुर्निराकरन्दराणि। गोदावरोपरिसरस्य गिरेस्तटानि, Panc. 48 तदस्य ययुज्यते तत्क्रियताम् (do to him that which is fit to be done).



Sometimes, however, the relative sentence follows after the principal one. In this case, the demonstrative is often omitted. *Mṛcch.* I, p. 19 दृत्तु नां ददन्ति यद्दृष्टमस्मदीयं। क्षीणार्थमित्यतियः परिवर्तयन्ति (this ails me, that —), *Nala* 2, 25 सर्वे [sc. लोकापालाः]... विद्वन्निमित्तमुक्ते यतः सर्वे महोक्तितः (all of them went to Vidarbha, whither all princes were on their way).

3. Like the interrogative (280), the relative may be part of a compound. *Mṛcch.* III, p. 111 यद्विस्मयं यान्ति पौराः = यस्त विस्मयं, *Ch. Up.* 4, 4, 2 साहमेतन्न त्रेदं यदोत्रस्त्वगमि (I do not know of what gotra you are), *Ven.* II, p. 44 तदादेश्य तमुददेशं यत्रस्या भानुमती.

4. Nothing prevents the relative depending on a gerund, participle or absolute case. *Ch. Up.* 5, 1, 7 ते ह प्राणाः प्रतापतिं पितरमेत्योचुर्भगवन्को नः श्रेष्ठ इति। तान्दोवाच यस्मिन्व उत्क्रान्ते प्ररीरं पापिष्ठतरमिव दृश्येत स वः श्रेष्ठ इति (the [five] senses went to their father Prajâpati and said: »Sir, who is the best of us?» He replied: »he by whose departure the body seems worse than worst, he is the best of you"), *Bhoj.* 26 नगरं विलोक्य कमपि मूर्खमगाव्यो नापश्यन् निर्स्य विदुषे गृहं दीयते (the minister looked about the town, but did not find any illiterate person to expel from his house, in order to give it to a man of learning). — *Kumâras.* 1, 3 the pronoun यस्य is to be construed with the former part of a tatpuruṣa यस्य हिमं न सांनान्य-त्रिलोपि ज्ञातम् (v. a. whose happiness [of Himavân] is not disturbed by the snow), *Mṛcch.* III, p. 111 the thief speaks: तत्कस्मिन्देष्टो दर्शयाम्या-त्मशिल्पं। दृष्ट्वा प्रो वां यद्विस्मयं यान्ति पौराः (on what spot, then, shall I show my skill, which the citizens will admire to-morrow when looking at it?).

5. In prose, the relative is, as a rule, the first word of the relative sentence. *Panc.* 53 यत्र कन्यान्तःपुरे वायुं मुक्त्वा नान्यस्य प्रवृत्तो ऽस्ति तत्र, *ibid.* 62 यैः सहैहं वृद्धिं गतः सहैव क्रीडितश्चैते (they, with whom I always stayed, with whom I grew up and played —). In poetry it may be put anywhere. *Varâh. Brh.* 32, 4 the Earth says to the Creator भगवन्नाम ममैतन्नया कृतं यदचलेति तन्न तथा (o Lord, the name of firmness which thou hast bestowed upon me, is vain). The *çlokas* I, 54-63 of the *Pancatantra*, which have been quoted

for a different purpose on page 266 of this book, may also give some illustration of the poetical license in putting the relative; in one *çloka* (vs. 52) the relative heads the sentence, in two it is wanting, the seven others exhibit the utmost variety. 1) Panc. I, 414 the relative sentence runs thus: नराधिपा नीचजनानुवर्तिनो बृधो-  
पदिष्ठेन पथा न यान्ति ये. R. 2, 28, 26 we have this order वने तु नेतुं न  
कृता मतिर्यदा ब्रूव रामेण तदा महात्मना। न तस्य सोता वचनं चकार instead  
of यदा तु रामेण वने नेतुं मतिर्न कृता तदा सोता तस्य वचनं न चकार. Cp. f. i.  
Kathās. 29, 183.

453. As the demonstrative **स** may have a general meaning (276), **य** may have it likewise and of course also the derivatives of both. Accordingly **यः**..... **स** is not seldom = „who or whosoever. . . . [he].” There are, however, various ways for emphasizing the generality of import, which are mentioned above (287). 2)

454. In general propositions, the relative sentence is not rarely characterized by two or more different relatives placed close together. When translating them, all of them, or at least all but one, become indefinites or must be rendered in some different way. Panc. V, 9 यद्य  
यदा विभवः स्यात्तस्य तदा दासतां यान्ति (if a person is wealthy for some  
time, they become his servants for so long), M. 7, 96 यो यज्ञयन्ति  
तस्य तत् (that which one captures, is one's own), Pat. I, p. 123 गवो  
दिवसं चरितव्यो यो यस्याः प्रसवो भवति तेन सह श्रेते (the cows when  
having grazed by day-time, lie during the night each with her

1) vs. 54. °करोति निर्विकल्पं यः स भवेद्दासवल्गुः

55. प्रभुप्रसादजं वित्तं सुपात्रे यो नियोजयेत्..... स°

56. अन्तःपुरचरैः सार्धं यो न मन्त्रं समाचरेत्.... स°

57. द्यूतं यो यमदूताभः..... पश्येत्..... स°

etc.

2) To the instances given 287 I add Panc. I, 389 येन केनाप्युपायेन.....  
उदरेद् दीनमात्मानम्, cp. the note on p. 215.

own calf), Panc. I, 48 यो न वेत्ति गुणान्यस्य न ते सेवेत पण्डितः (a wise man must not attend on such a one, as does not know his qualities), Hit. 106 यो यत्र कुशलः कार्ये तं तत्र विनियोजयेत्.

### CHAPT. III. Relative sentences, introduced by pronouns.

**455.** The general rules laid down in **453** for all kinds of relative sentences are especially applicable to those whose relative is the pronoun **य** itself. It is, therefore, regular to make the relative precede. In Sanskrit, as a rule, it is not the demonstrative which is the antecedent of the relative, but inversely. Panc. 319 मेव] एको.... महानसे प्रविश्य यत्पश्यति तत्सर्वं भक्षयति। ते च सूपकारा यत्किञ्चित्पात्रं पश्यन्ति तेनाशु ताडयन्ति, Mudr. V, p. 180 य आर्यस्तं पृच्छ व्यभिदानो-मनार्याः संवृत्ताः (ask one who is a honourable man, not me who have now turned dishonest), Bhoj. 9 ये मया नियमा उपवासाश्च त्वकृते कृतास्ते ऽय मे त्रिफला ज्ञाताः (the penances and fasts which I have performed in your behalf, have now proved fruitless).

This precedence is, indeed, but the consequence of the entire employment of relative pronouns in Sanskrit composition. They are not used, as in many other languages, where the relative sentence may be a concurrent idiom of participles and adjectives and a means for paraphrasing. But in Sanskrit only such attributes as are of importance to the understanding of the main sentence, are fit for analytical expression by means of relative sentences. <sup>1)</sup>

**456.** Sometimes the relative protasis + demonstrative apo-

1) DE SAUSSURE *de l'emploi du génitif absolu*, p. 38: "la proposition relative, en effet, contient toujours en sanscrit une donnée importante et modifie foncièrement la portée de la proposition principale."

dosis, even serves the purpose of emphasizing a simple sentence. In this case, the relative sentence is but the paraphrase of the main subject. Instead of **सोऽश्वो मे मृतः** (my horse has died) it may be said **यो मेऽश्वः स मृतः**. This periphrastic idiom is especially employed in giving definitions, and in general, if the chief predicate is nominal, it is a fit means for distinguishing the subject from the predicate by pointing out the former as something already known. The archaic monuments offer plenty of instances of this idiom. In classic literature, though far less common, it is however not wanting. Examples: *a.*) from archaic texts. Ch. Up. I, 3, 3 यः प्राणापानयोः संधिः स व्यानो यो व्यानः सा वाक्. Cat. Br. 14, 7, 1, 33 अथ ये शतं मनुष्यापामानन्दाः न एकः पितॄणां क्षितलोकानामानन्दः, Muir O. S. T. I, p. 46 translates this passage thus: "now a hundred pleasures of men are one pleasure of the Pitris who have conquered the worlds." Mhbh. I, Paushyap. Uttanka asks his teacher about some strange apparitions he has come across, while executing the orders of his teacher. The other answers ये ते स्त्रियो धाता विधाता च (the two women [you have seen] were the Dhâtr and the Vidhâtr) ये च ते कृष्णाः सितास्तनवस्ते रात्र्यह्नौ (and the black and the white threads [they were weaving] were day and night) and so on: वः पुन्यः स पतन्यः योऽश्वः सोऽग्निः य ऋषयः . . . . स देवावतो नागराह्वयश्चैतन्मथिष्ठकः पुन्यः स चेन्दुः -- *b.*) from classic literature. Panc. 62 अत्र पुनः मर्तुनि ये तत्त्वचरान्ते निश्चिन्ताः सन्ति (but in this lake the aquatic animals are brainless), Mudr. V, p. 172 यच्चदत्तङ्कुरपात्रयं क्रीतं तन्मयादेकं दीयताम् (give me one of these very three ornaments you have bought).

- 457.** If the relative sentence *follows*, the inverted order may be accounted for by some special reason. Mreeh. IV, p. 138 अपिठतास्ते पुनश्च मता मे ये स्त्र्यो च औपु च त्रिष्वसन्ति (I hold those unwise, who rely on women and fortune), here the stress laid on the predicate अपिठताः has caused the chief sentence to be placed before. Likewise Kumâras. 2, 51 the gods entreat Brahmâ

Inver-  
ted  
order.

विभो ब्रह्मं सेनान्यं तस्य (sc. तारकस्य) शान्तये... ग्रेष्वारं सर्वसेन्यानां यं पुरस्कृत्य मोत्रमिति प्रत्ययान्वयिनि शत्रुभ्यो वन्दोमिह त्रयस्त्रियम्. The opening-line of the Kumārasambhava is अस्त्युत्तरस्यां दिशि देवतात्मा हिमालयो नाम नगाधिराजः etc., the glory and the magnificence of Himavān are extolled in the following sixteen ślokaś (1, 2—17) each of them adding a new ornament to his splendour. In all of them it is the relative alone, which connects the different links of the eulogy, referring as it does to the preceding हिमालयः of the chief sentence in śl. 1. And so often, if somebody or something is characterized by a series of clauses, the relative sentences follow after the main sentence. In the last instances quoted the demonstrative in the main sentence is wanting and it is the noun alone that does duty as what we are wont to call the relative's antecedent. Sometimes, however, it may happen that there is no other antecedent to be supplied than just the wanting demonstr. R. 3, 19, 7 न हि पश्चाद्यहं लोके यः कुर्यान्मम विप्रियम् (I am not aware of [anybody] in the world, who can do evil to me).

**458.** The relative pronoun must follow the main sentence, if it introduces a clause of a special character, especially a causal one, yet it may also import a *consequence*, a *disposition*, or even a *purpose*. In other terms, the relative pronoun is sometimes used, where one would expect a relative adverb or conjunction, यः being almost = यत्स (that he) or = यथा स (in order that he), or = यादृशः (such as to —). Cp. Lat. *qui* = *quum* is and *qui* = *ut* is.

a.) The relative clause implies a cause, motive or reason. So especially after such verbs and nouns as signify a disposition either glad or sad, either benevolent or malevolent, either content or discontent, and the like. Panc. 250 भाग्यवाञ्छमेवासि ययार्थं सर्वमेव संसिध्यति (you are fortunate, indeed, for whatever you undertake succeeds), Daç. 90 सैव धन्या गणिकादारिका यामेव भवन्मनो ऽग्निनिविशते (she is to be congratulated that it is she, who is the object of your

love), Çāk. I, अहो असाधुर्ज्ञो तत्रभवान्कण्वो य इमां वल्कलधारणो नियुञ्जे (it is ill-judged of the Reverend Kanva to order her —), Panc. 55 तस्य कृतान्तः कुपितो येनैतदेवं क्रियते, Daç. 135 अहमेव गूढो अपराधो गस्तत्र.... समादिष्टवान्वथम्.

Rem. Note the idiom योऽहम्, यस्त्वम् in such causal clauses. R. 2, 59, 32 अजोभनं योऽहमिदं राघवं दिदृक्षमाणां न लभे गन्तव्यमाणम् (it is a pity that I do not find Rāma and Laxmaṇa), Mrech. III, p. 125 नाहं दरिद्रः यस्य मम विभवानुगता भार्या सुखदुःखमुद्वहन्.... (I am not poor, since I have —), R. 2, 44, 26 नार्हं त्वं प्रोचितुं देवि यस्यासौ राघवः सुतः. Likewise य एष. Çāk. VII अये सेयमत्रभवती प्रकुन्तला येना व्रजने पद्विभारे वसन्ता..... मम दोर्घं विरह्युक्तं विभर्ति. Cp. the kindred idiom योऽहम् etc. (445) 1).

b) the relative clause imports an ability, consequence or design. Panc. 192 तदत्रैव स्थितेन त्वया कश्चित्पार्श्वः गताश्रयणीयां यो विपत्परीकारं करोति (v. a. you must apply to somebody, who is able to defend you), ibid. 91 का-मात्रा समुद्रस्य यो नम दूषयिष्यति प्रभूतिम् (what is the Ocean, that he should hurt my offspring?). In these examples from the classic dialect the present is used or the future. In the old and epic style such clauses require the optative mood (न्विञ्) cp. 344 f). Mhbh. 1, 157, 25 नहि योऽं प्रपश्यामि येन मुच्येयमपदः (I see no means, indeed, how to get rid of distress), R. 1, 54, 3 पदित्यक्त व्रमिदेन किनरे सुमहात्मना। याहं राक्षभौर्दोना द्विगेय भृष्टदुःखिता (why has V. left me, to be captured by the king's attendants?), ibid. 3, 13, 11 आदिप्र ने देशं सोदकं बहुकाननम्। यत्राश्रमपदं कृत्वा व्रमेयं निरृतः सुयम्.

Rem. The pronoun य, therefore, may even be correlative to a preceding ईदृश, एवम्भूत and the like. In all such cases the clause

1) The combination यः स serves different wants. Sometimes it generalizes the relative, so 'as to make it an indefinite = सर्व, see 287 c.) and Mrech. X, p. 360 यत्र तत्र स्थिता »staying anywhere." Sometimes it is to be resolved into स (the »renowned" or the »well-known" etc.) यः, as Mhbh. 1, 67, 71 अनुवेदे च वेदे च यं तं वेदविदो विदुः। वरिदम्. In the same way य एष, य असौ are to be resolved. Mudr. III, p. 115 यावेतो गताश्चक्षाव्या-ध्यक्षो..... एतां खलु etc.

bears a consecutive character more or less expressed. Hit. 6 अस्ति कश्चिदेवंभूतो विद्वान्यो गम पुत्राणाम्.... नीतिशास्त्रोपदेशेन पुनर्जन्म कारयितुं समर्थः (is there any learned man so clever, as to —), Mudr. V, p. 166 कोदृशं तत्कार्यमौचित्यं यद्व्राताशानमुल्लङ्घयसि (of what nature are those important affairs, that you should transgress the king's orders?), Mhbh. 1, 157, 14 द्वात्रात्र्यपुरुषस्तान् कृतं यस्मिन् नश्यति.

**459.** Some other special idioms may be noticed:

1. the idiom यस्मात् v. a. «surely», cp. 395. Venc i, p. 19 यस्मात् कम्पितमिव मे हृदयम् (my heart trembles, indeed);
- type-y: 2. the type, represented by R. 2, 44, 14 या श्रोः प्रीत्यै च रामस्य वा etc. = च कल्याण सन्नता निवृत्तार पयसाः स्वं क्षिप्रं राक्ष्यमवाप्स्यति (considering Rāma's «con- happiness, his heroism and his virtue, he will soon recover his de- ring.” kingdom), cp. Latin *quā erat clementiā Caesar, victos conservavit hostes* and the like;
- y: = 3. यः = यदि कश्चित्, as M. 2, 95 यश्चैतान्प्राप्यात्सर्वान्विश्रैतान्केवलान्स्थयेत्। यदि प्राप्यात्सर्वकामानां परित्यागो विप्रियते; here the repeated यः = «if some- body” and «if some other,” cp. Mhbh. 1, 79, 6. In this and simi- कश्चित् lar constructions the noun or the demonstrative referred to are understood. Cp. यावत् = «as far as” and the like (460 R. 1).

**460.** The pronominal adjectives यावत्, यादृश and the like, are as a rule used along with their demonstra- y after the de- mon- strati- ves ता- वन्त्, तादृश etc. Kathās. 78, 130 यादृशास्तन्तवः कामं ता- दृशो त्रायते यः (one may judge a cloth from its constituent threads v. a. *ex ungue leonem*), Mhbh. 1, 167, 34 स पुत्रः.... इष्यते यदिद्यो रात्रन्भविता ते तथाविधः (such a son as you wish will be born to you), M. 8, 155 यावती संभवेद्विस्तावती दातुमर्हति (he must pay as much interest as appears and the like. [from the documents]).

Rem. 1. यावत्, when subst. neuter, is sometimes employed in a somewhat elliptical way, f. i. Vikram. V, p. 181 इयं चोर्वशी यावदायुष्यते सदर्थमचारिणी भवतु (and Urvāśi here will be your wife for the whole time of your life), Daç. 74 परिवारस्त्वस्य यावदिह रम्य- मुज्ज्वलं च (and its train consists of all that is charming and splendid here on earth).” Cp. Lat. *quantum est hominum venustiorum* and

the like. Cp. also the turn इति यावत् (as much as), frequent with commentators.

Rem. 2. A counterpart to the idioms mentioned in 459, are यादृश and यावन्त् when connected rather loosely with the main sentence. R. 3, 24, 6 यादृश इह कूदन्ति पक्षिणो वनचारिणः। अग्रतो नो भयं प्राप्नुम् (considering the shouts of the birds here, some danger is near us). So especially यावत् and यावता = "as far as, in as much as," cp. 479.

Rem. 3. If the relative sentence import *a reason, a consequence, a purpose*, it is the pronoun य that is the correlative of तादृश, not यादृश and its synonyms. See 458, b) and 466.

#### CHAPT. IV. Relative adverbs and conjunctions.

- 461.** Some noun-cases of ये may be used quite adverbially and even assume the nature of conjunctions, as Relative adverbs. यत्, येन, यतः and यस्मात्, moreover यावत् and यावता. With them rank such as are derived by means of adverbial suffixes, यथा, यदा, यदि. All of them serve to introduce various kinds of clauses and subordinate sentences. If we except यदा, restricted to temporal clauses, and यदि exclusively employed in conditional and hypothetical protases, we cannot say that each of the named conjunctions has its own logical sphere of employment. So for instance, यत् may sometimes express a reason, sometimes a circumstance, now it points to a purpose, now it merely paraphrases a fact. Similarly यावत् may be time-denoting or it may indicate a proportion. And so on.



## 1. RELATIVE NOUN-CASES USED AS CONJUNCTIONS.

a.) यत्; येन; यतः AND यस्मात्.

**462** यत् and the rest have nearly the character of such conjunctions as Lat. *quod* and *quo*, Engl. *that*. At the outset they were cases of the neuter of the pronoun. Compare f. i. these two sentences: Kumâras. 4, 9 यद्वोचस्तद्वैमि कैतवम् (that which you said, I understand it to be falsehood) with Çâk. V यन्मियः समयादिमां मदीयां दृष्टितरं भवानुपायस्त तन्मया प्रीतिमता युवयोरनुज्ञातम् (that you have wedded my daughter by mutual agreement, I forgive it both of you). In the former, यत् is the acc. of the pronoun and expresses the object of the relative sentence, in the latter it is a mere conjunction serving to introduce the periphrase of the subject of the main sentence, expressed by the demonstr. तत्, but it is no *essential* element of the proposition.

**463.** The conjunction यत् is chiefly employed to paraphrase a fact, especially if this fact be an important element of the main sentence: subject or object. As a rule, the demonstrative is added.

Its employment.

Panc. 147 नैतद्वेत्सि यद्भया.... नर्कोपार्त्तनं कृतम् (you are not aware, you have deserved hell), Vikram. I, p. 18 ननु वज्रिण एव वीर्यमेतद्विजयन्ते द्विषतो यदस्य पक्षाः (it is, forsooth, the glory of the Thunderer, that his warriors triumph over his adversaries), Mhbh. 1, 150, 23 इतः कटतरं किं तु यदयं गहने वनेदिग्रश्च न विज्ञानीमो गन्तुं चैव न शक्नुमः (what can be more miserable than this, that —), Panc. 56 किमेवं युद्यते यत्सर्वे पार्ष्णित्रा मया सह विग्रहं कुर्वन्ति (is this right, that all kings are making war against me?), Çâk. II उत्कर्षः स च धन्विनां यद्विषवः सिध्यन्ति लक्ष्ये चले (it is the highest glory for an archer, that his arrows hit a moving aim).<sup>1)</sup> — In the following instances, the relative

1) In the archaic dialect the indeclinable यत् occasionally serves, like the pronoun य, for the periphrastic expression of simple nominal predicates (456). Ch. Up. 1, 1, 8 एषो एव समुद्धिर्यदनुज्ञा, Max Müller translates "now permission is gratification". Cp. also the passage of Mahâv. quoted 466 R.

sentence precedes. Panc. 113 यन्तु मन्त्रित्वमभिलषसि तदप्ययुक्तम् (that you covet the rank of minister, this too is unbecoming), Nala 18, 10 यत्सा तेन परित्यक्ता तत्र न क्रोडुमर्हति (she must not be angry, that he has left her).

464. The object of the words of *saying*, *thinking*, *believing* etc. is often paraphrased by a clause, introduced by the conjunction यत्. Cp. 494. Likewise by यथा (472) or यतः.

Examples: Panc. 58 तस्मिन्दृते सर्वो जनो वदियति यत्प्रभूतजत्रिवैर्मिलित्वा वासुदेवो गृह्यत निपातितः (he being killed, people will say that Vās. and Gar. have been killed in a battle with a great number of warriors), ibid. 201 किं न वेत्ति भवान्यन्मम परिग्रहोऽयम् (you know, indeed, that these are my subjects), Ch. Up. 4, 10, 5 त्रिज्ञानाय्यहं यत्प्राणो ब्रह्मा (I understand that breath is Brahman), Çāk. VI न किल श्रुतं युवाभ्यां यद्वासन्तिकैस्तृभिरपि देवस्य शासनं प्रमाणीकृतम् (have you not heard, indeed, that even the trees of Spring obey to the order of His Majesty?).

Rem. The well known Greek type οἶδα τὸν ἄνδρα ὅτι δίκαιός ἐστι is also good Sanskrit. Panc. 280 ज्ञातस्त्वं मया प्रथमेन यन्तु स्वीकृत्यः स्वीकृतश्च, Nala 17, 40 स नरः सर्वथा ज्ञेयः कश्चागो कु न वर्तते, R. 3, 3, 3 त्वां तु वेदितुमिच्छामः कस्त्वं चरसि दण्डकान्, Mhbh. 1, 168, 9 अनुज्ञास्तु न जानामि गच्छेयुर्नेति वा पुनः (but of my brothers I do not know, whether they will go or not).

465. Sometimes the sentence introduced by यत् has a more or less causal character. When thus employed, यत् is sometimes = *that*, f. i. after such phrases as *I am happy, glad, sad, it is good, I wonder* etc., *what have I done to you?* and the like, sometimes it is = *because, since, as*. 'Cp. the pronoun य with causal meaning (458).

Examples: Panc. 143 धन्योऽहं यद्व्यतापि सद्यः तत्र कालं नयामि (I am happy that I shall still pass the time there in your company), here यत् = योऽहम् (458, a R.), Panc. 203 न त्वया सुन्दरं कृतं धन्यमात्रसयस्या-

ने प्रविष्टोऽसि (you have not done well to have entered my dwelling-place), Mṛech. V, p. 188 तलधर् निर्लज्जस्त्वं यन्मा दयितस्य वेष्टम गच्छन्तीं स्तन्निनेन भीषयित्वा धाराहस्तैः परामृशसि (cloud, thou art cruel, as thou frightenest me first by thy thunder, then layest violent hands on me, attacking me with showers of rain, while I am going to my sweetheart), R. 2, 113, 16 नैतन्निन्नं . . . . यदार्थं त्वयि तिष्ठेत् (it is no wonder, that —), ibid. 2, 63, 38 किं तवापकृतं राजन्वने निवसता मया . . . . यदहं ताडितस्त्वया (in what have I offended you that you should have slain me?), ibid. 2, 61, 9 वत्ससारमयं नूनं हृदयं मे न संप्रयः। अपश्यन्त्या न तं यद्वै फलतीदं सद्वस्त्रा (certainly, my heart is of the hardest stone, since it does not burst into a thousand pieces now that I do not see him [my son]), Mudr. II, p. 79 किं श्रेष्ठस्य भगव्यया न वपुषि क्ष्मां न क्षिपत्येव यत्किं वा नास्ति परिश्रमो दिनपतेरास्ते न यन्निश्चलः ([may it be inferred that] Cēsha does not suffer from his burden, because he does not throw off the earth, or [that] the Sun does not feel tired, because he is not motionless?). R. 2, 68, 2 यत् (since) precedes, तत् (for this reason) follows.

Rem. Occasionally येन and यतः are used like यत् in such phrases as »I am happy that" and the like. Prabodh. IV, p. 81 धन्योऽस्मि येन स्वाग्निनाहमेवं संभावितः (I am happy, that my master has in this way honoured me), Panc. 296 किं वयं ब्राह्मणसमाना यत आमन्त्रपां करोषि (are we the equals of brahmanas, that you call us to dinner?).

यतः is occasionally put to verbs of *knowing*, *saying*, etc. (464).

**466.** यत्, common as it is as a causal particle, is somewhat rarely found as a final or consecutive conjunction, *that* = »in order that," or = »in consequence of which." Panc. 199 क्रियतां तेषां कृते काचिद् अभिपिका यत्कथं दैवान् समायान्ति (frighten them in some way or other, that perchance they may not return somehow), Kāṇ. on P. 3, 2, 36 explains असूर्यपश्या रात्रदाराः in this way एवं नाम गुप्ता यत्सूर्यमपि न पश्यन्ति (being indeed so closely guarded as not to see the sun), Kumāras. 1, 37 एतावता यत् (in so much that). Cp. Mṛech. V, p. 201, where Cārudatta exclaims वर्षशतमस्तु दुर्दिनमविरतभारं शतदूदा सुरुतु। अस्मद्विधुर्लभया यदहं प्रियया परिष्वक्तः (let the rain descend incessantly and let the lightning flash for ever, in consequence of which I hold my beloved in my arms, her who was unattainable to somebody like me).

यत्,  
when  
final  
or con-  
secu-  
tive.

Rem. Mānāv. II, p. 21 the rāxasa says अनर्थ एव वो यत्कन्येयमन्यसौ दीयत इति, the literal sense of which is »to give her to another is mischief to you,” but when translating more freely »woe to you, if she should be given to another.” In the archaic dialect यत् is occasionally a full synonym of यदि. Only see these passages of the Chândogya-upanishad: 5, 15, 2 सदिहस्ते व्यशोर्ययन्मां नागमिष्यः (your body would have perished, if you had not come to me), and 6, 11, 2 यदेकां शाखां जीवो जहात्यथ शुष्यति (if the life leaves one of the branches [of the tree], that branch withers).

In this passage of Âçval. Gr̥hyas. (3, 4, 7) तस्य द्वावनाध्यायो यदा-त्माशुचिर्यद् देशः (the cases of prohibition to study Holy Writ are two-fold: impurity of person and impurity of place) यत् may be accepted = »if,” but one may also account for it by referring to the idiom mentioned in the foot-note on p. 358.

**467.** Of यतः and यस्मात् the causal employment is more यतः and strongly marked than of यत्. They not only denote यस्मात् the reason, but also the efficient and material cause: *for, because*. The period is sometimes expressed in full यस्मात्..... तस्मात्, यतः..... ततः sim., sometimes the demonstrative is not added. Panc. III, 105 अहिंसापूर्वको धर्मो यस्मात्सद्भिर्दाहृतः यत्कमत्कुपादंशादींस्तस्मान्नानपि रक्षयेत् (*since* the wise have declared clemency the highest virtue, one must protect even the smallest insects), ibid. p. 107 यतस्ते शत्रुसदृशौ कर्णौ ततः शत्रुकर्णौ नाम भविष्यति, ibid. 72 तदस्मान्न सिध्यति यतः (this does not hold good; because —), cp. Kathās. 30, 39. — Both यतः and यस्मात् are excessively frequent, when adding the causes to facts already mentioned before. Then they are concurrent with हि, and like this, they may be said to serve for coordination rather than subordination. F. i. Panc. 241 अहो कल्याणमस्माकमुपस्थितं यद्द्रुक्षाच्चो गतः यतः स दीर्घदर्शयेति च मूढमनसः (it is good for us, that Raktāxa is gone, for he is wise but these [others] are stupid).

Rem. With the same function are used the full phrases येन कारणेन, यस्मात्कारणात्, यत्कारणम् and the like. Panc. 216 अस्माकं मध्ये त्वया न वर्तितव्यं येन कारणोनास्माभिर्गृहीतं तत्सरः (you must not stay with

us, for we have taken possession of this lake), *ibid.* 218 यत्कारणं  
शरणागतो न वध्यते = Lat. *nam supplex non interficitur.*

**468.** The conjunction **येन** is chiefly expressive of purpose or intention. One might, therefore, expect it to be construed with the optative or the future, and indeed so it is, yet the present is oftener employed, especially in simple prose. The same applies to **यथा**, when a final particle, see **471**.

1. with *लिट्*: Kathâs. 36, 106 तदिदानीं वनं गत्वा हरिं शरणमाश्रये। येन  
स्यां नैव दुःखानां भयानं पुनरेदं ग्रामम् (therefore I will retire to the forest  
now and pray to Hari, that I may never more be exposed to  
such misfortunes); — 2. with future: Panc. 329 द्रुततरं गच्छामि येनैव न  
मम पृथगेष्यति (I will go more swiftly, that no may not overtake me); —  
3. with present: Panc. 327 देवता मां येन गृहं गच्छामि (dismiss me, that  
I may go home), *ibid.* 52 यत्किञ्चिद् दुःखकारणं तद्वद् येन प्रतीकारः क्रियते.

When the demonstrative precedes, the sentence introduced by **येन**  
may be also a consecutive one, as it points to the direct consequence  
of the action signified by the main sentence. Kathâs. 12, 100 तथा  
कुर्वन् येन सः गृहान्तरं निवर्तते (act so that he will retire from my house),  
Hit. 10 the tiger speaks मम चैतावान्तां गच्छिहो येन स्वस्तस्यमपि सुवर्षा-  
कङ्कां यस्यै कलैचिद् दातुमिच्छामि (I am so free from covetousness, as  
to wish to give —).

**469.** On the other hand, **येन** — as it properly signifies  
„by the which” — may introduce also a *causal* sentence.  
Kathâs. 36, 121 येनाहं भवताहतः। तादृक् श्रेणो गतो भूमौ भवानुत्पन्नतामिति (be-  
cause you have struck me —), Panc. 274 किमहमेताभ्यां होना येन मानुषसतः  
(am I inferior to them, that they should laugh at me?). Cp. **465 R.**

### b.) यथा.

**470** The employment of **यथा** bears a great resemblance  
यथा. to that of Latin *ut*. Like this, **यथा** has originally been  
a particle of comparison „as,” the correlative of which  
is the demonstrative „so, thus.” Yet its duty is not

limited to the expression of equation, but extends to many other logical relations, chiefly *consequence* and *purpose* or *aim*, though it may answer sometimes our causal or merely epexegetical „that.”

a.) When used in its proper sense for the sake of comparison, the parallelism of **यथा..... तथा** or its synonyms (**एवम्, इत्थम्**) is frequent, although the omission of the demonstr. is not excluded. Pat. I, p. 51 **यथेच्छं** तयास्तु (be it so, as you desire), Utt. II, p. 27 **वितरति** गुरुः प्राज्ञे विद्यां **यथैव** तथा ऋते (the teacher bestows his learning on his sluggish disciple just as he does on the keen-witted one), R. 3, 19, 18 **इमांश्चर्यां** नीनाएं यथाऽनायासतो तथा (I am reduced to this state, as [if I were] a woman of bad conduct who has no protector), Ilit. 108 **एवमनुष्ठेयं** यथा वदामि; — demonstr. omitted: Nala 22, 4 **त्रयाञ्चैनं** कथान्ते त्वं पपाद्वचनं यथा (speak to him as Parnâda spoke), Mhbh. 4, 2, 5 **मंस्यन्ते** मां यथा नृपम् (they will consider me like a king).

Rem. 1. **यथा** may also be = „in so far as.” R. 3, 5, 18 Râma admires the knightly attitude and the vigour of Indra and his men, who appear like youths of twenty-five, **इदं चिप्रति** says he to Laxmaṇa **सोमित्रे पञ्चविंशतिवार्धिकम्..... यथेमे** पुरुषव्याघ्रा दृश्यन्ते प्रियदर्शनाः (they bear the shape of youths of twenty-five, in so far as we may judge from their outward appearance). Hence **न तथा..... यथा** = Lat. *non tam..... quam*, 1. „not so much..... as,” f. i. Kumâras. 5, 37 **तथा न** गार्ह्यैः सलिलैर्दिव्यच्युतैः यथा त्वदोमैश्चरितैर्नाविलैर्महीधरः पावित दृष सान्वयः, 2. „not exactly..... but,” f. i. M. 2, 96 **न तथैतानि** [sc. रन्दिवाणि] प्रचक्षन्ते संनियन्तुमरोत्रया। विषयेषु प्रभुदानि यथा ज्ञानेन नित्यप्रः।

Rem. 2. In protestations and oaths **यथा..... तेन सत्येन** = „as sure as..... so surely.” R. 2, 64, 40 **अपायोऽसि** यथा पुत्र निहतः पापकर्मणा। तेन सत्येन मन्त्राणु ये लोकास्त्वय्योधिनाम् (as sure as you being sinless have been killed, my son, by an evil-doer, so surely may you go swiftly to the abodes of the warriors), cp. Nala 5, 16-20.

Rem. 3. **यथा** with **लिङ्** may be = „as if” (343, d). Ch. Up. 5, 24, 1 **यथाङ्गारानपोक्तं** भस्मनि जुहुयात्तदृक्तस्यात् (this would be as if a man were to remove the [live] coals and pour his libation in [dead]

ashes. R. 3, 51, 34 the vulture Jātāyu is said \*to have fallen upon Rāvana in the same way »as if some mahaunt mounts a wicked elephant” अधिब्रह्मो गजारोहो यथा स्याद् दुष्टवारणम्.

Rem. 4. यद्वत्..... तद्वत् are equivalent to यथा..... तथा. With optative यद्वत् is also = »as if.” Varāh. Brh. 2, 19 नगरद्वारलोष्टस्य यद्वत्स्यादुपयाचितम्। आदेशस्तद्वत्ज्ञानाम् (a prediction by ignorant men is as useless as if one were to question a clod of earth at the town-gate).

**471.** *b.) यथा* points to the result, either effected or aimed at. The *result effected* is set forth by *यथा* construed with a past tense and preceded by *तथा*. The *result aimed at* or (what is often identical) the *purpose* is expressed by *यथा* construed with an optative (लिङ्), a future or, as is oftener done, a present (cp. 468). In both categories of sentences the demonstrative *तथा* is generally added.

Examples: 1. *यथा* points to the result effected. Kathās. 25, 120 क्रमेण च ययौ तत्र प्रकर्षं स तथा यथा। अज्ञीयत न केनापि प्रतिमलेन भूतले (and by degrees he became *such* a master in this art [boxing], *that* no adversary on earth could vanquish him), Panc. 318 एवं तेन ध्यानस्थितेन तथैव पादप्रहारो दत्तो यथा स घटो भग्नः (as he was thinking so, he gave the pot *such* a kick *that* it broke). See also Kumāras. 5, 15.

2. *यथा* signifies the result aimed at, the purpose. Here the present usually follows. Panc. 2 यथा मम मनोरथाः सिद्धिं यान्ति तथानुष्ठीयताम् (act so as to cause my wishes to be fulfilled), Kathās. 26, 42 युवां मे कुरुते तथा यथाहमय पश्यामि तां युष्मत्स्वामिनीमिह (cause me to see your queen to-day), Panc. 151 अहं तथा भक्षयामि यथा ब्रह्मन्यहानि मे प्राणायान्ना भवति (I will eat [of it] *in such a way*, as to be supported by it for many days), Çāk. I आश्रमन्नाथा यथा न भवति तथाहमपि यत्तिष्ठे (I too will take care, *that* there may be done no harm to the hermitage), Hit. 108 यथायं नश्यति तन्मया विधेयम्. — Yet, the optative (लिङ्) is also found, especially in ornate style and in ancient literature. Mhbh. 1, 163, 3 यथा त्विदं न बिन्देयुर्नरा नगरवासिनः। तथायं ब्राह्मणो वाच्यः (but this brahman

should be warned, that the townsmen may not become aware of it), Kathās. 13, 55 स चापुत्रो ब्रह्मन्विप्रान्संवाह्य प्रणतोऽब्रवीत् । तथा कुत पुत्रो मे यथा स्यादचिरं इति, Vikram. II, p. 38 तदुपायश्चिन्त्यतां यथा सकलप्रायानो भवेयम्. — Instance of the future: Fanc. 105 मयान्योन्यं ताभ्यां... भेदस्तथा त्रिहितो यथा भूयोऽपि मन्त्रयन्तावेकस्यानस्थितो न दूक्षसि (I have made them so discordant that you will see them never more deliberate together).

The future is of course wanted, if the main sentence has a future. Nala 1, 20 दमयन्तीसकाशे त्वां कथयिष्यामि नैषध। यथा त्वदन्यं पुरुषं न ना मंस्यति कर्हिचित्. Likewise the optative, if the main sentence has an optative. Daç. 138 तथा विषं स्तम्भयेयं यथा मृत इत्युदास्येत (I will arrest the poison, but in such a manner, that he will be left for dead).

Rem. 1. If the demonstrative is not added, यथा = »[in order] that." Panc. 56 संश्रद्धोऽथ त्वया निजभर्ता यथा मम शत्रून्वापादयति (you must exhort your husband, that he may kill my enemies). Cp. Nala 1, 20.

Rem. 2. Instead of यथा न with optative, epic poets often use the simple न (405 R. 1). Moreover, ना may be = »lest," when it agrees with aorist or with optative, in epic poetry even with the future, cp. 405 R. 1. — In affirmative sentences the omission of यथा is very rare, yet there are instances of it. R. 1, 39, 11 तत्रया क्रियतां रात्रन्यतोऽङ्किदूः कृतो भवेत् (make the sacrifice to be accomplished without flaw).

**472.** c.) यथा serves to paraphrase the object of *knowing*,

c) यथा  
para-  
phrases  
the ob-  
ject.

saying, declaring etc. just as यत् (464). Kumāras. 4, 36 त्रिदितं खलु ते यथा स्मरः क्षणमप्युत्सहते न मां विना (you know, certainly, that Kāma cannot be without me, even for a moment), Mālat. IV, p. 69 अयि भवानमस्त यथा भूरिबभूवुर्देव गाल्तीमग्मग्मे दास्यति (say, did you believe that it was Bhūr. who will give me Mālatī?), Panc. 200 ज्ञानात्येव भवान्ययार्थवादिनो द्रुतस्य न दोषः कर्णोयः, Mhbh. 1, 42, 34 Kāçyapa starts to the rescue of king Parixit श्रुतं हि तेन [sc. काश्यपेन] तद्भूषया तं रात्रात्रमं तत्तकः पन्नागश्रेष्ठो नेष्यते यमसादनम्.

Rem. In the first and the last of the instances quoted we are free to translate यथा by »how." Indeed, this employment of यथा does not lie very far from that, mentioned 411.

**473.** d.) Finally, यथा may sometimes have the nature of



4) यथा, a causal particle. This seems to have been more usual in when a causal particle. an ancient literature, than afterwards. Ch. Up. 6, 13, 1 तडावमृष्य न विवेद यथा विलीनमेवाह (he [the son] having looked for it [the salt, he had placed in the water] did not find it, for, of course, it was melted), R. 3, 57, 19 Rāma surmises, Sitā will have incurred some harm. सर्वथा जनक्रान्ततां विनष्टा भक्षिता वापि राज्ञसैर्वनचारिभिः शत्रुभान्येव भूयिष्ठं यथा प्रादुर्भवन्ति मे (-- as it is chiefly prognostics of evil, that appear to me).

This causal meaning of यथा is sometimes indicated by adding हि, the exponent of causality. R. 3, 11, 47 एतदेवाश्रमगदं नूनं तस्य.... अगस्त्यस्य मुनेभिरुद्दिश्यते.... यथा हेमे वनस्यास्य ज्ञाताः पथि गह्वरप्रः.... दुःमाः.

In the instances quoted the clause with यथा follows the main sentence. If it precedes, we may translate it by *as much as, considering*, etc. Nala 21, 8 यथासौ रथनिर्व्वाणः पूरयन्निव मेदिनीम्। गमाद्वाह्यते चेतो नल एव महोपतिः (*considering* the joy, which causes to me the sound of the chariot, I know it is Nala).

### c.) यदा AND यावत्.

474. यदा is a temporal conjunction = our „when.” Its demonstrative which is generally not omitted, is तदा „then.”

Panc. 303 यदा रामो राज्ञामोन्नदाहम्.... अनेन यथा यथायातः, Mrceh. I, p. 55 यदा तु भार्यक्षयपीडितां दृष्ट्वां नरः कृतान्तापहितां प्रपद्यते। तदास्य मित्राण्यपि यान्त्यमित्रतः चित्तानुरक्तोऽपि विरज्यते जनः.

यदा repeated is of course = „whenever.” Kathās. 25, 216 तस्मान्निद्रा च भूयोऽपि त्विमेवसि यदा यदा। तदा तदा वरतरुर्मूलात्पाप्यसि मामितः. — यदैव „at the very time that.” Ven. I, p. 24 कुरुषु तावदराधेयता तदैव निवेदिता यदैवास्माभिरितो वनं गच्छद्भिः सर्वैरेव कुरुकुलस्य निधनं प्रतिज्ञातम्. — यदाप्रभृति „since.” R. 2, 116, 13 त्वं यदाप्रभृति क्वास्मिन्नाश्रमे तात वर्तसे। तदाप्रभृति रक्षांसि विप्रकुर्वन्ति तापसान् (for the hermits are being vexed by the rāxasas since the time, that you stay here).

475. यावत् is chiefly used of time. Then the parallelism यावत्.... तावत् is generally expressed in full. Two cases are here to be distinguished. Either *simultaneousness*

of the two actions is denoted, or the action with तावत् is *precedent* to the other.

यावत् I. If यावत्..... तावत्, or inversely तावत्..... यावत् are expressive of simultaneousness, यावत् properly = *as long as*, *while*. Yet, it is also expressive of *at which time*, *when*, sometimes it may even be rendered by *as soon as*.

1. यावत् *as long as*, *while*<sup>1</sup>). In this meaning it is construed with the present, even when expressive of past facts, cp. 327. Hit. 68 देव यावद्दं जीवामि तावदयं न कर्तव्यम् (as long as I live, you ought not to fear), Panc. V, 64 तावत्स्यात्सुप्रसन्नारव्यस्तावदुत्तरे रतः। पुरुषो योषितां यावन्न शृणोति वचो रतः। In both instances यावत्..... तावत् = "during which time.... during that time." But not rarely its meaning is "during which time.... in the meanwhile." Panc. 290 यावद्दसौ [sc. शृगालः] तदेदकृतद्वारेण किञ्चिन्मांसं भक्षयति तावदतिसंकुटोऽपरः शृगालः समाययी, ibid. 42 यावद् देवदत्तमुददिश्य व्रतति तावन्नर्त्ता संमुखो मद्विह्वलाङ्गः समयेति (as she is going to her sweetheart, she comes across her husband<sup>2</sup>).

2. यावत् *at which time*. Panc. 277 यावत्तां पिताम् उत्पादयति तावन्नं पञ्च ददर्श (as he opened the basket, he saw the paralytic), Kathās. 4, 36 यावत्किञ्चिद्गता तावन्निहृडा सा पुरोधसा (as she went on a little, she was stopped by the priest).

3. यावत् *as soon as*. Panc. 313 यावद्दासमां दृष्ट्वावल्लुगुप्रहारैर्हतः (as soon as the ass was seen, he was beaten with sticks).

**476.** II. If the sentence introduced by यावत् is expressive of an action, subsequent in time to that expressed by the main sentence, two cases are possible:

1) Cp. the similar employment of यावत्, when preposition (54 R. 2 and cp. 169).

2) यावत्यावत्..... तावत्तावत् = "for every time... for this time" (cp. 252, 3<sup>o</sup>). Mudr. IV, p. 143 यावत्तावन्निरेपेक्षयापाक्यहतकश्चन्द्रगुप्ताद् दूरीभवति तावत्तावदस्य स्वार्थसिद्धिः.

यावत् a.) यावत् = *till what time, until*.

= until.

यावत् *until* is generally construed with the लिङ् or with its equivalent, the present (468). Then it expresses the *intention*, but when stating a *fact*, past tenses are admissible (cp. 471).

Examples: 1. with लिङ्. Daç. 156 सैवा भवदुत्ततहृच्छायामवपिउतत्ता-  
रित्रा तावदध्यास्तां यावदस्याः पाणिग्राहकमानयेयम् (therefore you must pro-  
tect her, until I bring her husband here), Mudr. V, p. 167 तावत्तां  
तावयावत्सर्वमनेन कथितं भवेत् (let him be beaten until he has con-  
fessed the whole); 2. with the present. Panc. 276 यावद्दं भोत्रं गृहीत्वा  
समागच्छामि तावदत्र त्वया स्यात्तव्यम् (you must stay here, until I return  
with food), *ibid.* 286 तावन्नृयेतो यत्नेन रत्नणीयो यावद्धमपरामुद्धो नोत्वं।  
समागच्छामि; 3. with the future. Daç. 72 प्रतोन्नस्व कानिचिद् दिनानि यावद्विं  
सुकुमारी.... प्रकृतावेव स्यास्यति; — 4. with past tense, stating a fact.  
Kathās. 4, 58 सो ऽपि पुरोहितः] तावच्चेष्टिकाभिर्विमोहितः। यावन्नृतोये प्रहरे  
दण्डाधिपतिराम् (the maid-servants beguiled the priest, until at the  
third *prahara* the judge came).

477. b.) it is simply stated that the action of the main  
यावत् sentence has happened *before* the other. This is done  
+ न =  
before, by the phrase तावत्.... यावत् with negation, the  
prior-  
quam. literal meaning of which is: one action happened, *as  
long as* the other did *not* happen. It is to be noticed,  
that न has no fixed place, but may precede यावत्  
or follow it, either close to or separated from it by  
other words. .

Examples: of यावत् = *before*, Lat. *priusquam*. Panc. 74 यावत्  
कश्चिद्वेत्ता तावच्छीघ्रं गम्यताम् (go away soon, before anybody knows of  
it), Mhbh. 1, 202, 11 यावत् कृतमूलास्ते पापउवेयाः.... तावत्परपाप्यास्ते (you  
must strike them, before they have taken root); — यावत्.... न.  
Nāgân. II, p. 37 न तावन्मुञ्चामि यावन्मम हृदयवत्तुभां शिलायामालेख्यतां न पश्यसि  
(I do not let go [your hand], before you see my sweetheart painted  
on the stone), Panc. 67 सत्वरं निवेद्य यावन्मम दंष्ट्रान्तर्गतो न भवान्निष्यति  
(tell it me quickly, before I make a bite of you), M. 2, 172 गृध्रेण हि  
समस्तावदावद्धेदे न जायते (before he is born in the Veda, he is equal  
to a *çûdra*); — 'न यावत्. Panc. 320 the chief monkey gives to his

band the counsel of fleeing away न यावत्सर्वेषां संक्षया भवति तावदेतद्वा-  
त्तमहं संत्यज्य वनं गच्छामः, *ibid.* II, 191 एकस्य दुःखस्य न यावदन्तं गच्छाम्यहं  
पारमिवार्षावस्य तावद् द्वितीयं समुपस्थितं मे.

Rem. Another word answering to Latin *priusquam* is *पुरा*. Indeed, like our "before," *पुरा* is sometimes a preposition, sometimes an adverb, sometimes a conjunction (cp. 324 R. 1.). In the classic dialect it is almost obsolete.

478. c). When construed with the 1<sup>st</sup> person of the present, *यावत्* may also denote the *purpose*. In this case, the main sentence which generally precedes, is only expressive of some preparatory action to be completed „about the time” at which the action purposed is intended to take place; *तावत्* is as a rule omitted. Çāk.

यावत्  
= [in  
order]  
that.

I गूत आश्रमोपरोधो ना भूत्तदित्येव त्वं स्याप्य यावद्व्यतरामि (charioteer, in order to avoid disturbing the hermitage, you must stop here, *that* I may descend), Kathās. 16, 38 परमाप्तं पचेः शीघ्रं स्नात्वा यावदुपैष्यहम् (cook an excellent meal for me, quickly, [that I may take it] when I come here after bathing), Vikram. V, p. 162 king to charioteer तदुपश्लेष्य त्वं यावन्निद्रपयामि.

Rem. In this passage *यावत्* is construed with the 3<sup>d</sup> person of the imperative, Mhbh. 3, 72, 4 निगृहीष्ट... ह्यानेतान्.... वाण्योयो यावदेनं मे पदमानयतामिद्.

479. Not rarely the purpose is set forth by *यावत्* in an almost elliptical way, no main sentence being expressed. In other terms, *यावत्* with the 1<sup>st</sup> pers. of the present is used in self-exhortations, such as are explained 356. Sometimes we may translate it by „in the meanwhile.” Mudr. II p. 59 यावदहममात्यराक्षसं पश्यामि (well, let me wait on Minister Rāxasa), Çāk. I यावदेताण्ड्यामिमामाश्रित्य प्रतिपालयामि, Vikram. IV, p. 114 यावदस्मिन्कानने प्रियां प्रनष्टामन्वेषयामि.

480. *यावत्* is not always time-denoting, it is also a conjunction of manner = *as far as*, *in so much as*, *as is*,

यावत् indeed, evident from its etymology. *Mālat.* III, p. 50 यावद्गृणन्  
 = in so far as मालत्येव.... हेतुरिति (in so far as I have heard, M. was the cause),  
*Kāthas.* 5, 136. In this meaning यथा is also available, see 470 R. 1.

Rem. 1. Note these phrases: 1. न तावत्.... वाचत् »not so much.... but rather.” *Kāthas.* 26, 23 न तावत्सा च कनकपुरी दृष्टा मया पुरीऽपदे नश्यता वाचद् दागेन्द्रोऽप्येव नाशितः (v. a. »instead of seeing that Gold-city, I myself am lost and I have made the chief of fishermen to perish also,” *liter.* I have not so much seen Gold-city, but I have rather —); — 2. न परम् or न केवलम्.... वाचत् »not only.... but also.” *Kāthas.* 28, 160 वृणस्तस्य दिने दिनेन परं न हरेद्वैव वाचनाडीत्व-माययो (not only the wound did not heal, but it became even a fistula), *Panc.* 36 न केवलं येवका इत्यंभूता वाचस्मगस्तगप्येतद्वामपस्पर् भक्षणार्थं नामादिगिरूपयस्तिष्ठति (it is not only the attendants, who are so natured, but the whole of the creatures of this earth stand to each other in some relation, friendly or otherwise, for obtaining food), *cp.* 470, R. 1.

Rem. 2. *Pat.* I, p. 9 सन्तीति तावद् दूमा वदेताञ्जनाञ्चिदः प्राप्तेषामनु-चिद्व्यते (we say: they exist, only *in so far as* they who know the theory [of grammar] employ them in their theories) affords an instance of तावत्.... वत् instead of तावत्.... वाचत्. For analogous phrases see 458 b).

480\*. In both acceptations, of time and of manner, one will meet occasionally with यावत् = वाचत्. Instances of वाचत् = »as far as” are found especially in *Patanjali*, of वाचत् = »whilst; as,” वाचत् न = »before” in the *Bhāgav. Pur.* and elsewhere.

### ४.) यदि.

481. यदि (if) is chiefly employed in the protasis of con-  
 दitional periods. This main function will be treated in  
 the following chapter. But, moreover, like our „if,”  
 Greek *ei*, Lat. *si*, यदि serves to introduce the relative  
 sentence which is the object of verbs of *doubting*, *in-*  
*quiring*, *observing*, *expecting*, *telling* and the like. पश्यामि  
 यदि = „I will see if (whether).”

Examples *Panc.* 200 अन्विष्यतां यद्यस्माद् व्यसनात्सुनिर्मुक्तिः (inquire, if

there is any' opportunity of being relieved from this misfortune), *ibid.* 121 कथय मे वयस्ति कश्चिदुपायस्तद्विनाशाय (tell me if —), *Mhbh.* 1, 154, 4 यदि वास्य वनस्य त्वं देवता यदि वाप्सराः आचक्ष्य मम (tell me whether you are the deity of this forest or an *apsaras*), *Çāk.* VI चिचार्यतां यदि काचिदापन्नसन्ना तस्य भावसि स्यात् (reflect if not one of his wives may be in the family-way), *Kumāras.* 5, 44 ब्रह्म प्रदीपे सुहृच्चन्द्रतारका विभावरी ययूपाय कल्पते (say, if the splendour of the evening-sky illumined by moon and stars, does befit *Aruna*). — Sometimes यदि and वत् are equally available, f. i. with चित्रम् (wonder), and with such phrases as *I cannot bear, I do not believe.* *Çāk.* III किमत्र चित्रं यदि चित्राग्रे शशाङ्गुल्लेखामनुवर्तते (what wonder is it, that the two stars of the asterism *Viçākhā* join the crescent?), *R.* 2, 51, 14 नाजते यदि जीवन्ति सर्वे ते (I do not think, they are alive), *ibid.* 2, 86, 15 we have the like sentence, but the verb is an optative (जीवेयुः). Cp. also *R.* 2, 73, 8 दुष्करं यदि जीवेताम्, and the like.

P. 3. 3.  
147  
with  
vartt.

Note also यदि with verbs of *swearing, cursing* and the like. *Panc.* 75 मम दंष्ट्रमुत्कृतः जपयः स्याद्यदि तदास्त्राद्यामि (I may be cursed by gods or parents, if I taste of it).

**482.** Sometimes the clause with यदि is used in a somewhat elliptical way, viz. without apodosis. *Çāk.* VII Dushyanta considers whether he shall ask the boy, whom he already suspects to be his son, about the name of his mother: यदि तावदस्य जिज्ञोमतिरु नामतः पृच्छेयम् (if I should ask now the name of his mother?). In a similar way, if hope is uttered. *R.* 2, 59, 3 आगता यदि मां रामः पुनः प्रव्दामयेदिति (hoping: 'perhaps *Rāma* will again address me'), *ibid.* 3, 54, 3 *Sitā* when being carried away by *Rāvana* casts off her upper-garment and her jewels among a little band of apes यदि रामाय ज्ञेयुरिति (perhaps they will show them to *Rāma*).<sup>1)</sup> Such sentences require the optative (लिट्) because of the nature of their contents.

A different character is displayed by such ellipsis, as is shown *R.* 3, 17, 21, where *Çurpanakhā* says to *Rāma* रावणो नाम मे भ्राता

1) Cp. the similar employment of Latin *si*, f. i. in the *Acneid*, book VI, vs. 187 *si nunc se nobis ille aureus arbore ramus ostendat nemore in tanto.*

यदि ते श्रोत्रमागतः (my brother is named Râvana, whom perhaps you will have heard of).<sup>1)</sup>

**483.** By adding अपि to यदि, we get यद्यपि, the concessive particle *though, although*. Its correlative in the apodosis is तथापि *nevertheless, however, yet*, either expressed, or omitted. Panc. 37 यद्यपि त्वद्वोयवचनं न करोति तथापि स्वामी स्वदोषनाशाय वाच्यः (even if he does not listen to your words, yet you must blame your master that he may amend his faults), Kathâs. 52, 375 वत्स यद्यपि प्रूरुखं सैन्यमस्ति च ते ब्रु। तथापि नैऋ विश्वास्या त्रयश्रीश्र-पला रूपे (my child, though you are valiant and have a great army, you must never trust to the victory in battle, since it is inconstant), Çâk. I वाचं न मिश्रयति यद्यपि मे वचोभिः। कर्णे ददात्यभिमुखं मयि भावमाणे (though she does not join in the conversation, yet she listens attentively, while I am speaking).

Rem. अपि यदि instead of यद्यपि is poetical, as f. i. Prabodh. I, p. 10 अपि यदि विश्रिताः शरासन वा कुसुममयं ससुरासुरं तथापि। मम जगद्विलम्ब (though my [Kâma's] bow and arrows are made of flowers, nevertheless the whole creation with gods and demons is mine).

## CHAPT. V. The conditional period.

**484.** The conditional period is a compound sentence, made up of a protasis and an apodosis. The protasis contains the condition, whereas the apodosis states what will happen under the said condition. The grammatical exponents of the protasis are यदि or चेत्. Of these, यदि since it is a relative, heads the sentence, at least in prose. But, as a rule, चेत् is not put at the head, it is often the last word of the sentence; yet, स, एष, न sim. being used, it is put close after them

In the apodosis no correlative is necessary. Yet it is

1) Cp. Lat. si, f. i. Aeneid; book II, vs. 81.

Corre-  
lative  
demon-  
strati-  
ves in  
the apo-  
dosis.

often expressed, viz. ततः or तदा or तत् or तर्हि, occasionally अथ.

Examples of यदि and चेत्: a.) without correlative in the apodosis. Dac. 105 यद्यहमस्मि तत्करो भद्रा अधीत माम् (if I am a thief, fetter me, gentlemen), Daç. 72 यदीह भावत्पादमूलं न शरणां शरणामस्तु मम कृपणाया हिरण्यरेताः (if Your Holiness does not afford me protection, the god of fire must be my refuge); — Kathâs. 25, 19 भगवान्वक्तुं वेत्ति चेत् (say it, Reverend, if you know it), Kumâras. 5, 40 न चेद्द्रुहस्यं प्रतिवक्तुमर्हसि (answer me, prithoo, if it is no secret)

b.) with correlative. Hit. 23 ययन्नं नास्ति तदा सुप्रोतेनापि वचसा तावद-  
तियिः पूर्यः (if food is wanting, one must entertain one's guest at  
least with kind speech), Daç. 90 साचेदियं प्रकृतिमाप्येत तदा पेप्रलं भवेत्  
(if she should be brought to reason, that would be charming); —  
Mhbh. 1, 43, 1 Taxaka says to Kâçyapa यदि दृष्टं मयेह त्वं प्राक्तः किञ्चि-  
कित्सितुं ततो वृत्तं मया दृष्टमिमं श्रोत्र्य काश्यप; — Panc. 334 अवश्यं यदि गन्तव्यं  
तदेव कर्कटोऽपि सहायः (if [you] are obliged to go, even this crab may be  
your companion), Kathâs. 24, 146 न चेत्कुप्यसि तत्किञ्चित्प्रभो विज्ञापया-  
म्यहम् (if you are not angry, I have something to entreat of you); —  
Panc. 16 यद्येवमभिमतं तर्हि शिवास्ते पन्थानः सन्तु; — Çâk. VII न चेन्मुनि-  
कुमारोऽयमय कोऽस्य व्यपदेशः (if he is not the son of a muni, what;  
then, is his name?).

Rem. 1. In most cases the protasis precedes. Sometimes, however,  
the main sentence is put first, f. i. Daç. 91 अन्निरत्तं मया तुभ्यं देयं यदि  
प्रतिदानं रागमञ्जरी (I am bound to deliver you the magic skin, pro-  
vided that Râgamanjarî be given in return to me), Kâd. I, p. 101  
शूयतां यदि कुतूहलम्.

Rem. 2. R. 3, 43, 19 यदि.... तु = "if.... at least." Sîtâ to  
Râma श्रोतुं यदि तेऽप्येति ग्रहणं मृगशत्रुः। अन्तिनं नरशार्दूलं रुचिरं तु भविष्यति।  
निहतस्यास्य सन्नम्य (even if the precious deer should not be taken alive,  
its skin at least will be a beautiful spoil). — यदि परम् = "if but."  
Ratn. III p. 81 the king throws himself at the feet of his queen:  
the reddish glow of your feet, says he, caused by painting, I will  
take off with my bent head, but the glow of anger on your cheeks  
I am able to drive away यदि परं कृपा मयि स्यात् "only in case,  
that you show mercy to me." Another instance is Kathâs. 34, 261.



Rem. 3. The combination यदि चेत् is sometimes found in epic poetry, f. i. R. 2, 48, 21, Mhbh. 1, 104. 37. In fact, चेत् has not been at the outset a conjunction, nor is it a relative, though in the classic dialect it may bear this character. It is properly a combination of च + इत् the emphatic particle (398 R. 2) <sup>1)</sup>. In the archaic dialect even the simple च does occasional duty as a conditional particle <sup>2)</sup>.

485. न चेत् is rather to be looked upon as a unity, like न चेत्. Latin *nisi*. Daç. 97 न चेदतिरुतं प्रतिप्रयच्छन्ति न चेद्वा गगर्गिकेभ्यश्चादितकानि प्रत्यर्पयसि दूक्ष्यसि पारमष्टादशानां कार्ष्णानामन्ते च मृत्युमुक्त्वम् (if you do not give back the magic skin, or if you do not restore to the townsmen the objects, you have stolen from them, you shall pass through the eighteen kinds of torture and finally you shall see the door of Death).

नो चेत्. Instead of न चेत् it is also said नो चेत्, that is न + the advers. उ + चेत्, but the adversative force of उ is not always conspicuous. R. 3, 40, 26 नो चेत्करोसि मारुच हन्ति त्वामहमय वै (if you do not do it, forsooth, I'll kill you to day).

Rem. 1. Note नो चेत् making up the whole protasis. So it is especially used in threatening like Lat. *si minus*, Germ. *widrigen-falls*, f. i. Panc. 76 एवं ज्ञात्वा त्वयैव वध्यः नो चेत्तुं व्यापादयिष्यति (you must kill him, otherwise he will kill you). For the rest, अन्यथा is equally good. Panc. 124 समर्पय मे सुतमन्यथा राजकुले निवेदयिष्यामि (surrender me my son, otherwise I will prefer charges with the king's court).

Rem. 2. The very opposite of नो चेत् is यथेवम्, which is likewise often used by itself. It expresses concession and assent "if that is so" v. a. "in that case." Daç. 101 यथेवमेहि... त्वामहं मोचयिष्यामि (in that case, come, I will set you free).

486. When proposing an alternative, it may be said यदि ....

1) Cp. नेत् (355 R. 1) = न + इत्.

2) P. 8, 1, 30 it is termed चण्. Kāç. comments: चण् णिद्विजिहोस्यं चेदर्थे वर्तते। अयं च मरिष्यति अयं चेन्मरिष्यतीत्यर्थः. See *Petr. Dict.* II, p. 905, s. v. च 8).

Alter-  
nati-  
ves.

यदि, like Latin *sive*. . . *sive*, or यदि + adversative particle. But commonly the relative is wanting in the second protasis, and instead of it the adversative is employed alone, especially अथ or its compounds (अथवा, अथ तु, अथापि). In other terms, अथ etc. are virtually the Sanskrit expression of *but if*, Lat. *sin*.

Examples of 1. यदि retained in the second protasis. Panc. 85 स्वामिन्यभयप्रदानं दत्त्वा व्रथः क्रियते तदेव दोषो भवति। पुनर्यदि देवपादानां भक्त्या त आत्मनो ज्ञोवितव्यं प्रष्टेच्छति तन्न दोषः (Lord, if you kill him, to whom you have granted security, it is a sin, but if from attachment to your Lordship he offers you his own life, it is not a sin), cp. Panc. 45, l. 13 यदि. . . अथवा यदि.

2. अथ etc. = »but if, and if." Pat. I, p. 8 यदि सन्ति नाप्रयुक्ता अथाप्रयुक्ता न सन्ति सन्ति चाप्रयुक्ताश्चेति त्रिप्रतिषिद्धम् (if they are, they [can] not [be said to be] not employed, and if they are not employed, they are not; [to say,] they are and at the same time one does not employ them, is a self-contradictory statement); — Çāk. V यदि यथा वदति क्षितिपस्तथा त्वमपि किं पितृकुलया त्वया। अथ तु त्रेप्सि शुचि व्रतमात्मनः पतिकुले तव दास्यमपि क्षमम् (if thou art what the king says, what will thy father care for thee, who hast disgraced thy family? But if thou knowest thyself chaste and pure, even slavery in thy husband's house is to be borne by thee); — Panc. 172 यदि ते धनेन प्रयोजनमभक्षितेन ततस्त्वामपि गुप्स्यन् करोमि। अथवा दत्तगोमेन धनेन ते प्रयोजनं तदुपभुक्त्वनं करोमि (if you want riches not to enjoy them, I will make you [like] Guptadhana, but if you want riches which give enjoyment, I will make you [like] Upabhuktadhana).

Rem. Sometimes in an alternative the former assumption is not expressed in the shape of a conditional period. Yet even then अथ = *but if*, Lat. *sin* is nevertheless available. R. 2, 60, 3 Kausalyâ, the mother of Râma, entreats his charioteer Sumantra to conduct her into the forest to Râma, Sitâ and Laxmana, अथ, she adds, तान्नानुगच्छामि गमिष्यामि यमक्षयम् (but, if I do not reach them, I will die). Çāk. VII Dushyanta being informed by the nurse: »nobody except his father, his mother or himself is allowed to take up

the magic herb of the boy Sarvadamana," asks अथ गृह्णाति (and if one should take it up —).

**487.** Occasionally the protasis of a conditional period is not introduced by any particle at all. This asyndetic construction is not very common, but it exists in Sanskrit, as it does in many other languages. Just as we say: *should he have done it = if he should* etc., or as the Latin poet HORACE (Epp. 1, 1, 33) *fervet avaritia miseroque cupidine pectus: sunt verba et voces, quibus hunc lenire dolorem possis*, so the Sanskrit poet, quoted Hit. 98, writes क्वलः करोति दुर्वृत्तं नूनं कलति साधुषु (should a rascal do evil, the consequences will certainly be felt by honest people<sup>1</sup>).

2. Another type of asyndetic connection is that exemplified M<sub>c</sub>ch. V, p. 184 मेघा वर्षन्तु गर्तन्तु मुञ्चन्वशनिमेव वा। गणयन्ति न शीतांशुं रमणान्मिवाः स्त्रियः (the clouds may pour out rain, thunder and lightning, women who are going to their sweethearts do not care for the weather). Here the protasis is expressive of the possible obstacles and still the chief action passes. The imperative in the protasis is, it seems, not necessary, cp. Panc. V, 25 शूरा सुत्रयः सुभागा वामो शस्त्राणि शस्त्राणि विदां करोति। अर्थं विना नैव यशश्च मानं प्राप्नोति मर्यादत्र मनुष्यलोके (suppose one to be gallant, well-shapen, happy in love, eloquent, a master at all kind of arms and in all branches of learning, yet, without money no man on earth will achieve glory or honor).

3. A third type of asyndetic construction is an imperative followed by a future, when exhorting to an action and foretelling its result, f. i. *do so and you will be happy = do so*, [for if you do so] you will be happy. So R. 1, 46, 5 Kāçyapa says to Diti शुचिर्विषं तपोधने। जनयिष्यसि पुत्रं त्वं शक्रहन्तारमाहवे.

**488.** As to the tenses and moods, employed in the conditional period, it is to be kept in mind that the conditional period does not import an absolute statement, but rather an assertion in such a manner, that its correct-

1) Compare Pat. I, p. 31 एकोऽन्धो दर्शनेऽसमर्थस्तत्समुदायश्च शतमप्यसमर्थम् >one blind man being unable to see, a collection of blind ones will likewise be unable."

Tenses and moods in conditional periods. ness is made to depend upon the correctness of some other statement presupposed. Now, we must distinguish according to the intention of the speaker, between three cases 1 the speaker neither affirms nor denies the reality of the fact supposed, 2 he presupposes something known to himself and to his audience to be a real fact, 3. he assumes something impossible or at least improbable, at all events something not real. Hence it follows, from a logical point of view there are three categories of conditional periods :

1 those, whose protases contain a condition, which the speaker leaves undecided whether it be correct or not;

2 such as warrant the correctness of the main assertion by the well-known correctness of the protasis;

3 those, whose protases import an evident untruth, in other terms, such as affirm what would happen if some fact occurred or had occurred, which however cannot or will not occur or have occurred.

In the first and second categories the fact *presupposed* is put in the same tense or mood, as would be required, if it were really *asserted*. In other terms: the employment of past, present and future tenses, of indicative, imperative and लिङ् is determined by the *general* character of their significance and idiosyncrasy, which has been treated in Chapt. III of the fourth Section. That the present often, sometimes also the optative (लिट्), are used instead of a future tense, can scarcely be said to be an exception, cp. 468 and 324, 1°

489 Conditional periods of the third category require the employment of the optative (लिट्); if they are, however,

expressive of a supposition, which cannot be realized because the proper time has already passed, the conditional is also available, cp. 347.

Examples: 1st category. Cāk. V यदि यथा वदति क्षितिपस्तथा त्वमसि किं पितुरुत्कुलया त्वया। अथ तु वेत्सि शुचि वृतमात्मनः पतिकुले तव दास्यमपि क्षमम्, here the present tense is expressive of present time: »if you really are....., but if you are knowing;” — Panc. 278 the minister's wife makes this condition to her husband यदि क्षिरो मुण्डयित्वा मम पादयोर्निपतसि तदा प्रसादाभिमुखो भवामि (if you fall at my feet with shaven head, I will be kind again), here the present tense signifies something to be fulfilled in the future. But ibid. 113 यदि त्वमस्य मन्त्रो भविष्यति तदान्योऽपि कश्चिन्नास्य समीपे साधुजनः समेष्यति (if you shall be his minister, then no other honest man will come near him) the future tense is used of future action. Likewise Nala 20, 15 कामं च ते करिष्यामि यन्मां वक्ष्यसि ब्राह्मणविदमन्यदि यात्वाय सूर्यं दर्शयितासि मे there is a future in both the conditional clause and the main sentence. Cp. 341\*

Rem. In conditional periods of this category the लिङ् is wanted, if for some accessory reason there be a tendency for employing it, f. i. in suppositions of a general bearing (343 e), as Varāh. Yog. 1, 4 स्याच्छिद्रमेकमपि चेन्न एव सर्वं नाशं प्रयाति (if but one [of the aforesaid conditions for the success of a prince] be deficient, the whole perishes).

2d category. Mhbh. 3, 297, 98 Sāvitrī prays यदि मेऽस्ति तपस्तपं यदि दत्तं हुतं यदि। श्रव्यश्रव्यगुरुभर्तृणां मम पुण्यास्तु शर्वरो (if I have done penance bestowed gifts and poured out libations — [and so I have] — this night may be propitious —), Mrcc. III, p. 121 यदि तावत्कृतान्तेन प्रणयोऽर्थेषु मे कृतः किमिदानीं नृशंसेन चारित्रमपि दूषितम् (if thou hast loved till now my fortune only, why, destructive Fate, hast thou now without mercy profaned my virtuous name?).

3d category. Mrcc. III, p. 113 होषं चापि न मर्षयेदभिमुखं स्यात्तुल्यमुपं यदि [sc. द्यम्] (nor would they bear the light being brought near to them, if they only feigned to sleep), R. 2, 67, 36 अहो तम एवेदं स्यात् प्रज्ञारोत किंचन। राज्ञा चेन् भवेत्लोके विभजन्साध्वसाधुनी (darkness as it were would be on earth, and nothing would be discernible, if no king were in the world, to discriminate between good and evil),

Kumâras. 6, 61 कर्तव्यां वो न पश्यामि स्याच्चेत्किं नोपपद्यते (I know nothing, I could do for you; if there should be, all is granted). Other instances of लिङ् see 343 d), instances of conditional 347.

490. Sometimes the protasis is implied in a participle (362, 5°). Panc. I, 32 निवसन्तदह्निषि लङ्गुयो वह्निर्न तु ज्वलितः (the fire may be passed when hidden in the wood, not, when blazing). — Likewise in an adjective which does duty as a participle. Mhbh. 1, 8, 221 त्वत्तोऽपत्यवतो लोके चरेयं धर्ममुत्तमम् (if I had a child by you, I should walk the highest path of duty). Or the protasis may be an absolute locative. Panc. II, 198 it is said of a friend that he is प्राप्ते भये परित्रापाम् »a shelter, if danger have appeared."

## CHAPT. VI. The direct construction ; इति.

491. A special kind of subordination is the so called in-  
Direct  
con-  
struc-  
tion.
 direct construction, representing words uttered or reflections made by another, not in the shape they originally did bear, but transformed according to the speaker's point of view. This mode of quoting speech or thought of another, although it is not wholly unknown in Sanskrit, is not idiomatic. As a rule the Sanskrit speaker avails himself of the **direct construction**, that is, he does not change the outward form of the words and ideas quoted, but he reproduces them unaltered, just as they came from the mouth or arose in the mind of their authors. Instead of saying, as we do, *you have said you would come*, one says rather in this way *I will come, so you have said* आगमिष्यामीत्यवादीद्वान्.

It is but one idiom, the *accusative with participle*, that can be set apart for the indirect construction, see 374. As to the subordinate sentences, introduced by यत्, यथा, येन or यतः = »that," यदि = »if" (481), in a great many cases there will be no formal diffe-

rence whatever between the direct and the indirect construction, owing among others to the faculty of expressing the predicate by a noun; where there may be such a difference, the direct construction is, as a rule, employed, cp. 494.

492. इति. The direct construction is characterized by the particle इति generally added to the words or the thought quoted: आगमिष्यामीत्यवादीः (you have said you would come), न मां कश्चित्पश्यतीति चिन्तयति (he thinks nobody sees him).

इति is properly a demonstrative adverb, meaning "thus, so, in this manner" <sup>1)</sup> and for this reason a synonym to इत्थम्, एतन्. Rgv. 10, 119, 1 इति वा इति मे मनो गामयन् सनुयामिति (so, indeed, so is my thought, that I may obtain kine and horses); Ratn. III, p. 70 the parting sun taking his leave from the white lotus is represented by the simile of a lover, who goes away from his beloved, to come back the next morning वानो ऽस्मि पञ्चदने समग्रो ममैव सुप्ता मयैव भवतो प्रतियोऽभूत्या। प्रत्यायनामयमितोव सरोरुहिण्याः सूर्याऽस्त्रमस्तकानिब्रिडकरः करोति (I go, lily-face, it is my time, [yet] it is I who will awake you out of sleep, in almost this way the sinking sun comforts the water-lily). But as इति is almost exclusively employed for quoting one's thought or the utterance thereof <sup>2)</sup>, it is often not to be rendered at all. Moreover we often use the indirect construction. Nala 3, 1 तेभ्यः प्रतिज्ञाय नलः करिष्य इति (Nala promised them, he would do so —). Sometimes इति abounds even in Sanskrit, the pleonasm इत्येवम् and the like being allowed, cp. 496 R.

493. In short, the direct construction with इति is not only necessary, when quoting one's words spoken or

1) Lat. *ita* is both formally and as to its meaning the same word as इति.

2) I recollect but one instance of इति = "so, thus," used as a pure demonstrative, viz. Panc. 327 वानरोऽपि तिष्ठति यथा भवानिति (the monkey stood, just as you do). Note also the employment of इति at the close of literary compositions, f. i. इति प्राकुन्तले प्रथमोऽङ्कः (here ends the first act of the Çākuntala), just as अथ is used in the beginning.

Em-  
ploy-  
ment  
of इति.

written, but it is also idiomatic to express by it the object of knowing, thinking, believing, reflecting, doubting, rejoicing, wondering and the like, to expound the fact which acts as a cause or motive, to signify the object of purpose and wish, etc.

Examples of the direct construction with इति: a.) when quoting words spoken or otherwise uttered. *Mālat.* I, p. 11 कथितमवलोकितया मदनौघानं गतो माश्रय इति (A. had told me, M. was gone to the grove of Kāma); *Daç.* 68 अङ्गेषु... कश्चिदस्ति तपःप्रभावोत्पन्नदिव्यचक्षुर्मूर्धोचिनमि महर्षिरिति कुतश्चित्संलपतो जनसमाज्ञादुपलभ्य (as I heard from some people conversing, there was in the country of Anga —); *Mudr.* I, p. 37 न चाध्येयमस्मै चापाक्यो लेखयतीति (he must not be informed that it is Cānakya who has it written by him); *Mṛech.* VIII, p. 242 धन्यस्त्वं पुण्यस्त्वमिति भवन्तं स्तोति.

b.) when expressive of the contents of one's thought. *Mhbh.* I, 74, 29 मन्यते पापकं कृत्वा न कश्चिद्वेत्त्रि मामिति (after doing some evil one thinks, nobody knows me as such), *Panc.* 8 स्वामिमृतोऽसौ संतोषकोऽस्माभिर्यु सार्यवाहस्यागीष्ट इति मत्वा वद्विना संस्कृतः (master, that [bull] Samjivaka has died; now, as we thought the merchant liked him, we have consumed his body by fire), *Hit.* 24 अन्नतरं च तेनैव जरद्वेगास्माकं श्रावकाः ब्राहिता इति सर्वैः पक्षिभिर्निश्चित्य मित्त्वान्ना गृध्रा व्यापादितः (after this, all the birds, understanding that it was Jaradgava himself who had devoured their young ones, killed the vulture by joint exertion), *Çāk.* V मूढः स्यामहमेवा वा वदेन्मिमेति मंत्रां (I am at a loss whether I am perhaps astray, or that she lies), *Panc.* J, 222 पुत्रेति ज्ञाता महतीह चिन्ता कस्यै प्रदेयेति महान्वितर्कः।दन्ना मुखं प्राप्यति वा न वेति, *Nāgārj.* V, p. 80 कदाचिन्नायं नाम इति [मं] ज्ञात्वा परित्यजन्नामश्रुः.

c.) when setting forth the motives of emotions (*rejoicing, wondering* and the like) and of judgments (*approbation, disapproval*), the contents of a *bargain*, a *convention* etc., in short, in all such cases as also admit of being expressed by a clause introduced by यत्. *Hit.* 11 न धर्मशास्त्रं पठतीति कार्ष्णम् (that he reads the law-books, is not the cause), *Panc.* V, 26 पुरुषः स एव ब्राह्मः क्षणेन भवतीति त्रिचित्रमेतत् (it is singular, that the very same man [having lost his wealth] should forthwith become a stranger), *Çāk.* I तत्रगवान्कपयः प्राश्रते ब्रह्मणि



वर्तत इयं च वः सखी तस्यात्मनेति कथमेतत् (how is it, that, Kāṇva observing a holy life for ever, your friend should be his daughter?), Ilit. 10 व्याघ्रो मानुषं खादतीति लोकापवादः (that the tiger eats the man is slanderous gossip), Daṣ. 116 तायां.... कृतः समयोऽभूदावयोः पुत्रवत्याः पुत्राय दुहितृमत्या दुहिता देयेति (the two [queens] made this bargain, that if one of them should become mother to a son, and the other to a daughter, they would make their children marry each other).

d.) when signifying a purpose or a wish. Here it is clear, the reflections quoted are put in the imperative, the future, the optative (लिट्). Nala 26, 6 पुनः प्रवर्ततां द्यूतमिति मे निश्चिन्ता मतिः (I am decided to take up the game again), Panc. 301 वयं तत्र वास्यामो यत्र धनाधिर्मुन्युर्वा भवित्यतीत्येष निश्चयः (we have made up our minds to go to a country where we have the chance of getting either money or death); — Pat. I, p. 76 कार्याणि न सिध्यन्ति। दृष्यन्ते च स्युरिति (what is to be done does not succeed, yet it is wished to be done).

e.) as to इति, when expressive of motive or cause, see 497.

494. As it appears from the instances quoted, the direct construction may precede the chief predicate as well as follow it. In the latter case, the relative conjunctions यत् or यथा, like our „that,” may introduce it, but its *direct character remains unchanged* by them. For this reason even when using यत् or यथा, इति may be retained<sup>1)</sup>. Panc. 159 सा सखी तत्सकाशं गत्वा शीघ्रमब्रवीत्। यदहं चन्द्रवत्या तवान्तिकं प्रेषिता भूषिता च त्वां प्रति तथा यन्मम त्वद्दर्शनात्मनोभवेन पश्चिमावस्था कृता (the friend went to him and hastily said to him: „Candrāvatī has sent me to you and tells you, Kāma has almost made her die with love by causing her to see you”), ibid. 102 तं वद् यदन्यो भूयो वाहनायास्मत्स्याने क्रियताम् (tell him, he must appoint some other of his servants, instead of me, to be his carrier); — Mudr. VII, p. 229 विदितमेव यथा वयं मलयकेतो किञ्चित्कालान्तरमुचिताः (it is certainly known [to you] that I stayed for some time with Malaya-

1) Compare the similar employment of Greek *ὅτι* with the direct construction.

ketu), *Mṛcch.* II, p. 82 कथितं च मम प्रियवयस्येन प्रार्थितलेन यथा किलार्थ-  
कनामा गोपालदारकः सिंहादेशेन समादिष्टो राज्ञा भविष्यतीति.

Rem. 1. Occasionally also येन or यतः are used for this purpose.  
Panc. 266 गत्वा तत्सकाशम्.... अन्विष्य मम संदेशं कथय येनागम्यतामेकाकिनापि  
भवता दूततर्म्.

Rem. 2. In a similar way इति may be added to relative or  
interrogative sentences, depending on some word of *saying* or *know-  
ing* (411). Çāk. I ज्ञास्यसि कियदुज्जो मे रक्षति मोर्ध्वकिपाङ्कु इति (you will  
know how mighty my arm is to protect etc.), *Nāgār.* V, p. 73  
तद्वृत्तिं विज्ञायामाच्छ किमसौ स्वगृहमागतो न वेति.

495. As a rule, in prose इति is put immediately after the  
direct construction. But sometimes an other arrange-  
ment is preferred, especially in poets and for me-  
trical reasons. So in epic poetry such phrases as इत्युवाच, इत्युक्तः  
sometimes precede the words quoted, sometimes they follow after  
them. F. i. R. 1, 47, 8 the line उवाच प्राञ्जलिवक्त्रमिति दं बलसूदनः precedes  
the very words quoted, Daç. 191 the sentence दिशि दिशीत्यकीर्त्ये ज्ञेनेन »in  
all regions this was told of me" precedes, the contents of the rumour  
follow. Cp. Kumâras. 4, 27 इति चैनम् [sc. वसन्तम्] उवाच दुःखिता। सुहृदः  
पश्य वसन्त किं स्थितम्, etc. — On the other hand, R. 1, 27, 26 it  
has been said first what was spoken to Râma, then follows who  
said so. Nor is it rare to put इति in the midst of the words  
quoted. Panc. III, 160 मा चास्मै त्वं कृया द्वेषं ब्रह्मणेनेति मत्प्रिया = अनेन  
मत्प्रिया ब्रह्मेति »be not moved with anger towards him [while think-  
ing]: it is he, who caught my sweetheart." R. 1, 55, 11 स पुत्रमेकं  
राज्याय पालयेति नियुज्य च। पृथिवीं क्षत्रधर्मेण जनमेवाभ्यपद्यत, here the direct  
construction is पालय पृथिवीं क्षत्रधर्मेण.

496. इति, though it is the commonest contrivance for  
expressing the direct construction, is by no means in-  
dispensable. Other demonstratives, as एवम्, इत्थम्,  
the pronouns एष, अयम्, ईदृश may likewise serve that  
purpose. Nothing, too, forbids quoting without using  
any demonstrative at all.

Syno-  
nyms  
of इति,  
etc.

Examples: a.) of the direct constr. set forth by a demonstrative other but इति. Panc. 18 स्वाम्येवं वदति चिराद् दृश्यते (my master speaks thus: 'it is long ago since I saw you'), ibid. I, 302 अहं हि संमतो राज्ञो य एवं मन्यते कुयोः। अलीवर्दः स विज्ञेयो विषापापरिवर्जितः. R. 2, 61, 1 कोसल्या हृदती चार्ता भर्तृमिदमब्रवीत्, vs. 2-26 contain the very words of the queen, vs. 27 इमां गिरं दाहृषाशब्दसंहितां निश्रव्य..... ततः स शोकप्रविवेण पार्थिवः, here इदम् and इमाम् point to the words spoken, not इति.

Rem. The pleonasm इत्येवम्, इत्येव etc. is frequent. See Mhbh. 1, 119, 38, Kathās. 35, 50, M. 2, 15, etc. etc.

b.) neither इति nor any other demonstrative is used. So very often in dialogues स आह..... सोऽप्याह and the like. Nala 8, 7 तास्तु सत्राः प्रकृतयो द्वितीयं समुपस्थिताः। न्यवेदयामीमसुता न स तत्प्रत्यनन्दत (Damayanti informed Nala, that his officers had come to him a second time, but he did not care for it), Panc. I, 150 यो मोहान्मन्यते मूढा रक्षेयं मम कामिनी। स तस्या वशगो नित्यं भवेत्, R. 3, 7, 15 भवान्सर्वत्र कुशलः सर्वभूतहिते रतः। आख्यातं श्रुमहेन (that you are etc., has been told by Çarabhanga). As to such constructions as कामो मे (or इच्छामि) भुञ्जीत — or भुञ्जतां — भवान् (I wish you to eat), न संभावयामि तन्नभवान्नाम वृत्तं यावयेत् (I do not believe, indeed, I do not, he will sacrifice for a çûdra) etc. see Kâç. on P. 3, 3, 145, 153 and 157.

497. It is of frequent occurrence that the verb of *speaking*, *knowing*, *thinking*, *deliberating* etc. is not expressed, but इति alone is the exponent of the direct construction.

In this case, इति is of great importance for the sense, and its translation is various, according to the relation which exists between the main action and the contents of the direct construction inserted. For instance, if it happens that some motive is denoted by it, then इति may be translated by *because*, *since* or by *therefore*, *for this reason*. Another time the direct construction may be expressive of something to be done, then इति requires being rendered by *in order that*, *sim*. Sometimes again this some-

Ellip-  
tical  
con-  
struc-  
tion.

what elliptical idiom serves only to enhance the vividness of the style.

In full, one says also इति कृत्वा (lit. „thus doing“) = „thus thinking, considering, reflecting.”

Examples: R. 1, 55, 11 स पुत्रमेकं राक्षस्य पालयेति नियुज्य चापृथिवीं क्षत्रधर्मेण वनमेवाभ्यस्यत, here इति नियुज्य = „with these words he appointed him”. — Mṛcch. I, p. 38 Cārudatta apostrophizes Poverty दारिद्र्यं शोचामि भवन्तमेव-मस्मच्छरीरे सुहृदित्युपित्वा (in this way I mourn, Poverty, for thee, who hast dwelled with me, as a friend”, lit. considering me your friend). — Mudr. III, p. 126 चापाव्यतः खलितभक्तिमहं सुखेन ज्ञेयमिति मौर्यमिति संप्रति यः प्रयुक्तः। भेदः किलैष भवता (the disension you have plotted, thinking you would easily vanquish Candragupta, if his faith in Cānakya should be shaken). Mhbh. 1, 153, 42 पुनर्भीमो बलादेन वित्तकर्षं महाबलः। मा शब्दः सुखसुप्पानां भ्रातॄणां मे भवेदिति (again, the strong Bhima shook him [but in such a way], that no noise might awake his brothers who slept quietly), R. 3, 10, 3 क्षत्रियैर्धर्यति चापो नार्तशब्दो भवेदिति (the warriors carry their bows in order to rescue the distressed), R. 2, 52, 28 न चारुमणो-चामि लक्ष्मणो न च शोचति। अयोध्यायाश्च्युताश्चेति वने व्रस्वामहेति वा (neither I nor Laxmaṇa mourns for our having been expelled from Ayo-dhyā or for having to dwell in the forest), Mṛcch. I, p. 19 गृहमस्मदेयं क्षीणार्थमित्ययितयः श्रित्वर्जयन्ति (guests shun my dwelling, because wealth has vanished from it), Pat. I, p. 99 न हि भिक्षुकाः सन्तोति स्यान्वो नाधिश्चो-यन्ते न च मृगाः सन्तोति यत्र नोष्यन्ते (we do not abstain from cooking, considering there are beggars, nor do we abstain from sowing, considering there are antelopes), Utt. I, p. 2 व्रंदयिष्योऽस्मीति पृच्छामि (as I am a stranger to this country, I question [you]), Mālav. I, p. 3 पुराणमित्येव न साधु सर्वं न चापि काव्यं नवमित्यत्रयम् (not every old poem is to be approved only for its age, nor is new poetry to be blamed only because it is new); — Çāk. II दुर्भागुरेण चरणाः क्षत इत्यकापटे तन्वी स्थिता कतिचिदेव पदानि गत्वा (when she had gone some steps, she stopped on a sudden feigning her foot was hurt by a blade of grass), Kathās. 62, 49 नीडो मे तव नेलेवं विवाद उद्भूतु द्वयोः (a quarrel arose between them on account of the nest, lit. „[both of them saying] the nest is mine, not yours”), and compare the altercation, which is found

in the opening stanza of the *Mudrārāksa*, and is intended to display the cunning of Īiva:

धन्या केयं स्थिता ते शिरसि शशिकला किं नु नामैतदस्याः  
नामैवास्यास्तदेतत्परिचितमपि ते विस्मृतं कस्य हेतोः  
नारो पृच्छामि नेन्दुं कथयतु विजया न प्रमाणां यदीन्दु  
देव्या निहोतुमिच्छोरिति सुरसरितं शाठ्यमव्याद्विभोर्वः

the last pāda signifies: »may the craft of the Lord protect you, [who] desirous of concealing Gangā from Devī, his wife. [acted] thus," how he acted is set forth in pāda 1—3, containing the questions of Umā and the answers of Īiva.

Rem. 1. Among the most common applications of this freer construction, नोति to express consent, lit. »[saying] yes," किमिति »why?" lit. »[asking] what?" — Comments and glosses are marked by इति (इति नावत्, इति भावः etc.), quotations by इति with the name of the author or his work. Objections, which may be made, are represented by इति चेत् — in full इति चेद्वेत् —, f. i. Sāy. on Ait. Br. 1, 20, 3 नाभिग्रन्द्वाच्यत्वं कथमिति चेत् तदुच्यते (now, as one might ask why it [the navel] is denoted by the word *nābhi*, etc.) And so on.

Rem. 2. इति is also used when imitating sounds, as पठिति करोति. cp. P. 6, 1, 98. Nala 2, 4 न नक्तं न दिवा शेते हा हेति रुदती. पुनः.

Rem. 3. Pānini teaches: The 2<sup>d</sup> person *sing.* of the imperative put twice with इति may be added to the narrative tense of the same verb, in order to denote the action being done with intensity or repeatedly लुनीहि लुनीहीत्ययं लुनाति। लुनीहि लुनीहीतोमे लुनन्ति. Likewise this singular number of the imper. repeated may express the performing of several actions at the same time. Kāç. exemplifies it by this instance भ्राद्र्ग्नरं महमट खट्वाण्यपिधानमटेत्येव त्वमटस्मि तुवानमटः। गृहमटय, to represent the hurry and bustle of people occupied in the kitchen. Instead of the same verb put twice, also synonyms may be used. Çiçup. 1, 51 पुरोमवस्कन्द लुनीहि नन्दनं मुषाणा रत्नानि हारामराङ्गनाः। विमूक्य चक्रे नमुचद्विषा बली य इत्यमस्वास्थ्यमर्हद्विषं दिवः.

For the rest, it is not the repetition of imperatives alone, that serves to bring forward the idea of tumultuary action. In such cases as Panc. 62 अग ते तत्र विप्रवासमापन्नास्तात मातुल भातरिति ध्रुवाणा अहंपूर्वमहंपूर्वनिति. समन्तात्परितस्युः, the repeated words अहं पूर्वम् serve the same purpose. And so, often.

**498.** Since इति quotes or pretends to quote speech or thought, the direct construction, which is distinguished by it from the main framework of the context, is a sentence or a complex of sentences, not a mere complex of words. Yet, these sentences are not always given in full, they are sometimes elliptical and may even consist of one single word. When a noun, this is of course a **nominative**. So f. i. Nala 16, 8 तां..... तर्क्या-  
मास भैमोति (her she guessed to be the daughter of Bhîma, lit. she guessed, [thinking: „she is] the daughter of Bhîma"). There is a predilection for using such a nominative with इति, in order to express the predicate of the object of verbs of *calling, styling, considering, holding for* and the like (32, c). Nala 2, 20 विदर्शितातो दृष्टिता दमयन्तोति विद्युता, Panc. 1 तस्य त्रयः पुत्राः परमदुर्मेधयो बहुशक्तिहृशकिरन्तशक्तिश्रेतिनामानो बभूवुः, Mhbh. 1, 155, ७ अहंसि कृपां कर्तुं नयि..... मत्वा मूढेति (show mercy to me, think I am out of my wits), Prabodh. VI, p. 115 निग्रह इति वक्तव्ये कथमनुग्रहः पृच्छ्यते (it is of punishment you ought to have spoken and you ask about her reward), Kumâras. 5, 28 वदन्त्यपरोति च तान् (they call her Aparîâ), Panc. 103 कथं ज्ञेयो मयासौ दुष्टवृद्धिरिति (how can I know him to be evil-minded?), Mhbh. 1, 34, 3 सञ्चेति कृत्वा न मत्वे पृष्टो वक्ष्याम्यहं त्वया (— but considering you as my friend, I will tell it you in reply to your question), cp. ibid. 1, 77, 17.

**499.** Similarly nominatives with इति may specify general terms (cp. 493, c). Pat. I, p. 411 the essential qualities of a brahman are thus enumerated तया गौरः शुच्याचारः पिङ्गलः कापलकेश इत्येतानप्यभन्तरान्नाह्नपये गुणान्कुर्वन्ति.

Now, as according to 496 इति may be wanting here, we get also a kind of **anacoluthon**, nominatives agreeing with oblique cases. Kâm. 2, 19 वसतनाध्यापने शुडे विशुद्धाश्च प्रतिग्रहः। वृत्तित्रयमिदं प्रादुर्भूतयो ज्येष्ठवर्णिनः here the nom. वसतनाध्यापने and प्रतिग्रहः are the specification of the accus. वृत्तित्रयम्. Panc. III, 220 क्लृप्तं

च शीले च सनातना च त्रिया च वित्रं च वपुर्वयश्च। एतान्गणान्सपु विचिन्त्य देया कन्या  
 वृधैः, M. 5, 133 मल्लिका त्रिपुण्ड्रकाया गोरक्षः सूर्यरश्मयः। एते भूत्रयिर्गुणिश्च स्पर्शे मेधयानि  
 निर्दिशेत्. A similar character is displayed by the nominatives which  
 periphrase a partitive case. One instance has been given in the  
 chapter on the genitive (117, 1°), here is another: Mhbh. 13, 22, 14  
 अश्वमेधसहस्रं च सत्यं च तुलया धृतमनाभिज्ञानामि ययस्य सत्यस्यार्धमवाप्नुयात् न  
 »these two put in a balance, a hundred aśvamedhas and Truth,  
 I am not sure whether the sacrifices would reach half the weight  
 of Truth.”

500

मन्ये,  
 ज्ञाने  
 etc. in-  
 serted.

Some verbal forms as मन्ये (I think), ज्ञाने (I know,  
 I think), शङ्के (I guess), आशंसे (I trust), पश्य (look)  
 often have no influence at all on the sentence even  
 when put in the midst. Likewise such phrases as  
 न संशयः, नात्र संशयः v. a. „undoubtedly, no doubt.”

Kathās. 25, 166 सुप्ता ज्ञाने स्त्रिया स्ये कयाप्युक्तामि दिव्या (a heavenly  
 woman, methinks, spoke to me, when asleep), Nāgân. II, p. 35 कुसुममपि  
 विचेतुं यो न मन्ये समर्थः कलयति स कथं ते पाशमुद्धनधनाय (this [hand] of  
 yours, which hardly I think would gather even a flower, how can it  
 serve to put a halter round your neck?), R. 2, 84, 18 आशंसे स्वाश्रिता सेना  
 व्रत्यत्येनां विभावरीम् (I trust the army being well supplied with food,  
 will stay [with me] for the night), Çāk. VI शङ्के संहरति स्मरोऽपि चकित-  
 स्तूणार्धकृष्टं शम् (even Kāma, I believe, draws back his arrow), Kathās.  
 26, 13 ब्रह्मन्विनाशकालोऽयं ध्रुवमस्माकमागतः। यदकस्मात्प्रवह्णं पश्चात्रैव प्रयात्यधः,  
 Panc. 48 the wife of the barber cries पापेनानेन मम सदाचा  
 पश्यत नासिकाङ्घ्रौ विहितः.

Rem. मन्ये, ज्ञाने and the like not seldom express irony, in which case  
 may be applied what is taught by Pānini (1, 4, 106 and 8, 1, 46)  
 about एहि मन्ये with the 2<sup>d</sup> person of the future एहि मन्य ओदनं भोक्ष्यसे  
 »now, indeed, you will eat rice,” if the meaning of the speaker is:  
 »you think you will, but it cannot be, there is no rice to be eaten. 1)”

1) The explication of Pānini, मन्ये is used *instead of* मन्यसे, cannot be  
 accepted. The idea »you think falsely” is not purported by मन्ये, but it  
 is implied by the ironical form of utterance. In sentences of the kind मन्ये  
 has almost got the character of a particle.

## INDEX OF SANSKRIT WORDS.

The numbers refer to the paragraphs.

- अ° negation 403, 404; — 211, अधि 156.  
 223, 225 \* R. अधिक 105.  
 अंग 301. अधिकृत्य 201.  
 °अक 359; — 52. अधिपति with loc. or gen. 111 R.  
 अग्रतः 176, 177. अधिष्ठेते, अध्यास्ते, अधितिष्ठति 43.  
 अग्रे 150; — 176, 178 N. अधिष्ठाय 202.  
 अङ्ग 418. अध्यापयति with two acc. 46.  
 अटति the verb — trans. 42. अन्° see अ°.  
 अतः »then" 459, »therefore" 444. अन्व with gen. 129.  
 अति 155, 225\*, 315 N. अनन्तरम् 174.  
 अतिरिच्यते 105. अनादृत्य 202 R.  
 अतीत्य 202. अनु 164.  
 अत्रभवान् 260. अनुकरोति with gen. 120 c.)  
 अथ 425, 426; 457, 459; — = अनुकूल with gen. 129.  
 »now," fr. or 457 R. 1; — ad- अनुक्रोश with loc. 148.  
 versative 441, espec. b); — in अनुपयुक्त 106 R. 4.  
 the apodosis of a condit. sen- अनुवृत्त with gen. 82, 129.  
 tence 484; — in the protasis अनुवदते 120 c.) R. 1.  
 of the 2<sup>d</sup> member of an alter- अनुव्रत 45 R.  
 native 486; — अथपि, अथ च अनुशास्ति with two acc. 46.  
 etc. 426. अनुसारेण 196.  
 अथवा 426, 440; — in interroga- अनुहति 120 c.) R. 1.  
 tions 414, 1°; — in the pro- अनृण with gen. 129.  
 tasis of the 2<sup>d</sup> member of an अन्तः 165.  
 alternative 486. अन्तर at the end of compounds  
 अधः and अधस्तात् 165. 190; — 229, 9°.



- अन्तरा and अन्तरेषा 166; 183.  
 अन्तिक serves to periphrase noun-cases 188, 189; — अन्तिकम् °के °कात् how construed 98 R. 2.  
 अन्य 283, 285; — with ablat. 105; 217, 1°; — in disjunctive sentences 440.  
 अन्यच्च »moreover" 421, 437, 439.  
 अन्यत् when used adverb. 106 R. 3.  
 अन्यत्र 183.  
 अन्यथा 288 R. 6.; 485 R. 1.  
 अन्योन्य 269.  
 अन्वित 58.  
 अप 157.  
 अपकरोति with gen. and loc. 131.  
 अपगत 198 R.  
 अपर् 285, 285; — with abl. 105; — in comparisons 450 R. 3; — in disjunctive sentences 440.  
 अपरम् »moreover" 421, 437, 439.  
 अपराध् (verb) with gen. and loc. 131.  
 °अपसद् 220 R. 2.  
 अपहरति with abl. and gen. 126 a.)  
 अपि 425 R.; — part. of copulation 425, 437; — part. of interrogation 412, 413; — adversative 441, espec. b.); 442, 3°; — with optative 343 b.) and 343 c.) 5°; — with cardinals 298; — अपि... अपि etc. 438; अपि तु 442, 2°; — अपि नाम 412 R.; 343 b.)  
 अपि 158.  
 अपिप्त and अनपिप्त with gen. and loc. 124, 1°; 142.  
 अपिप्तः 186.  
 अभिमुख 199.,  
 अभिलाष with loc. 148.  
 अभ्यर्षा 188.  
 अभ्यम् 270—274; 279, 1 and 2.  
 अभि 419 with N.  
 अभ्युत 294.  
 अभ्ये 419.  
 अर्थ at the end of compounds 194;  
 — कोऽर्थः with instr. see क.  
 अर्थम् 84, 87, 193.  
 अर्थयि 193.  
 अर्थिन्-75 R. 1; 216 III d.)  
 अर्थे 84, 193.  
 अर्थ »the side" 188.  
 अर्थ »part" and अर्थ »half" 213 c.) with R. 1; 301.  
 अर्पयति see दा.  
 अर्वाक् 175 R. 2.  
 अर्ह with acc. 52 R. 2; — with gen. 129.  
 अर्हति (verb) when periphrasing the imperative 350.  
 अलम् with instrum. 76, 353; — with gerund and infin. 355 R. 1, 379, 384 R. 1; — with dative 85.  
 अत्र 225\*.  
 अत्रत्ता with loc. 148.  
 अत्रधि 229, 7°.  
 अवलम्बते with acc. 159, c.)  
 अवलम्ब्य 202.  
 अवष्टभ्य 202 R.  
 अवः and अवस्तात् 163 R. 2.  
 असांप्रतम् 589 R. 2.  
 असूयति (verb) with dat. and acc. 83, 4°.

अस्ते 270, 271; 279, 1° and 5°.  
 अस्ति verb substantive 5; 10—12;  
 311; — perf. आस periphr. 355;  
 — अस्ति when a particle 311, 2°;  
 — अस्तु 311 N.; — with instr.  
 76.  
 अह 397 R. 2 N. and R. 5.  
 अहर् 416.  
 अहो 416, 417.  
 आ 168.  
 आकाञ्चते with acc. and gen. 120 d.)  
 आसीदति 74, 5 R.  
 Âtmanepada 314; 317, 318.  
 आत्मा, the reflexive 265, 264, 267;  
 — आत्मतृतीय etc. 300.  
 आदर with locat. 148.  
 आदाय 58, 202.  
 °आदि 228; 229, 1°.  
 आदिप्रति construction of — 47;  
 152, 3°; — 90; 146 b.)  
 आदौ 150; — आदौ तावत् 459.  
 °आय see °आदि.  
 आयत्र with gen. 124, 2°.  
 आयुक् with gen. and loc. 124 N.  
 आरभते with inf. 584.  
 आरभ्य 170.  
 आरोहति with loc. and acc. 134  
 and 154°.  
 आशङ्गते with dat. and acc. 89; —  
 with loc. 139 c.); — with यदि  
 or यत् 481; — आशङ्गे »I trust,  
 I guess" 300.  
 आश्रयन् 416.  
 आश्रित्य 201.  
 आः 416.

आस्ते (verb) expresses continuous  
 action 378, 381.  
 आस्थाय 202.  
 आह with two acc. 46; — perf. doing  
 duty as a present 331, 332.  
 आहो 414, 1°; 415.  
 इ (the verb), इति with acc. 59, 236;  
 — a means for periphrase 578  
 R. 5.  
 °इ. Aorist in — 315, 316.  
 इच्छति (verb) with acc., dat., loc.  
 89, 146; with infin. 584; 590  
 N. 5.  
 इतर 285, 4°; — with abl. 105;  
 — at the end of compounds  
 217, 2°.  
 इतरेतर 269.  
 इति 14, IV; — 292—299.  
 °इत् (krt) 52, 559; — (tddh.) 227.  
 इव, part. of comparison 450, 565;  
 — = »almost" 451; — in in-  
 terrogations 409, 5°; 412 R.  
 °इष्णु 52.  
 ईप्सु (the verb) with gen. and loc.  
 118; — with infin. 584.  
 ईप्सु with gen. and loc. 111 R.; —  
 with infin. 584; — with infin.  
 in °तोः 592.  
 उ adversative 429, 441 R. 2; —  
 expletive 397; — in interroga-  
 tions 409, 5°; 412 R.; 414, 1°.  
 °उ (krt) 52, 559.  
 °उक् (krt) 52 R. 1.

उचित with gen. 82; 124, 1°;  
129.

उत्° in compounds 225 \*.

उत copulative 424; — expletive  
397 with R. 2; — in interro-  
gations 412; 414, 1°; 415; —  
उत... उत 438 R. 1; — उत with  
opt. 343, c.) 5°.

उताहो 414, 1°; 415.

उत्कण्ठते with acc. and gen.  
120 d.)

उत्तर and its derivatives 98 R. 1;  
125.

उत्पद्यते see ज्ञायते.

उत्सुक 142 R. 2.

उद्दिश्य 200.

उद्देशे 192; — उद्देशेन etc. 200.

उद्दिष्टे with abl. and gen. 97, 3°;  
126 c.).

उन्मुख 43 R.; 199.

उप 159.

उपकण्ठ 188.

उपकरोति how construed 151.

उपजीवति 43.

उपरमति with abl. 96.

उपरि 171.

उपरिष्ठात् 172.

उपस्कृते with gen. 120 R. 2.

उपेत्य 201.

उभयतः 186.

उर्ध्वम् 174.

ऋते 183.

एक none" and 281, 285; —

in disjunctive sentences 285,  
440; — एकं तावत् 439.

एकतर and एकतम 284.

एकान्ते 150.

एतत् when adv. 279, 4°.

एनम्, एनान् etc. 261, 274.

एव 398; — subjoined to स 277;  
with च, तथा, अपि 427.

एष 270—272; 279, 1°.

एहि used almost as a particle 418.

क interrog. pronoun 280, 281, 408;

— when indefn. 281; — part

of compound 408 R.; — कोऽयम्

409, 4°; — कोऽर्थः and किं प्रयो-

जनम् 75. For the rest see किम्.

कञ्चित् 412, 415 R.

कतर and कतम 280 with R. 1.

कति 291; 292, 3°.

कतिपय 292, 3°.

कयञ्चन and कयञ्चित् 288, 4° with R.  
3 and 5.

कथम् 410.

कथयति how construed 47; 81, c;  
152, 2°.

कथा. का — 2 R.

करोति (verb) general verb for peri-  
phrasing 310, 312; — facti-  
tives made with it 308, 309; —  
with gen. 151, with loc. 154  
R.; 145.

चकार in periphrastic perfects  
333.

कारयति 49 N.

Karmadhāraya. 211.

कलह 59 R. 2; 216 III c.).

- कल्प 229, 5°  
 कल्पति (verb) with dat. 83; 88; 239 R.  
 कश्चन and कश्चित् with their derivatives 281; — in disjunctions 283, 440; — वः कश्चित् etc. 287; — न कश्चित् »no, none" etc. 282, 288 R. 5.  
 कष्टम् 416.  
 °काम. Infinitive compound with -- 385.  
 कामम् 399; 442, 1°.  
 कार्पा 193, 194; — येन कार्पेन etc. 467 R.  
 किम्. — किं तेन etc. 73, किं त्वानेन etc. 150; — किम् with gerund 379, with inf. 384 R. 1; — अयं किम् 396; — किं 408 R.; — किमिति »why" 408.  
 किम् particle of interrogation 412—413.  
 किम्, किं तु, किं पुनः »how much more (less)" 442, 4°.  
 किं च »and" 457  
 किं तु »but" 441; 442, 2°.  
 कियन्त् 291; 292, 3°.  
 किल 393, 396; 442, 1°.  
 °कीट 220 R. 2.  
 कुतः 408; 410; — = »how much more (less)" 442, 4°; — कुतश्चित् 288, 2° with R. 5.  
 कुप्यति (verb) how construed 83, 4° with R.; 152, 8°.  
 कुशल with gen. and loc. 124 N.; 142.  
 कृच्छ्रेण etc. 77, 104.  
 कृतम् with instr. 76, 355.  
 कृते when a prepos. 193, 84.  
 Kṛtyas 357; how construed 66 R.  
 कृपा with loc. 148.  
 केवलम् 399; 442, 1°; — न.... केवलम् 442 R.; — न केवलम्..... अपि तु etc. 442, 5°; — न केवलम्..... वावत् 480 R. 1.  
 कोऽपि etc. see कश्चित्.  
 कोटि 294.  
 कोविद् 124, 1°.  
 क्रीडति 74, 5° R. 2.  
 क्रुध्यति (verb) how construed 83, 4° with R.; 152, 8°.  
 कृ 408; — कृ च.... कृ च 410 R.  
 कृचित् 288, 1° with R. 5.  
 क्षपात्, क्षपेन 99.  
 क्षमते (verb) how construed 82; 127, 5°; 151.  
 क्षिपति (verb) transit. 43; — with dat. and loc. 79, 154 and 154\*.  
 खलु 393, 396; 442, 1°; — with gerund 379 N.,  
 व्या see वच्.  
 गच्छति (verb) with acc. 39, 256; its passive 41; — with dat. 79, 80; — with locat. 154.  
 गत = being, (he) is 3; = in, on etc. 197.  
 °गृपा 502.  
 गृह्णाति and compounds with loc. »to seize by" 139 d.)

गृहीत्वा 202.

च 422, 457; — with adversative force 441, esp. b.); 442, 5°.

च... च etc. 458, with R. 2.

चरति (verb) with acc. 470. — expressive of continuous action 578 R. 3.

चित्रम् with यत् or यदि 481.

चिनोति 46 R., cp. Introd. p. VI.

चिरम् 292, 2°; — चिरात्, चिरेण 99; चिरस्य 128.

चेत् 484, 485; 488, 489; — न चेत् 485; — नो चेत् 485; — इति चेत् 497 R. 1.

ज्ञानेन 175 R.

ज्ञान 19 R.; — °ज्ञान 215 b.).

ज्ञायति (verb) with two acc. 46.

°ज्ञातम् 229, 4°.

ज्ञातु 599 R.; — 545 c.) 5°; — न ज्ञातु चित् 402.

ज्ञानाति (verb); its medial voice with gen. 121 R.; — ज्ञाने (methinks) 300.

ज्ञायते (verb) how construed 100, 1°; 156.

जुगुप्सते (verb) with abl. 97 R.

°त. Participles in — 560; — when expressive of the present 561, 578 R. 1; — when doing duty as finite verbs 9, 528, 557.

तटे 192.

तत् adverb 279, 4°; — = "therefore" 444, 445; — correlative

to यत् 463, to यदि and चेत् 484.

ततः "then, further" 457, 459; — = "therefore" 444; — in the apodosis of a conditional sentence 484.

तत्रभवान् 260.

Tatpurusha 210 foll.

तथा 595; 497 R. 1; — when copulative 427; — न तथा.... यथा 470 R. 1.

तथापि 446.

तदा 474; — in the apodosis of a condit. sentence 484.

तदीय 262 R. 2.

तद्यथा 452.

तप्यते तपः 519 R. 2.

°तराम् and °तमाम् 249.

तर्हि temporal 288, 5°; — conclusive 444; — in the apodosis of a condit. sent. 484.

तले 192.

°तवन्त्. Participles in — 558, 557; — when doing duty as finite verbs 9, 528, 536, 557.

°तः 95, 105, 104, 108; — pronominal adverbs in °तः 289.

तस्मात् conclusive 444.

°ता. Abstracts in — 255—259.

°तात्. Imperative in — 551 R.

तावत् 599; — in enumerations 459; — = Greek *μέν*, 442, 1°; — न तावत्.... यावत् 480 R. 1.

तिरः 160.

तु 429, 441; — किं तु see किम्; — परं तु see परम्; — यदि.... तु 484 R. 2.

तुभ्यम् dat. instead. of तव gen.  
86 d.)

तुलया धृ 74, 8° R.

तुल्य 61.

तुष्यति (verb) how construed 125.

°तृ. Nouns in — 52, 559.

तृप्यति (verb) with instr., gen., loc.  
123, 156.

°त्र. Pronominal adverbs in —  
289.

°त्व. Abstracts in — 235—239.

वा. Pronominal adverbs in — 288.

दक्ष 142.

दक्षिणतः, दक्षिणेन etc. 98 R. 1;  
125.

दण्डयति with two acc. 46.

दराति with its compounds and syn-  
onyms, how construed 81,  
151, 145; — employed for  
periphrasing verbs 510 R.

दधाति see धा.

दधते with gen. or acc. 120 b.)

दर्शयति how construed 51, 81 b.)

°दा. Pronominal adverbs in — 288.

दायाद with gen. or loc. 111 R.

दिष्ट्या 416.

दीव्यति how construed 42 R. 3; 74,  
9°; 122.

दुलभ and दुष्कर 129 R. 3

दूः 211, 225.

दुःखेन 77.

दुह्, दोषि with two acc. 46; — दुग्धे  
instead of दुक्ताते 319 R. 1.

दूरम्, दूरात्, दूरेण, दूरे 98 with R. 1

and 2; — °दूरम् f.i. कियद् दूरम् 292,  
2°; — दूरात् »by far" 104 R.

°देशीय, °देश्य 229, 5°.

°देशे 192.

दुह्यति 85, 4° with R.

Dvandva 205—208.

द्वारीकृत्य 202.

द्वारेण 196.

Dvigu 299.

द्वितीय with gen. 124, 4° R.; — at  
the end of compounds 58 R.

धा, दधाति 510 R.

धारयति with dat. 85, 2°.

धावति 42.

धिक् 416, 417 with R. 1.

न negative 401, 402, 405 R. 2;

525; — put twice 406; — put

once though belonging to two

connected sentences 407; — in

compounds 405 R; — in inter-

rogations 415; — with inde-

finites 282, 288 R. 5; — with

connectives 447, 448; — न

चेत् see चत्.

न, न तु, न च after comparatives  
= »than" 250.

ननु 596, 415; — 525.

नन्दति 42; 74, 5°.

नमति how construed 42; 81, 2°; —

नमते instead of नम्यते 319 R. 1

नमः 83, 5°.

नमस्करोति 42, 9°.

नयति with two acc. 40 R.; 41 R.

नायते, °ति (verb) 120 d.), 121.

गाना 182 R. 2.

गम acc. 55; — particle 396; 409, 3°; 412 R.

नेकट 188.

निकषा 186.

नित्त 266, 267.

निद्धाति 134 and 134\*.

निमित्त serves to periphrase 87, 193, 194.

नियतम् 395.

नियुञ्जे, नियोजयति 90, 146 b.)

निरत with loc. 148.

निर्विद्यते and निर्विषण 97 R., 126 R.

निवर्तते with abl. 96 d.).

निवेद्यति with dat. or gen. 81; 132, 2°.

निवेशयति 134 and 134\*.

निः 225\*.

तु part. of interrogation 409, 3°; 412 R.; 414, 1° and 3°; — तु..... तु 414, 2°; 415; — तु when expletive 397; — with present 325.

नूनम् 395, 396.

नेत् 355 R. 1, 402 R. 2.

नो 402 R. 1, 447; — नो चेत् 485.

न्यस्यति 154 and 134\*.

न्याल 389 R. 1.

पतति with loc. 154 and 154\*; —

पादयोः — 139 e.).

पत्यते 74, 9° R.

पर and परकीय 283, 3°.

परतः 173.

परम् prepos. 173; — limitative 399; 442, 1°; यदि परम् 484 R. 2; न

परम् 442, 3° and 480 R. 1; — adversative 421, 441; परं तु and परं किं तु 441; 442, 2°; न.....

परम् 442 R.

परम् 251, 2°.

परंपर्या 196.

परवन्त with instrum. 75 R. 2.

परः and परस्तात् 160; 173.

परस्परम् 269.

Parasmaipada 314; 318.

परि 158.

परिक्री 70 R. 2.

परितः 186.

परित्यज्य 202.

परिहीयते 105.

परेण 173.

परोक्षम् or °क्षे 177 R.

पर्याप्त with dat. or gen. 85 with R.

पश्चात् 17.

पश्य (look) 500.

पा, पाति with abl. 97; — पेत act. and pass. 224 N. 2.

पा, पितृति 156, 1°.

पाद "a fourth" 301.

पारयति 386.

पार्श्व 188, 189.

°प्राप्त 220 R. 2; 229, 6° N.

पुनः advers. 441 with R. 1.

पुरतः 176, 177.

पुरः 176, 177.

पुरस्कृत्य 201.

पुरस्तात् 176, 177; cp. 98 N

पुरःसर 229, 2°.

पुरा prepos. 161; 395; — adverb 324 R. 1; 327 R.; — conjunction 477 R., 324 R. 1.

पुष्पाति or पुष्पति 42 R. 2.  
 पूरयति and पूर्ण 74, 6°; 123.  
 पूर्व with abl. 105; — °पूर्व 229, 2°  
 and 3°.  
 पूर्वम् propos 178.  
 पृच्छति with two acc. 46.  
 पृथक् 182 R. 2,  
 पृथतः 177 R.  
 पृष्ठे 175 R.; 177 R.; — °पृष्ठे 192.  
 प्र° 509\*.  
 प्रज्ञा 19 R.  
 प्रणमति how construed 42; 81, 2°;  
 152, 9°.  
 प्रति 179, 180.  
 प्रतिकूल 129.  
 प्रतिज्ञानाति with gen. dat. loc. of the  
 person 81 c.); 152, 6°; 145; —  
 with dat. of the purpose 90.  
 प्रतिभू with gen. or loc. 111 R.  
 प्रतिषेधति with abl. 97.  
 प्रत्यक् 175 R.  
 प्रत्यक्षम् 177.  
 प्रत्युत 442, 2° and 3°.  
 प्रथम 246; — प्रथमं तावत् 459.  
 प्रभवति with dat. 85; — with gen.  
 118; — with inf. 584, 586.  
 प्रभु with dat. 85; — with gen. 112;  
 — with inf. 584.  
 प्रभृति 170; — °प्रभृति 229, 1°.  
 प्रसाद्यते 96 R. 2.  
 प्रयच्छति see ददाति.  
 प्रयोजनम् see किम्.  
 प्रवर्तते with dat. 90; — with inf. 584.  
 प्रविशति 154 and 154\*  
 प्रसन्न, प्रसोदति, प्रसाद 151.  
 प्रसित 142 R. 2.

प्रसूत 111 R.  
 प्राक् 178.  
 प्राय 229, 5°.  
 प्रायेण 77.  
 प्रार्थयति 46.  
 प्रिय with gen. 82, 129; — with  
 locat. 148; — in compounds  
 224 N. 2.  
 व्रत 416  
 व्रथाति and its compounds, with loc.  
 159 a); -- व्रथाति a means for  
 periphrase 510 R.  
 व्रलात् and व्रलेन 195.  
 व्रहिः 181.  
 बह्वृ° 251, 2°.  
 Bahuvrīhi 222—226; ... 564 R.  
 1; — 68.  
 ब्राह्म 595.  
 चुटिं करोति with dat. and loc. 89;  
 146.  
 ब्रवीति with two accus. 46; — with  
 dat. gen. loc. etc. of the person  
 addressed 81 c.); 152, 4°; 145;  
 179 b.  
 ब्रूते with two, nomin 55.  
 भक्त and भक्ति with loc. 148.  
 भजति with acc. 42 R. 2.  
 भषाति see वच्.  
 भद्रं ते 2 R.  
 भय see भी.  
 भवति = »to be" and »to become"  
 5; 310—312; — employed as  
 a means for making periphrastic  
 tenses 577, 578, (अभूत्) 555; —



- भवतु 511 N; — inchoatives in °मानिन् 214.  
 °भवति 508, 509.  
 भवद्दीर्घ 262 R. 1.  
 भवान् expressive of the 2<sup>d</sup> person 259, 260.  
 भाग 501.  
 °भाव. Abstracts in — 255—259.  
 भिक्षते with two acc 46; — with abl. 95, 5°. मिथि 269.  
 भिन् with abl. 105; 285 R. 1. मिलित 60,  
 भि, त्रिभेति with abl. or gen. 97, 5°; मिश्रयति 60.  
 126 c.). मुक्ता 202.  
 भुन् vedic constr. 74, 9° R. मुखात्, मुखेन 196.  
 °भूत 214; cp. inchoatives in °भवति. मुञ्चति 96, 62; — मृच्यते reflex. 519  
 भ्रमति with acc. 42. R. 1.  
 भ्रश्यति with abl. 95, 2°; 96, 62. मुष्णाति 46 R.  
 भति कर्तेति with dat. and loc. 89; मुहूर्तेन, °नति, °नस् 99; 128.  
 146. °मूल 194.  
 मयाति 46 R. मृण्यते 127, 5°.  
 मध्यात्, मध्य 190, 191, cp. 116 R. 2. य the relative pronoun 286; — its  
 मध्येकृत्य 201. employment 456, 457, 459, and  
 मध्येन 167. of the whole relative system,  
 °मनः. Infin. + — 385. 451—454; — य with causal,  
 °मन्य 214. final, consecutive force 458; —  
 मन्वते with two nomin. 55; — with य after हृद्ग, तद्ग etc. 458 R.;  
 dat. or acc. 88 R. 5; — मन्वे 460 R. 5; 466; 480 R. 2.  
 »methinks" 500 with R. — For य put twice 287 a.); — यः कश्चित्  
 the rest see ममाग्रयति etc. 287 b.); 288 R. 1; —  
 मरून् instead of मम 86 d.). यः स 287 c.); 288 R. 4; 458 N.  
 मा negative 405; with लिट् and fut. यति 45 R.; 119 R.; — its medial  
 555 R. 4; — with imperative 518 b.).  
 and aorist 555—554; — with यत् particle 462—466; -- almost  
 imperfect 555 R. 5; — मा स्म = यदि 466 R.  
 with aorist 555. यते with dat. 89; — with loc.  
 °मात्र 229, 4° 146 a.); — with inf. 586.  
यतः causal 467 (cp. 445); used as  
यत् 464 and 465 R.  
यत्सत्यम् 595; 459, 1°  
यथा part. of comparison 450, 470;  
= "as if" 470 R. 5; — final  
and consecutive 471; — causal

- 475; — यथा paraphrases the the object 472; — यथा..... तेन सत्येन 470 R. 2.
- यथा<sup>०</sup> 219.
- Yathāsamkhyam 255.
- यदा 474.
- यदि 481, 482, 484—486, 488, 489.
- यद्वत् »as far as" 470 R. 4.
- यस्मात् causal part. 467, ep. 445.
- या, याति »to go" with acc. 59; 256; — with dat. 79, 80.
- याचति how construed 46; 95, 5<sup>०</sup>; 126 a.).
- यादृश 460, esp. R.<sup>१</sup>2.
- यावत् prepos. with acc. and abl. 54 R. 2; 169; — particle 475—480; — with present 524 R. 1.
- यावत् + न = *priusquam* 477; न परम् or न केवलम्..... यावत् 480 R. 1.
- यावत्<sup>०</sup> 219.
- यावता 480\*.
- यावन्त् relat. pronoun 460, esp. R. 2; — its neuter यावत् 460 R. 1.
- युक्त »apt, fit, proper" 129; 146; 82; — with infin. 589; — = »adorned with, with" 58, 198
- युज् with instr. 60; — युज्यते »it is fit, proper" 129.
- योजयति with instr. 60 R. 1.
- युध्यति 42 R. 1.
- येन relative particle 468, 469; — = यत् 465 R.
- योगात्, योगेन 196.
- योग्य 129.
- रक्षति with abl. 97.
- रक्ष्यति with loc. 159 b.)
- रत्न 220 R. 1 and 2.
- रमते with instrum. 74, 5<sup>०</sup> R. 2; — with loc. 148.
- रसि 150.
- रक्षि = »without" 62, 198.
- राध्यति 85.
- रक्ष् with dat. or gen. 81, 2<sup>०</sup>:152, 7<sup>०</sup>
- रद 42.
- रुध् 46 R.
- रूप 220 R. 2: 229, 6<sup>०</sup>.
- रूपं कृ 55.
- रे 419.
- लक्ष 294.
- लगति with loc. 159.
- Lat or present tense 521; 525—527; 542; 544; 556; 468, 471, 476, 489 1<sup>st</sup> cat.
- Lan or imperfect 521; 528—550.
- Lit or perfect 521; 528—555.
- Lin = optative or potential 521; 542—545; — āçishi lin or pre-cative 546.
- Lut or periphrastic future 521; 540—541\*; 544\*\*.
- Luñ or aorist 521; 528; 554—555.
- लुप, लुप्यति 45.
- लुभ्यति 89.
- Lrt or future in रक्षति 521; 540—541\*\*; 542; 544; 550 R.; 489 1<sup>st</sup> cat.
- Lrñ or conditional 542; 547.
- Let or conjunctive 542; 555.
- लोक 19 R.

- Lot or imperative 542; 544; 548  
 — 355; 355; — its 2<sup>d</sup> person  
 of the sing. repeated 497 R. 5.  
 वच् with two acc. or with dat., gen.,  
 पति 46; 81, c.); 127, 1°: 179 b.)  
 वचनात्, — °नेन 196.  
 वसयति with abl. 96 R. 1.  
 °वत् 241.  
 वद् see वच्.  
 वार्म् with abl. 105; — with न, न च  
 etc. 250; — with infin. 589 R. 2.  
 वर्यति see वृषोति.  
 वर्तम् 202, 2°.  
 वर्तयित्वा 202.  
 वर्तते »to be» 3, 310; 567; — with  
 partic. of the present 578; —  
 with gerund 581; — with locat.  
 158.  
 वर्षति 42; 74, 9°.  
 वशात्, वशेन 195.  
 वसति with locat. 157.  
 वहति 510 R.  
 वा disjunctive 428, 440; — in in-  
 terrogations 409, 3°; 412 R.;  
 414, 1°—5°; वा... वा 414,  
 2°; 428; — न वा, वा न वा 414  
 R.; — वा यदि वा 428 R., 440.  
 वा = वै 397 R. 1.  
 °वार्म् 292 R. 2.  
 वारयति with abl. 97.  
 वाव 597 R. 5.  
 वि° Compounds with —, 225\*; —  
 construed with instrum. or abl.  
 62, 96.  
 विक्री with locat. 145.  
 विगत 198 R.; 225\* P.  
 विग्रहवन्त, विग्रहिन् 450 R. 5.  
 विद् its construction with gen. 121;  
 — its perf. वेद् 531, 532; —  
 its caus. see वेद्यति.  
 विद्यते »to be» 3; 567.  
 °विधि 229, 10°.  
 विना 182.  
 विप्रिय 129.  
 विभक्तति 45.  
 विमुक् 129.  
 वियुक् 62.  
 वियुज्यते, वियोजयति 62; 96.  
 विरुध्यते 59; 148; 179 b.).  
 विवश 245.  
 विशिष्यते, विशिष्ट etc. 105, 3°; 62;  
 141.  
 °विशेष 229, 8° and 9°.  
 विश्रम्भा 159 c.) and 148  
 विप्रत्र 280 R. 1.  
 विश्रवसिति and विश्रवास how construed  
 151; 159 c.); 148.  
 विशये 192 R.  
 विषुक् 186 R. 2.  
 विहाय 202.  
 वीत 198 R.; 225\*.  
 Vipsā 252.  
 वृषोति with two accus. 46; — with  
 abl. 95, 5°; — with dat or loc.  
 90, 146 b.)  
 वेद्यति and its compounds, how con-  
 strued 47, 51; 81 c.); 132, 2°.  
 वै 397 R. 1.  
 वैर् 58, 59; 148; 179 b.)  
 व्यति° 518 R. 5.  
 व्याहरति see वच्.

वृत्ति 59, 236.

शक् with dat., loc., inf. 90; 146 c.); 584; — शक्यते and शक्य with infin. 587, 588.

शक्त 85 R.; — शक्त, and शक्ति 587 R. with N.

शङ्कते with abl. 97; — शङ्के (it seems, methinks) 500.

शपति 74, 2° and 9°; — 83, 5°.

शप्यत् 597 R. 5.

°शः 242.

शान्तम् 2 R.; 416.

शिक्षते 142.

शुश्रूषते 86 c.); 126 b.)

शोचति 42; 74 R. 1.

श्रद्धा, श्रद्धयाति 86 c.); 152 R.

श्रि, श्रति with acc. 40; — with loc. 159 c.)

श्रु, श्रुषोति with acc., gen., abl. 95, 4°; 126 b.); — with gen. of the partic 126 N; — श्रावयति 51.

श्लाघते 74, 3°; 83, 5°.

श्लिप् with compounds and derivatives 159 c.)

स demonstr. pronoun 271; — its employment 275—278; 279, 1° and 2°; — its relations to य 286 and cp. 451, 455; — स the general pronoun 12, 276; — स स 276 R.; — स a means for connecting sentences 455; — स with conclusive force 445.

स° 58; 60; 185

संवर्तते 510.

संप्रायः न ...., नात्र .... 500.

सकाश 188, 189.

सक्त with gen. 124, 2°; — with loc. see सव्यते.

संख्याय 201.

संगत 58.

सव्यते or सद्वते 159.

संज्ञात, संज्ञायते 510.

संज्ञा (verb) 60 R. 2; — 259 R.

सत्त्वम् 595; — 442, 1°.

सद्गुण with instrum. or gen. 61, 129.

सन्त् participle of अस्ति 564 with R. 2; 567.

संनिधि 188.

सम्भवान् 260.

स° [= सम्] 60.

सम् with instrum. or gen. 61, 129.

समक्षम् 177.

समन्ततः, समन्तात् 186.

समम् prepos. 58, 184, 185 R. 2.

समया 186.

समर्थ with dat. or loc. 90; 146 c.); — with inf. 584.

समान with instrum. or gen. 61.

समोष 188.

संपद्यते "to become" 510; — with dat. 85, 88.

संप्रयच्छते 60 R. 2.

संभावयति 52, 237; — with gen. 127, 2°.

संमुख 199.

सर्व 281, esp. R. 2.

सर्वतः 186.

सर्वस्मिन्ना 77.

सह 58, 60, 184, 185.

सहित "with" 58, 198.

- ताकम् 58, 184.  
 ताक्षात् in similes 430 R. 5.  
 ताक्षिन् 111 R.  
 °सात् 509.  
 साधु adjective with loc. or प्रति 149;  
 — particle 416.  
 सार्धम् 58, 184, 185 R. 2.  
 सु° 211, 225.  
 सुकर् 129 R. 2.  
 सुखेन 77.  
 सुलभ 129 R. 2.  
 सोढृद् 148.  
 स्या, तिष्ठति with loc. 138; — = »to  
 be" 5, 510; — स्थित express. of  
 the predicate 567; — तिष्ठति  
 with partic. of the pres. 378,  
 with gerund 581.  
 तिष्ठते with dat. 85, 5°; 259 R.  
 स्थाने = »as" 452.  
 स्थापयति 154\*, 146 b.)  
 स्तु 519 R. 1.  
 स्पृहयति with dat. acc. gen. 89;  
 120 d.)  
 स्म 397; — put to the present tense  
 526, 527; — put to मा see मा.
- स्मृति with gen. or acc. 120; —  
 with infin. 384 R. 2 with N.  
 स्व 265, 265, 267.  
 स्वक, स्वकीय 265 R. 1.  
 स्वश्च 85, 5°.  
 स्वयम् 268; — in similes 430 R. 5.  
 स्वामिन् 111 R.  
 स्वाहा 85, 5°.  
 स्वित् 409, 5°; 414, 1°; 415.  
 स्वीय 265.  
 ह 397 with R. 2.  
 हन्त 418.  
 हसति 42.  
 हा particle 416, 417 R. 2.  
 हायति 49 N.  
 हि 429, 445.  
 हित with dat. 85, 1°; 216, IV b.)  
 होन 62, 198.  
 होयते 96.  
 हु, बुद्धोति 45 R.  
 हेतु 194.  
 हेतोः 195.  
 ह् 85, 5°.











